



Practical C++ STL Programming

Real-World Applications with
C++20 and C++23

—

Daniel Kusswurm

Apress®

Practical C++ STL Programming

Real-World Applications
with C++20 and C++23

Daniel Kusswurm

Apress®

Practical C++ STL Programming: Real-World Applications with C++20 and C++23

Daniel Kusswurm
Geneva, IL, USA

ISBN-13 (pbk): 979-8-8688-0773-2
<https://doi.org/10.1007/979-8-8688-0774-9>

ISBN-13 (electronic): 979-8-8688-0774-9

Copyright © 2024 by Daniel Kusswurm

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.

Trademarked names, logos, and images may appear in this book. Rather than use a trademark symbol with every occurrence of a trademarked name, logo, or image we use the names, logos, and images only in an editorial fashion and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark.

The use in this publication of trade names, trademarks, service marks, and similar terms, even if they are not identified as such, is not to be taken as an expression of opinion as to whether or not they are subject to proprietary rights.

While the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication, neither the authors nor the editors nor the publisher can accept any legal responsibility for any errors or omissions that may be made. The publisher makes no warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein.

Managing Director, Apress Media LLC: Welmoed Spahr
Acquisitions Editor: Melissa Duffy
Development Editor: James Markham
Editorial Assistant: Gryffin Winkler

Cover designed by eStudioCalamar

Cover image designed by Héctor J. Rivas on Unsplash

Distributed to the book trade worldwide by Springer Science+Business Media New York, 1 New York Plaza, Suite 4600, New York, NY 10004-1562, USA. Phone 1-800-SPRINGER, fax (201) 348-4505, e-mail orders-ny@springer-sbm.com, or visit www.springeronline.com. Apress Media, LLC is a California LLC and the sole member (owner) is Springer Science + Business Media Finance Inc (SSBM Finance Inc). SSBM Finance Inc is a Delaware corporation.

For information on translations, please e-mail booktranslations@springernature.com; for reprint, paperback, or audio rights, please e-mail bookpermissions@springernature.com.

Apress titles may be purchased in bulk for academic, corporate, or promotional use. eBook versions and licenses are also available for most titles. For more information, reference our Print and eBook Bulk Sales web page at <http://www.apress.com/bulk-sales>.

Any source code or other supplementary material referenced by the author in this book is available to readers on GitHub. For more detailed information, please visit <https://www.apress.com/gp/services/source-code>.

If disposing of this product, please recycle the paper

Table of Contents

About the Author	xi
About the Technical Reviewer	xiii
Acknowledgments	xv
Introduction	xvii
Prologue	xxi
Chapter 1: C++ Review	1
Templates.....	1
Source Code Overview	11
Containers and Iterators	12
Strings.....	17
User-Defined Classes.....	23
User-Defined Template Classes	34
Lambda Expressions	41
Three-Way Comparison Operator.....	48
Exceptions.....	58
Summary.....	61
Chapter 2: Formatted I/O	63
Formatted Output Using std::printf().....	63
Formatted Output Using Streams.....	68
Formatted Output Using std::format()	80
Formatted Output Using std::print().....	93
Formatted File I/O Using Streams.....	97
Summary.....	103

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Chapter 3: Sequence Containers – Part 1 105**
 - Overview of Sequence Containers 105
 - Using `std::array` 106
 - Using `std::vector` 116
 - More Algorithms Using `std::array` and `std::vector` 128
 - Summary 134

- Chapter 4: Sequence Containers – Part 2 137**
 - Using `std::deque` 137
 - Using `std::list` 148
 - Using `std::forward_list` 158
 - Understanding Iterators 165
 - Summary 171

- Chapter 5: General Utilities Library 173**
 - Heterogeneous Containers 173
 - Using `std::pair` 174
 - Using `std::tuple` 180
 - Utility Classes 190
 - Using `std::variant` 190
 - Using `std::optional` 200
 - Using `std::any` 219
 - Using `std::expected` 223
 - Summary 231

- Chapter 6: Smart Pointers 233**
 - Smart Pointer Primer 233
 - Using `std::unique_ptr` 235
 - Using `std::shared_ptr` 248
 - Using `std::weak_ptr` 254
 - Summary 258

Chapter 7: Associative Containers.....	259
Using <code>std::set</code>	259
Using <code>std::multiset</code>	271
Using <code>std::map</code>	276
Using <code>std::multimap</code>	292
Summary.....	300
Chapter 8: Unordered Associative Containers	301
Unordered Associative Container Primer	301
Hash Functions and Concepts	302
Using <code>std::unordered_set</code>	303
Using <code>std::unordered_multiset</code>	326
Using <code>std::unordered_map</code>	333
Using <code>std::unordered_multimap</code>	345
Summary.....	352
Chapter 9: Container Adaptors	355
Container Adaptor Primer.....	355
Using <code>std::stack</code>	357
Using <code>std::queue</code>	370
Using <code>std::priority_queue</code>	375
Flat Container Adaptors.....	387
Summary.....	388
Chapter 10: Algorithms – Part 1	391
Algorithm Primer.....	391
Counting Algorithms.....	393
Minimum and Maximum Algorithms	408
Copy Algorithms	414
Move Algorithms	420
Reversal Algorithms	425
Replacement Algorithms.....	428

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Removal Algorithms 436

Fill Algorithms 443

Summary..... 447

Chapter 11: Algorithms – Part 2 449

For_Each Algorithms 449

Transformation Algorithms..... 454

Generation Algorithms 459

Find Algorithms..... 464

Contains Algorithms 483

More Find Algorithms..... 491

Search Algorithms..... 494

Accumulate and Fold Algorithms 503

Summary..... 511

Chapter 12: Algorithms – Part 3 513

Sorting Algorithms 513

Binary Search Algorithms 523

Partition Algorithms 531

Heap Algorithms..... 535

Summary..... 542

Chapter 13: Algorithms – Part 4 545

Merge Algorithms..... 545

Shuffle and Sample Algorithms..... 553

Rotate and Shift Algorithms 557

Set Algorithms..... 564

Permutation Algorithms 568

Summary..... 572

Chapter 14: Ranges – Part 1	575
Range Views and Adaptors Primer	575
Range Views and Adaptors	577
Range Adaptors and Pipelines	584
Range Projections	590
More Range Adaptors.....	598
Range Views and Adaptors Minutiae.....	604
Summary.....	609
Chapter 15: Ranges – Part 2	611
Tuple Views	611
More Tuple Views	616
Join, Split, and Cartesian Product Views.....	626
Slide, Stride, and Chunk Views.....	633
Range Factories	642
Summary.....	647
Chapter 16: Time Library	649
Ratios	649
Durations.....	656
Clocks and Timepoints	665
More Clocks and Timepoints.....	675
Software Benchmarking	680
Summary.....	687
Chapter 17: File Systems	689
File System Path Classes.....	689
File System Directory Iterator Classes.....	699
File System Helper Functions	709
File System Copy Functions.....	718
Summary.....	725

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Chapter 18: Numerical Processing – Part 1..... 727**
 - Mathematical Constants 727
 - Complex Numbers..... 734
 - Random Number Generation..... 743
 - Using Generators and Distributions..... 747
 - Dice Games 755
 - Vector of Random Numbers..... 764
 - Summary..... 767

- Chapter 19: Numerical Processing – Part 2..... 769**
 - Class `std::valarray`..... 769
 - Arithmetic Functions 770
 - Statistical Calculations 777
 - Class `std::slice` 785
 - Basic Operations 785
 - Covariance Matrix..... 794
 - Inner Products and Reductions 799
 - Summary..... 808

- Chapter 20: Concurrency – Part 1 811**
 - Concurrency Primer 811
 - Execution Policies 813
 - Mutexes 821
 - Threads 825
 - Atomic Operations..... 833
 - Multithreaded Algorithms..... 841
 - Summary..... 851

Chapter 21: Concurrency – Part 2	853
Semaphores.....	853
Latches	861
Condition Variables	866
Futures.....	873
Summary.....	886
Appendix A: Source Code and Development Tools.....	887
Appendix B: References and Resources	895
Index.....	899

About the Author



Daniel Kusswurm has 40+ years of professional experience as a software developer, computer scientist, and author. During his career, he has developed innovative software for medical devices, scientific instruments, and image processing applications. On many of these projects, he successfully utilized ISO C++ and the standard template libraries to create quality software and solve unique programming challenges. His educational background includes a BS in electrical engineering technology from Northern Illinois University along with an MS and PhD in computer science from DePaul University.

Kusswurm is the author of multiple computer programming books, including *Modern X86 Assembly Language Programming* (Third Edition), *Modern Arm Assembly Language Programming*, and *Modern Parallel Programming with C++ and Assembly Language*, all published by Apress.

About the Technical Reviewer



Sri Manikanta Palakollu is a seasoned software developer with four years of experience. He has acquired deep expertise across a wide range of technologies, including Java, AEM, Python, C++, C, JavaScript, TypeScript, MERN, databases, AI, and System Design.

In addition to his technical prowess, Sri Manikanta is a prolific writer. He has authored numerous articles on diverse domains such as AI, ML, programming, data science, and cybersecurity. These articles have been published on prominent platforms like Medium, HackerNoon, and Analytics Vidhya.

Furthermore, Sri Manikanta has provided technical guidance for many books from well-known publishers such as Packt and Apress. He has also authored the book *Practical System Programming with C*.

Beyond his writing achievements, Sri Manikanta has showcased his talent and innovation by securing a national-level hackathon and participating in several open source projects. He is also a dedicated mentor, having coached more than 5,000 students in various coding hackathons hosted by different organizations and institutions across the nation and overseas.

Acknowledgments

It is impossible to write and publish a book without the dedication, expertise, and creativity of a professional behind-the-scenes team. This book is no exception. I would like to thank the talented editorial team at Apress, including Melissa Duffy, Sowmya Thodur, James Markham, and Gryffin Winkler. I would also like to thank the entire production staff at Apress for their enthusiasm and hard work.

Sri Manikanta Palakollu merits a sincere thank-you for his technical review and constructive feedback. Ed Kusswurm is gratefully acknowledged for his methodical scrutiny of each chapter and sensible suggestions. I accept full responsibility for any remaining imperfections.

Thanks to my professional colleagues for their support. Finally, I would like to recognize parental nodes Armin (RIP) and Mary along with sibling nodes Mary, Tom, Ed, and John for their encouragement during the writing of this book.

Introduction

Perhaps the most remarkable aspect of modern C++ programming is not the expressive syntax and semantics of the language itself, but the Standard Template Libraries (STL). The STL is a vast collection of versatile template classes and algorithms. When used properly, STL facilitates and streamlines the development of high-performance quality software. However, learning how to effectively exploit STL's programming constructs is often overwhelming for many C++ programmers, both beginners and veterans.

Practical C++ STL Programming is an instructional text that teaches you how to successfully apply STL's classes, algorithms, and other programming constructs. It covers a wide range of STL topics, including many new elements from the C++20 and C++23 standards. Before continuing, it warrants mentioning that it's utterly impractical for one book to completely explain every STL component. This book emphasizes *practical C++ STL programming*. By that I mean it teaches you how to properly apply what I believe are STL's most essential and worthwhile classes and algorithms. The specific topics covered in this book along with its numerous source code examples are designed to accelerate comprehension of STL in general and motivate further study.

The target audience for *Practical C++ STL Programming* is professional C++ programmers, students, or anyone who has an interest in learning more about the STL. To reap maximum benefits from this book, you should have a rudimentary understanding of C++11 or later, including namespaces, classes (constructors, destructors, operators, inheritance, etc.), function overloading, lambda expressions, exceptions, and templates. Previous experience with at least one of the C++ compilers mentioned in the "Source Code" section will also be helpful.

Content Overview

The primary objective of this book is to teach you C++ STL programming and how to best utilize its components. Here's a brief overview of what you can expect to learn.

C++ Review – Chapter 1 reviews essential C++ programming topics, including classes, iterators, strings, templates, and lambda expressions. It also explains C++20's new three-way comparison operator.

Formatted I/O – Chapter 2 discusses formatted I/O using streams. It also details how to properly use the new string formatting capabilities of C++20/23, including `std::format()` and `std::println()`.

Sequence Containers – Chapter 3 examines sequence containers `std::array` and `std::vector`. The former is a modern substitute for a C-style array, while the latter is undoubtedly the most important STL container. Chapter 4 covers additional sequence containers including `std::deque`, `std::list`, and `std::forward_list`. This chapter also explains iterators in greater detail and the new iterator concepts of C++20.

General Utilities Library – Chapter 5 reviews principal classes from STL's general utilities library, including `std::pair` and `std::tuple`. It also explains how to best employ other utility classes, including `std::variant`, `std::optional`, `std::any`, and `std::expected`.

Smart Pointers – Modern C++ discourages the use of raw pointers. Instead, programmers are encouraged to use smart pointers in their programs as explained in Chapter 6.

Associative Containers – Chapter 7 considers associative containers, including `std::set`, `std::multiset`, `std::map`, and `std::multimap`.

Unordered Associative Containers – Chapter 8 explains how to use unordered associative containers `std::unordered_set`, `std::unordered_multiset`, `std::unordered_map`, and `std::unordered_multimap`. This chapter also includes a primer on hash functions and their connection with unordered associative containers.

Container Adaptors – Many programs require simple stacks and queues to carry out specific processing. Chapter 9 surveys container adaptor classes `std::stack`, `std::queue`, and `std::priority_queue`.

Algorithms – Chapters 10–13 expound usages of numerous STL algorithms. The discussions and source code examples in these chapters cover both the long-established algorithms of C++11 along with the new range variants of C++20/23.

Ranges – Chapters 14 and 15 explicate C++20 ranges and views, which can be used to simplify the coding of algorithms that perform pipeline processing. These chapters also explain range adaptors, projections, and range factories.

Time Library – The STL's time library encompasses classes that streamline date/time calculations. Chapter 16 covers prominent classes and algorithms from this library, including clock classes, timepoints, durations, and date/time formatting.

File Systems – Chapter 17 describes important file system classes, including `std::filesystem::path`, `std::filesystem::recursive_directory_iterator`, and `std::filesystem::directory_entry`. It also explains how to use STL's directory and file create, copy, and remove algorithms.

Numerical Processing – Chapters 18 and 19 spotlight STL numerical processing features, including complex numbers and random number generators/distributions. These chapters also explain how to use classes `std::valarray` and `std::slice`, which can be exploited to implement algorithms that perform calculations using numerical arrays or matrices.

Concurrency – Chapters 20 and 21 examine essential features from STL's concurrency support library. These chapters describe the classes and algorithms that facilitate the development of multithreaded applications. Topics covered include STL algorithm execution policies, thread classes, atomic operations, mutexes and semaphores, condition variables, and promise/future classes.

Source Code

The source code published in this book is available on GitHub at <https://github.com/Apress/Practical-CPP-STL-Programming>. Appendix A contains additional information regarding the source code, including download and setup instructions.

Caution The sole purpose of the source code is to elucidate programming topics that are directly related to the content of this book. Minimal attention is given to essential software engineering concerns such as robust error handling, security risks, numerical stability, rounding errors, or ill-conditioned functions. You are responsible for addressing these concerns should you decide to use any of the source code in your own programs.

The source code for *Practical C++ STL Programming* was developed using Windows 11 and Visual Studio 2022. The source code examples were also tested on computers running Ubuntu (GCC and Clang) and macOS (GCC) as described in Appendix A.

Additional Resources

Appendix B lists several useful C++ and STL resources that will appeal to both novice and experienced programmers. Two of these resources warrant special mention. The first one is the draft (or final) ISO C++23 specification document. The primary audience for this document is programmers who create C++ compilers and companion development tools. For developers who merely use C++, the ISO C++23 specification document is likely an arduous read whose content is often abstruse. However, for those individuals who aspire to be a world-class C++ programmer, becoming familiar with the ISO C++ specification document is a worthwhile endeavor given that it's the ultimate arbitrator of required C++ behavior and, perhaps more importantly, undefined or unspecified behavior.

The second noteworthy resource is the website [cppreference.com](https://en.cppreference.com/w/) (<https://en.cppreference.com/w/>). This site contains indispensable (and appreciated) content regarding STL's classes and algorithms, including comprehensive descriptions, template parameters, class data members, and member/non-member functions. It also details specific language and library features for ISO standards C++11 to C++23.

Prologue

Practical C++ STL Defined

The C++ Standard Template Library (STL) is a multifarious collection of classes, algorithms, and utility functions that enable software developers to create high-performance quality code without having to reinvent the wheel. It is virtually impossible for a software developer to write C++ code of any consequence without explicitly or implicitly using STL resources since it forms the foundation of modern C++ programming. Consider that even a novice C++ programmer typically exercises elementary STL features when coding their first “hello, world” program (e.g., `std::cout << "hello, world\n";` or `std::println("hello, world");`).

It is interesting to note that despite its widespread use, the ISO C++23 standards document does not expressly mention the acronym STL. It uses the phrase “C++ standard library.” However, internet searches for STL are common, and many experienced C++ programmers use STL colloquially. This book also uses the acronym STL.

Learning how to effectively exploit STL’s capabilities is often a daunting task for both C++ novices and experts. The STL itself is an enormous assortment of mostly C++ template code that lacks a precise definition and starting point. It is also important to keep in mind that it’s utterly impossible for one book to completely explain every STL component and usage alternative. This book emphasizes practical C++ STL programming. By that I mean it teaches you how to utilize its most important classes, algorithms, and utility functions. Admittedly, what constitutes STL’s most important capabilities is decidedly subjective. However, the specific STL topics and source code examples that I have chosen are designed to accelerate comprehension of STL in general and motivate further study.

In the sections that follow, I’ve partitioned STL’s capabilities into the following general categories:

- Containers, iterators, and algorithms
- Strings and formatted I/O

PROLOGUE

- General-purpose utilities
- Numerical programming
- Concurrency

I should note that these categories are somewhat arbitrary and do not necessarily match any categories or groupings published in the ISO C++23 standards document. They are merely used as an instrument to introduce some of the STL topics that you'll learn about in this book.

Containers, Iterators, and Algorithms

Perhaps the most important constituent of the STL is its collection of containers, iterators, and algorithms. An STL container is a data construct that holds objects (or elements). Examples of STL container objects include the following:

- Sequence containers
- Associative containers
- Unordered associative containers
- Container adaptors

The sequence container group includes arrays (`std::array`), vectors (`std::vector`), double-ended queues (`std::deque`), and lists (`std::list`, `std::forward_list`). The ordering of elements in a sequence container is the responsibility of the programmer.

Examples of associative containers include sets (`std::set`, `std::multiset`) and maps (`std::map`, `std::multimap`). Associative containers differ from sequence containers in that the objects they hold are organized using a key value and relational operator.

An unordered associative container resembles an associative container sans the underlying ordering scheme. Examples of unordered containers include unordered sets (`std::unordered_set`, `std::unordered_multiset`) and unordered maps (`std::unordered_map`, `std::unordered_multimap`).

A container adaptor class utilizes the capabilities of another STL class (usually a sequence container) to implement a universal programming construct. Container adaptor classes include stacks (`std::stack`) and queues (`std::queue`, `std::priority_queue`).

Modern C++ programs make extensive use of iterators to access or manipulate the elements of a container. Conceptually, an iterator is a generalization of a pointer. The primary difference between an iterator and a pointer is that the former facilitates element access in a uniform manner that's independent of a container's underlying data structure. STL defines a variety of iterator types whose specific capabilities vary depending on the container.

The largest component of STL is undoubtedly its extensive collection of predefined algorithms. Examples of STL algorithms include container counting (`std::count()`, `std::count_if()`), sorting (`std::sort()`), searching (`std::binary_search()`, `std::contains()`, `std::find()`), modifications (`std::merge()`, `std::reverse()`, `std::replace()`), and transformations (`std::for_each()`, `std::transform()`). The default behavior of most STL algorithms can be overridden using a programmer-defined lambda expression. A sizeable portion of this book is dedicated to explaining STL algorithms, both the time-tested forms of C++11/14/17 and the new range variants of C++20/23.

Strings and Formatted I/O

Unlike many other programming languages, a text string is not an intrinsic data type in C++. Instead, C++ programs (implicitly) use the STL template class `std::basic_string` to create and manipulate string objects. One of the parameters for template `std::basic_string` is a character type. Supported character types include `char`, `wchar_t`, `char8_t`, `char16_t`, and `char32_t`. The primary difference between types `char` and `char8_t` (C++20) is that the latter is guaranteed to be unsigned, while the sign of type `char` is implementation defined. To simplify string declarations, STL defines several aliases, including `std::string`, `std::wstring`, `std::u8string`, `std::u16string`, and `std::u32string`, for the previously mentioned character types.

A C++ program can also employ template class `std::basic_string_view`, which references a constant contiguous sequence of characters. Template class `std::basic_string_view` supports the same character types as template class `std::basic_string`. C++ programs normally work with instances of `std::basic_string_view` using the aliases `std::string_view`, `std::wstring_view`, `std::u8string_view`, `std::u16string_view`, and `std::u32string_view`.

C++ defines a comprehensive template class hierarchy that performs formatted input and output. This class hierarchy supports read and write operations using either

file or string streams. Stream classes for formatted file I/O include `std::ifstream`, `std::ofstream`, and `std::fstream`; for string streams, the corresponding classes are `std::istringstream`, `std::ostringstream`, and `std::stringstream`.

Prior to C++20, most programs performed formatted I/O operations using overloads of `operator<<` and `operator>>` along with a somewhat confusing set of stream state flags and manipulators. The C++20 specification defines a new formatting library. The functions of this new library (e.g., `std::format()`, `std::format_to()`, `std::vformat()`, `std::vformat_to()`, etc.) utilize format specification strings that mimic the ones used in Python. A user-defined class can also create custom functions and specifiers for formatted output. C++23 adds `std::println()` and other functions for direct formatted output to `std::cout` or other output stream object.

General-Purpose Utilities

The C++ specification defines numerous general-purpose utility classes and functions, many of which are used by other STL classes. A C++ program can use `std::pair` or `std::tuple` to group a collection of heterogeneous elements. The former maintains two elements, while the latter supports an arbitrary number of elements. A C++ function can also use `std::pair` and `std::tuple` to return multiple values to its caller.

An instance of the STL class `std::variant` holds multiple values of different types, but only one at a time. This class is often used as a type-safe replacement for a C-style union. Class `std::optional` holds an optional value, which may or may not be present. For example, a function can return an “empty” `std::optional` value if it detects an error condition or an actual value of another type if it succeeds. Class `std::any` is a type-safe container for a single value, while class `std::expected` combines two values – an expected type and an error type – into a single entity.

Modern C++ programming discourages explicit use of operators `new` and `delete` to dynamically allocate and free memory during program execution. Instead, programs are strongly encouraged to use a smart pointer class such as `std::unique_ptr` or `std::shared_ptr`. Class `std::unique_ptr` is an object that manages another object via a pointer and maintains sole ownership of that object. Instances of `std::shared_ptr` are similar to `std::unique_ptr` but can share ownership of the managed object. Smart pointers perform automatic object deletion, which significantly reduces the risk of a memory leak compared to the manual use of `new` and `delete`.

STL includes a chrono library (namespace `std::chrono`) for time and date manipulation. Included in this library are a variety of clock objects – `std::chrono::system_clock` (wall time), `std::chrono::steady_clock` (elapsed time), `std::chrono::high_resolution_clock` (precision elapsed time) – that provide time values in the form of a `std::chrono::timepoint` object. Starting with C++20, a program can use the new calendar classes to perform year-month-day calculations and time zone conversions.

The file system library (`std::filesystem`) defines useful templates that a program can use to carry out typical file system operations, including file and directory creations, copies, searches, status queries, etc. Classes contained in this library include `std::filesystem::path`, `std::filesystem::directory_entry`, and `std::filesystem::directory_iterator`. This library also incorporates convenient helper functions that facilitate less common but still important file system operations, including symbolic link manipulation and file system queries.

Numerical Programming

The STL includes a variety of template classes that simplify numerical programming. For example, a program no longer needs to define universal math constants such as π and e . It can use the constant expression templates defined in namespace `std::numbers` (e.g., `std::numbers::pi_v` and `std::numbers::e_v`). STL also incorporates class `std::complex` for performing arithmetic using complex numbers. A program can use `std::valarray` to create arrays of numerical values. Class `std::valarray` also provides overloads of common math functions (e.g., `std::log()`, `std::sin()`, `std::sqrt()`, etc.). Class `std::slice` facilitates using class `std::valarray` to perform matrix operations.

Another useful STL numerical programming capability is the classes that support the generation of (pseudo-) random numbers. A program typically uses a random number engine in conjunction with a random number distribution to generate sequences of random numbers. Examples of random number engines include `std::linear_congruential_engine` and `std::mersenne_twister_engine`. Since the underlying mathematics of random number generation is complex, STL provides several preconfigured random number engines, including `std::minstd_rand` and `std::mt19937`. Random number distributions include uniform (`std::uniform_int_distribution`, `std::uniform_real_distribution`), Poisson (`std::poisson_distribution`, `std::exponential_distribution`), and normal (`std::normal_`

distribution and `std::lognormal_distribution`). Uniform distributions are often used in game applications to simulate the rolling of dice, dealing of playing cards, etc. The other distribution types are handy for creating synthetic data sets to test numerical algorithms.

Concurrency

The final STL grouping of this section is concurrency. Many of the STL container algorithms that you'll study in later chapters support an execution policy argument. This argument designates the method of parallelization that an algorithm is allowed to utilize. Execution policies provide a straightforward technique, provided certain constraints are observed, for an algorithm to better exploit the parallel processing capabilities of a modern processor.

A program can use the thread support classes (`std::thread`, `std::this_thread`, `std::jthread`, `std::stop_token`, `std::stop_source`) to manage thread execution. For resource synchronization, STL includes mutexes (`std::mutex`, `std::timed_mutex`, etc.), mutex management (`std::lock_guard`, `std::unique_lock`, etc.), semaphores (`std::counting_semaphore`, `std::binary_semaphore`), and condition variables (`std::condition_variable`, `std::condition_variable_any`, etc.).

It is often necessary for a parallel algorithm to ensure that access to a critical variable is performed atomically (i.e., the operation is performed such that it won't be interrupted by another atomic operation on the same variable). The STL includes numerous atomic template classes and functions (e.g., `std::atomic`, `std::atomic_load`, `std::atomic_store`, etc.) that streamline these types of operations.

An application can utilize STL's futures classes (`std::promise`, `std::future`, `std::async`, etc.) to perform asynchronous thread execution. This group also includes several ancillary classes (e.g., `std::future_category`, `std::future_error`, and `std::future_errc`) that facilitate the processing of a return value or exception from an asynchronous thread.

Summary

As mentioned earlier, the STL is the foundation of modern C++ programming. It is virtually impossible to write any meaningful C++ program without employing some of its components. In the chapters that follow, you'll learn how to successfully exploit the STL classes and algorithms introduced in this prologue.

CHAPTER 1

C++ Review

As mentioned in the Introduction, the content of this book assumes that you're somewhat familiar with the basics of C++ syntax and elementary programming features, including classes, inheritance, overloading, and templates. This chapter reviews important C++ programming concepts that you must understand to fully exploit the capabilities of STL. It also explains several new features from C++20/23. Topics covered include

- Templates
- Containers and iterators
- Strings
- User-defined classes
- User-defined template classes
- Lambda expressions
- Three-way comparison operator
- Exceptions

If your comprehension of a specific topic is sufficient, feel free to either skim or skip that section. If, however, your understanding of a subject is lacking, Appendix B contains a list of C++ references that you can consult for more information.

Templates

A C++ template is a parameterized data type. Programmers use templates to define functions, classes, and algorithms in a manner that's type independent. For example, suppose you want to code a new sorting algorithm and you want to use the algorithm with a variety of data types, such as integers, floating-point values, strings, and

user-defined data types. In many other programming languages, you would need to code a “different” algorithm for each desired type even though each implementation performs the same fundamental operations (e.g., compares, assignments, swaps, etc.). The use of C++ templates facilitates the coding of a single algorithm so long as the data types in use support the required operations.

Let’s look at a few template examples. Listing 1-1-1 shows the header file for source code example Ch01_01. Each source code example presented in this book incorporates an example-specific header file. For source code example Ch01_01, header file Ch01_01.h contains a single function declaration.

Listing 1-1-1. Example Ch01_01 – Ch01_01.h

```
//-----
// Ch01_01.h
//-----

#ifndef CH01_01_H_
#define CH01_01_H_
#include "Common.h"

extern void Ch01_01_ex();

#endif
```

The other item of note in Listing 1-1-1 is the statement `#include "Common.h"`. This file contains template code that facilitates the use of C++23 functions `std::print()` and `std::println()` with a compiler that supports the C++20 formatting functions (e.g., `std::format()`, `std::vformat()`, etc.). You can find `Common.h` in a subdirectory named `Common` along with other shared files. For the current example, it is not necessary to understand the template code contained in `Common.h`.

Listing 1-1-2 shows the source code for file `Ch01_01.cpp`. Like the previously described header file, each source code example presented in this book incorporates a similar file. The primary purpose of file `Ch01_01.cpp` is to provide a top-level exception handler.

Listing 1-1-2. Example Ch01_01 - Ch01_01.cpp

```
//-----
// Ch01_01.cpp
//-----

#include <stdexcept>
#include "Ch01_01.h"

int main(int, char** argv)
{
    int rc {};

    try
    {
        std::println("\n----- Results for example Ch01_01 -----");
        Ch01_01_ex();
    }

    catch (const std::exception& ex)
    {
        rc = 1;
        std::println("Exception occurred in program {:s}", argv[0]);
        std::println("{:s}", ex.what());
    }

    return rc;
}
```

The pertinent STL code for example Ch01_01 is in file Ch01_01_ex.cpp as shown in Listing 1-1-3.

Listing 1-1-3. Example Ch01_01 - Ch01_01_ex.cpp

```

//-----
// Ch01_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <string>
#include "Ch01_01.h"
#include "Point2D.h"

// function template - adds values
template <typename T> T add_values(T a, T b, T c)
{
    return a + b + c;
}

void Ch01_01_ex1()
{
    // uniform initialization
    int a {10};
    int b {20};
    int c {30};
    // int x = 2.1;           // compiler warning (maybe), x = 2
    // int y {2.1};          // compiler error

    // using template function add_values()
    int sum1 = add_values(a, b, c);
    std::println("a: {} b: {} c: {} sum1: {}", a, b, c, sum1);

    // using template function add_values()
    double d {100.0};
    double e {200.0};
    double f {300.0};
    double sum2 = add_values(d, e, f);
    std::println("d: {} e: {} f: {} sum2: {}", d, e, f, sum2);

    // add_values() works for any class that defines operator+
    std::string s1 {"one "};
    std::string s2 {"two "};

```

```

    std::string s3 {"three"};
    std::string s4 = add_values(s1, s2, s3);
    std::print("s1: \"{}\\" s2: \"{}\\" s3: \"{}\\"", s1, s2, s3);
    std::println(" - s4: \"{}\\"", s4);
}

// abbreviated function template - calculates mean
double calc_mean(auto a, auto b, auto c)
{
    return (a + b + c) / 3.0;
}

void Ch01_01_ex2()
{
    // using calc_mean() - same data types
    int a {12};
    int b {28};
    int c {36};
    double mean1 = calc_mean(a, b, c);
    std::println("a: {} b: {} c: {} mean1: {}", a, b, c, mean1);

    // using calc_mean() - different data types
    float x {201.1f};
    long long y {108};
    unsigned short z {307};
    double mean2 = calc_mean(x, y, z);
    std::println("x: {} y: {} z: {} mean3: {}", x, y, z, mean2);

    // calc_mean() - operator+ must be defined for all argument types
    // auto mean3 = calc_mean(a, b, "thirty"); // compiler error
}

void Ch01_01_ex3()
{
    // using template function add_values() with type Point2D<int>
    Point2D<int> p1 {10, 20};
    Point2D<int> p2 {30, 40};
    Point2D<int> p3 {50, 60};
}

```

```

Point2D<int> p4 = add_values(p1, p2, p3);
std::println("p1: {} p2: {} p3: {} p4: {}", p1, p2, p3, p4);

// using Point2D equality operators
std::println("p1 == p2: {}", p1 == p2);
std::println("p1 != p2: {}", p1 != p2);

// using Point2D accessors & mutators
int x = p1.X() * 10;
int y = p1.Y() * 20;
std::println("x: {}, y: {}", x, y);
p1.X() -= 1;
p1.Y() -= 2;
std::println("p1: {}", p1);

// using Point2D::distance()
std::println("p1.distance(p2): {}", p1.distance());

// using template function add_values() with type Point2D<double>
Point2D<double> p5 {100.0, 200.0};
Point2D<double> p6 {300.0, 400.0};
Point2D<double> p7 {500.0, 600.0};
Point2D<double> p8 = add_values(p5, p6, p7);
std::println("p5: {} p6: {} p7: {} p8: {}", p5, p6, p7, p8);
}

void Ch01_01_ex()
{
    std::println("\n---- Ch01_01_ex1() -----");
    Ch01_01_ex1();

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_01_ex2() -----");
    Ch01_01_ex2();

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_01_ex3() -----");
    Ch01_01_ex3();
}

```

File `Ch01_01_ex.cpp` opens with several `#include` statements. The first statement, `#include <string>`, facilitates the use of class `std::string`. Recall that class `std::string` is an alias for STL class `std::basic_string<char>`. The next statement, `#include "Ch01_01.h"`, incorporates the previously described example-specific header file. The final header file, `"Point2D.h"`, contains the definition of a template class named `Point2D`. More on this shortly.

Following the `#include` statements is the definition of a template function named `add_values()`. This function returns the sum of its three argument values. The statement `template <typename T> T add_values(T a, T b, T c)1` defines `add_values()` as a template function, and `T` is the data type for argument values `a`, `b`, and `c`. The sole statement of `add_values()`, `return a + b + c`, returns the sum of `a`, `b`, and `c` to the caller. The most important detail to understand about template function `add_values()` is that it can be used with any data type that supports operator`+` as you will soon see.

Next in Listing 1-1-3 is a function named `Ch01_01_ex1()`. This function begins with the definition of three integer variables named `a`, `b`, and `c`. Note that `Ch01_01_ex1()` uses uniform initializers instead of assignments to initialize these variables. Recall that C++ uniform initializers are type-safe; the compiler will flag a narrowing conversion as an error instead of a warning. The next executable statement, `int sum1 = add_values(a, b, c)`, calculates `a + b + c` using the previously defined template function. The ensuing statement, `std::println("a: {}, b: {}, c: {}, sum1: {}", a, b, c, sum1)`, prints the results. You'll learn how to use `std::println()` in Chapter 2. For the examples presented in this chapter, the most important thing to note is that each occurrence of `{}` in the supplied text string signifies that the corresponding data value should be displayed using the type's default format.

The next code block in function `Ch01_01_ex1()` utilizes template function `add_values()` to compute the sum of three doubles. As previously mentioned, many other programming languages would require distinct functions to carry out the same summing operation: one for integers and one for floating-point values. The final code block uses `add_values()` to "sum" three objects of type `std::string`. This works since `std::string::operator+` is defined and it performs string concatenation.

¹The keyword `class` can also be used here instead of `typename`.

Immediately following function `Ch01_01_ex1()` in Listing 1-1-3 is another template function definition named `calc_mean()`. Note that the definition of this function differs from `calc_sum()` in that it employs an alternative syntax that uses the keyword `auto`. This style is called an abbreviated function template. During compilation, the C++ compiler will automatically deduce the data types for argument values `a`, `b`, and `c`.

Function `Ch01_01_ex2()` demonstrates the use of `calc_mean()`. The first code block exercises `calc_mean()` using three values of type `int`. The second code block in `Ch01_01_ex2()` uses `calc_mean()` with three different types. This form of usage is acceptable since `operator+` is defined for each of the types and appropriate conversions are available. The final usage example of `calc_mean()` is invalid and commented out since `operator+` is not defined for a numerical and `std::string` types.

Listing 1-1-4 shows the code for a template class named `Point2D`. Near the top of this listing is the definition of a template constraint named `PointCoord2D`. This constraint restricts `PointCoord2D`'s `T` parameter to integral and floating-point types. `PointCoord2D` uses predefined concepts `std::integral` and `std::floating_point`, which are defined in `<concepts>`. You can also create your own custom concepts to limit the types that can be used with a user-defined template class. Using constraints enables the compiler to flag invalid template parameters much sooner; it also facilitates more meaningful error messages. Template concepts and constraints became available with C++20.

Listing 1-1-4. Example Ch01_01 - Point2D.h

```
//-----
// Point2D.h
//-----

#ifndef POINT2D_H_
#define POINT2D_H_
#include <cmath>
#include <concepts>
#include <format>
#include <ostream>
#include <string>

// Point2D coordinate constraint
template <typename T> concept
PointCoord2D = std::integral<T> || std::floating_point<T>;
```

```

template <PointCoord2D T> class Point2D
{
    friend struct std::formatter<Point2D<T>>;

public:
    Point2D() = default;
    Point2D(T x, T y) : m_X {x}, m_Y {y} {};

    // accessors
    T X() const { return m_X; }
    T Y() const { return m_Y; }
    T& X() { return m_X; }
    T& Y() { return m_Y; }

    // operators
    friend bool operator==(const Point2D<T>& p1, const Point2D<T>& p2)
        { return p1.m_X == p2.m_X && p1.m_Y == p2.m_Y; }

    friend bool operator!=(const Point2D<T>& p1, const Point2D<T>& p2)
        { return !(p1 == p2); }

    friend Point2D operator+(const Point2D& p1, const Point2D& p2)
        { return Point2D(p1.m_X + p2.m_X, p1.m_Y + p2.m_Y); }

    friend std::ostream& operator<< (std::ostream& os, const Point2D& p)
    {
        os << p.to_str();
        return os;
    }

    // member functions
    double distance() const
        { return std::hypot(m_X, m_Y); } // distance from (0, 0)

private:
    std::string to_str() const
    {
        std::string s;
        std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "({}, {})", m_X, m_Y);
    }
}

```



```

        return s;
    }

    T m_X {};
    T m_Y {};
};

// class Point2D formatter
template <typename T> struct std::formatter<Point2D<T>> :
    std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& fpc)
        { return fpc.begin(); }

    auto format(const Point2D<T>& point, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{}", point.to_str()); }
};

#endif

```

Class `Point2D` utilizes `PointCoord2D` as a constraint on template parameter `T`. With this constraint in place, any declarations of `Point2D` objects that violate the constraint such as `Point2D<std::string>` are immediately flagged as an error by the compiler. The first statement of class `Point2D`'s definition, `friend struct std::formatter<Point2D<T>>`, is provided for the `Point2D` formatting functions that appear near the end of file `Point2D.h`. These functions handle the requisite operations when `Point2D` objects are formatted using `std::format()` or `std::println()`. You'll learn more about this in Chapter 2. The remaining code in `Point2D` defines the requisite constructors, accessors for the attributes `m_X` and `m_Y`, a few operators, and a member function named `distance()` that calculates the Euclidean distance between points $(0, 0)$ and (m_X, m_Y) .

Function `Ch01_01_ex3()`, shown in Listing 1-1-3, illustrates the use of class `Point2D`. In the first code block, note that `add_values()` is used to sum points `p1`, `p2`, and `p3`. The use of `add_values()` is valid here since class `Point2D` defines operator `+`. The remaining code blocks in function `Ch01_01_ex3()` demonstrate usage of `Point2D`'s operators, accessors, mutators, and distance functions. It also shows an example of `Point2D` using type `double`. Here are the results for source code example `Ch01_01`:

```

----- Results for example Ch01_01 -----

---- Ch01_01_ex1() -----
a: 10 b: 20 c: 30 sum1: 60
d: 100 e: 200 f: 300 sum2: 600
s1: "one " s2: "two " s3: "three" - s4: "one two three"

---- Ch01_01_ex2() -----
a: 12 b: 28 c: 36 mean1: 25.333333333333332
x: 201.1 y: 108 z: 307 mean3: 205.36665852864584

---- Ch01_01_ex3() -----
p1: (10, 20) p2: (30, 40) p3: (50, 60) p4: (90, 120)
p1 == p2: false
p1 != p2: true
x: 100, y: 400
p1: (9, 18)
p1.distance(p2): 20.12461179749811
p5: (100, 200) p6: (300, 400) p7: (500, 600) p8: (900, 1200)

```

Source Code Overview

Before continuing to the next example, a few words about the source code are warranted. Most of source code examples published in this book follow the same design pattern that was used in example Ch01_01. Each source code example utilizes an example-specific header file named ChXX_YY.h, a top-level file named ChXX_YY.cpp that contains main() and a default exception handler, and a file named ChXX_YY_ex.cpp. This last file is the most important since it contains the code that demonstrates STL usage and programming techniques. Going forward, I won't show the listings for files ChXX_YY.h and ChXX_YY.cpp unless they contain code that's necessary to understand the example. If you haven't already done so, now is probably a good time to download the source code. Appendix A contains download instructions along with important C++ compiler details.

If you've been following the evolution of C++, you may be wondering why I used header files in source example Ch01_01 instead of C++ modules (e.g., `import std;`). There are several reasons for this. First, I started writing the source code using compilers

that didn't fully support modules. One of my goals for this book was to develop code that could be successfully compiled using multiple mainstream C++ compilers, including Visual Studio (MSVC), GCC, and Clang. Doing this is often more challenging than one might expect. As I write this, these compilers vary in their support for modules as specified by the ISO C++23 standard.

Another reason is that many companion C++ development tools also do not fully support modules. Modules are a welcome and significant addition to C++, but one can still successfully learn and effectively exploit the C++ STL without using modules. As many others have noted, the transition from header files to modules will be both gradual and methodical.

Containers and Iterators

It is impossible for a programmer to effectively utilize the resources of STL without an understanding of containers and iterators. The next source code example, named Ch01_02, introduces these topics. Listing 1-2 shows the principal source code for example Ch01_02.

Listing 1-2. Example Ch01_02 - Ch01_02_ex.cpp

```
//-----
// Ch01_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <typeinfo>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch01_02.h"

void Ch01_02_ex1()
{
    std::vector<int> x_vals {10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100};

    // access element using operator[]
    for (std::size_t i = 0; i < x_vals.size(); ++i)
        std::print("{} ", x_vals[i]);
    std::println("");
}
```

```

// access elements using at()
for (std::size_t i = 0; i < x_vals.size(); ++i)
    std::print("{} ", x_vals.at(i));
std::println("");

// x_vals[42] = -1          // error, no exception, trouble
// x_vals.at(42) = -1;    // error, throws exception
}

void Ch01_02_ex2()
{
    std::vector<long long> y_vals {10, 20, 30, 40, 50,
        60, 70, 80, 90, 100};

    // print elements of y_vals using iterators
    for (auto iter = y_vals.begin(); iter != y_vals.end(); ++iter)
        std::print("{} ", *iter);
    std::println("");

    // print iterator type
    std::println("\nvector<long long> iterator type:\n{}\n",
        typeid(y_vals.begin()).name());

    // print elements of y_vals in reverse order
    for (auto iter = y_vals.rbegin(); iter != y_vals.rend(); ++iter)
        std::print("{} ", *iter);
    std::println("\n");

    // using std::begin() and std::end()
    for (auto iter = std::begin(y_vals); iter != std::end(y_vals); ++iter)
    {
        *iter *= 5;
        std::print("{} ", *iter);
    }
    std::println("");
}

```

```

void Ch01_02_ex3()
{
    std::vector<std::string> s_vals
        {"adenine", "cytosine", "guanine", "thymine", "uracil"};

    // display s_vals - in order, const iterator
    for (auto iter = s_vals.cbegin(); iter != s_vals.cend(); ++iter)
        std::print("{} ", *iter);
    std::println("");

    // display s_vals, reverse order, const iterator
    for (auto iter = s_vals.crbegin(); iter != s_vals.crend(); ++iter)
        std::print("{} ", *iter);
    std::println("");
}

void Ch01_02_ex()
{
    std::println("\n---- Ch01_02_ex1() -----");
    Ch01_02_ex1();

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_02_ex2() -----");
    Ch01_02_ex2();

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_02_ex3() -----");
    Ch01_02_ex3();
}

```

The first function of Listing 1-2, `Ch01_02_ex1()`, commences with the definition of a `std::vector<int>` named `x_vals`. Class `std::vector` is a sequence container object that supports random access of its elements using either iterators or indices. It is often used when implementing algorithms that require array-like functionality but whose size (or number of elements) is not known until runtime. In the current function, the declaration of `x_vals` includes an initializer list. During program execution, this initialize list is passed to the constructor of `x_vals`, which uses it to initialize a vector of ten elements.

The next code block in `Ch01_02_ex1()` prints the elements of `x_vals` using a conventional for loop and `std::vector::operator[]`. Note that the syntax used here is the same as one would use to access the elements of the C-style array. In this for loop,

`std::vector::size()` returns the number of elements currently stored in `x_vals`. The ensuing code block uses the `std::vector::at()` function to access the elements of `x_vals`. The difference between operator`[]` and `at()` is that the latter throws an exception if the supplied index is invalid.

Function `Ch01_02_ex2()` demonstrates how to access the elements of `std::vector<long long> y_vals` using iterators. The first for loop uses `std::vector::begin()` and `std::vector::end()` to obtain start and end iterators for `y_vals`. Figure 1-1 illustrates the meaning of these iterators in greater detail. Note in this figure that the value returned by `end()` actually points to the “element” that follows the last element of `y_vals`. It is also important to note that `auto` was used as the type for iterator `iter`. This instructs the compiler to automatically deduce the correct type for `iter`. More about this shortly. The `std::print()` statement that’s within the body of the for loop dereferences `iter` using the same syntax as one would use for a native pointer.

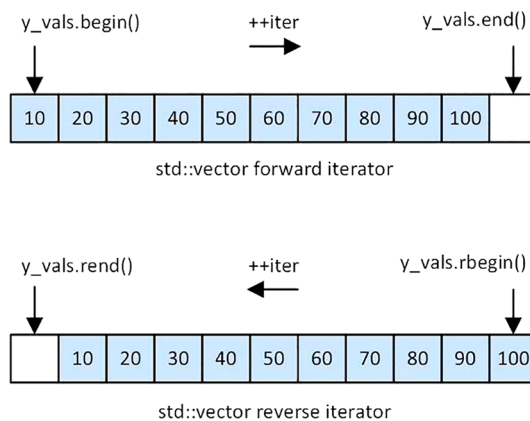


Figure 1-1. Class `std::vector` forward and reverse iterators

You may have noticed that the for loop in `Ch01_02_ex2()` uses prefix operator`++` instead of postfix. The reason for this is that the prefix form is usually faster for iterator incrementing.

The next code block uses `typeid(y_vals.begin()).name()` to display the data type for `y_val`’s iterators. If you scan ahead to the results section for this example, you’ll immediately appreciate why the keyword `auto` was used to declare `iter` within the for loop. It warrants mentioning here that starting with C++20, a program is ill-formed² if it uses operator `typeid` without including `<typeinfo>`.

²A program that is constructed in violation of C++’s syntactical and semantic rules.

The second for loop in `Ch01_02_ex2()` also uses iterators to reference the elements of `y_vals`, but the for loop uses `rbegin()` and `rend()` to reference the elements of `y_vals` in reverse order as shown in Figure 1-1. In the third for loop, `Ch01_02_ex2()` employs global iterator functions `std::begin()` and `std::end()` for iterator initialization and loop termination testing. The global iterator functions are often used in generic programming when the specific container type is unknown. They also facilitate the use of iterators with C-style arrays. Within the third for loop, note that the syntax used to multiply each element of `y_vals` by five is the same syntax that one would use with a native pointer.

Function `Ch01_02_ex3()` demonstrates using iterators with an instance of `std::vector<std::string>`. Note in this example the use of functions `cbegin()`, `cend()`, `crbegin()`, and `crend()`, which return `const` iterators. Like a `const` pointer, the compiler will flag any attempt to modify a container element using a `const` iterator. Here are the results for example `Ch01_02`:

```

----- Results for example Ch01_02 -----

---- Ch01_02_ex1() -----
10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100
10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100

---- Ch01_02_ex2() -----
10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100

vector<long long> iterator type:
class std::_Vector_iterator<class std::_Vector_val<struct std::_Simple_
types<__int64>>>

100 90 80 70 60 50 40 30 20 10

50 100 150 200 250 300 350 400 450 500

---- Ch01_02_ex3() -----
adenine cytosine guanine thymine uracil
uracil thymine guanine cytosine adenine

```

The string returned by `typeid(y_vals.begin()).name()` varies depending on the C++ compiler. The results section for example `Ch01_02` shows the output from a 64-bit executable compiled using MSVC.

Strings

C++ defines strings that one can use like an intrinsic data type even though they're implemented using templates. As mentioned earlier, the base template class for C++ strings is `std::basic_string`. However, most programs don't use this class directly; they use one of the following alias classes: `std::string`, `std::wstring`, `std::u8string`, `std::u16string`, or `std::u32string`. These classes utilize `char`, `wchar_t`, `char8_t`, `char16_t`, and `char32_t`, respectively, for the string's character type. In this book, the source code examples mostly use `std::string`. Any comments or explanations that you read about `std::string` also apply to the other string types unless otherwise mentioned.

Listing 1-3 shows the source code for example Ch01_03. The first function in this listing, `Ch01_03_ex1()`, demonstrates string concatenation using `std::string::operator+`. You can also use `std::string::operator+=` to append one string to another. Class `std::string` includes numerous overloads that facilitate operations using a single character or C-style string. This facilitates the coding of concatenating expressions that encompass a mixture of object types such as `std::string`, `char`, and `const char*`. Function `Ch01_03_ex1()` also illustrates the use of `std::string`'s relational operators.

Listing 1-3. Example Ch01_03 – Ch01_03_ex.cpp

```
//-----
// Ch01_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <string>
#include <string_view>
#include <version>
#include "Ch01_03.h"

void Ch01_03_ex1(const std::string& s1, const std::string& s2,
    char c, const char* s)
{
    std::println("s1: '{}'", s1);
    std::println("s2: '{}'", s2);
    std::println("c: '{}'", c);
    std::println("s: '{}'", s);
}
```



```

// string concatenation
std::string s3 = s1 + ' ' + s2;
std::string s4 = s3 + c + s;
std::println("\ns3: '{}'", s3);
std::println("s4: '{}'", s4);

// using std::string relational operators
std::println("\ns1 < s2: {}", s1 < s2);
std::println("s1 <= s2: {}", s1 <= s2);
std::println("s1 == s2: {}", s1 == s2);
std::println("s1 != s2: {}", s1 != s2);
std::println("s1 > s2: {}", s1 > s2);
std::println("s1 >= s2: {}", s1 >= s2);
}

void Ch01_03_ex2(const std::string& s1, const std::string s_find)
{
    std::println("s1: '{}'", s1);
    std::println("substring: {}", s_find);

    // find substring
    std::size_t pos = s1.find(s_find);

    if (pos == std::string::npos)
        std::println("not found");
    else
        std::println("found at position {}", pos);
}

void Ch01_03_ex3(const std::string& s1, const std::string& s_old,
    const std::string& s_new)
{
    std::println("\ns1: '{}'", s1);
    std::string s2 {s1};

    // using find and replace
    auto n_find = s2.find(s_old);

    if (n_find != std::string::npos)

```

```

    {
        std::string s3 {s2};
        s3.replace(n_find, s_old.size(), s_new);
        std::println("s3: '{}", s3);
    }
    else
        std::println("substring '{}' not found", s_old);
}

void Ch01_03_ex4(const std::string& s1, const std::string& s_find,
    const std::string& s_insert)
{
    std::println("\ns1: '{}'", s1);
    std::string s2 {s1};

    // using find, insert
    auto n_find = s2.find(s_find);

    if (n_find != std::string::npos)
    {
        s2.insert(n_find + s_find.size(), s_insert);
        std::println("s2: '{}", s2);
    }
    else
        std::println("substring '{}' not found", s_find);
}

void Ch01_03_ex5(const std::string& s1, const std::string_view& s_test)
{
    // using starts_with, ends_with
    bool b_sw = s1.starts_with(s_test);
    bool b_ew = s1.ends_with(s_test);

    std::println("\n'{}' starts with string '{}' - {}", s1, s_test, b_sw);
    std::println("'{}' ends with string '{}' - {}", s1, s_test, b_ew);

    // using contains
#ifdef __cpp_lib_string_contains

```

```

    bool b_c = s1.contains(s_test);
    std::println("{}' contains string '{}' - {}", s1, s_test, b_c);
#else
    std::println("Ch01_03_ex5() uses string::contains() - requires C++23");
#endif
}

void Ch01_03_ex()
{
    std::println("\n----- Ch01_03_ex1() -----");
    const std::string s1 {"Hello"};
    const std::string s2 {"World"};
    const char c {'='};
    const char* s = "Hallo Welt";
    Ch01_03_ex1(s1, s2, c, s);

    std::println("\n----- Ch01_03_ex2() -----");
    const std::string s3 {"one two three four five "
                          "six seven eight nine ten"};
    Ch01_03_ex2(s3, "eight");
    Ch01_03_ex2(s3, "eleven");

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_03_ex3() -----");
    const std::string s4 {"red green blue cyan magenta "
                          "yellow orange brown purple gray"};
    Ch01_03_ex3(s4, "blue", "BLUE");
    Ch01_03_ex3(s4, "cyan", "TAN");
    Ch01_03_ex3(s4, "magenta", "***MAGENTA**");
    Ch01_03_ex3(s4, "indigo", "INDIGO");

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_03_ex4() -----");
    Ch01_03_ex4(s3, "four", " (4)");
    Ch01_03_ex4(s3, "ten", " (10)");
    Ch01_03_ex4(s3, "eleven", " (11)");

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_03_ex5() -----");
    const std::string s5 {"apple banana orange raspberry pear"};
    const std::string_view sv1 {"apple"};

```

```

const std::string_view sv2 {"pear"};
const std::string_view sv3 {"raspberry"};
Ch01_03_ex5(s5, sv1);
Ch01_03_ex5(s5, sv2);
Ch01_03_ex5(s5, sv3);
}

```

Function `Ch01_03_ex2()` uses `std::string::find()` to search for the first occurrence of a substring within another string. If the specified substring is found, `find()` returns the index (position) of the substring's first character; otherwise, it returns `std::string::npos`. Function `Ch01_03_ex3()` also exercises `find()` to locate a substring. If a substring match is found, it uses `std::string::replace()` to overwrite the found substring with a new string. Modifying member function `std::string::insert()` inserts a new string within another string as shown in `Ch01_03_ex4()`.

The final exposition function of Listing 1-3, `Ch01_03_ex5()`, demonstrates how to use a few `std::string` member functions new to C++20/23. Before examining these functions, note that function `Ch01_03_ex5()` includes an argument of type `std::string_view`. A `std::string_view` object possesses a constant pointer and a length as shown in Figure 1-2. It is often used instead of `std::string` when working with constant strings since it avoids `std::string`'s higher constructor costs. The drawback of using `std::string_view` is that it supports a smaller set of operations than `std::string`.

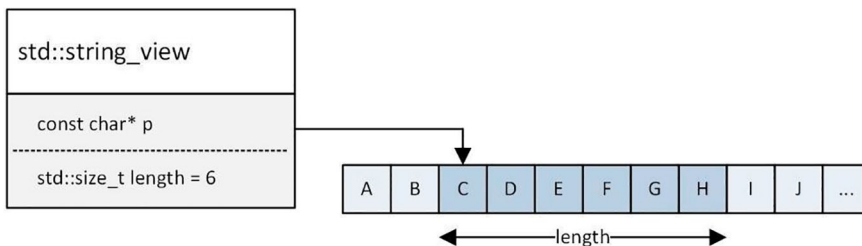


Figure 1-2. Class `std::string_view`

The first code block in `Ch01_03_ex5()` uses `std::string::starts_with()` and `std::string::ends_with()` to determine if string `s1` starts with or ends with a substring that matches `s_test`. Note that these C++20 member functions return a value of type `bool`. The next code block exercises `std::string::contains()` (C++23) whose `bool` return value signifies the existence of substring `s_test` anywhere within string `s1`. This code block also demonstrates a technique that you can use to determine if the

C++ implementation supports a specific feature. In the current example, preprocessor symbol `__cpp_lib_string_contains` is defined if the C++ implementation supports `std::string::contains()`. The C++20 header file `<version>` defines over 200 feature detection macros that you can use to perform compile-time detection of specific features. Here are the results for example `Ch01_03`:

```

----- Results for example Ch01_03 -----

----- Ch01_03_ex1() -----
s1: 'Hello'
s2: 'World'
c: '='
s: 'Hallo Welt'

s3: 'Hello World'
s4: 'Hello World=Hallo Welt'

s1 < s2: true
s1 <= s2: true
s1 == s2: false
s1 != s2: true
s1 > s2: false
s1 >= s2: false

----- Ch01_03_ex2() -----
s1: 'one two three four five six seven eight nine ten
substring: eight
found at position 34
s1: 'one two three four five six seven eight nine ten
substring: eleven
not found

----- Ch01_03_ex3() -----
s1: 'red green blue cyan magenta yellow orange brown purple gray'
s3: 'red green BLUE cyan magenta yellow orange brown purple gray'

s1: 'red green blue cyan magenta yellow orange brown purple gray'
s3: 'red green blue TAN magenta yellow orange brown purple gray'

```

```

s1: 'red green blue cyan magenta yellow orange brown purple gray'
s3: 'red green blue cyan **MAGENTA** yellow orange brown purple gray'

s1: 'red green blue cyan magenta yellow orange brown purple gray'
substring 'indigo' not found

---- Ch01_03_ex4() ----

s1: 'one two three four five six seven eight nine ten'
s2: 'one two three four (4) five six seven eight nine ten'

s1: 'one two three four five six seven eight nine ten'
s2: 'one two three four five six seven eight nine ten (10)'

s1: 'one two three four five six seven eight nine ten'
substring 'eleven' not found

---- Ch01_03_ex5() ----

'apple banana orange raspberry pear' starts with string 'apple' - true
'apple banana orange raspberry pear' ends with string 'apple' - false
'apple banana orange raspberry pear' contains string 'apple' - true

'apple banana orange raspberry pear' starts with string 'pear' - false
'apple banana orange raspberry pear' ends with string 'pear' - true
'apple banana orange raspberry pear' contains string 'pear' - true

'apple banana orange raspberry pear' starts with string 'raspberry' - false
'apple banana orange raspberry pear' ends with string 'raspberry' - false
'apple banana orange raspberry pear' contains string 'raspberry' - true

```

Class `std::string` supports numerous other operations besides the ones demonstrated in this example. Appendix B contains a list of references that you can consult for additional information regarding `std::string` and `std::string_view`.

User-Defined Classes

Having the means to define custom data types is an essential feature of most programming languages. In C++ this is frequently accomplished using the `class` construct. Listing 1-4-1 shows the definition of a class named `Image`, which exemplifies

the typical design pattern of a user-defined class. The source code example of this section, Ch01_04, utilizes class `Image` to highlight important issues you need to be aware of when creating a user-defined class. Before continuing, it should be noted that class `Image` is incomplete, but adequate for the instructive purposes of this section.

Listing 1-4-1. Example Ch01_04 - `Image.h`

```
//-----
// Image.h
//-----

#ifndef IMAGE_H_
#define IMAGE_H_
#include <stdint>
#include <format>
#include <ostream>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Common.h"

class Image
{
    using pixel_t = uint8_t;                // alias for image
                                           // pixel type

    friend struct std::formatter<Image>;

public:
    Image() = default;                    // default constructor

    Image(std::size_t height, std::size_t width); // parameterized
                                                // constructor

    Image(const Image& im);                // copy constructor
    Image(Image&& im) noexcept;            // move constructor

    virtual ~Image();                     // destructor

    Image& operator=(const Image& im);     // copy assignment
    Image& operator=(Image&& im) noexcept; // move assignment

```

```

// accessors
std::size_t height() const {return m_Height;}
std::size_t width() const {return m_Width;}
std::size_t num_pixels() const {return m_Height * m_Width;}

// relational operators
friend bool operator==(const Image& im1, const Image& im2);
friend bool operator!=(const Image& im1, const Image& im2);

// other operators
friend std::ostream& operator<<(std::ostream& os, const Image& im);

private:
// private member functions
void reset();
std::string to_str() const;

// attributes
std::size_t m_Height {};
std::size_t m_Width {};
std::vector<pixel_t> m_PixelBuff {};
};

// class Image formatter
template <> struct std::formatter<Image> : std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& fpc)
        { return fpc.begin(); }

    auto format(const Image& im, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{:s}", im.to_str()); }
};

#endif

```

The declaration of non-template class `Image` begins with the definition of an alias named `pixel_t` that defines the integer type. An alias is used here since it simplifies experimentation using different numerical types – simply change `uint8_t` to another numerical type and recompile. The public section of `Image` opens with the statement

`Image()` = `default` that instructs the compiler to generate a default constructor. A compiler-generated default constructor will initialize all class attributes that include an in-class member initializer. The private attributes for `Image` (located near the bottom of Listing 1-4-1) are `m_Height`, `m_Width`, and `m_PixelBuff`. Note that all three attributes are declared using initializer `{}`. This means that the compiler-generated default constructor for `Image` will set both `m_Height` and `m_Width` to zero, and `std::vector<pixel_t> m_PixelBuff` will be initialized with zero elements.

The next set of statements declares the standard set of constructors, including a parameterized constructor, copy constructor, and move constructor. Class `Image` defines its destructor as a virtual to facilitate its use as a base class. The copy and move assignment operators are declared next.

The remaining public declarations of class `Image` are simple accessors, relational operators, and an overload for `operator<<`. The private section of class `Image` opens with the declarations of several member functions. This is followed by a section that contains the previously described attributes.

Listing 1-4-2 shows the function definitions for class `Image`. Near the top of this listing is the parameterized constructor that expects two argument values of type `std::size_t`: `height` and `width`. Following initialization of `m_Height` and `m_Width`, the constructor exercises `m_PixelBuff.resize(m_Height * m_Width)` to properly size the pixel buffer. Function `std::vector::resize()` also initializes each pixel element in `m_PixelBuff` to zero. When the size of a `std::vector` is increased, `resize()` appends default-constructed elements to the end of the vector. For `m_PixelBuff`, the default-constructed elements are `pixel_t {}` or zero.

Listing 1-4-2. Example Ch01_04 - `Image.cpp`

```
//-----
// Image.cpp
//-----

#include <cstdint>
#include <format>
#include <ostream>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Image.h"
```

```

#define IMAGE_DTOR_PRINTLN      // comment out to disable dtor
std::println

// parameterized constructor
Image::Image(std::size_t height, std::size_t width) : m_Height {height},
    m_Width {width}
{
    m_PixelBuff.resize(m_Height * m_Width);
}

// copy constructor
Image::Image(const Image& im) : m_Height {im.m_Height}, m_Width
{im.m_Width},
    m_PixelBuff {im.m_PixelBuff}
{
}

// move constructor
Image::Image(Image&& im) noexcept : m_Height {im.m_Height}, m_Width
{im.m_Width},
    m_PixelBuff {std::move(im.m_PixelBuff)}
{
    im.reset();
}

Image::~Image()
{
#ifdef IMAGE_DTOR_PRINTLN
    // std::println used for demonstration purposes
    std::println("Image::~Image() {}", *this);
#endif
}

// copy assignment
Image& Image::operator=(const Image& im)
{
    m_Height = im.m_Height;
    m_Width = im.m_Width;
}

```

CHAPTER 1 C++ REVIEW

```
    m_PixelBuff = im.m_PixelBuff;
    return *this;
}

// move assignment
Image& Image::operator=(Image&& im) noexcept
{
    m_Height = im.m_Height;
    m_Width = im.m_Width;
    m_PixelBuff = std::move(im.m_PixelBuff);
    im.reset();
    return *this;
}

// relational operators
bool operator==(const Image& im1, const Image& im2)
{
    if (im1.m_Height != im2.m_Height || im1.m_Width != im2.m_Width)
        return false;

    return im1.m_PixelBuff == im2.m_PixelBuff;
}

bool operator!=(const Image& im1, const Image& im2)
{
    return !operator==(im1, im2);
}

// other operators
std::ostream& operator<<(std::ostream& os, const Image& im)
{
    os << im.to_str();
    return os;
}
```

```

void Image::reset()
{
    m_Height = 0;
    m_Width = 0;
}

std::string Image::to_str() const
{
    std::string s {};
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "[{:5d} ", m_Height);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:5d} ", m_Width);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:8d} ", m_Height * m_Width);

    constexpr int pb_w {(sizeof(void*) <= 4) ? 8 : 16};
    std::uintptr_t pb = reinterpret_cast<std::uintptr_t>
(m_PixelBuff.data());
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "0x{:0>{}X}]", pb, pb_w);
    return s;
}

```

A brief digression. You may be wondering why class `Image` utilizes `std::vector` for its pixel buffer instead of allocating the buffer using operator `new` (e.g., `m_PixelBuffer = new pixel_t[m_Height * m_Width]`). The use of the former simplifies the coding of `Image`'s copy and move constructors along with the corresponding assignment operators. These functions can utilize functions provided by `std::vector` to perform pixel buffer copies and size adjustments when necessary. More importantly, the use of class `std::vector` ensures that the allocated pixel buffer is automatically deleted when `~Image()` is called. This significantly reduces the risk of a memory leak. Modern C++ discourages direct use of operators `new` and `delete` for dynamic memory allocations since such use is error prone. Using an STL container object is usually a much better option. For design cases where explicit use of `new` and `delete` is necessary, you can use a smart pointer such as `std::unique_ptr<>`. Using `std::unique_ptr<pixel_t>` for the pixel buffer in class `Image` would eliminate the previously described automatic zeroing of elements, which adversely affects performance. The downside is code that's a bit more complex. You'll learn more about smart pointers in Chapter 6.

The next item in Listing 1-4-2 is Image's copy constructor, which uses the attributes and data from source image `im` to construct a new image. Note that the initializer `m_PixelBuff {im.m_PixelBuff}` utilizes `std::vector`'s copy constructor to copy initialize `m_PixelBuff`.

Class Image's move constructor handles the transfer of ownership from one Image object to another. The constructor's `Image&& im` argument references a temporary (rvalue) object that is the source for the move. Note the use of `m_PixelBuff {std::move(im.m_PixelBuffer)}`, which moves the `im`'s pixel buffer. The move constructor also calls `reset()` to reset the source image to its default state. Following execution of Image's move constructor, object `im` can be safely destroyed when its destructor is called (a move constructor should always leave the source object in state that's suitable for use by a destructor).

Assignments are handled by Image's copy assignment (`Image& Image::operator=(const Image& im)`) and move assignment (`Image& Image::operator=(Image&& im)`) operators. The operations performed by both assignment operators mimic the corresponding constructors. Class Image also defines relational operators `operator==` and `operator!=`. The statement `im1.m_PixelBuff == im2.m_PixelBuff` performs an element-by-element comparison of the pixel values in the two vectors using `std::vector::operator==`.

The final item of note in class Image is the private member function `to_str()`. This function is called to format a string for display purposes (e.g., when one uses `std::cout << im` or `std::println("im: {}", im)`).

Listing 1-4-3 shows the source code for file `Ch01_04_ex.cpp`, which contains two functions that exercise class Image. The first function, `Ch01_04_ex1()`, commences with the declaration Images `im0`, `im1`, and `im2`. The ensuing `std::println()` statements display each image's attributes on `std::cout`. If you scan ahead to the results section, note that the formatted output also includes the address of the pixel buffer.

Listing 1-4-3. Example Ch01_04 - Ch01_04_ex.cpp

```

//-----
// Ch01_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <utility>
#include "Ch01_04.h"
#include "Image.h"

void Ch01_04_ex1()
{
    // create image objects
    Image im0 {};
    std::println("im0: {} - after ctor", im0);
    Image im1 {100, 200};
    std::println("im1: {} - after ctor", im1);
    Image im2 {300, 400};
    std::println("im2: {} - after ctor", im2);

    // using std::move
    Image im3 = std::move(im1);
    std::println("im3: {} - after move ctor", im3);

#pragma warning(disable:26800) // disable MSVC warning (use of
                               moved object)
    std::println("im1: {} - after move (bad!)", im1);
#pragma warning(default:26800)
}

void Ch01_04_ex2()
{
    // create image objects
    Image im0 {1000, 2000};
    std::println("im0: {} - after ctor", im0);
    Image im1 {im0};
    std::println("im1: {} - after ctor", im1);
}

```

```

Image im2 {3000, 4000};
std::println("im2: {} - after ctor", im2);

// using relational operators
std::println("im1 == im2 (expect false): {}", im1 == im2);
std::println("im1 != im2 (expect true): {}", im1 != im2);

// using operator=
Image im3 {5000, 6000};
std::println("im3: {} - after ctor", im3);

im1 = im3;
std::println("im1: {} - after assignment", im1);
std::println("im1 == im3 (expect true): {}", im1 == im3);
std::println("im1 != im3 (expect false): {}", im1 != im3);
}

void Ch01_04_ex()
{
    std::println("\n---- Ch01_04_ex1() -----");
    Ch01_04_ex1();

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_04_ex2() -----");
    Ch01_04_ex2();
}

```

The next code block in `Ch01_04_ex1()` demonstrates an explicit `Image` move operation using `std::move()`. Note in the results section that the attributes of `im1` following the move are all set to zero including `m_PixelBuffer`'s data pointer. It warrants mentioning here that using an object after it has been moved is a potentially dangerous operation since the moved object is often in an unknown state (for class `Image`, the state of a moved `Image` is the same as that of a default initialized `Image`). This is the reason for the `#pragma` statements that surround the final call to `std::println()` – the Visual C+ compiler (MSVC) displays a warning message if a moved object is used. The second function in Listing 1-4-3, `Ch01_04_ex2()`, exercises additional operators of class `Image`.

The purpose of this example was to review the basics of a user-defined class and classes in general. When creating a user-defined class, you need to decide if the compiler-supplied default constructors and assignment operators are acceptable or if

custom versions need to be coded. For class `Image`, the defaults could have been used, but explicit versions were coded for demonstration purposes. Here are the results for example `Ch01_04`:

```

---- Ch01_04_ex1() ----
im0: [  0  0      0 0x0000000000000000] - after ctor
im1: [ 100 200  20000 0x000001FC05559FE0] - after ctor
im2: [ 300 400 120000 0x000001FC0555EE40] - after ctor
im3: [ 100 200  20000 0x000001FC05559FE0] - after move ctor
im1: [  0  0      0 0x0000000000000000] - after move (bad!)
Image::~Image() [ 100 200  20000 0x000001FC05559FE0]
Image::~Image() [ 300 400 120000 0x000001FC0555EE40]
Image::~Image() [  0  0      0 0x0000000000000000]
Image::~Image() [  0  0      0 0x0000000000000000]

---- Ch01_04_ex2() ----
im0: [ 1000 2000 2000000 0x000001FC057C1060] - after ctor
im1: [ 1000 2000 2000000 0x000001FC059BE060] - after ctor
im2: [ 3000 4000 12000000 0x000001FC05BB6060] - after ctor
im1 == im2 (expect false): false
im1 != im2 (expect true): true
im3: [ 5000 6000 30000000 0x000001FC06737060] - after ctor
im1: [ 5000 6000 30000000 0x000001FC083E4060] - after assignment
im1 == im3 (expect true): true
im1 != im3 (expect false): false
Image::~Image() [ 5000 6000 30000000 0x000001FC06737060]
Image::~Image() [ 3000 4000 12000000 0x000001FC05BB6060]
Image::~Image() [ 5000 6000 30000000 0x000001FC083E4060]
Image::~Image() [ 1000 2000 2000000 0x000001FC057C1060]

```

User-Defined Template Classes

User-defined classes can also be implemented using C++ templates. Recall from earlier discussions that a template is a parameterized data type. During template instantiation, the compiler substitutes the specified template parameters to generate parameter-specific code. For example, when using `std::basic_string<class CharT>`³ (`std::string`), the compiler substitutes type `char` for template parameter `CharT` and generates code (constructors, operations, member functions, etc.) for a string based on type `char`. If the same program utilizes `std::basic_string<class CharT>` with a `wchar_t` (`std::wstring`), the compiler generates a second set of constructors, operators, etc. In other words, each distinct template instantiation results in a distinct set of code.

Listing 1-5-1 shows another `Image` class that's implemented using templates.

Listing 1-5-1. Example Ch01_05 - ImageT.cpp

```
//-----
// ImageT.h
//-----

#ifndef IMAGE_T_H_
#define IMAGE_T_H_
#include <concepts>
#include <cstdint>
#include <format>
#include <ostream>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Common.h"

#define IMAGE_T_DTOR_PRINTLN    // comment out to disable dtor
std::println
```

³Class `std::basic_string<>` includes other template parameters besides `CharT`, but these are not shown.

```

template <typename T> requires std::unsigned_integral<T>
class Image
{
    friend struct std::formatter<Image<T>>;

public:
    // default constructor
    Image() = default;

    // parameterized constructor
    Image(std::size_t height, std::size_t width) : m_Height {height},
        m_Width {width}
    {
        m_PixelBuff.resize(m_Height * m_Width);
    }

    // copy constructor
    Image(const Image& im) : m_Height {im.m_Height}, m_Width {im.m_Width},
        m_PixelBuff {im.m_PixelBuff}
    {
    }

    // move constructor
    Image(Image&& im) noexcept : m_Height {im.m_Height},
        m_Width {im.m_Width},
        m_PixelBuff {std::move(im.m_PixelBuff)}
    {
        im.reset();
    }

    // destructor
    virtual ~Image()
    {
#ifdef IMAGE_T_DTOR_PRINTLN
        // std::println used for demonstration purposes
        std::println("Image::~Image() {}", *this);
#endif
    }
}

```

```

// copy assignment
Image& operator=(const Image& im)
{
    m_Height = im.m_Height;
    m_Width = im.m_Width;
    m_PixelBuff = im.m_PixelBuff;
    return *this;
}

// move assignment
Image& operator=(Image&& im) noexcept
{
    m_Height = im.m_Height;
    m_Width = im.m_Width;
    m_PixelBuff = std::move(im.m_PixelBuff);
    im.reset();
    return *this;
}

// accessors
std::size_t height() const {return m_Height;}
std::size_t width() const {return m_Width;}
std::size_t num_pixels() const {return m_Height * m_Width;}

// relational operators
friend bool operator==(const Image& im1, const Image& im2)
{
    if (im1.m_Height != im2.m_Height || im1.m_Width != im2.m_Width)
        return false;

    return im1.m_PixelBuff == im2.m_PixelBuff;
}

friend bool operator!=(const Image& im1, const Image& im2)
{
    return !operator==(im1, im2);
}

```

```

// other operators
friend std::ostream& operator<<(std::ostream& os, const Image& im)
{
    os << im.to_str();
    return os;
}

private:
void reset()
{
    m_Height = 0;
    m_Width = 0;
}

std::string to_str() const
{
    std::string s {};
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "[{:5d} ", m_Height);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:5d} ", m_Width);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:8d} ", m_Height *
        m_Width);

    constexpr int pb_w {(sizeof(void*) <= 4) ? 8 : 16};
    std::uintptr_t pb = reinterpret_cast<std::uintptr_t>
        (m_PixelBuff.data());
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "0x{:0>{}}X]", pb, pb_w);
    return s;
}

// attributes
std::size_t m_Height {};
std::size_t m_Width {};
std::vector<T> m_PixelBuff {};
};

// class Image<T> formatter
template <typename T> struct std::formatter<Image<T>> :
    std::formatter<std::string>

```

```

{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& fpc)
        { return fpc.begin(); }

    auto format(const Image<T>& im, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{}", im.to_str()); }
};

#endif

```

The design pattern for class `Image<>` mirrors its non-template counterpart from the previous example. The definition of this class begins with the statement `template <typename T> requires std::unsigned_integral<T> class Image`. The keyword `template` signifies the start of a template definition. Keyword `typename` denotes a template parameter. In this example, `Image<>` requires a single parameter named `T` that signifies the pixel data type. The `requires` clause that follows constrains parameter `T` to an unsigned integral type. If one wanted `Image<>` to also support floating-point values for pixel type parameter `T`, a `requires` clause of `std::unsigned_integral<T> || std::floating_point<T>` would suffice.

The most obvious difference between classes `Image<>` and `Image` is that the former requires its constructors, operators, etc., to be defined within the class. The actual code for each constructor and operator is essentially the same; the size attributes are also identical. Note that `Image<>` uses type `std::vector<T>` for `m_PixelBuffer` instead of `std::vector<pixel_t>`.

Listing 1-5-2 shows the source code for example `Ch01_05`. This example includes several functions that demonstrate the use of class `Image<>`. The first two example functions, `Ch01_05_ex1()` and `Ch01_05_ex2()`, illustrate the use of `Image<uint8_t>` (`uint8_t` is an unsigned 8-bit integer that's defined in `<stdint>`). The third demonstration function, `Ch01_05_ex3()`, spotlights the use of `Image<uint16_t>` and `Image<uint32_t>`. The lines commented out near the end of `Ch01_05_ex3()` demonstrate errors flagged by the compiler due to `Image<>`'s type constraint. The results for example `Ch01_05` are not shown since they're basically the same as the results for example `Ch01_04`.

Listing 1-5-2. Example Ch01_05 - Ch01_05_ex.cpp

```
//-----
// Ch01_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <cstdint>
#include <utility>
#include "Ch01_05.h"
#include "ImageT.h"

void Ch01_05_ex1()
{
    // create image objects
    Image<uint8_t> im0 {};
    std::println("im0: {} - after ctor", im0);
    Image<uint8_t> im1 {100, 200};
    std::println("im1: {} - after ctor", im1);
    Image<uint8_t> im2 {300, 400};
    std::println("im2: {} - after ctor", im2);

    // using std::move
    Image<uint8_t> im3 = std::move(im1);
    std::println("im3: {} - after move ctor", im3);

#pragma warning(disable:26800) // disable MSVC warning (use of
                               moved object)
    std::println("im1: {} - after move (bad!)", im1);
#pragma warning(default:26800)
}

void Ch01_05_ex2()
{
    // create image objects
    Image<uint8_t> im0 {1000, 2000};
    std::println("im0: {} - after ctor", im0);
    Image<uint8_t> im1 {im0};
    std::println("im1: {} - after ctor", im1);
}
```

```

Image<uint8_t> im2 {3000, 4000};
std::println("im2: {} - after ctor", im2);

// using relational operators
std::println("im1 == im2 (expect false): {}", im1 == im2);
std::println("im1 != im2 (expect true): {}", im1 != im2);

// using operator=
Image<uint8_t> im3 {5000, 6000};
std::println("im3: {} - after ctor", im3);

im1 = im3;
std::println("im1: {} - after assignment", im1);
std::println("im1 == im3 (expect true): {}", im1 == im3);
std::println("im1 != im3 (expect false): {}", im1 != im3);
}

void Ch01_05_ex3()
{
    // create image objects (uint16_t)
    Image<uint16_t> im0 {1000, 2000};
    std::println("im0: {} - after ctor", im0);

    Image<uint16_t> im1 {3840, 2160};
    std::println("im1: {} - after ctor", im1);

    // using operator=
    im0 = im1;
    std::println("im0: {} - after assignment", im0);
    std::println("im0 == im1 (expect true): {}", im0 == im1);
    std::println("im0 != im1 (expect false): {}", im0 != im1);

    // create image objects (uint32_t)
    Image<uint32_t> im2 {3840, 2160};
    std::println("im2: {} - after ctor", im2);
    Image<uint32_t> im3 {1920, 1080};
    std::println("im3: {} - after ctor", im3);
}

```

```

// using operator=
Image<uint32_t> im4 {im3};
std::println("im4: {} - after ctor", im4);
std::println("im4 == im2 (expect false): {}", im4 == im2);
std::println("im4 == im3 (expect true): {}", im4 == im3);

// Image<int16_t> im5;      // compiler error - constraints not satisfied
// Image<std::string> im5; // compiler error - constraints not satisfied
}

void Ch01_05_ex()
{
    std::println("\n---- Ch01_05_ex1() -----");
    Ch01_05_ex1();

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_05_ex2() -----");
    Ch01_05_ex2();

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_05_ex3() -----");
    Ch01_05_ex3();
}

```

Lambda Expressions

Lambda expressions facilitate the definition of unnamed (anonymous) functions and named function objects, which can be stored for later use or passed as data to another function. Many C++ STL algorithms utilize lambda expressions to either modify or augment their behaviors. For example, `operator<` is the default binary compare operator for `std::sort()`. This STL algorithm sorts the elements of a container in ascending order. A program can also pass a lambda expression to `std::sort()` to alter its default use of `operator<` (e.g., `operator>` or a custom binary operator).

Figure 1-3 illustrates the principal elements⁴ of a lambda expression. The lambda expression's capture list specifies which variables from the expression's enclosing scope are usable within the body. The parameter list specifies types and names for the argument values just like a regular function. The specifier section accepts optional

⁴Some lesser-used optional elements are not shown to improve readability.

keywords that affect constness or mutability. The lambda expression's optional trailing return type follows; this defaults to `auto` if it's not explicitly specified. Finally, the body section contains the actual code. Figure 1-3 also shows a lambda expression with an explicit template parameter list (C++20). This type of lambda expression accepts a template parameter list and an optional `requires` clause, just like a regular template.

Lambda expression

```
[capture-list] (parameter-list) specifiers -> return-type { body }
```

Lambda expression with explicit template parameters

```
[capture-list] <template-parameters> requires (parameter-list) specifiers -> return-type { body }
```

specifiers: `constexpr`, `constexpr`, `mutable`, `static`

Figure 1-3. Elements of a lambda expression

Listing 1-6 shows the C++ code for example Ch01_06. This example illustrates how to define and use typical lambda expressions.

Listing 1-6. Example Ch01_06 - Ch01_06_ex.cpp

```
//-----
// Ch01_06_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <cmath>
#include <functional>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch01_06.h"

namespace
{
    std::vector<int> s_ValuesInt
    {
        1, 4, 7, 9, 12, 13, 15, 22, 27, 33, 38, 44,
        51, 58, 63, 68, 71, 77, 82, 87, 93, 95, 98, 99
    };

    std::vector<double> s_ValuesDouble
```

```

    {
        10.0, 20.0, 30.0, 40.0, 50.0, 60.0, 70.0, 80.0
    };
}

void Ch01_06_ex1()
{
    std::vector<int> vec1 {s_ValuesInt};

    // lambda expression
    auto is_even = [](int x) { return (x % 2) == 0; };

    // using is_even
    int sum_even {};
    for (int x : vec1)
    {
        if (is_even(x))
            sum_even += x;
    }

    std::println("sum_even: {}", sum_even);
}

int sum_if(const std::vector<int>& vec, const std::function<bool(int)>&
predicate)
{
    int sum {};
    for (int x : vec)
    {
        if (predicate(x))
            sum += x;
    }

    return sum;
}

```

```

void Ch01_06_ex2()
{
    std::vector<int> vec1 {s_ValuesInt};

    // passing a lambda expression to another function
    auto is_even = [](int x) { return (x % 2) == 0; };
    int sum_even = sum_if(vec1, is_even);

    auto is_odd = [](int x) { return (x % 2) != 0; };
    int sum_odd = sum_if(vec1, is_odd);

    std::println("sum_even: {}, sum_odd: {}", sum_even, sum_odd);
}

void Ch01_06_ex3()
{
    double cap_val {2.0};
    std::vector<double> vec1 {s_ValuesDouble};

    // using a captured (by value) variable
    auto calc1 = [cap_val] (double x) { return std::sqrt(x) + cap_val; };

    for (double x : vec1)
    {
        double y = calc1(x);
        std::println("x: {:.2f}, y: {:.4f}", x, y);
    }
}

void Ch01_06_ex4()
{
    double cap_val {1.0};
    std::vector<double> vec1 {s_ValuesDouble};

    // using a captured (by reference) variable
    auto calc1 = [&cap_val] (double x) -> double
        { double y = std::sqrt(x + cap_val); cap_val *= 2.0; return y; };

    std::println("cap_val (before range for loop): {:.2f}", cap_val);
}

```

```

for (double x : vec1)
{
    double y = calc1(x);
    std::println("x: {:.2f}, y: {:.4f}", x, y);
}

std::println("cap_val (after range for loop): {:.2f}", cap_val);
}

void Ch01_06_ex5()
{
    std::vector<double> vec1 {s_ValuesDouble};

    // using a local captured variable (requires mutable)
    auto calc1 = [local_val = 1.0] (double x) mutable -> double
        { double y = std::sqrt(x + local_val); local_val *= 2.0;
          return y; };

    for (double x : vec1)
    {
        double y = calc1(x);
        std::println("x: {:.2f}, y: {:.4f}", x, y);
    }
}

void Ch01_06_ex()
{
    std::println("\n---- Ch01_06_ex1() -----");
    Ch01_06_ex1();

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_06_ex2() -----");
    Ch01_06_ex2();

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_06_ex3() -----");
    Ch01_06_ex3();

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_06_ex4() -----");
    Ch01_06_ex4();
}

```

```

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_06_ex5() -----");
    Ch01_06_ex5();
}

```

Listing 1-6 opens with an anonymous namespace that defines two `std::vector`s for later use. Using an anonymous namespace here limits the scope of the enclosed vectors to the current file. Function `Ch01_06_ex1()` opens with the declaration of `std::vector<int> vec1`. Note that this declaration uses `s_ValuesInt` to initialize the elements of `vec1`. The statement `auto is_even = [](int x) { return (x % 2) == 0; }` defines a lambda expression named `is_even`. This expression tests `x` and returns true if it's an even number; otherwise, false is returned. Keyword `auto` is generally for a lambda expression's type since actual lambda type names are lengthy. The ensuing range for loop sums the even elements of `vec1` using `is_even` as a test predicate.

The next item in Listing 1-6 is the definition of a function named `sum_if()`. This function utilizes function object predicate to selectively sum elements of `vec`. Note that function object predicate requires a single value of type `int` (i.e., it's a unary predicate) and returns a `bool`. Function `Ch01_06_ex2()` exercises `sum_if()` using two different lambda expressions, `is_even` and `is_odd`, to calculate `sum_even` and `sum_odd`. The design pattern demonstrated here is representative of the many STL algorithms that accept lambda expressions as arguments.

Function `Ch01_06_ex3()` defines a lambda expression that utilizes a capture variable. The lambda expression `calc1` uses variable `capval` to perform an arbitrary calculation. During execution, `capval` is passed by value to `calc1`, which means that the compiler needs to create a copy of `capval`. Since `capval` is an integer, the copy overhead is essentially nothing. However, for types where the copy costs are higher, it's usually better for a lambda expression to capture a variable by reference. In function `Ch01_06_ex4()`, note that the definition of `calc1` contains `&capval` in its capture list, which captures the variable by reference. Also, note the use of an explicit lambda expression trailing return type. An explicit return type is not necessary for this example but included for demonstration purposes.

The reason `calc1` captures `capval` by reference in `Ch01_06_ex4()` is that it wants to modify the value. Following the calculation of `y = std::sqrt(x + capval)`, the lambda expression executes `capval *= 2.0`, which modifies `capval` (another arbitrary calculation). If you scan ahead to the results section, you'll notice that the value of `capval` is different before and after the range for loop.

The final function in Listing 1-6, `Ch01_06_ex5()`, demonstrates the capture of a lambda expression local variable. In this example, `local_var` is initialized to one in the capture list, and its scope is localized to the lambda expression. When a lambda expression captures a local variable, it must also use the mutable specifier. Here are the results for example `Ch01_06`:

```
----- Results for example Ch01_06 -----  
  
---- Ch01_06_ex1() -----  
sum_even: 426  
  
---- Ch01_06_ex2() -----  
sum_even: 426, sum_odd: 741  
  
---- Ch01_06_ex3() -----  
x: 10.00, y: 5.1623  
x: 20.00, y: 6.4721  
x: 30.00, y: 7.4772  
x: 40.00, y: 8.3246  
x: 50.00, y: 9.0711  
x: 60.00, y: 9.7460  
x: 70.00, y: 10.3666  
x: 80.00, y: 10.9443  
  
---- Ch01_06_ex4() -----  
cap_val (before range for loop): 1.00  
x: 10.00, y: 3.3166  
x: 20.00, y: 4.6904  
x: 30.00, y: 5.8310  
x: 40.00, y: 6.9282  
x: 50.00, y: 8.1240  
x: 60.00, y: 9.5917  
x: 70.00, y: 11.5758  
x: 80.00, y: 14.4222  
cap_val (after range for loop): 256.00
```

```

---- Ch01_06_ex5() -----
x: 10.00, y: 3.3166
x: 20.00, y: 4.6904
x: 30.00, y: 5.8310
x: 40.00, y: 6.9282
x: 50.00, y: 8.1240
x: 60.00, y: 9.5917
x: 70.00, y: 11.5758
x: 80.00, y: 14.4222

```

Lambda expressions are permitted to use [=] and [&] as capture lists. The former captures by value all variables in the enclosing scope that it uses. Keep in mind that capturing variables by values involves copy operations, which might be time-consuming. Using a capture list of [&] captures all used variables from the enclosing scope by reference. You can also use a combination of capture by value and reference (e.g., [=, &x], [&, x]). The best design pattern for capture lists is to explicitly list the variables to capture, either by value or reference. This makes the intent clear. You'll see more examples of lambda expressions in later chapters.

Three-Way Comparison Operator

C++20 introduced a new three-way comparison operator `<=>`, which is often called a “spaceship” operator since it evidently resembles the character-based spaceships of yesteryear’s ASCII terminal games. This operator returns a class result that can be compared to zero to determine if `a < b`, `a == b`, or `a > b` is true. The three-way comparison operator reduces the amount of coding needed for a class to implement the six standard relational operators.

Listing 1-7-1 shows the source code for example Ch01_07. The first function in this listing, `Ch01_07_ex1()`, demonstrates how to explicitly use `operator<=>` to compare two integer values. Near the top of Listing 1-7-1 is an `#include <compare>` statement. This file should be included with any code that utilizes `operator<=>`. Inside the for loop, the expression `a_vals[i] <=> b_vals[i]` returns an ordering class whose value can be compared *only to zero*. This is different than the standard relational operators, which

return a value of type `bool`. Note that the `std::println()` statements don't print `cmp_ab`, but print `cmp_ab > 0`, `cmp_ab == 0`, and `cmp_ab < 0` (all values of type `bool`). Function `Ch01_07_ex2()` highlights the use of operator `<=>` with floating-point values.

Listing 1-7-1. Example `Ch01_07 - Ch01_07_ex.cpp`

```
//-----
// Ch01_07_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <compare>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch01_07.h"
#include "Line.h"

void Ch01_07_ex1()
{
    std::vector<int> a_vals {5, -8, 37};
    std::vector<int> b_vals {7, -15, 37};

    for (std::size_t i = 0; i < a_vals.size(); ++i)
    {
        auto cmp_ab = a_vals[i] <=> b_vals[i];

        std::println("\ntest case #{:d}: a = {:d}, b = {:d}",
            i, a_vals[i], b_vals[i]);

        std::println("cmp_ab < 0 | {:s}", cmp_ab < 0);
        std::println("cmp_ab == 0 | {:s}", cmp_ab == 0);
        std::println("cmp_ab > 0 | {:s}", cmp_ab > 0);
    }
}

void Ch01_07_ex2()
{
    std::vector<double> a_vals {5.0, -8.0, 37.0};
    std::vector<double> b_vals {7.0, -15.0, 37.0};
```



```

    for (std::size_t i = 0; i < a_vals.size(); ++i)
    {
        auto cmp_ab = a_vals[i] <=> b_vals[i];

        std::println("\ntest case #{:d}: a = {:.1f}, b = {:.1f}",
            i, a_vals[i], b_vals[i]);

        std::println("cmp_ab < 0 | {:s}", cmp_ab < 0);
        std::println("cmp_ab == 0 | {:s}", cmp_ab == 0);
        std::println("cmp_ab > 0 | {:s}", cmp_ab > 0);
    }
}

void Ch01_07_ex3()
{
    std::vector<Line<int>> lines1
    {
        Line<int> {0, 0, 3, 4}, Line<int> {90, 100, 125, 130},
        Line<int> {8, 41, 17, 44}
    };

    std::vector<Line<int>> lines2
    {
        Line<int> {0, 0, 6, 8}, Line<int> {100, 100, 110, 115},
        Line<int> {8, 41, 17, 44}
    };

    for (std::size_t i = 0; i < lines1.size(); ++i)
    {
        auto& line1 = lines1[i];
        auto& line2 = lines2[i];

        std::println("\nline1: {} \nline2: {}", line1, line2);
        std::println("line1 == line2): {:s}", line1 == line2);
        std::println("line1 != line2): {:s}", line1 != line2);
        std::println("line1 < line2): {:s}", line1 < line2);
        std::println("line1 <= line2): {:s}", line1 <= line2);
    }
}

```

```

        std::println("line1 > line2): {:s}", line1 > line2);
        std::println("line1 >= line2): {:s}", line1 >= line2);
    }
}

void Ch01_07_ex()
{
    std::println("\n---- Ch01_07_ex1() -----");
    Ch01_07_ex1();

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_07_ex2() -----");
    Ch01_07_ex2();

    std::println("\n---- Ch01_07_ex3() -----");
    Ch01_07_ex3();
}

```

The ordering class that's returned by operator<=> varies depending on the types being compared. Table 1-1 lists the various ordering classes.

Table 1-1. Ordering Class Return Values for Three-Way Compare Operator

Compare Class	Return Type	Condition
strong_ordering	strong_ordering::equal	a == b (same as equivalent)
	strong_ordering::equivalent	a == b (same as equal)
	strong_ordering::less	a < b
	strong_ordering::greater	a > b
partial_ordering	partial_ordering::equivalent	a == b (may not be equal)
	partial_ordering::less	a < b
	partial_ordering::greater	a > b
	partial_ordering::unordered	not comparable

(continued)

Table 1-1. (continued)

Compare Class	Return Type	Condition
weak_ordering	weak_ordering::equivalent	a == b (may not be equal)
	weak_ordering::less	a < b
	weak_ordering::greater	a > b

When comparing two integer types (char, int, long, etc.) or pointers, `operator<=>` returns a `std::strong_ordering` result. This means that exactly one of the conditions shown in Table 1-1 is true. Note that result types `std::strong_ordering::equal` and `strong_ordering::equivalent` are the same.

For floating-point types, `operator<=>` returns one of the `std::partial_ordering` results. A `std::partial_ordering` differs from a `std::strong_ordering` in two ways. First, values `a` and `b` can be equivalent but not equal. For example, `-0.0` and `+0.0` are equivalent but not equal.⁵ The other difference is the unordered result. This result signifies that neither `a` nor `b` are comparable. The floating-point NaN (Not a Number) is an example of a value that's not comparable.

Type `std::weak_ordering` is the least stringent of the three ordering types and employed exclusively in user-defined classes; a user-defined class can also return a result of `std::strong_ordering` or `std::partial_ordering`. The archetypal example of a weakly ordered result is the case-insensitive compare of two text strings.

The final function of Listing 1-7-1, named `Ch01_07_ex3()`, contains code that exercises the six standard relational operators of template class `Line`. Listing 1-7-2 shows the code for `Line`. This class realizes the six standard binary relational operators by defining binary versions of `operator<=>` and `operator==`.

⁵The IEEE 754 standard for floating-point arithmetic defines two distinct values for zero: `-0.0` and `+0.0`.

Listing 1-7-2. Example Ch01_07 - Line.h

```

//-----
// Line.h
//-----

#ifndef LINE_H_
#define LINE_H_
#include <cmath>
#include <compare>
#include <concepts>
#include <format>
#include <limits>
#include <ostream>
#include <string>

// Line coordinate constraint
template <typename T> concept
LineCoord = std::integral<T> || std::floating_point<T>;

// simple line class
template <LineCoord T> class Line
{
    friend struct std::formatter<Line<T>>;

public:
    Line() = default;
    Line(T x0, T y0, T x1, T y1) :
        m_X0{x0}, m_Y0{y0}, m_X1{x1}, m_Y1{y1} {};

    // accessors
    T X0() const { return m_X0; }
    T Y0() const { return m_Y0; }
    T X1() const { return m_X1; }
    T Y1() const { return m_Y1; }

```

```

T& X0() { return m_X0; }
T& Y0() { return m_Y0; }
T& X1() { return m_X1; }
T& Y1() { return m_Y1; }

friend std::ostream& operator<<(std::ostream& os, const Line<T>& line)
{
    os << line.to_str();
    return os;
}

double length() const
{
    double dx = static_cast<double>(m_X1) - m_X0;
    double dy = static_cast<double>(m_Y1) - m_Y0;
    return std::hypot(dx, dy);
}

double slope(double epsilon = 1.0e-15) const
{
    double dx = static_cast<double>(m_X1) - m_X0;
    double dy = static_cast<double>(m_Y1) - m_Y0;

    return std::fabs(dx) > epsilon ?
        dy / dx : std::numeric_limits<double>::quiet_NaN();
}

private:
std::string to_str() const
{
    std::string s{};
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "[({}, {}), (, m_X0, m_Y0);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{}, {})) | ", m_X1, m_Y1);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "({:.4f}), ", length());
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:.4f}]]", slope());

    return s;
}

```

```

    // attributes
    T m_X0 {};
    T m_Y0 {};
    T m_X1 {};
    T m_Y1 {};
};

// non-member relational operators
template <LineCoord T>
auto operator<=>(const Line<T>& line1, const Line<T>& line2)
{
    return line1.length() <=> line2.length();
}

template <LineCoord T>
bool operator==(const Line<T>& line1, const Line<T>& line2)
{
    return line1.length() == line2.length();
}

// class Line formatter
template <typename T> struct std::formatter<Line<T>> :
std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& fpc)
        { return fpc.begin(); }

    auto format(Line<T> line, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{}", line.to_str()); }
};

#endif

```

Before examining the code for `operator<=>` and `operator==`, a few general comments about class `Line` are required. In Listing 1-7-2, note that class `Line` includes attributes `m_X0`, `m_Y0`, `m_X1`, and `m_Y1`. These attributes define the start (`m_X0`, `m_Y0`) and end (`m_X1`, `m_Y1`) points of a line on a 2D plane. Class `Line` defines a member function named `length()`, which calculates the line's length using its coordinate points. There's also a member function named `slope()`.

Near the bottom of Listing 1-7-2 is the definition of `operator<=>` for `Line`. This function utilizes the three-way comparison operator to compare the lengths of `line1` and `line2`. The return type for `operator<=>(const Line<T>& line1, const Line<T>& line2)` is one of the `std::partial_ordering` values shown in Table 1-1 since `length()` returns a `double`. Function `operator==(const Line<T>& line1, const Line<T>& line2)` compares the lengths of `line1` and `line2` for equivalence and returns a `bool`. Note that if a user-defined class defines `operator<=>`, it must also define `operator==`. Having an explicit `operator==` also provides optimization opportunities for classes with multiple members since `operator==` usually returns an equal/equivalent result faster than `operator<=>`. By providing definitions for `operator<=>` and `operator==`, the compiler can generate code that implements the six standard binary relational operators for class `Line`. Here are the results for example `Ch01_07`:

```
----- Results for example Ch01_07 -----
```

```
---- Ch01_07_ex1() -----
```

```
test case #0: a = 5, b = 7
```

```
cmp_ab < 0 | true
```

```
cmp_ab == 0 | false
```

```
cmp_ab > 0 | false
```

```
test case #1: a = -8, b = -15
```

```
cmp_ab < 0 | false
```

```
cmp_ab == 0 | false
```

```
cmp_ab > 0 | true
```

```
test case #2: a = 37, b = 37
```

```
cmp_ab < 0 | false
```

```
cmp_ab == 0 | true
```

```
cmp_ab > 0 | false
```

```
---- Ch01_07_ex2() -----
```

```
test case #0: a = 5.0, b = 7.0
```

```
cmp_ab < 0 | true
```

```
cmp_ab == 0 | false
```

```
cmp_ab > 0 | false
```

test case #1: a = -8.0, b = -15.0

cmp_ab < 0 | false

cmp_ab == 0 | false

cmp_ab > 0 | true

test case #2: a = 37.0, b = 37.0

cmp_ab < 0 | false

cmp_ab == 0 | true

cmp_ab > 0 | false

---- Ch01_07_ex3() -----

line1: [(0, 0, 3, 4) | (5.0000, 1.3333)]

line2: [(0, 0, 6, 8) | (10.0000, 1.3333)]

line1 == line2): false

line1 != line2): true

line1 < line2): true

line1 <= line2): true

line1 > line2): false

line1 >= line2): false

line1: [(90, 100, 125, 130) | (46.0977, 0.8571)]

line2: [(100, 100, 110, 115) | (18.0278, 1.5000)]

line1 == line2): false

line1 != line2): true

line1 < line2): false

line1 <= line2): false

line1 > line2): true

line1 >= line2): true

line1: [(8, 41, 17, 44) | (9.4868, 0.3333)]

line2: [(8, 41, 17, 44) | (9.4868, 0.3333)]

line1 == line2): true

line1 != line2): false

line1 < line2): false

line1 <= line2): true

line1 > line2): false

line1 >= line2): true

Exceptions

In C++, exceptions provide a means of transferring program control from one execution point in a thread to a previously passed execution point. Exceptions and return codes are often used to report and recover from error conditions.

Listing 1-8 shows the code for a simple program that utilizes exceptions to process invalid user input. In this listing, note the try and catch blocks. A try block encompasses the normal code that requires execution. In the current example, the try block reads a string from the keyboard, converts the string to floating-point using `std::stod()`, and calculates a square root. Prior to calculating the square root, the code tests `x < 0.0`; if true, an exception of type `std::domain_error` is thrown. Class `std::domain_error` is one of STL's predefined standard exception classes. When throwing an exception, a program can utilize an STL-defined exception class or derive a custom exception class from an existing one.

Listing 1-8. Example Ch01_08 - Ch01_08_ex.cpp

```
//-----
// Ch01_08_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <cmath>
#include <iostream>
#include <string>
#include <stdexcept>
#include "Ch01_08.h"

void Ch01_08_ex1()
{
    const char* de_text =
        "std::sqrt() domain error, try again";

    while (true)
    {
        std::print("\nEnter a positive number, ctrl-z to exit: ");
```

```

try
{
    std::string x_str {};
    std::getline(std::cin, x_str);

    if (!std::cin.good())
    {
        if (!std::cin.eof())
            std::println("std::cin error");
        return;
    }

    double x = std::stod(x_str);

    if (x < 0.0)
        throw std::domain_error(de_text);

    double x_sqrt = std::sqrt(x);
    std::println("x: {:f} x_sqrt: {:.4f}", x, x_sqrt);
}

// catch std::domain_error from above
catch (const std::domain_error& ex)
{
    std::println("{} ", ex.what());
}

// catch std::invalid_argument or std::out_of_range
// (thrown by std::stod())
catch (const std::invalid_argument& ex)
{
    std::println("{} ", ex.what());
}

catch (const std::out_of_range& ex)
{
    std::println("{} ", ex.what());
}

```

```

        // catch all other exceptions
        catch (...)
        {
            std::println("unknown exception has occurred");
        }
    }
}

void Ch01_08_ex()
{
    std::println("\n----- Ch01_08_ex1() -----");
    Ch01_08_ex1();
}

```

After exception `std::domain_error` is thrown, program control is transferred to the `catch (const std::domain_error& ex)` block. Function `ex.what()` returns a C-style pointer to the text message that was passed via `std::domain_error`'s constructor when the exception was thrown. The next two catch blocks in `Ch01_08_ex1()` process exceptions thrown by `std::stod()`. Note that each catch block catches the thrown exception by reference. The final `catch (...)` block provides a default for handling any other exceptions. Here are the results for example `Ch01_08`:

```

----- Ch01_08_ex1() -----

Enter a positive number, ctrl-z to exit: 100
x: 100.000000 x_sqrt: 10.0000

Enter a positive number, ctrl-z to exit: 200
x: 200.000000 x_sqrt: 14.1421

Enter a positive number, ctrl-z to exit: -300
std::sqrt() domain error, try again

Enter a positive number, ctrl-z to exit: hello
invalid stod argument

Enter a positive number, ctrl-z to exit: 400
x: 400.000000 x_sqrt: 20.0000

Enter a positive number, ctrl-z to exit:

```

When creating a user-defined class, it is sometimes unclear whether it should employ return codes or exceptions. One common guideline is to employ return codes to recover from errors that are likely to occur and use exceptions for rare or unrecoverable errors. The principal advantage of using exceptions over return codes is that the former guarantees any applicable destructors get executed while program control is transferred to the appropriate catch block. With return codes, a program usually needs to add extra code to ensure applicable destructor execution – a task that is often error prone and a producer of obfuscated code. It is important to note that a user-defined class should never throw an exception in a destructor. It is also imperative for any C++ program to develop a strategy for handling exceptions since they're used by many standard library classes and functions. Appendix B contains additional resources that you can consult for more information regarding the particulars of C++ exceptions.

Summary

Here are the key learning points:

- The STL is the foundation of modern C++ programming. It is virtually impossible to write any meaningful C++ program without employing some of its components.
- A template is a parameterized data type that facilitates the development of generic functions, algorithms, and classes. The C++ compiler instantiates code for each distinct template type.
- When developing a user-defined class, ensure that the following essential operations are defined – either explicitly coded or implicitly defined using the compiler-supplied default – or deleted:
 - Default constructor
 - Parameterized constructor(s)
 - Copy and move constructors
 - Copy and move assignments
 - Destructor

- Lambda expressions are used to create anonymous functions. They can also be used to override the default behavior of many STL algorithms.
- A class can use the three-way comparison operator to generate a complete set of relational operators.
- A class can employ exceptions to report an error or atypical condition that requires special handling by its user. The primary advantage of exceptions vs. return codes is that the former ensures any applicable destructors are automatically called. Many STL classes and algorithms use exceptions to report errors.

CHAPTER 2

Formatted I/O

This chapter explains how to perform formatted I/O operations using a variety of techniques, including

- Formatted output using `std::printf()`
- Formatted output using streams
- Formatted output using `std::format()`
- Formatted output using `std::print()`
- Formatted file I/O using streams

You are encouraged to peruse the sections that explain how to use `std::format()` and `std::print()` since they cover important details regarding these C++20/23 functions. For all other topics, you can either skim or skip the sections that you already understand.

Formatted Output Using `std::printf()`

C++ provides a variety of functions, classes, and operators for formatted I/O. Listing 2-1 shows the source code for example Ch02_01, which illustrates the use of function `std::printf()`. Despite its C pedigree, many C++ programs still utilize `std::printf()` (or one of its sibling functions) to generate simple formatted output. Having a basic understanding of how `std::printf()` works is often essential when maintaining a legacy code base.

Listing 2-1. Example Ch02_01 – Ch02_01_ex.cpp

```
//-----  
// Ch02_01_ex.cpp  
//-----
```

```

#include <cstdio>
#include <iostream>
#include <iomanip>
#include <format>
#include <numbers>
#include <string>
#include "Ch02_01.h"

```

```

void Ch02_01_ex1(int a, unsigned long long b, double c, const
std::string& d)

```

```

{
    std::printf("Values using printf()\n");
    std::printf("a: %d\n", a);
    std::printf("b: 0x%016llx\n", b);
    std::printf("c: %-10.8lf\n", c);
    std::printf("d: %40s\n", d.c_str());
}

```

```

void Ch02_01_ex2(int a, unsigned long long b, double c, const
std::string& d)

```

```

{
    std::cout << "Values using ostream operator<<\n";
    std::cout << "a: " << a << '\n';
    std::cout << std::setfill('0')
        << "b: 0x" << std::hex << std::setw(16) << b << '\n';
    std::cout << std::setfill(' ')
        << "c: " << std::fixed << std::setprecision(8)
        << std::left << std::setw(10) << c << '\n';
    std::cout << "d: " << std::right << std::setw(40) << d << '\n';
}

```

```

void Ch02_01_ex3(int a, unsigned long long b, double c, const
std::string& d)

```

```

{
    std::cout << "Values using std::format()\n";
    std::cout << std::format("a: {}\n", a);
    std::cout << std::format("b: 0x{:016X}\n", b);
}

```

```

    std::cout << std::format("c: {:<10.8f}\n", c);
    std::cout << std::format("d: {:>40s}\n", d);
}

void Ch02_01_ex4(int a, unsigned long long b, double c, const
std::string& d)
{
    std::println("Values using std::println()");
    std::println("a: {}", a);
    std::println("b: 0x{:016X}", b);
    std::println("c: {:<10.8f}", c);
    std::println("d: {:>40s}", d);
}

void Ch02_01_ex()
{
    constexpr int a {100};
    constexpr unsigned long long b {0x4444'3333'2222'1111};
    constexpr double c {std::numbers::pi};
    std::string d {"Four score and seven years ago, ..."};

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_01_ex1() -----");
    Ch02_01_ex1(a, b, c, d);

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_01_ex2() -----");
    Ch02_01_ex2(a, b, c, d);

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_01_ex3() -----");
    Ch02_01_ex3(a, b, c, d);

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_01_ex4() -----");
    Ch02_01_ex4(a, b, c, d);
}

```

Listing 2-1 opens with a function named `Ch02_01_ex1()` that demonstrates the use of `std::printf()`. This variadic function writes text to the predefined output stream `stdout`. The first argument of `std::printf()` is a C-style null-terminated format string that can include optional conversion specifiers. These specifiers direct the formatting of the argument values that trail the format string.

Within the format string, the % symbol denotes the start of a conversion specifier. For example, the first call to `std::printf()` in `Ch02_01_ex1()` uses the conversion specifier `%d` to format argument value `int a` as a signed decimal integer. The next `std::printf()` call employs conversion specifier `%016lX` to format unsigned `long long b` as a hexadecimal integer using a minimum field width of 16 characters with leading zeros. A typical format specifier employs the following pattern:

```
%[modifier][width][.precision][length]spec-char
```

Valid symbols for the modifier field include - (left justify), + (always print sign), # (use alternate form), or 0 (use zero instead of spaces for left padding). The width field specifies the minimum size of the field in characters. The precision field denotes the number of digits to print after the decimal point (floating-point values), minimum number of digits to print (integers), or maximum number of characters to print when using `%s`. The length field is a modifier for the `spec-char`. Common length modifiers include `h` (short `int`), `l` (long `int`), and `ll` (long long `int`). Table 2-1 shows supported values for the specification character `spec-char`.

Table 2-1. *Specification Characters for `std::printf()`*

Character	Output Type
d, i	Signed decimal integer
u	Unsigned decimal integer
o	Unsigned octal integer
x, X	Unsigned hexadecimal integer, lowercase (<code>%x</code>), uppercase (<code>%X</code>)
f, F	Floating-point, decimal, lowercase (<code>%f</code>), uppercase (<code>%F</code>)
e, E	Floating-point, scientific notation, lowercase (<code>%e</code>), uppercase (<code>%E</code>)
g, G	Floating-point, shorter of <code>%f</code> (<code>%F</code>) or <code>%e</code> (<code>%E</code>)
a, A	Floating-point hexadecimal notation, lowercase (<code>%a</code>), uppercase (<code>%A</code>)
c	Character
s	C-style null-terminated character string
%	Percent symbol

Before continuing, I should note that `std::printf()` supports additional forms besides those discussed in this section. You're likely to encounter uses of `std::printf()` or one of its sibling functions (`std::fprintf()`, `std::sprintf()`, etc.) in legacy code. However, modern C++ discourages the use of these functions for several reasons. First, they are only useful for formatting fundamental types, such as `char`, `int`, `float`, etc. Second, `std::printf()` doesn't support overloading or any other mechanism for formatting a user-defined class. Third, and perhaps most important, they are not type-safe. Using `std::printf()` on a memory-constrained system (e.g., Raspberry Pi Pico) might be justifiable. For nearly all other use cases, you are better off using a different method for formatted output.

The remaining functions in Listing 2-1 are modern alternatives that generate the same formatted output as `Ch02_01_ex1()`. These are shown for comparison purposes. Modern alternatives include formatted output using output streams and overloads of `operator<<`, `std::format()` (C++20), and `std::println()` (C++23). You'll learn more about these later in this chapter. Here are the results for example `Ch02_01`:

```

----- Results for example Ch02_01 -----

----- Ch02_01_ex1() -----
Values using std::printf()
a: 100
b: 0x4444333322221111
c: 3.14159265
d:     Four score and seven years ago, ...

----- Ch02_01_ex2() -----
Values using ostream operator<<
a: 100
b: 0x4444333322221111
c: 3.14159265
d:     Four score and seven years ago, ...

----- Ch02_01_ex3() -----
Values using std::format()
a: 100
b: 0x4444333322221111
c: 3.14159265

```

```

d:      Four score and seven years ago, ...

----- Ch02_01_ex4() -----
Values using std::println()
a: 100
b: 0x4444333322221111
c: 3.14159265
d:      Four score and seven years ago, ...

```

Formatted Output Using Streams

In C++, a stream is an object that performs data reads (input stream) or data writes (output stream). Input and output streams are often linked to an underlying file or string. Like template class `std::basic_string<>` that you learned about in Chapter 1, stream template classes are parameterized using a character type such as `char` or `wchar_t`.

Figure 2-1 shows the template class hierarchy for I/O streams. From a programming perspective, the most important classes are those situated toward the bottom of the figure. The lighter-colored rectangles denote file stream objects, while the darker-colored ones signify string streams. For each leaf class, STL defines an alias using types `char` and `wchar_t`. For example, `std::ifstream` and `std::wifstream` are aliases for `std::basic_ifstream<char>` and `std::basic_ifstream<wchar_t>`, respectively. These are file input streams. Similarly, output streams `std::ostringstream` and `std::wostringstream` are aliases for `std::basic_ostringstream<char>` and `std::basic_ostringstream<wchar_t>`.

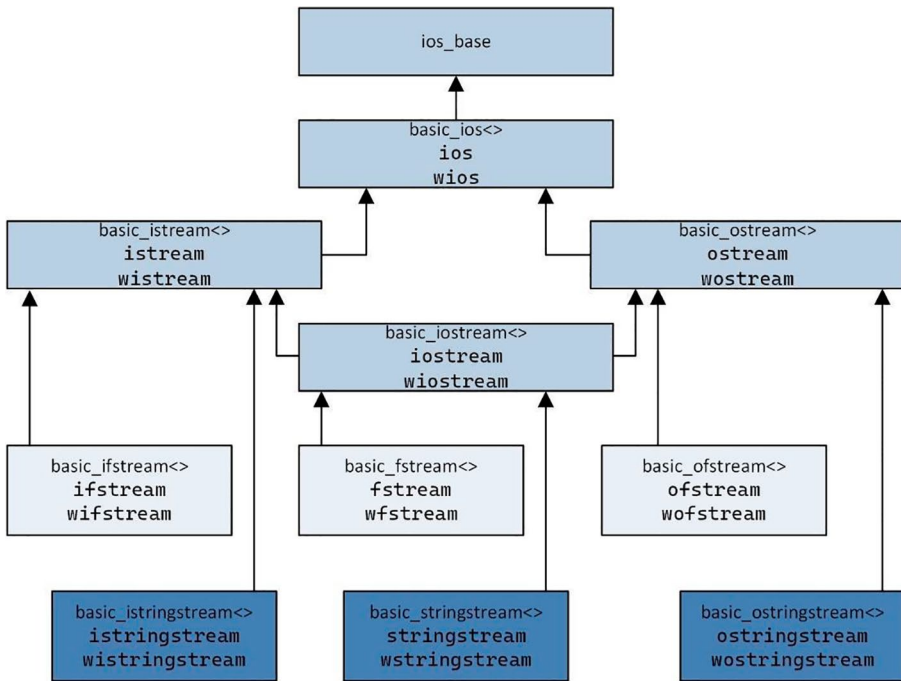


Figure 2-1. Class hierarchy for input and output streams

Table 2-2 shows the global stream objects for standard I/O operations. Standard I/O is normally performed using a terminal or a GUI application that emulates a terminal. This means that unless redirection is in effect, a program can acquire keyboard input by reading `std::cin` and write text to `std::cout`, `std::cerr`, or `std::clog`. The corresponding wide versions can also be used. The I/O streams shown in Table 2-2 are typically used in command-line programs and may not be available in GUI applications. GUI applications normally use platform-specific APIs for keyboard input and display output.

Table 2-2. *Global I/O Streams*

I/O Stream	Class	C Stream	Description
<code>std::cerr</code>	<code>std::ostream</code>	<code>stderr</code>	Standard error stream
<code>std::wcerr</code>	<code>std::wostream</code>		
<code>std::cin</code>	<code>std::istream</code>	<code>stdin</code>	Standard input stream
<code>std::wcin</code>	<code>std::wistream</code>		
<code>std::clog</code>	<code>std::ostream</code>	<code>stderr</code>	Standard log stream
<code>std::wclog</code>	<code>std::wostream</code>		
<code>std::cout</code>	<code>std::ostream</code>	<code>stdout</code>	Standard output stream
<code>std::wcout</code>	<code>std::wostream</code>		

The primary difference between `std::cerr` and `std::clog` (and the corresponding wide stream objects) is that output to the former is not buffered (default operation) while output to the latter is. A C++ program can read data from an input stream `std::ifstream` or `std::istringstream` using an overload of `operator>>` or one of the member functions provided by `std::istream`. Similarly, a program can write data to an output stream `std::ofstream` or `std::ostringstream` using an overload of `operator<<` or one of the member functions provided by `std::ostream`. The same operators and inheritance relationships also apply to the corresponding `wchar_t` overloads.

The base I/O stream class `std::ios_base` maintains a series of format and state flags that a program can use to specify formatting options or detect error conditions. A program can employ manipulators or member functions to modify the formatting flags maintained by `std::ios_base`.

At first glance, the C++ I/O stream libraries may seem a little bewildering. The best way to learn C++ I/O streams is by example, and you'll examine several examples in this and subsequent chapters. These examples demonstrate basic I/O stream operations that you need to understand to effectively exploit STL classes and algorithms. It should be noted that the examples and associated discussions do not explicate the entire C++ I/O stream library. Appendix B contains a list of references that you can consult for additional information regarding advanced I/O stream use.

Source code example Ch02_02 demonstrates formatted writes using output streams. Listing 2-2-1 shows the first function for this example.

Listing 2-2-1. Example Ch02_02 - Ch02_02_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch02_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <bitset>
#include <fstream>
#include <iostream>
#include <iomanip>
#include <numbers>
#include <ostream>
#include <string>
#include "Ch02_02.h"
#include "Line.h"
#include "MF.h"

void Ch02_02_ex1()
{
    constexpr int a {100};
    constexpr long long b {-300};

    // bool output
    std::cout << "a == 100: ";
    std::cout << (a == 100);
    std::cout << '\n';
    std::cout << "a == 100: " << std::boolalpha << (a == 100) << '\n';

    // decimal output
    std::cout << "a: " << a << '\n';
    std::cout << "b: " << b << '\n';

    // hex output
    std::cout << std::hex << std::showbase;
    std::cout << "a: " << a << '\n';
    std::cout << "b: " << b << '\n';

    // hex output using uppercase and fill character
    constexpr int w = (sizeof(void*) <= 4) ? 8 : 16;

```

```

std::uintptr_t a_addr = reinterpret_cast<uintptr_t>(&a);
std::cout << std::noshowbase << std::uppercase << std::setfill('0');
std::cout << "\na_addr: 0X" << std::setw(w) << a_addr << '\n';

// hex output using lower case and same fill char
std::cout << std::nouppercase;
std::cout << "a_addr: 0x" << std::setw(w) << a_addr << '\n';

// binary output
std::bitset<sizeof(uintptr_t) * 8> a_addr_bin(a_addr);
std::cout << "a_addr: 0b" << a_addr_bin << '\n';

// reset std::cout to decimal
std::cout << std::dec;
}

```

The first executable statement of `Ch02_02_ex1()`, `std::cout << "a == 100: "`, uses `operator<<` to write a C-style text string to `std::cout`. More specifically, this expression calls `std::ostream& operator<<(std::ostream&, const char*)` to write a null-terminated string to global `std::ostream` object `std::cout`. Header file `<ostream>` defines `operator<<` overloads for all fundamental C++ types (e.g., `char`, `int`, `long`, `float`, etc.). A user-defined class can also define its own overloads for `operator<<` as you'll soon see. The next statement, `std::cout << (a == 100)`, writes the result of a Boolean expression to `std::cout`. This is followed by `std::cout << '\n'`, which writes a newline character to `std::cout`.

The subsequent expression chains together multiple uses of `operator<<`. This is possible since each use of `std::cout << value` returns a reference to `std::cout`. This chaining capability is supported by all `std::ostream` objects and not just `std::cout`. Also, note the use of the manipulator `std::boolalpha` in the chain.

Manipulators are distinct objects that can be employed to specify formatting options when reading from an input or writing to an output stream. For example, the manipulator `std::boolalpha` instructs an output stream to format `bool`s as a string ("false" or "true") instead of a number (0 or 1). Manipulators are also utilized to perform control operations such as flushing an output stream's buffer. Table 2-3 lists some frequently used manipulators; these are defined in header file `<iomanip>`.

The next code block in function `Ch02_02_ex1()` writes values `a` and `b` to `std::cout`. This is followed by a code block that also writes values `a` and `b` to `std::cout` but uses manipulators to format the output. Manipulator `std::hex` instructs `std::cout` to format

integers as hexadecimal values, and manipulator `std::showbase` enables insertion of prefix “0x” or “0X” when formatting a hexadecimal value (it also inserts a “0” prefix when using `std::oct`). Table 2-3 lists common I/O stream manipulators.

Table 2-3. *Common I/O Stream Manipulators*

Manipulator	Description
<code>boolalpha</code> , <code>noboolalpha</code>	Selects text or numbers for <code>bool</code> values
<code>dec</code> , <code>hex</code> , <code>oct</code>	Selects numeric base for integer input and output
<code>endl</code>	Writes newline char, flushes output stream buffer
<code>ends</code>	Writes null character, no flush of stream
<code>fixed</code> , <code>scientific</code> , <code>hexfloat</code> , <code>defaultfloat</code>	Selects floating-point notation
<code>flush</code>	Flushes output stream buffer
<code>left</code> , <code>right</code>	Selects left/right justification using current fill character
<code>showbase</code> , <code>noshowbase</code>	Enable/disable base prefix (e.g., 0x) for numeric values
<code>showpos</code> , <code>noshowpos</code>	Enable/disable plus sign for positive numerical values
<code>showpoint</code> , <code>noshowpoint</code>	Enable/disable explicit decimal point for floating-point values
<code>skipws</code> , <code>noskipws</code>	Enable/disable skips of leading whitespace during input
<code>uppercase</code> , <code>nouppercase</code>	Enable/disable uppercase letters for numeric values
<code>unitbuf</code> , <code>nointbuf</code>	Enable/disable output buffer flush after each write
<code>ws</code>	Ignores leading whitespace from input stream
<code>resetioflags()</code>	Clears specified I/O format flags
<code>setbase()</code>	Sets numeric base (8, 10, or 16) for integer input or output
<code>setfill()</code>	Sets fill character (default fill character is space)
<code>setioflags()</code>	Sets specified I/O format flags
<code>setprecision()</code>	Sets precision for floating-point values
<code>setw()</code>	Sets field width for next input or output operation

Scanning ahead a few lines, other manipulators are exercised, including `std::noshowbase`, `std::uppercase`, and `std::setfill('0')`. The manipulator `std::setw(w)` sets the field width for the output stream. The field width value `w` affects only the next data value written to the output stream. This means manipulator `std::setw()` must be used for each data value that requires an explicit field width.

The I/O stream library does not include a manipulator for binary output. However, you can exploit class `std::bitset<>` to produce binary output as demonstrated in `Ch02_02_ex1()`. Class `std::bitset<>` is a template class that represents a fixed-size sequence of bits. The expression `std::bitset<sizeof(uintptr_t) * 8> a_addr_bin(a_addr)` creates a bit set of length `sizeof(uintptr_t) * 8` using the bits of `uintptr_t a_addr`. The next statement writes the bit values stored in `a_addr_bin` to `std::cout`.

The final statement of `Ch02_02_ex1()`, `std::cout << std::dec`, resets the formatting of integers for global stream `std::cout` back to decimal. When using I/O streams, it is important to keep in mind that a stream remembers any changes to its formatting attributes following the use of a manipulator. For the current example, failure to use manipulator `std::dec` prior to exiting `Ch02_02_ex1()` means that subsequent writes of integer values to `std::cout` will continue to use hexadecimal formatting. Programs that utilize manipulators with streams, especially global stream objects, usually need to define rules for modifying or preserving a stream's formatting attributes across function boundaries.

Listing 2-2-2 shows the code for `Ch02_02_ex2()`. This function highlights several formatting options for floating-point values. Note that this function requires an argument value of type `std::ostream&`. In the current example, `Ch02_02_ex2()` is called using `std::cout` as the argument, but it could also be called using a file output stream argument as you'll soon see.

Listing 2-2-2. Example Ch02_02 - Ch02_02_ex2()

```
void Ch02_02_ex2(std::ostream& os)
{
    using namespace std::numbers;

    // save current flags and precision
    auto old_flags = os.flags();
    auto old_precision = os.precision(4);
    os << "old_precision: " << old_precision << '\n';
```

```

// floating-point output using fixed
os << std::fixed;
os << "\ne: " << e << '\n';
os << "pi: " << pi << '\n';

// floating-point output using setprecision()
os << std::setprecision(10);
os << "e: " << e << '\n';
os << "pi: " << pi << '\n';

// floating-point output using scientific notation
double a = e / 10000.0;
double b = pi * 10000.0;
os << std::scientific << std::setprecision(6);
os << "\na: " << a << '\n';
os << "b: " << b << '\n';

// floating-point output using showpos
a = -a;
os << std::fixed << std::showpos;
os << "\na: " << a << '\n';
os << "b: " << b << '\n';

// restore original flags and precision
os.flags(old_flags);
os.precision(old_precision);
}

```

Function `Ch02_02_ex2()` opens with a `using namespace std::numbers` (C++20) statement that facilitates direct use of the numerical constants `pi` and `e`, which are defined in `<numbers>`. The first code block in `Ch02_02_ex2()` uses `os.flags()` and `os.precision(4)` to save the current format flags and precision setting for stream `os`. The latter call also sets the new precision value to four. One advantage of using a member function (inherited from `std::ios_base`) to modify the precision (or any other values shown in Table 2-3) is that the function returns the old setting. If necessary, this value can be used to restore the caller's setting.

The next code block in `Ch02_02_ex2()` utilizes manipulator `std::fixed` to specify decimal notation for floating-point values (the default notation uses decimal or scientific depending on fit). It then writes `pi` and `e` to `os` using four digits of precision. The ensuing code block performs the same operation but utilizes manipulator `std::setprecision(10)` to change the stream's precision setting prior to the writes.

The final code blocks of `Ch02_02_ex2()` highlight the use of manipulators `std::scientific` (format floating-point value using scientific notation) and `std::showpos` (insert leading + character for positive numbers). The last two statements of `Ch02_02_ex2()` restore the caller's original flag and precision settings for stream `os`.

Function `Ch02_02_ex3()`, shown in Listing 2-2-3, utilizes manipulator `std::setfill('_')` to change the fill character (the default fill character for `std::ostream` objects is a space). It also utilizes manipulators `std::left` and `std::right` to perform left and right justifications of text strings. The final two statements of `Ch02_02_ex3()` apply manipulator `std::quoted()`. This manipulator inserts quotes around the specified string. The default quote character is `"`, but this can be changed to another character as demonstrated.

Listing 2-2-3. Example `Ch02_02 - Ch02_02_ex3()`

```
void Ch02_02_ex3(std::ostream& os)
{
    constexpr int w {40};
    std::string s1 {"0123456789"};
    std::string s2 {"abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxy"};

    // string output using left, right, and setw
    os << std::setfill('_');
    os << "s1: " << std::left << std::setw(w) << s1 << '\n';
    os << "s2: " << std::left << std::setw(w) << s2 << '\n';
    os << "s1: " << std::right << std::setw(w) << s1 << '\n';
    os << "s2: " << std::right << std::setw(w) << s2 << '\n';

    // string output using quoted
    os << std::setfill(' ');
    os << "\ns1 quoted: " << std::quoted(s1) << '\n';
    os << "s2 quoted: " << std::quoted(s2, '|') << '\n';
}
```

Listing 2-2-4 shows the code for `Ch02_02_ex4()`. This function highlights the basic use of output file class `std::ofstream`. The opening statement of this function employs `MF::mk_test_filename()` to construct a filename string. This function prepends a directory name and filename prefix string to the specified base name. The directory name and filename prefix strings are defined in `Common/MF.h`; you can change these to whatever suits your needs. Namespace `MF`¹ also contains additional miscellaneous functions that are exploited in multiple source code examples. The filename string `fn` is used to initialize and open `std::ofstream ofs`.

Listing 2-2-4. Example `Ch02_02 - Ch02_02_ex4()`

```
void Ch02_02_ex4()
{
    // open test file
    std::string fn = MF::mk_test_filename("ch02_02_ex4.txt");
    std::ofstream ofs {fn};

    // open success?
    if (!ofs.good())
    {
        std::println("open failed using file {}", fn);
        return;
    }

    // write to std::ofstream
    Ch02_02_ex2(ofs);
    ofs.close();
    std::println("results saved to file {}", fn);
}

void Ch02_02_ex()
{
    std::println("\n----- Ch02_02_ex1() -----");
    Ch02_02_ex1();

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_02_ex2() -----");
}
```

¹The source code in this book utilizes capital letters for its namespaces to avoid confusion with any C++ defined namespaces.

```

    Ch02_02_ex2(std::cout);

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_02_ex3() -----");
    Ch02_02_ex3(std::cout);

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_02_ex4() -----");
    Ch02_02_ex4();
}

```

The next code block uses `ofs.good()` to determine if file `fn` was successfully opened by the constructor. If true, function `Ch02_02_ex4()` calls `Ch02_02_ex2()` using `ofs` as the argument, which means `Ch02_02_ex2()` writes its results to file `fn` instead of `std::cout`. The `ofs.close()` that follows is technically not necessary since the destructor of `ofs` will automatically close an open file stream. However, it is considered good programming practice to explicitly close a file following the completion of all I/O operations to avoid needless consumption of a system resource.

Table 2-4 lists other the `std::basic_ios<>` functions that a program can use to determine the state of a file stream following its constructor or any I/O operation. Class `std::basic_ios<>` is a base class of the file stream classes as shown in Figure 2-1.

Table 2-4. State Functions and State Bits for `std::basic_ios<>` and `std::ios_base`

State Function <code>std::basic_ios<></code>	State Bit <code>std::ios_base</code>	Description
<code>good()</code>		True if <code>eofbit</code> , <code>failbit</code> , and <code>badbit</code> are all false
<code>eof()</code>	<code>eofbit</code>	True if end-of-file detected, otherwise false
<code>fail()</code>	<code>failbit</code>	True if stream error has occurred, otherwise false
<code>bad()</code>	<code>badbit</code>	True if non-recoverable error has occurred, otherwise false
<code>rdstate()</code>		Returns <code>std::ios_base::iostate<></code> mask of all state bits
<code>setstate()</code>		Sets state bits using <code>std::ios_base::iostate<></code> mask
<code>clear()</code>		Clears all state bits; sets state bits to new values
<code>operator!()</code>		Returns true if <code>badbit</code> or <code>failbit</code> is true

You'll see other examples of I/O streams later in this and subsequent chapters. Here are the results for source code example Ch02_02:

----- Results for example Ch02_02 -----

----- Ch02_02_ex1() -----

a == 100: 1

a == 100: true

a: 100

b: -300

a: 0x64

b: 0xffffffffffffffed4

a_addr: 0X000000DB15EFB10

a_addr: 0x000000db15effb10

a_addr: 0b000000000000000000000000110110110001010111101111111101100010000

----- Ch02_02_ex2() -----

old_precision: 6

e: 2.7183

pi: 3.1416

e: 2.7182818285

pi: 3.1415926536

a: 2.718282e-04

b: 3.141593e+04

a: -0.000272

b: +31415.926536

----- Ch02_02_ex3() -----

s1: 0123456789_____

s2: abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz_____

s1: _____0123456789

s2: _____abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz

```
s1 quoted: "0123456789"
s2 quoted: |abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxy|

----- Ch02_02_ex4() -----
results saved to file ./~~ch02_02_ex4.txt
```

The examples of this section used stream objects parameterized with type `char` (e.g., `std::cout`, `std::ofstream`, etc.), but you can also use the `wchar_t` counterparts `std::wcout` and `std::wofstream` to perform formatted stream output.

Formatted Output Using `std::format()`

Compared to the legacy C functions for formatted I/O, the C++ I/O stream functions discussed in the previous section are a worthwhile upgrade. However, there is a conspicuous lack of succinctness when a function is required to employ multiple manipulators to perform what should be a simple formatting operation. Moreover, keeping track of stream state changes across function boundaries can be challenging. The formatting libraries of C++20 remedy this situation by employing format specifiers that mimic the ones used in Python.

The C++20 formatting library `<format>` includes numerous practical functions for generating formatted output. The quintessential member of this library is `std::format()`, which is a variadic template function that formats a pack of argument values according to a first-argument format string. For example, consider the following code:

```
#include <cmath>
#include <format>
#include <iostream>
#include <string>
#include "Ch02_03.h"

void format_ex1()
{
    int a {100};
    unsigned int b {200};
    unsigned long long c {0x123456789ABC};
    float d = std::sqrt(300.0f);
```

```

double e = std::log(400.0);
double f = e * -0.5;
std::string g {"abcdefghij"};

std::string s1 = std::format("a={:d}, b={:6d}, c={:#016X}", a, b ,c);
std::string s2 = std::format("f={2:.4f}, e={1:<12.8f}, d={0:.2f}",
d, e, f);
std::string s3 = std::format("{0:~<20s}, {0:#^20s}, {0:=>20s}", g);

std::cout << s1 << '\n';
std::cout << s2 << '\n';
std::cout << s3 << '\n';
}

```

Execution of function `format_ex1()` yields the following result:

```

a=100, b=   200, c=0X00123456789ABC
f=-2.9957, e=5.99146455  , d=17.32
abcdefghij~~~~~ , #####abcdefghij#####, =====abcdefghij

```

For now, don't worry about the contents of the format specification string and just observe that `std::format()` returns a value of type `std::string`. An overload that returns a value of type `std::wstring` is also available. Also, note the use of `{}`, which denotes a format specifier. The syntax of a format specifier is

```
{arg-id:fill-and-align sign # 0 width precision L type}
```

Table 2-5 describes the meaning of each format specifier field. All fields between the curly braces are optional. Using a format specifier of `{}` instructs `std::format()` to format a value using a default specifier that varies depending on the type.

Table 2-5. *Format Specifier Fields*

Field	Description
arg-id	Index of argument
fill-and-align	Fill character (any character other than { or }, followed by one of < (left alignment), ^ (center alignment), or > (right alignment)
sign	One of + (always show sign), - (default, show sign for negative values only), space (add leading space for non-negative values, otherwise use -)
#	Integers – add leading 0b, 0B, 0, 0x, 0X for binary, octal, hexadecimal values Floating-point – always show decimal point for floating-point values
0	Pad value with leading zeros (ignored if align is used)
width	Integer value that specifies minimum field width (default is 0)
.precision	Floating-point – precision String – longest prefix of formatted argument to be included in a nested replacement field
L	Perform locale conversions for arithmetic types (e.g., digit separators)
type	b or B – binary, base prefix is 0b or 0B c – character d – decimal o – octal, base prefix is 0 for nonzero value x, X – hexadecimal, base prefix is 0x or 0X a, A – floating-point hexadecimal e, E – floating-point scientific (default precision is 6) f, F – floating-point fixed (default precision is 6) g, G – Floating-point general (default precision is 6) none – use default for type p, P – pointer type

A nested replacement field is a second set of {} that's enclosed within the first set of {}. Nested replacement fields can be used to specify runtime values for width and precision.

Like most C++ programming features, the best way to learn about `std::format()` and format specifiers is to study a few examples. Source code example Ch02_03

demonstrates typical usages of `std::format()` along with various format specifiers.

Listing 2-3-1 shows the code for function `Ch02_03_ex1()`.

Listing 2-3-1. Example `Ch02_03 - Ch02_03_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch02_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <format>
#include <fstream>
#include <iostream>
#include <numbers>
#include "Ch02_03.h"
#include "Line.h"
#include "MF.h"

void Ch02_03_ex1()
{
    constexpr int a {100};
    constexpr int b {-200};
    constexpr long long c {300};
    constexpr long long d {-400};

    // bool format
    std::cout << std::format("a == 100: {:d}\n", a == 100);
    std::cout << std::format("b == 400: {:d}\n", b == 400);
    std::cout << std::format("a == 100: {}\n", a == 100);
    std::cout << std::format("b == 400: {:s}\n", b == 400);

    // decimal format
    std::cout << std::format("\na: {}\n", a);
    std::cout << std::format("b: {:d}\n", b);

    // decimal format fill char, alignment, and width
    std::cout << std::format("\na: {:_>10d}\n", a);
    std::cout << std::format("a: {:_<10d}\n", a);
    std::cout << std::format("a: {:_^10d}\n", a);
}
```

```

// hex format
std::cout << std::format("\na: {:x}\n", a);
std::cout << std::format("b: {:x}\n", b);           // includes leading
                                                    minus sign

std::cout << std::format("a: {:#010x}\n", static_cast<unsigned int>(a));
std::cout << std::format("b: {:#010x}\n", static_cast<unsigned int>(b));
std::cout << std::format("c: {:#018X}\n", static_cast<unsigned long
long>(c));
std::cout << std::format("d: {:#018X}\n", static_cast<unsigned long
long>(d));

// binary format
std::cout << std::format("\na: {:#034b}\n", static_cast<unsigned int>(a));
std::cout << std::format("b: {:#034b}\n", static_cast<unsigned int>(b));
std::cout << std::format("c: {:#066b}\n", static_cast<unsigned int>(c));
std::cout << std::format("b: {:#066b}\n", static_cast<unsigned long
long>(d));

// decimal format using arg ids
std::cout << std::format("\na: {0:d} c: {2:d} b: {1:d} c: {2:d} a:
{0:d}\n",
    a, b, c);
std::cout << std::format("a: {0:_>10d} a: {0:_<10d} a:
{0:_^10d}\n", a);
}

```

The first code block in `Ch02_03_ex1()` demonstrates `bool` formatting. For `bool`s, using a specifier of `{:d}` instructs `std::format()` to output a numerical value (0 = false, 1 = true). Using a format specifier of `{}` or `{:s}` yields a textual output (“false” or “true”). Note that output from `std::format()` is directed to `std::cout` using operator `<<`.

The next code block in `Ch02_03_ex1()` spotlights the formatting of decimal integers. The first two statements utilize format specifiers `{}` and `{:d}` to default format a decimal integer. The ensuing code block utilizes a fill character, an alignment character, and a width specifier of ten. If you scan ahead to the results section for example `Ch02_03`, you can see how the alignment character affects the output. It merits mentioning here that the format specifiers utilized by `std::format()` do not require any size modifiers

like those used for `std::printf()`. A format specifier of `{:d}` can be used for any fundamental integer type, signed or unsigned.

To output an integer using hexadecimal notation, a function can use specifier `{:x}` as illustrated in the next code block. When using `{:x}` with a signed integer type, the output will include a leading minus sign if the value is less than zero. This is why the next four instances of `std::format()` apply `static_cast<>` conversions. Note that format specifier `{:#010x}` incorporates a `#` symbol, which instructs `std::format()` to output leading text “0x” (or “0X” for type `X`). The ensuing `0` is the fill character, and `10` specifies the minimum field width. The outputting of an integer value using binary digits is basically the same as hexadecimal except for the use of `b` (or `B`) instead of `x` (or `X`) as demonstrated.

The final code block of `Ch02_03_ex1()` illustrates the use of argument ids to select specific values from the argument pack. Argument id `0` corresponds to the first argument after the format string, `1` to the second argument, etc. Note that the argument ids in the format string need not be consecutively specified and that each argument id can be used multiple times. When using argument ids, they must be used with all format specifiers or none of them.

Listing 2-3-2 shows the source code for function `Ch02_03_ex2()`, which exercises `std::format()` using floating-point specifiers. Note that this function includes an argument of type `std::ostream&` for the output.

Listing 2-3-2. Example `Ch02_03 - Ch02_03_ex2()`

```
void Ch02_03_ex2(std::ostream& os)
{
    using namespace std::numbers;

    // floating-point format
    os << std::format("\ne: {}, pi: {}\n", e, pi);
    os << std::format("e: {:f}, pi: {:f}\n", e, pi);    // precision = 6

    // floating-point format using width & precision
    // (+ shows sign char for positive values)
    os << std::format("\ne: {:10.6f}, pi: {:10.6f}\n", e, pi);
    os << std::format("e: {:14.10f}, pi: {:14.10f}\n", e, pi);
    os << std::format("e: {:+10.6f}, pi: {:+10.6f}\n", e, pi);

    // floating-point format using fill char and alignment
```

```

os << std::format("\ne: {:_<12.6f}, pi: {:_<12.6f}\n", e, pi);
os << std::format("e: {:_>12.6f}, pi: {:_>12.6f}\n", e, pi);
os << std::format("e: {:_^12.6f}, pi: {:_^12.6f}\n", e, pi);

// floating-point format using nested replacement
os << std::format("\ne: {:.{ }.{ }f}\n", e, 6, 3);
os << std::format("pi: {:.{ }.{ }f}\n", pi, 16, 8);

// floating-point format using scientific notation
double a = e * 10000.0;
double b = pi / 100000.0;
os << std::format("\na: {:8.4e}, b: {:8.4e}\n", a, b);
os << std::format("a: {:16.8e}, b: {:16.8e}\n", a, b);
}

```

The first code block in `Ch02_03_ex2()` utilizes format specifiers `{}` and `{:f}`. The difference between these two is that the latter one defaults to six digits of precision. The next code block exercises format specifiers that include explicit values for width and precision. Note the use of the `+` sign that instructs `std::format()` to add a leading plus sign for a positive value. Fill characters and alignments are demonstrated in the next set of calls to `std::format()`. This is followed by code block that employs a nested replacement specifier, which is useful for runtime calculations of width and precision (the current example just uses integer literals). The final code block in function `Ch02_03_ex2()` utilizes format specifiers for scientific notation.

Listing 2-3-3 shows the code for function `Ch02_03_ex3()`. This function exemplifies the use of format specifiers for values of type `std::string`.

Listing 2-3-3. Example `Ch02_03 - Ch02_03_ex3()`

```

void Ch02_03_ex3(std::ostream& os)
{
    std::string s1 {"0123456789"};
    std::string s2 {"abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz"};
    std::string sr {"red"};
    std::string sg {"green"};
    std::string sb {"blue"};

    // string format (default)

```

```

os << std::format("\ns1: {}\n", s1);
os << std::format("s2: {}\n", s2);

// string format using fill char and alignment
os << std::format("\ns1: {:~<40s}\n", s1);
os << std::format("s1: {:~>40s}\n", s1);
os << std::format("s1: {:~^40s}\n", s1);

// string format using arg ids
os << std::format("\n{0:s} {0:s} {1:s} {1:s} {2:s} {2:s}\n",
    sr, sg, sb);
os << std::format("{0:_>10s} {0:_<10s} {0:_^10s}\n", sg);
}

```

One extremely important protection feature of `std::format()` is the checking, both compile time and runtime, that's performed on the format specification string. For example, a C++ compiler is *required* to flag an error if a function attempts to use a floating-point format specifier such as `{:f}` to format an integer value. The first two uses of `std::format()` in function `Ch02_03_ex4()`, shown in Listing 2-3-4, provide an example. Remove the comments from either of these lines, and the source code will fail to compile.

Listing 2-3-4. Example Ch02_03 - Ch02_03_ex4()

```

void Ch02_03_ex4(std::ostream& os)
{
    int x {10};
    float y{22.5f};
    std::string fmt1 {"{:d}, {:f}"};
    std::string fmt2 {"{:f}, {:d}"};

    // os << std::format("x: {:f}\n", x);           // bad - compiler error
    // os << std::format("y: {:d}\n", y);           // bad - compiler error

    try
    {
        auto args {std::make_format_args(x, y)};

```

```

    std::string s1 {std::vformat(fmt1, args)}; // ok
    os << s1 << '\n';

    std::string s2 {std::vformat(fmt2, args)}; // throws std::format_
                                                error

    os << s1 << '\n';
}

catch (const std::format_error& fe)
{
    os << "\ncaught std::format_error exception" << '\n';
    os << "fe.what() text: " << fe.what() << '\n';
}
}

```

Another item of significance regarding `std::format()`'s format specification string is that it must be a compile-time constant, which means `std::format()` can't be used in situations where runtime creation of a format specifier is necessary. However, the formatting library contains a function named `std::vformat()` that supports a non-const format specification string. Like its counterpart `std::format()`, `std::vformat()` also performs runtime checks on the supplied format specification string.

The try block of `Ch02_03_ex4()` exemplifies the runtime error checking of a format specification string. The first statement inside the try block utilizes `std::make_format_args(x, y)` to create an object of argument values that can be passed to `std::vformat()`. The next statement employs `std::vformat()` to format args (i.e., `x` and `y`) using format specification string `fmt1`. The formatted string `s1` is then written to `std::ostream os`. The next two statements carry out the same operations. However, note that the format specifiers in `fmt2` are incorrect; `{:f}` is used for `int x` and `{:d}` is used for `float y`. Upon detection of this formatting gaffe, `std::vformat()` throws an exception of `std::format_error`.

Listing 2-3-5 shows the code for `Ch02_03_ex5()`, which demonstrates the use of `std::format()` with template class `Line<>`.

Listing 2-3-5. Example Ch02_03 - Ch02_03_ex5()

```

void Ch02_03_ex5(std::ostream& os)
{
    Line<short> line1 {0, 0, 3, 4};
    Line<int> line2 {1, 12, 12, -1};
    Line<float> line3 {10.0f, 15.0f, 10.0f, 22.0f};
    Line<double> line4 {-8.0, 8.0, 8.0, -8.0};

    // Line format
    os << std::format("line1: {}\n", line1);
    os << std::format("line2: {}\n", line2);
    os << std::format("line3: {}\n", line3);
    os << std::format("line4: {}\n", line4);
}

void Ch02_03_ex()
{
    std::println("\n----- format_ex1 -----");
    format_ex1();

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_03_ex1() -----");
    Ch02_03_ex1();

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_03_ex2() -----");
    Ch02_03_ex2(std::cout);

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_03_ex3() -----");
    Ch02_03_ex3(std::cout);

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_03_ex4() -----");
    Ch02_03_ex4(std::cout);

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_03_ex5() -----");
    Ch02_03_ex5(std::cout);
}

```


Using `std::format()` with a user-defined class is not much different than using it with a fundamental type. However, before this is possible, the user-defined class must define a structure and a couple of member functions to handle the necessary formatting operations. Listing 2-3-6 shows a portion of the code for class `Line<>` (see Listing 1-7-2 for the complete code).

Listing 2-3-6. Example Ch02_03 – Line.h (partial)

```
private:
    std::string to_str() const
    {
        std::string s{};
        std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "[({}, {}, ", m_X0, m_Y0);
        std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{}, {}) | ", m_X1, m_Y1);
        std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "({:.4f}, ", length());
        std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:.4f}]]", slope());

        return s;
    }

    // attributes
    T m_X0 {};
    T m_Y0 {};
    T m_X1 {};
    T m_Y1 {};
};

// class Line formatter
template <typename T> struct std::formatter<Line<T>> :
std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& fpc)
        { return fpc.begin(); }

    auto format(Line<T> line, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{}", line.to_str()); }
};
```

Class `Line<>` defines a private member function named `to_str()`. This function builds a text string using the line's attributes. Function `to_str()` is called by the functions that `std::format()` calls to format a `Line<>`. It's also called by operator `<<` (`std::stream& const Line<T>& line`). Within `to_str()`, note the use of `std::format_to()`. This function performs formatting just like `std::format()` but writes the resultant string to the output iterator that's specified by the first argument. Function `std::back_inserter()` is a template function that returns an iterator of type `std::back_inserter_iterator`, and `std::format_to()` uses this iterator to append a new string to target string `s`. You'll learn more about `std::back_inserter()` in Chapter 3. For the current example, it's only necessary to understand that `std::back_inserter(s)` appends a new string to the end of string `s`.

Function `std::format_to()` utilizes the same format specifiers as `std::format()`. The string built by `to_str()` includes coordinate attributes `m_X0`, `m_Y0`, `m_X1`, and `m_Y1`, along with the line's length and slope.

Toward the bottom of Listing 2-3-6 is the definition of a template structure named `std::formatter<Line<>>`. Note that this structure contains two member functions. Both `parse()` and `format()` are called whenever `std::format()` (or a related format library function) is used to format an instance of `Line<>`. The purpose of `parse()` is to process a custom format specifier for `Line<>`. Class `Line<>` doesn't define a custom format specifier, so `parse()` returns `fpc.begin()`. Function `format()` handles the actual formatting. This function writes the `std::string` built by `to_str()` to the output iterator returned by `fc.out()`. The organization of `std::formatter<Line<T>>` is typical for a user-defined class that's used with `std::format()` to perform simple formatting. Later in this book, you'll learn how to create a custom format specifier for a user-defined class. You'll also learn how to use the chrono format specifiers for dates and times. Here are the results for example Ch02_03:

```
----- Results for example Ch02_03 -----
```

```
----- Ch02_03_ex1() -----
```

```
a == 100: 1
b == 400: 0
a == 100: true
b == 400: false

a: 100
b: -200
```



```

s1: 0123456789
s2: abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz

s1: 0123456789~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~
s1: ~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~::~0123456789
s1: ~::~::~::~::~::~0123456789~::~::~::~::~::~

red red green green blue blue
____green green____ __green__

----- Ch02_03_ex4() -----
10, 22.500000

caught std::format_error exception
fe.what() text: Invalid presentation type for integer

----- Ch02_03_ex5() -----
line1: [(0, 0, 3, 4) | (5.0000, 1.3333)]
line2: [(1, 12, 12, -1) | (17.0294, -1.1818)]
line3: [(10, 15, 10, 22) | (7.0000, nan)]
line4: [(-8, 8, 8, -8) | (22.6274, -1.0000)]

```

Formatted Output Using `std::print()`

C++23 adds new print functions for formatted output, including `std::print()` and `std::println()`. The difference between these functions is that the latter automatically appends a newline character to the output. Both `std::print()` and `std::println()` functions utilize the same format specifiers that you learned about in the previous section. They also write their results to output stream `std::cout`. Overloads are defined in `<print>` that facilitate the use of `std::print()` and `std::println()` using any object of type `std::ostream` or `std::wostream`.

Listing 2-4 shows the source code for example Ch02_04, which demonstrates the use of `std::println()`. In this listing, function `Ch02_04_ex1()` utilizes `std::print()` to print formatted integers on `std::cout`. The format specifiers exercised here are identical to the ones used in `Ch02_03_ex1()`. This is also true in `Ch02_04_ex2()`, which prints formatted floating-point values. Note that the `std::println()` calls in `Ch02_04_ex2()` utilize an argument of type `std::ostream&`.

Listing 2-4. Example Ch02_04 – Ch02_04_ex.cpp

```

//-----
// Ch02_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <iostream>
#include <numbers>
#include "Ch02_04.h"
#include "Line.h"
#include "MF.h"

void Ch02_04_ex1()
{
    constexpr int a {1000};
    constexpr int b {-2000};
    constexpr long long c {3000};

    // bool print
    std::println("b == 400: {:d}", b == 400);
    std::println("b == 400: {:s}", b == 400);

    // decimal print
    std::println("a: {}", a);
    std::println("b: {:d}", b);

    // decimal print using fill char, alignment and width specifier
    std::println("a: {:_>10d}", a);
    std::println("a: {:_<10d}", a);
    std::println("a: {:_^10d}", a);

    // hex print
    std::println("a: {:x}", a);
    std::println("c: {:X}", c);

    // binary print
    std::println("a: {:#034b}", a);
    std::println("c: {:#066b}", c);

    // decimal print using arg ids

```

```

    std::println("a: {0:d} c: {2:d} b: {1:d} c: {2:d} a: {0:d}", a, b, c);
}

```

```

void Ch02_04_ex2(std::ostream& os)

```

```

{
    using namespace std::numbers;

    // floating-point print
    std::println(os, "e: {f}, pi: {f}", e, pi);

    // floating-point print using width & precision
    std::println(os, "e: {:10.6f}, pi: {:10.6f}", e, pi);
    std::println(os, "e: {:14.10f}, pi: {:14.10f}", e, pi);

    // floating-point print using scientific notation
    double a = e * 10000.0;
    double b = pi / 100000.0;
    std::println(os, "a: {:8.4e}, b: {:8.4e}", a, b);
    std::println(os, "a: {:16.8e}, b: {:16.8e}", a, b);
}

```

```

void Ch02_04_ex3(std::ostream& os)

```

```

{
    std::string s1 {"0123456789"};
    std::string sr {"red"};
    std::string sg {"green"};
    std::string sb {"blue"};

    // string print using alignment and fill char
    std::println(os, "s1: {:~<40s}", s1);
    std::println(os, "s1: {:~>40s}", s1);
    std::println(os, "s1: {:~^40s}", s1);

    // string print using arg ids
    std::println(os, "{2:s} {1:s} {0:s} {0:s} {1:s} {2:s}", sr, sg, sb);
}

```

```

void Ch02_04_ex()

```

```

{

```

CHAPTER 2 FORMATTED I/O

```

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_04_ex1() -----");
    Ch02_04_ex1();

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_04_ex2() -----");
    Ch02_04_ex2(std::cout);

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_04_ex3() -----");
    Ch02_04_ex3(std::cout);
}

```

The remaining functions of Listing 2-4 underscore additional uses of `std::println()`. Here are the results for example Ch02_04:

```

----- Results for example Ch02_04 -----

----- Ch02_04_ex1() -----
b == 400: 0
b == 400: false
a: 1000
b: -2000
a: _____1000
a: 1000_____
a: __1000__
a: 3e8
c: BB8
a: 0b0000000000000000000000001111101000
c: 0b00000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000101110111000
a: 1000 c: 3000 b: -2000 c: 3000 a: 1000

----- Ch02_04_ex2() -----
e: 2.718282, pi: 3.141593
e: 2.718282, pi: 3.141593
e: 2.7182818285, pi: 3.1415926536
a: 2.7183e+04, b: 3.1416e-05
a: 2.71828183e+04, b: 3.14159265e-05

```

```

----- Ch02_04_ex3() -----
s1: 0123456789~::~:
s1: ~::~:0123456789
s1: ~::~:0123456789~::~:
blue green red red green blue

```

Formatted File I/O Using Streams

The final example of this chapter, named Ch02_05, illustrates additional operations using file streams `std::ofstream` and `std::ifstream`. Listing 2-5 shows the source code for this example.

Listing 2-5. Example Ch02_05 – Ch02_05_ex.cpp

```

//-----
// Ch02_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <fstream>
#include <stdexcept>
#include <string>
#include "Ch02_05.h"
#include "MF.h"

namespace
{
    const char* s_Strings[]
    {
        "zero", "one", "two", "three", "four", "five", "six", "seven", "eight",
        "nine", "ten", "eleven", "twelve", "thirteen", "fourteen", "fifteen",
        "sixteen", "seventeen", "eighteen", "nineteen"
    };
}

void Ch02_05_ex1(const std::string& filename)
{
    std::ofstream ofs {filename};

```



```

    if (!ofs.good())
    {
        std::println("file open error: {:s}", filename);
        return;
    }

    std::println("writing data to file: {:s}", filename);

    // using iterators to access elements of C-style array
    for (auto iter = std::begin(s_Strings); iter != std::end(s_
Strings); ++iter)
    {
        std::println(ofs, "{:s}", *iter);

        if (!ofs.good())
        {
            std::println("file write error: {:s}\n", filename);
            return;
        }
    }

    ofs.close();
}

void Ch02_05_ex2(const std::string& filename)
{
    std::ifstream ifs {filename};

    if (!ifs.good())
    {
        std::println("file open error: {:s}", filename);
        return;
    }

    std::println("reading data from file: {:s}", filename);

    size_t i {};
    std::string str {};

    while (1)

```

```

{
    // get next string value from ifs
    ifs >> str;

    if (ifs.eof())
        break;

    if (ifs.fail())
    {
        std::println("file read error: {:s}", filename);
        break;
    }

    // verify string value
    std::print("test string: {:15s} | compare: ", str);

    if (str == s_Strings[i++])
        std::println("OK");
    else
    {
        std::println("failed!");
        break;
    }
}

ifs.close();
}

void Ch02_05_ex3(const std::string& filename)
{
    std::ifstream ifs {filename};

    if (!ifs.good())
    {
        std::println("file open error: {:s}", filename);
        return;
    }

    std::println("reading data from file: {:s}", filename);
}

```

```

size_t num_lines {};
std::string line {};

while (1)
{
    // read next line from ifs
    std::getline(ifs, line);

    if (ifs.eof())
        break;

    if (ifs.fail())
    {
        std::println("file read error: {:s}", filename);
        break;
    }

    std::println("line {:4d}: {:s}", ++num_lines, line);
}

std::println("\nnum_lines: {:d}\n", num_lines);
ifs.close();
}

void Ch02_05_ex()
{
    std::string fn1 = MF::mk_test_filename("ch02_05.txt");

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_05_ex1() -----");
    Ch02_05_ex1(fn1);

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_05_ex2() -----");
    Ch02_05_ex2(fn1);

    std::println("\n----- Ch02_05_ex3() -----");
    Ch02_05_ex3(fn1);
}

```

In Listing 2-5, function `Ch02_05_ex1()` writes text strings to a file. There are two important programming techniques to recognize in this function. First, the elements

of C-style array `s_Strings` are accessed using an iterator. This is accomplished using global functions `std::begin()` and `std::end()`. Using iterators to access the elements of a C-style array is advantageous here since it sidesteps any applications of operator `sizeof()` to determine the number of text strings in `s_Strings`. The other item is the statement `std::println(ofs, "{:s}", *iter)`, which writes the specified string to output stream `ofs`. The same operation also could have been performed using `std::ofs << *iter << '\n'`. However, it should be readily apparent from the examples in this chapter that using `std::println()` with or without an explicit output stream yields easier-to-read code (compared to the use of operator `<<` and manipulators), especially when writing multiple values.

Function `Ch02_05_ex2()` employs operator `>>` to read data from an input file stream. Within the while loop, note the use of the statement `ifs >> str`, which reads the next string value from input file stream `ifs`. The next statement, `ifs.eof()`, tests `ifs`'s eofbit for an end-of-file condition; if true, the while loop is terminated. This is followed by an `ifs.fail()`, which checks input stream `ifs` for an error condition.

The final function in Listing 2-5, `Ch02_05_ex3()`, also reads data from an input file stream but utilizes `std::getline()` to read an entire line from file stream `ifs`. When working with text files where each line contains multiple values (e.g., a comma-separated value file), using `std::getline()` is often more convenient than multiple uses of operator `>>`. The acquired `std::string` can be passed as an argument to another function for additional parsing. Here are the results for example `Ch02_05`:

```

----- Results for example Ch02_05 -----

----- Ch02_05_ex1() -----
writing data to file: ./~~ch02_05.txt

----- Ch02_05_ex2() -----
reading data from file: ./~~ch02_05.txt
test string: zero           | compare: OK
test string: one           | compare: OK
test string: two           | compare: OK
test string: three         | compare: OK
test string: four          | compare: OK
test string: five          | compare: OK
test string: six           | compare: OK

```

CHAPTER 2 FORMATTED I/O

```
test string: seven      | compare: OK
test string: eight     | compare: OK
test string: nine      | compare: OK
test string: ten       | compare: OK
test string: eleven    | compare: OK
test string: twelve    | compare: OK
test string: thirteen  | compare: OK
test string: fourteen  | compare: OK
test string: fifteen   | compare: OK
test string: sixteen   | compare: OK
test string: seventeen | compare: OK
test string: eighteen  | compare: OK
test string: nineteen  | compare: OK
```

```
----- Ch02_05_ex3() -----
reading data from file: ./~~ch02_05.txt
line 1: zero
line 2: one
line 3: two
line 4: three
line 5: four
line 6: five
line 7: six
line 8: seven
line 9: eight
line 10: nine
line 11: ten
line 12: eleven
line 13: twelve
line 14: thirteen
line 15: fourteen
line 16: fifteen
line 17: sixteen
```

```
line 18: seventeen
line 19: eighteen
line 20: nineteen
num_lines: 20
```

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- A C++ program can use the legacy C function `std::printf()` or one of its sibling functions to perform formatted output. However, type-safe alternatives should be used in new code.
- The C++ input/output library defines a class hierarchy (Figure 2-1) for formatted input and output. Template classes within the hierarchy are parameterized using a character type.
- A function can use manipulators to specify stream formatting options or perform control operations.
- C++20 includes a new formatting library that utilizes Python-like format specifiers. Format specifiers are defined for fundamental types and common string classes. A user-defined class can also define a custom format specifier and formatting function for use with `std::format()`, `std::format_to()`, etc.
- C++23 incorporates new print functions that utilize the same format specifiers as `std::format()`. The default output stream for `std::print()` and `std::println()` is `std::cout`, but overloads are defined that facilitate writes to any output stream.

CHAPTER 3

Sequence Containers – Part 1

This chapter introduces sequence containers, including

- An overview of sequence containers
- How to use `std::array`
- How to use `std::vector`
- Additional algorithms using `std::array` and `std::vector`

The discussions and source code examples of this chapter expound typical uses for classes `std::array` and `std::vector`. You'll study additional examples for these classes in later chapters.

Overview of Sequence Containers

A sequence container organizes a finite collection of objects (or elements), all of which must be the same type. The ordering of objects within a sequence container is linear and determined programmatically. Table 3-1 summarizes the five STL sequence container classes.

Table 3-1. *STL Sequence Container Classes*

Sequence Container	Description	Key Feature
<code>std::array</code>	Fixed-size collection of objects	No insert or erase operations
<code>std::vector</code>	Adjustable size collection of objects	Most frequently used container; best for insertions and removals at the end of the container
<code>std::deque</code>	Double-ended queue	Similar to <code>std::vector</code> but optimized for fast insertions and removals at the beginning and end of the container
<code>std::list</code>	Abstraction of a doubly linked list	Optimized for constant time insertions and removals anywhere in the container
<code>std::forward_list</code>	Abstraction of a singly linked list	Similar to <code>std::list</code> but supports forward-only traversals

In this chapter, you'll learn how to use `std::array` and `std::vector`. Chapter 4 covers the other sequence container classes mentioned in Table 3-1.

Using `std::array`

STL class `std::array` is a sequence container that implements a fixed-size array. It is often used as a safer alternative to a C-style array. Instances of `std::array` are an encapsulation of a continuous block of memory and a size attribute as shown in Figure 3-1. Compared to a C-style array, `std::array` provides a couple of noteworthy advantages. First, the number of elements is incorporated within the object. Second, the public interface for `std::array` facilitates the use of many STL algorithms. Instances of `std::array` can also be utilized in a manner that resembles a C-style array. For example, elements within a `std::array` are accessible using operator[].

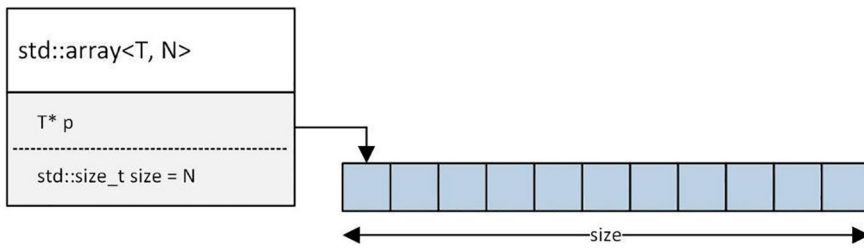


Figure 3-1. Sequence container `std::array`

The source code in Listing 3-1-1 illustrates basic use of class `std::array`. The first statement of function `Ch03_01_ex1()`, `std::array<int, 9> x_vals {100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600, 700, 800, 900}`, defines a `std::array` of nine elements of type `int` whose initial values correspond to those within the initializer list. Note that the template parameter list for `std::array` requires two items: the object type and the number of array elements. The number of elements must be a compile-time constant.

Listing 3-1-1. Example Ch03_01 – Ch03_01_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch03_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <array>
#include <format>
#include <numbers>
#include <numeric>
#include <string>
#include "Ch03_01.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RN.h"

void Ch03_01_ex1()
{
    std::array<int, 9> x_vals {100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600, 700,
        800, 900};

    // print elements of x_vals using operator[]
}
```

```

std::println("\narray x_vals: ");
for (size_t i = 0; i < x_vals.size(); ++i)
    std::print("{:6d} ", x_vals[i]);
std::println("");
std::println("x_vals.size(): {:d}", x_vals.size());

// using at()
// x_vals.at(42) *= 10;      // invalid index, throws exception

// print elements of x_vals using forward iterator
std::println("\narray x_vals: ");
for (auto iter = x_vals.begin(); iter != x_vals.end(); ++iter)
    std::print("{:6d} ", *iter);
std::println("");

// print elements of x_vals using reverse iterator
std::println("\nx_vals (reversed): ");
for (auto iter = x_vals.rbegin(); iter != x_vals.rend(); ++iter)
    std::print("{:6d} ", *iter);
std::println("");
}

```

The next code block utilizes a for loop to print the elements of `x_vals`. Note that `x_vals.size()` obtains the number of elements in `x_vals`. Also, note that elements of `x_vals` are referenced using `std::array::operator[]` just like a C-style array. You can also use `std::array::at()` to reference elements. The difference between `operator[]` and `at()` is that the latter throws an exception if the supplied index is invalid (i.e., `index >= size()`). You can observe this by removing the comment that precedes the statement `vals.at(42) *= 10` and executing the code.

The next code block in `Ch03_01_ex1()` employs a forward iterator to print the elements of `x_vals`. Recall from the discussions in Chapter 1 that an iterator is a generalization of a pointer. Iterators are frequently used to access the elements in a container. The for loop's initializer statement utilizes `x_vals.begin()` to obtain an iterator to the first element in `x_vals`. The condition section of the for loop compares `iter` against `x_vals.end()`. If `iter` equals `x_vals.end()`, the for loop terminates. Member function `end()` returns a value that points to the "element" that follows the array's last element as shown in Figure 3-2. The iterator value returned by `end()` should

only be used to perform a loop termination test; it should never be dereferenced. The expression `++iter` updates `iter` so that it points to the next element in `x_vals`. Prefix operator `++` is generally employed when updating an iterator since it's usually faster than the postfix variant.

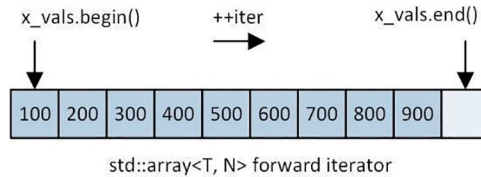


Figure 3-2. Using `std::array` forward iterator

Within the iterator for loop, note that `std::print()` employs the expression `*iter` to dereference (access) the current element of `x_vals`. It is important to keep in mind that while iterators are often used in a manner that mimics native pointers, they are not pointers. Iterators are types that support pointer-like operations such as `*`, `++`, `--`, etc., to facilitate access to a variety of container types in a uniform manner. C++ defines several different iterator categories with distinct operational capabilities. You'll learn more about iterators and iterator categories in Chapter 4.

The final code block in `Ch03_01_ex1()` utilizes a reverse iterator to print the elements of `x_vals` in reverse order. Member functions `rbegin()` and `rend()` are the reverse iterator counterparts of `begin()` and `end()` as shown in Figure 3-3.

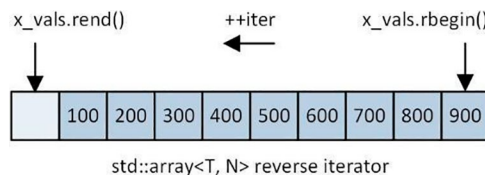


Figure 3-3. Using `std::array` reverse iterator

Listing 3-1-2 shows the source code for function `Ch03_01_ex2()`, which exploits a forward iterator to modify the elements of a `std::array`. The initial code block of `Ch03_02_ex()` initializes and prints the values of `std::array<long, 10> x_vals` using functions `begin()` and `end()` just like function `Ch03_01_ex1()`. The next for loop utilizes a forward iterator to perform an arithmetic operation using each element in `x_vals`. Note the use of the expression `*iter += 5`, which adds five to the element of `x_vals` “pointed” to by `iter`.

Listing 3-1-2. Example Ch03_01 – Ch03_01_ex2()

```

void Ch03_01_ex2()
{
    // create array x_vals and print elements
    std::array<long, 10> x_vals {10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100};
    std::println("\nx_vals (original values): ");
    for (auto iter = x_vals.begin(); iter != x_vals.end(); ++iter)
        std::print("{:6d} ", *iter);
    std::println("");

    // add 5 to each element of x_vals[i] using forward iterators
    for (auto iter = x_vals.begin(); iter != x_vals.end(); ++iter)
        *iter += 5;

    // print modified elements
    std::println("\nx_vals (after adds): ");
    for (auto iter = x_vals.begin(); iter != x_vals.end(); ++iter)
        std::print("{:6d} ", *iter);
    std::println("");
}

```

Function `Ch03_01_ex3()`, shown in Listing 3-1-3, employs forward iterators to carry out an arithmetic calculation using two containers of type `std::array<double, 8>`. This function opens with the definition of container `std::array<double, 8> radii`. The ensuing statement, `std::array<double, radii.size()> areas {}`, defines another array of doubles whose size matches that of `radii`. Using `radii.size()` for `areas` size parameter is permissible here since it's a `constexpr` function that can be compile-time evaluated. The empty initializer list `{}` that's included with the declaration of `areas` ensures that each element of the array is initialized to zero.

Listing 3-1-3. Example Ch03_01 – Ch03_01_ex3()

```

void Ch03_01_ex3()
{
    using namespace std::numbers;

    std::array<double, 8> radii {1.0, 1.4, 2.0, 2.8, 4.0, 5.6, 8.0, 11.0};
    std::array<double, radii.size()> areas {};
}

```

```

// using iterators to perform arithmetic calculation
auto iter_a = areas.begin();
for (auto iter_r = radii.begin(); iter_r != radii.end(); ++iter_r,
    ++iter_a)
    *iter_a = pi * *iter_r * *iter_r;

// print results
std::println("radius          area\n{:s}", std::string(25, '='));
iter_a = areas.begin();
for (auto iter_r = radii.begin(); iter_r != radii.end(); ++iter_r,
    ++iter_a)
    std::println("{:6.1f} {:15.6f}", *iter_r, *iter_a);
}

```

The next code block opens with the expression `auto iter_a = areas.begin()` that initializes iterator `iter_a` to the beginning of `areas`. The ensuing `for` loop utilizes forward iterators to calculate circle areas using the values in `radii`. Note that the `for` loop's iteration expression updates both `iter_r` and `iter_a`. The final code block of `Ch03_01_ex3()` prints the values of arrays `radii` and `areas`.

Listing 3-1-4 shows the code for function `Ch03_01_ex4()`, which exploits a predefined STL algorithm to sum the elements of an `std::array`. The first code block of `Ch03_01_ex4()` utilizes template function `RN::fill_ctr()` (located in `Common/RN.h`) to fill container `arr1` with random numbers. You'll learn about STL's random number classes and functions in Chapter 18. For the current example, it's only necessary to understand that `RN::fill_ctr()` fills `arr1` using a distribution model that uniformly selects random numbers from the interval `[rng_min, rng_max]`. Value `rng_seed` seeds the underlying random number engine.

Listing 3-1-4. Example Ch03_01 – Ch03_01_ex4()

```

void Ch03_01_ex4()
{
    constexpr size_t n {20};
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {1000};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {3};

    // fill arr1 with random values

```

```

std::array<int, n> arr1;
RN::fill_ctr(arr1, rng_min, rng_max, rng_seed);

// print elements of arr1
const char* fmt = "{:7d}";
constexpr size_t epl_max {10};
MT::print_ctr("\nelements of arr1:\n", arr1, fmt, epl_max);

// sum elements of arr1 using iterators
int sum1 {};
for (auto iter = arr1.begin(); iter != arr1.end(); ++iter)
    sum1 += *iter;
std::println("sum1: {:d}", sum1);

// sum elements of arr1 using std::accumulate()
int sum2 = std::accumulate(arr1.begin(), arr1.end(), 0);
std::println("sum2: {:d}", sum2);
}

```

The next code block in `Ch03_01_ex4()` employs `MT::print_ctr()` (located in `Common/MT.h`) to print the elements of container `arr1`. Arguments required by this function include a message text string, the container, a format specifier (`fmt`), and the maximum number of elements per line (`epl_max`). Going forward, most of the source code examples will utilize `MT::print_ctr()` or one of the other print functions defined in namespace `MT` to display a container's elements instead of using an explicit `for` loop or similar programming construct. This will enable you to focus on the principal STL code for each example and not be distracted by repetitive boilerplate code.

Following the print operation, `Ch03_01_ex4()` sums the elements of `arr1` using a `for` loop that employs iterators to reference each element in the container. Many programs perform summing operations like this, so you might be wondering if there's a predefined algorithm that you can use to sum the elements of a `std::array` or other container type. Yes, there is. The final code block utilizes STL algorithm `std::accumulate()`, which is declared in `<numeric>`, to sum the elements of `arr1`. The first two arguments of this function specify the range of elements that `std::accumulate` will operate over. For the current example, the range is `[arr1.begin(), arr1.end())` or all of the elements in `arr1`. The final argument of `std::accumulate()` specifies the initial value for `sum`. STL function `std::accumulate` essentially performs the same summing operation as the

preceding for loop. This function also accepts a fourth argument that allows a program to supply a different binary operator to replace the default operator+.

Listing 3-1-5 shows the code for `Ch03_01_ex5()`. This function demonstrates the use of STL algorithm `std::sort()`, which is declared in `<algorithm>`. The version of `std::sort()` that's utilized in `Ch03_01_ex5()` sorts the elements of range `[colors.begin(), colors.end())` using operator`<` (i.e., elements are sorted in ascending order). Overloaded versions of `std::sort()` that accept a binary compare predicate to override the algorithm's default use of operator`<` are also available.

Listing 3-1-5. Example Ch03_01 – Ch03_01_ex5()

```
void Ch03_01_ex5()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:15s}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {5};

    // create test arrays of std::string
    std::array<std::string, 15> colors1 {"Red", "Green", "Blue", "Cyan",
    "Magenta", "Yellow", "Black", "White", "Gray", "Orange", "Brown",
    "Pink", "Purple", "Amber", "Teal"};

    auto colors2 {colors1};

    // using std::sort
    std::sort(colors1.begin(), colors1.end());
    MT::print_ctr("\ncolors1 - after std::sort():\n", colors1, fmt,
    epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::sort (C++20)
    std::ranges::sort(colors2);
    MT::print_ctr("\ncolors2 - after std::ranges::sort():\n",
    colors2, fmt, epl_max);

    // using operator==
    std::println("\ncolors1 == colors2: {s}", colors1 == colors2);
}
```

Prior to C++20, most STL algorithm functions required the caller to supply two iterators just like `std::sort()`. This is useful when the algorithm needs to carry out a calculation using a subrange of the container's elements. For most use cases, however, you want the STL algorithm to work with the entire container. Repeatedly typing `begin()` and `end()` gets monotonous very quickly.

C++20 introduced a new set of range algorithms. The next code block in `Ch03_01_ex5()` demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::sort()`. Note that this function requires a single container (i.e., range) argument instead of two iterators. Also, note the different namespace, which differentiates `std::ranges::sort()` from its pre-C++20 counterpart. Like `std::sort()`, `std::ranges::sort()` defines distinct overloads that modify its default use of `operator<`.

The final code block of `Ch03_ex5()` demonstrates the use of `operator==` using `colors1` and `colors2`. This performs a lexicographical compare of the elements in `colors1` and `colors2`. More about this shortly.

Example `Ch03_01` exercised `std::accumulate()`, `std::sort()`, and `std::ranges::sort()` as means of gradually introducing STL algorithms. There are over 100 STL algorithms, and you'll learn how to use many of these later in this and in subsequent chapters. Here are the results for example `Ch03_01`:

```

----- Results for example Ch03_01 -----

----- Ch03_01_ex1() -----

array x_vals:
  100   200   300   400   500   600   700   800   900
x_vals.size(): 9

array x_vals:
  100   200   300   400   500   600   700   800   900

x_vals (reversed):
  900   800   700   600   500   400   300   200   100

----- Ch03_01_ex2() -----

x_vals (original values):
  10    20    30    40    50    60    70    80    90   100

x_vals (after adds):

```



```

    15    25    35    45    55    65    75    85    95    105
----- Ch03_01_ex3() -----
radius          area
=====
    1.0          3.141593
    1.4          6.157522
    2.0         12.566371
    2.8         24.630086
    4.0         50.265482
    5.6         98.520346
    8.0        201.061930
   11.0        380.132711

----- Ch03_01_ex4() -----
elements of arr1:
    551    71    709    840    291    122    511    570    893    438
    897    19    126    41    208    248    52    94    441    695
sum1: 7817
sum2: 7817

----- Ch03_01_ex5() -----
colors1 - after std::sort():
Amber          Black          Blue          Brown          Cyan
Gray           Green          Magenta       Orange         Pink
Purple         Red            Teal          White          Yellow

colors2 - after std::ranges::sort():
Amber          Black          Blue          Brown          Cyan
Gray           Green          Magenta       Orange         Pink
Purple         Red            Teal          White          Yellow

colors1 == colors2: true

```

As mentioned earlier, the primary purpose of `std::array` is to provide a safer and more convenient alternative to C-style arrays. It is important to keep in mind that the number of elements maintained by `std::array` is fixed. Unlike other sequence container

objects, you can't insert or remove elements from a `std::array`; you can only replace existing elements. For local instances of `std::array`, the contiguous block of memory for the array's elements is often situated on the stack. For some C++ implementations, this can preclude using `std::array` with a large number of elements.

A function can use `operator=` to create a copy of a `std::array`. It can also utilize one of the standard relational operators to lexicographically compare two `std::array` containers. When using relational operators, the `std::array` containers must be parameterized using the same type and size. The reason for this is that parameterized template objects such as `std::array<int, 5>` and `std::array<int, 10>` are *different* types. Examples of valid and invalid `std::array` relational operator use include

```
std::array<int, 4> a {10, 20, 30, 40};
std::array<int, 4> b {-10, -20, -30, -40};
std::array<long, 4> c {100, 200, 300, 400};
std::array<long, 5> d {100, 200, 300, 400, 500};

bool b1 = a == b;      // ok
bool b2 = a >= b;     // ok
a = b;                // ok

// bool b3 = a == c;   // error - different types
// bool b4 = c == d;   // error - different sizes
// a = c;              // error - different types and sizes
```

Using `std::vector`

Class `std::array` is a practical but somewhat limited sequence container. The biggest drawback of `std::array` is its compile-time fixed size. Many programs require the ability to allocate and utilize array-like data structures whose size is not known until runtime. Programs also require the ability to insert and/or remove elements. STL class `std::vector` is a container that eliminates the limitations of `std::array` while providing the same array-like usage capabilities.

Figure 3-4 shows the internal organization of a `std::vector`. Like `std::array`, `std::vector` encapsulates a size attribute along with a block of elements in contiguous memory. It also incorporates a capacity attribute that helps to improve performance when adding new elements to the end of a `std::vector`. You'll learn more about this attribute later in this section.

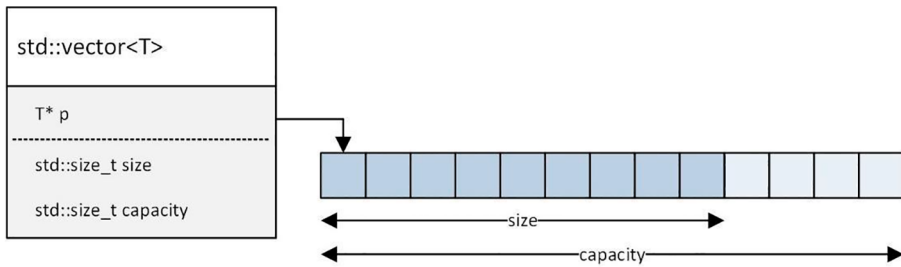


Figure 3-4. Sequence container `std::vector`

Listing 3-2-1 shows the first `std::vector` exposition function for example Ch03_02. Near the top of this function is the definition of `std::vector<int> vec1`, which includes an initializer list. This statement initializes a vector of five elements. Unlike the definitions of `std::array` that you saw in the previous example, class `std::vector` does not require a size parameter. The next statement, `std::vector<int> vec2(vec1.size())`, utilizes `std::vector::size()` to create a `std::vector<int>` of five elements, and each element is initialized to zero. In this statement, it's important to recognize the parentheses that surround constructor argument `vec1.size()`. The use of the statement `vec2{vec1.size()}` would instantiate a one-element vector whose value equals `vec1.size()`. The definition of `vec3` that follows demonstrates creation of a vector using an explicit fill value of seven.

Listing 3-2-1. Example Ch03_02 – Ch03_02_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch03_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <cmath>
#include <format>
#include <sstream>
#include <stdexcept>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch03_02.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "Point2D.h"
```

```

void Ch03_02_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:6d}";

    // create test vectors
    std::vector<int> vec1 {10, 20, 30, 40, 50}; // vec1 = {10, 20,
    30, 40, 50}
    std::vector<int> vec2(vec1.size());          // vec2 = {0, 0, 0, 0, 0}
    std::vector<int> vec3(vec1.size(), 7);      // vec3 = {7, 7, 7, 7, 7}

    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1: ", vec1, fmt);
    MT::print_ctr("vec2: ", vec2, fmt);
    MT::print_ctr("vec3: ", vec3, fmt);

    // using operator[] and .at()
    for (size_t i = 0; i < vec1.size(); ++i)
        vec2[i] = vec1.at(i) * vec3.at(i);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (after calculation): ", vec2, fmt);

    // create more test vectors
    std::vector<unsigned long long> vec4 {100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600,
    700, 800};
    std::vector<unsigned long long> vec5(vec4.size(), 100);
    std::vector<unsigned long long> vec6 {vec4.size()};          // vec6 = {8}
    std::vector<unsigned long long> vec7 {};                    // vec7 = {}

    MT::print_ctr("\nvec4: ", vec4, fmt);
    MT::print_ctr("vec5: ", vec5, fmt);
    MT::print_ctr("vec6: ", vec6, fmt);
    MT::print_ctr("vec7: ", vec7, fmt);

    // using iterators
    auto iter4 = vec4.begin();
    auto iter5 = vec5.begin();
    for (; iter4 != vec4.end(); ++iter4, ++iter5)
        *iter5 += *iter4 / 2;
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec5: ", vec5, fmt);
}

```

```

// using front() and back()
std::println("\nvec4.front(): {:6d}", vec4.front());
std::println("vec4.back():  {:6d}", vec4.back());

// using clear()
vec5.clear();
MT::print_ctr("\nvec5 (after clear): ", vec5, fmt);
std::println("vec5.size():  {:d}", vec5.size());
}

```

Following the prints of vectors `vec1`, `vec2`, and `vec3` is a code block that demonstrates the use of `std::vector::operator[]` and `std::vector` member function `std::vector::at()` to access vector elements. The next code block declares three `std::vector<unsigned long long>` vectors named `vec4`, `vec5`, and `vec6`. Note that `vec6` is defined using curly braces around `vec4.size()`, which signifies an initializer list. This statement constructs a single-element vector, and the value of that element is `vec4.size()` (eight). The next definition statement, `std::vector<unsigned long long> vec7 {}`, constructs a vector of `unsigned long longs` containing zero elements.¹ The ensuing code block utilizes iterators to calculate `vec5[i] += vec4[i] / 2`.

The final two code blocks of `Ch03_02_01()` spotlight the use of several member functions of `std::vector`. Functions `std::vector::front()` and `std::vector::back()` print the first and last elements of `vec4`. The `std::vector::clear()` function removes all elements from `vec5`.

Listing 3-2-2 shows the code for function `Ch03_02_ex2()`. Near the top of this function is the definition of a lambda expression that prints the size attributes for `vec1`. More on this shortly. The statement `std::vector<double> vec1 {}` creates an empty vector of doubles. In the next code block, `Ch03_02_ex2()` utilizes a `for` loop and `std::vector::push_back()` to add elements to the end of `vec1`. Each call to `push_back()` adds a new element to the end of `vec1`.

¹Member function `std::vector::resize()` can be used to change the size of a `std::vector`.

Listing 3-2-2. Example Ch03_02 – Ch03_02_ex2()

```

void Ch03_02_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:9.4f} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {6};
    constexpr size_t n {10};
    std::vector<double> vec1 {};          // empty vector

    // lambda expression for printing size attributes
    auto print_size_cap = [&vec1] ()
    {
        std::println("vec1.size(): {:d}  vec1.capacity(): {:d}",
            vec1.size(), vec1.capacity());
    };

    // add elements to vec1 using push_back()
    for (size_t i = 0; i < n; ++i)
        vec1.push_back(std::sqrt(static_cast<double>(i + 1)));
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 - initial values:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
    print_size_cap();

    // remove elements from vec1 using pop_back()
    while (vec1.size() >= n / 2)
        vec1.pop_back();
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 - after pop_back operations:\n", vec1, fmt,
        epl_max);
    print_size_cap();

    // add elements to middle of vec1 using insert
    std::array<double, 8> arr1 {10.0, 20.0, 30.0, 40.0, 50.0, 60.0,
        70.0, 80.0};
    vec1.insert(vec1.begin() + 2, arr1.begin(), arr1.end());
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 - after middle inserts:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
    print_size_cap();

    // add elements to end of vec1 using insert
    std::array<double, 6> arr2 {-10.0, -20.0, -30.0, -40.0, -50.0, -60.0};

```

```

vec1.insert(vec1.end(), arr2.begin(), arr2.end());
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 - after end inserts:\n", vec1, fmt, ep1_max);
print_size_cap();

// remove elements from vec1 using member erase (erases vec1[3] and
vec1[4])
vec1.erase(vec1.begin() + 3, vec1.begin() + 5);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 - after erase operation:\n", vec1, fmt, ep1_max);
print_size_cap();
}

```

An object of type `std::vector` maintains two different “size” attributes as shown in Figure 3-4. The attribute named `size` signifies the number of elements currently stored in a `std::vector`, while the `capacity` attribute denotes the maximum number of elements for which space is allocated. Member functions `std::vector::size()` and `std::vector::capacity()` can be used to query these attributes.

The capacity of a `std::vector` is often larger than its size to facilitate faster end-of-container insertions. Whenever the capacity of a vector becomes too small due to a `std::vector::push_back()` or other insertion operations, class `std::vector` will allocate a new block of memory to accommodate the new elements. This reallocation of storage space is a potentially time-consuming operation since it often requires copying (or moving) elements from the old memory buffer to the new one. A `std::vector` storage space reallocation also invalidates all iterators that reference elements in the container. If you scan ahead to the results section, you will notice that following the `push_back()` insertions, `vec1`’s size is 10, but its capacity is 13. A function can also utilize `std::vector::reserve()` to explicitly change the capacity of a `std::vector`.

The next code block contains a `for` loop that removes elements from `vec1` using `std::vector::pop_back()`. Like its `push_back()` counterpart, each call to `pop_back()` removes the last element (i.e., `vec1[vec1.size() - 1]`) from `vec1`. Note that `pop_back()` should not be called if the `std::vector` object is empty. You can utilize `size()` or `std::vector::empty()` to test for an empty container.

Class `std::vector` also defines member functions that can be used to insert multiple elements into a vector. The statement `vec1.insert(vec1.begin() + 2, arr1.begin(), arr1.end())` inserts all elements from `arr1` into `vec1`. The elements are copied from `arr1` and inserted into `vec1` before element `vec1.begin() + 2` (or `vec1[2]`). Note that

`arr1` is a container of type `std::array`. Many other STL algorithm functions also carry out their operations using iterators from two different containers.

The next code block also utilizes `insert()` to insert elements from `arr2` to the end of `vec1`. Similar to the previous `insert()`, the elements to be inserted are copied from a container of type `std::array`. The final code block of `Ch03_02_ex2()` employs `vec1.erase(vec1.begin() + 3, vec1.begin() + 5)` to erase elements `[vec1.begin() + 3, vec1.begin() + 5)` (i.e., `vec[3]` and `vec[4]`) from `vec1`. Erasing elements from a `std::vector` container invalidates any iterators from the insertion point to the end of the container. Performing erasures on a `std::vector` may also trigger the container into performing element copy or move operations, which may be time-consuming depending on the size of the vector or the element type.

Function `Ch03_02_ex3()`, shown in Listing 3-2-3, demonstrates additional methods of inserting elements into a `std::vector`. This function utilizes `std::copy()` to insert elements from `planets_cstr1` into `std::vector<std::string> planets1`. In the current example, the first two iterator arguments of `std::copy()` specify the range of source elements to copy. The third argument, `std::back_inserter(planets1)`, constructs an iterator of type `std::back_inserter_iterator` that enables `std::copy()` to employ `std::vector::push_back()` to perform the insertions.

Listing 3-2-3. Example `Ch03_02 - Ch03_02_ex3()`

```
void Ch03_02_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:s} ";
    std::vector<std::string> planets1;
    const char* planets_cstr1[] {"Mercury", "Venus", "Earth", "Mars"};
    const char* planets_cstr2[] {"Jupiter", "Saturn", "Uranus", "Neptune"};

    // using std::copy
    std::copy(std::begin(planets_cstr1), std::end(planets_cstr1),
              std::back_inserter(planets1));
    MT::print_ctr("planets1: ", planets1, fmt);

    // using assignment ctor and emplace_back
    std::vector<std::string> planets2 {planets1};
    planets2.emplace_back(planets_cstr2[0]);
    planets2.emplace_back(planets_cstr2[1]);
}
```



```

planets2.emplace_back(planets_cstr2[2]);
planets2.emplace_back(planets_cstr2[3]);
MT::print_ctr("planets2: ", planets2, fmt);

// using std::find
auto iter_mars = std::find(planets2.begin(), planets2.end(), "Mars");
bool found_mars = iter_mars != planets2.end();
std::println("\nfound_mars: {:s}", found_mars);

// using std::ranges::find (C++20)
auto iter_pluto = std::ranges::find(planets2, "Pluto");
bool found_pluto = iter_pluto != planets2.end();
std::println("found_pluto: {:s}", found_pluto);

// using std::sort
auto planets3 {planets2};
std::sort(planets2.begin(), planets2.end());
MT::print_ctr("\nplanets2 sorted: ", planets2, fmt);

// using std::ranges::sort (C++20)
std::ranges::sort(planets3);
MT::print_ctr("planets3 sorted: ", planets3, fmt);

// using operators
std::println("planets2 == planets3 (expect true): {:s}", planets2 ==
planets3);
std::swap(planets2[3], planets2[4]);
MT::print_ctr("\nplanets2 after swap: ", planets2, fmt);
MT::print_ctr("planets3 after swap: ", planets3, fmt);
std::println("planets2 > planets3 (expect true): {:s}", planets2 >
planets3);
std::println("planets2 < planets3 (expect false): {:s}", planets2 <
planets3);
}

```

The ensuing code block in `Ch03_02_ex3()` opens with the statement `std::vector<std::string> planets2 {planets1}`, which utilizes the copy constructor of `std::vector` to instantiate container `planets2`. Following execution of this statement,

`std::vector` `planets1` and `planets2` are identical (i.e., the corresponding element positions of both vectors contain the same value). The next statement, `planets2.emplace_back(planets_cstr2[0])`, inserts a new element into `planets2`. Member function `std::vector::emplace_back()` differs from `push_back()` in that the former performs an in-place construction of its argument at the memory location provided by the container. For non-fundamental types, using `emplace_back()` is often faster than defining an object and using `push_back()` since the latter entails execution of both a constructor and a copy operation.

One ubiquitous programming operation is to search a container for the existence of a specific value. The next code block in `Ch03_02_ex3()` utilizes STL algorithm `std::find()` (<algorithm>) to search `planets2`. The first two iterator arguments of `std::find()`, `planets2.begin()` and `planets2.end()`, define a range over which it will search for the value specified by the third argument. Function `std::find()` returns an iterator to the first element in the target container that matches the specified search value; if no match is found, it returns `end()`.

In the subsequent code block, `Ch03_02_ex3()` exercises `std::ranges::find(planets2, "Pluto")`, which searches `planets2` for an occurrence of `std::string {"Pluto"}`. As mentioned earlier, many C++11 algorithms have a C++20 counterpart in namespace `std::ranges` that you can use. For example, the next two code blocks demonstrate the use of STL algorithms `std::sort()` and `std::ranges::sort()`. These two variants perform the same sorting operation, but the latter is easier to read and type.

The final code block in `Ch03_02_ex3()` demonstrates how to perform relational comparisons using `std::vector` objects. The first statement utilizes operator `==` to compare `planets2` and `planets3` for equality. The lexicographical compare is performed using corresponding elements from the two vectors. Unlike template class `std::array<`, a function can compare two `std::vector`s of the same type but different sizes. Note the use of `std::swap(planets2[3], planets2[4])`, which swaps values of the specified elements, prior to the use of relational operators `operator>` and `operator<`.

The final function of example `Ch03_02` demonstrates how to remove a specific value from a `std::vector`. In Listing 3-2-4, function `Ch03_02_ex4()` opens with the creation of a `std::vector<Point2D<int>>` named `points`. Class `Point2D` is the same template class that you studied in Chapter 1 (see Listing 1-1-4). Following this is the definition of another `std::vector<Point2D<int>>` vector named `points_to_erase`.

Listing 3-2-4. Example Ch03_02 - Ch03_02_ex4()

```

void Ch03_02_ex4()
{
    const char* fmt {"{} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {6};

    // create point vectors
    std::vector<Point2D<int>> points {{3, 4}, {7, 9}, {-2, -4}, {-5, 6},
{12,10}, {3, -4}, {10, 2}, {3, -4}, {12, 10}, {-9, -2}, {-6, 4}, {12, 10}};
    std::vector<Point2D<int>> points_to_erase
        {{3, -4}, {-7, 6}, {7, 9}, {12,10}};

    MT::print_ctr("\nvector points (initial values):\n", points, fmt,
epl_max);
    std::println("points.size(): {:d}\n", points.size());

    // perform erasures
    for (const auto& point : points_to_erase)
    {
        // using std::erase (C++20) - erases all occurrences of point
        from points
        auto num_erased = std::erase(points, point);

        // print results
        std::print("current point {} - ", point);

        if (num_erased)
        {
            std::string s = (num_erased > 1) ? "s\n" : "\n";
            std::print("erased {:d} point{:s}", num_erased, s);
        }
        else
            std::print("not found\n");
    }
}

```

```

    MT::print_ctr("\nvector points (after erasures):\n", points, fmt,
    ep1_max);
    std::println("points.size(): {:d}", points.size());
}

```

Within the range for loop that’s shown in Listing 3-2-4, Ch03_02_ex4() utilizes `std::erase(points, point)` (C++20) to erase (remove) all occurrences of `point` from vector `points`. STL function `std::erase()` returns the number of matching elements it erased, and this value is used to print a suitable status message. A function can also exploit `std::erase_if()` to perform a predicate-controlled erasure. You’ll learn how to use this function in Chapter 8. Here are the results for example Ch03_02:

```

----- Results for example Ch03_02 -----

----- Ch03_02_ex1() -----

vec1:      10    20    30    40    50
vec2:       0     0     0     0     0
vec3:       7     7     7     7     7

vec2 (after calculation):      70   140   210   280   350

vec4:     100   200   300   400   500   600   700   800
vec5:     100   100   100   100   100   100   100   100
vec6:       8
vec7: <empty>

vec5:     150   200   250   300   350   400   450   500

vec4.front():    100
vec4.back():     800

vec5 (after clear): <empty>
vec5.size(): 0

----- Ch03_02_ex2() -----

vec1 - initial values:
  1.0000    1.4142    1.7321    2.0000    2.2361    2.4495
  2.6458    2.8284    3.0000    3.1623

```

```
vec1.size(): 10  vec1.capacity(): 13
```

```
vec1 - after pop_back operations:
```

```
  1.0000    1.4142    1.7321    2.0000
```

```
vec1.size(): 4  vec1.capacity(): 13
```

```
vec1 - after middle inserts:
```

```
  1.0000    1.4142   10.0000   20.0000   30.0000   40.0000
```

```
 50.0000   60.0000   70.0000   80.0000    1.7321    2.0000
```

```
vec1.size(): 12  vec1.capacity(): 13
```

```
vec1 - after end inserts:
```

```
  1.0000    1.4142   10.0000   20.0000   30.0000   40.0000
```

```
 50.0000   60.0000   70.0000   80.0000    1.7321    2.0000
```

```
 -10.0000  -20.0000  -30.0000  -40.0000  -50.0000  -60.0000
```

```
vec1.size(): 18  vec1.capacity(): 19
```

```
vec1 - after erase operation:
```

```
  1.0000    1.4142   10.0000   40.0000   50.0000   60.0000
```

```
 70.0000   80.0000    1.7321    2.0000  -10.0000  -20.0000
```

```
 -30.0000  -40.0000  -50.0000  -60.0000
```

```
vec1.size(): 16  vec1.capacity(): 19
```

```
----- Ch03_02_ex3() -----
```

```
planets1: Mercury Venus Earth Mars
```

```
planets2: Mercury Venus Earth Mars Jupiter Saturn Uranus Neptune
```

```
found_mars: true
```

```
found_pluto: false
```

```
planets2 sorted: Earth Jupiter Mars Mercury Neptune Saturn Uranus Venus
```

```
planets3 sorted: Earth Jupiter Mars Mercury Neptune Saturn Uranus Venus
```

```
planets2 == planets3 (expect true): true
```

```
planets2 after swap: Earth Jupiter Mars Neptune Mercury Saturn Uranus Venus
```

```
planets3 after swap: Earth Jupiter Mars Mercury Neptune Saturn Uranus Venus
```

```
planets2 > planets3 (expect true): true
```

```
planets2 < planets3 (expect false): false
```

```
----- Ch03_02_ex4() -----
```

```
vector points (initial values):
(3, 4) (7, 9) (-2, -4) (-5, 6) (12, 10) (3, -4)
(10, 2) (3, -4) (12, 10) (-9, -2) (-6, 4) (12, 10)
points.size(): 12

current point (3, -4) - erased 2 points
current point (-7, 6) - not found
current point (7, 9) - erased 1 point
current point (12, 10) - erased 3 points

vector points (after erasures):
(3, 4) (-2, -4) (-5, 6) (10, 2) (-9, -2) (-6, 4)
points.size(): 6
```

Class `std::vector` is undeniably the most useful of all STL sequence container classes. When deciding which sequence container to use for a particular algorithm, the ISO C++23 specification document states: “When choosing a container, remember vector is best; leave a comment to explain if you choose from the rest!” Regardless of whether you agree with this statement, most modern C++ programs utilize `std::vector` in a multiplicity of use cases, both ordinary and imaginative. This means that it’s important for you to fully understand how to properly utilize this class. You’ll study additional examples of `std::vector` usage later in this and subsequent chapters.

More Algorithms Using `std::array` and `std::vector`

Prior to C++20, programs were required to employ a different technique to remove all occurrences of an element value from a `std::vector` container. Listing 3-3-1 shows the source code for function `Ch03_03_ex1()`, which exemplifies the use of the erase-remove idiom for a `std::vector`. It’s important for you to understand this software idiom since you’re extremely likely to encounter it in pre-C++20 code.

Listing 3-3-1. Example Ch03_03 – Ch03_03_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch03_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <array>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch03_03.h"
#include "MT.h"

void Ch03_03_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:6.1f}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};
    constexpr double rem_val {-1.0};
    std::println("\nrem_val: {:.1f}", rem_val);

    // create test vectors
    std::vector<double> vec1 {10.0, 20.0, rem_val, 30.0, 40.0,
        rem_val, 50.0, rem_val, 60.0, 70.0};
    std::vector<double> vec2 {vec1};

    // using std::remove
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, 10);
    auto iter_rem = std::remove(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), rem_val);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after remove):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("vec1.size(): {:d}", vec1.size());

    // using std::vector::erase()
    auto num_erased1 = vec1.end() - iter_rem;
    vec1.erase(iter_rem, vec1.end());
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after erase):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("num_erased1: {:d}", num_erased1);
    std::println("vec1.size(): {:d}", vec1.size());

    // using std::erase (C++20)

```

```

MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (initial values):\n", vec2, fmt, 10);
auto num_erased2 = std::erase(vec2, rem_val);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (after std::erase):\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);
std::println("num_erased2: {:d}", num_erased2);
std::println("vec2.size(): {:d}", vec2.size());
}

```

Function `Ch03_03_ex1()` begins its execution with the creation of two type `std::vector<double>` vectors named `vec1` and `vec2`. Note that `rem_val` occurs multiple times in each vector. The initial statement of the ensuing code block utilizes `std::remove(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), test_val)` to “remove” all occurrences of `rem_val` from `vec1`. Figure 3-5 illustrates execution of this function in greater detail. Note that `std::remove()` didn’t actually remove any elements from `vec1`; it merely overwrites any occurrence of `rem_val` by moving other elements toward the front of the container. Following execution of `std::remove()`, `vec1` still contains `n` elements, but all element positions between `iter_rem` and `vec1.end()` contain unspecified values.² The ensuing `vec1.erase(iter_rem, vec1.end())` statement removes all values from `vec1` between `[iter_rem, vec1.end())`. Note that prior to execution of `vec1.erase()`, `Ch03_03_ex1()` utilized iterator arithmetic to calculate `num_erased1`.

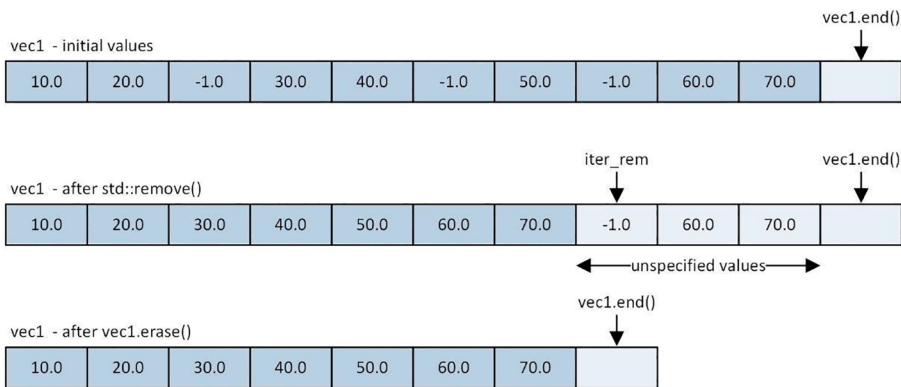


Figure 3-5. Illustration of *erase-remove idiom* for container class `std::vector`

²Elements at these locations can be dereferenced using an iterator (or accessed using operator `[]` or `at()`), but C++ does not guarantee any specific values.

The final code block utilizes `std::erase()` to perform the same operation and is shown for comparison purposes. Function `std::erase()` essentially implements the erase-remove idiom as a single algorithm.

For the final example of this chapter, let's look at a few algorithms that can be used to replace all occurrences of a value in a `std::array` or `std::vector`. Listing 3-3-2 shows the code for function `Ch03_03_ex2()`. Near the top of this function is a code block that initializes a `std::array<std::string>` of text values named `arr1`. Initialization of `std::vector<std::string> vec1` is next. Note that the constructor for `vec1` utilizes iterators `arr1.begin()` and `arr1.end()`. Following execution of `vec1`'s constructor, both `arr1` and `vec1` contain the same number of elements, and each element position contains the same string value.

Listing 3-3-2. Example Ch03_03 – Ch03_03_ex2()

```
void Ch03_03_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:15s}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {6};

    // initialize test containers
    std::array<std::string, 12> arr1
    {
        "Hydrogen", "Helium", "Lithium", "Beryllium", "Boron", "Carbon",
        "Nitrogen", "Oxygen", "Fluorine", "Neon", "Sodium", "Magnesium",
    };
    MT::print_ctr("\narr1 (initial values):\n", arr1, fmt, epl_max);

    std::vector<std::string> vec1(arr1.begin(), arr1.end());
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::replace and std::ranges::replace (C++20) with std::array
    std::replace(arr1.begin(), arr1.end(), "Neon", "NEON");
    std::ranges::replace(arr1, "Nitrogen", "NITROGEN");
    MT::print_ctr("\narr1 (after replace):\n", arr1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::replace and std::ranges::replace (C++20) with std::vector
    std::replace(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), "Neon", "NEON");
    std::ranges::replace(vec1, "Nitrogen", "NITROGEN");
}
```

```

MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after replace):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

// define unary predicate for later use
auto replace_if_pred = [](std::string& s) { return s[0] == 'N'; };

// using std::ranges::replace_if with std::array (C++20)
std::ranges::replace_if(arr1, replace_if_pred, "#####");
MT::print_ctr("\narr1 (after replace_if):\n", arr1, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::replace_if with std::vector (C++20)
std::ranges::replace_if(vec1, replace_if_pred, "#####");
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after replace_if):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

The next code block utilizes STL algorithms `std::replace()` and `std::ranges::replace()` (C++20) to modify specific values within `arr1`. Like the sorting algorithms that you saw earlier in this chapter, `std::replace()` is a C++11 function that utilizes iterator arguments to define a range over which it will operate; the C++20 variant `std::ranges::replace()` is more convenient to employ when replacing an element value using the entire container. The ensuing code block also utilizes `std::replace()` and `std::ranges::replace()` to carry out the same operation using `vec1`. One important detail to note here is that except for the actual containers, both uses of `std::replace()` and `std::ranges::replace()` are identical. Many STL algorithms are designed to be used with a variety of container types.

Execution of `Ch03_03_ex2()` continues with the definition of a lambda expression named `replace_if_pred`. This expression requires a single argument of type `std::string&` and returns `true` if the first letter of string `s` equals `'N'`; otherwise, it returns `false`. The following code block utilizes `replace_if_pred` as an argument to `std::ranges::replace_if()`. This algorithm applies the specified predicate to each element of `arr1`. If the predicate returns `true`, the element is overwritten using `"#####"`. A predicate result of `false` leaves the element unaltered. The final code block in `Ch03_03_02()` also exploits `replace_if_pred` and `std::ranges::replace_if()` to perform the same replacement operation using `vec1`. Here are the results for example `Ch03_03`:

----- Results for example Ch03_03 -----

----- Ch03_03_ex1() -----

rem_val: -1.0

vec1 (initial values):

10.0 20.0 -1.0 30.0 40.0 -1.0 50.0 -1.0 60.0 70.0

vec1 (after remove):

10.0 20.0 30.0 40.0 50.0 60.0 70.0 -1.0 60.0 70.0

vec1.size(): 10

vec1 (after erase):

10.0 20.0 30.0 40.0 50.0 60.0 70.0

num_erased1: 3

vec1.size(): 7

vec2 (initial values):

10.0 20.0 -1.0 30.0 40.0 -1.0 50.0 -1.0 60.0 70.0

vec2 (after std::erase):

10.0 20.0 30.0 40.0 50.0 60.0 70.0

num_erased2: 3

vec2.size(): 7

----- Ch03_03_ex2() -----

arr1 (initial values):

Hydrogen	Helium	Lithium	Beryllium	Boron	Carbon
Nitrogen	Oxygen	Fluorine	Neon	Sodium	Magnesium

vec1 (initial values):

Hydrogen	Helium	Lithium	Beryllium	Boron	Carbon
Nitrogen	Oxygen	Fluorine	Neon	Sodium	Magnesium

arr1 (after replace):

Hydrogen	Helium	Lithium	Beryllium	Boron	Carbon
NITROGEN	Oxygen	Fluorine	NEON	Sodium	Magnesium

vec1 (after replace):

```

Hydrogen   Helium   Lithium   Beryllium  Boron   Carbon
NITROGEN  Oxygen   Fluorine  NEON       Sodium  Magnesium

```

```
arr1 (after replace_if):
```

```

Hydrogen   Helium   Lithium   Beryllium  Boron   Carbon
#####    Oxygen   Fluorine  #####     Sodium  Magnesium

```

```
vec1 (after replace_if):
```

```

Hydrogen   Helium   Lithium   Beryllium  Boron   Carbon
#####    Oxygen   Fluorine  #####     Sodium  Magnesium

```

There are two takeaway points from the code in `Ch03_03_ex2()`. First, many STL algorithms accept lambda expression predicates that modify an algorithm's default behavior. Some STL algorithms like `std::ranges::replace_if()` require a predicate. Second, most STL algorithms can be applied to a variety of container types. For an algorithm to be usable with a specific container type, suitable iterator types must be supported by both the algorithm and container. You'll learn more about iterator types in Chapter 4.

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- A sequence container holds a collection of objects. Each object's position within the container is determined programmatically.
- There are five STL sequence container classes: `std::array`, `std::vector`, `std::deque`, `std::list`, and `std::forward_list`.
- Template class `std::array` is a sequence container whose size must be a compile-time constant. Objects can neither be inserted nor removed from a `std::array`.
- Template class `std::vector` is a sequence container whose size is specified at runtime. Objects can be inserted or removed anywhere from a `std::vector`; however, `std::vector` is most efficient when these operations are performed using the back end of the container.

- Both `std::array` and `std::vector` support indexed access to their elements using operator`[]` or member function `at()`. The latter throws an exception if it's used with an invalid index.
- Both `std::array` and `std::vector` support traversals using forward and reverse iterators.
- Both `std::array` and `std::vector` can be used with a variety of STL algorithms. This includes the classic algorithms of C++11 and the C++20 variants of namespace `std::ranges`.

CHAPTER 4

Sequence Containers – Part 2

This chapter covers additional sequence containers, including

- How to use `std::deque`
- How to use `std::list`
- How to use `std::forward_list`
- Iterators

The source code examples and accompanying explanations of this chapter focus on typical usages for sequence container classes `std::deque`, `std::list`, and `std::forward_list`. You'll also learn more about iterators and the various iterator categories.

Using `std::deque`

A `std::deque` (double-ended queue) is a vector-like sequence container that's optimized for insertions and removals at both ends. Programs often employ `std::deques` to implement algorithms that require last-in-first-out (LIFO) or first-in-first-out (FIFO) processing. Figure 4-1 illustrates the logical structure of a `std::deque`. Unlike a `std::vector`, the elements of a `std::deque` are not stored contiguously in a single block of memory but in multiple blocks, which facilitates faster dual-end insertions and removals. The downside of this scheme is higher memory usage and somewhat slower access for indexed references (e.g., `operator[]` and `at()`) compared to a `std::vector`.

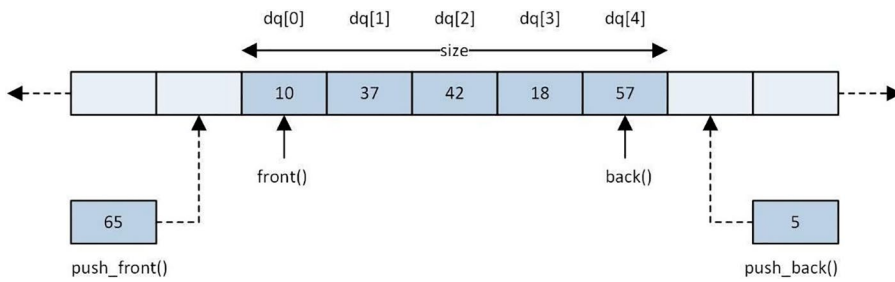


Figure 4-1. Logical structure of a `std::deque`

Source code example Ch04_01 illustrates how to perform ordinary operations using a `std::deque`. Listing 4-1-1 shows the code for `Ch04_01_ex1()`. In the opening code block of this function, the statement `std::deque<int> dq1 {10, 20, 30, 40, 50}` creates a `std::deque` that holds five objects of type `int` whose initial values are specified in the initializer list. The next statement, `std::deque<int> dq2 (dq1.size())`, instantiates a second `std::deque` of five ints, and each element is initialized to zero.

Listing 4-1-1. Example Ch04_01 – `Ch04_01_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch04_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <array>
#include <deque>
#include <functional>
#include <string>
#include <version>
#include "Ch04_01.h"
#include "Line.h"
#include "MT.h"

void Ch04_01_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:5d} ";
```

```

// create deque
std::deque<int> deq1 {10, 20, 30, 40, 50};
std::deque<int> deq2 (deq1.size());

// access deque elements using operator[] and .at()
for (size_t i = 0; i < deq1.size(); ++i)
    deq2[i] = deq1.at(i) * 5;

MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1: ", deq1, fmt);
MT::print_ctr("deq2: ", deq2, fmt);

// create deque
std::deque<long> deq3 {100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600};
std::deque<long> deq4(deq3.size(), 1000);

// using iterators
auto iter3 = deq3.begin();
auto iter4 = deq4.begin();
for (; iter3 != deq3.end(); ++iter3, ++iter4)
    *iter4 += *iter3 / 2;

MT::print_ctr("\ndeq3: ", deq3, fmt);
MT::print_ctr("deq4: ", deq4, fmt);
}

```

The subsequent code block spotlights the use of `std::deque` member functions `operator[]` and `at()`. Just like `std::vector`, the difference between these two is that the latter throws an exception if the supplied index is invalid. Skipping ahead a few lines, the statement `std::deque<long> deq4(deq3.size(), 1000)` instantiates a `std::deque` that holds `deq3.size()` elements and initializes each element to 1000. The final code block in `Ch04_01_ex1()` exercises iterators to carry out a simple arithmetic calculation using the elements of `deq3` and `deq4`.

Listing 4-1-2 shows the code for `Ch04_01_ex2()`. This function utilizes `std::deque::push_back()` and `std::deque::push_front()` to insert elements into the back and front ends of `deq1`. To remove an element from the back end of a `std::deque`, `Ch04_01_ex2()` employs member function `pop_back()`. The corresponding `std::deque` front-end removal function is `pop_front()`. The final code block in `Ch04_01_ex2()` exploits `deq1.insert(deq1.begin() + 2, arr1.begin(), arr1.end())` to insert new

elements into `deq1` immediately before `deq[2]`. One item that should be noted here is that except for `push_front()` and `pop_front()`, the member functions and operators utilized thus far to perform `std::deque` manipulations are the same as the ones you learned about in the previous chapter for `std::vector`.

Listing 4-1-2. Example Ch04_01 – Ch04_01_ex2()

```
void Ch04_01_ex2()
{
    std::deque<double> deq1 {};
    const char* fmt {"{:7.1f} "};

    // using deque::push_back
    deq1.push_back(50.0);
    deq1.push_back(60.0);
    deq1.push_back(70.0);
    deq1.push_back(80.0);
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after push_back operations):\n", deq1, fmt);

    // using deque::push_front
    deq1.push_front(40.0);
    deq1.push_front(30.0);
    deq1.push_front(20.0);
    deq1.push_front(10.0);
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after push_front operations):\n", deq1, fmt);

    // using deque::pop_back
    deq1.pop_back();
    deq1.pop_back();
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after pop_back operations):\n", deq1, fmt);

    // using deque::pop_front
    deq1.pop_front();
    deq1.pop_front();
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after pop_front operations):\n", deq1, fmt);
}
```

```

// add elements to "middle" of deq1 using insert
std::array<double, 5> arr1 {1000.0, 2000.0, 3000.0, 4000.0, 5000.0};
deq1.insert(deq1.begin() + 2, arr1.begin(), arr1.end());
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after insert):\n", deq1, fmt);
}

```

The next example function, named `Ch04_01_ex3()`, illustrates the use of `std::deque` member functions `emplace_front()` and `emplace_back()` using template class `Line`. Listing 4-1-3 shows the source code for `Ch04_01_ex3()`, while the source code for class `Line` was previously shown in Listing 1-7-2.

Listing 4-1-3. Example Ch04_01 – Ch04_01_ex3()

```

void Ch04_01_ex3()
{
    using line_t = Line<double>;

    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};

    // using deque::emplace_front
    std::deque<line_t> deq1 {};
    deq1.emplace_front(line_t {0.0, 0.0, 3.0, 4.0});
    deq1.emplace_front(line_t {0.0, 1.0, 3.0, 4.0});
    deq1.emplace_front(line_t {1.0, 0.0, 3.0, 4.0});
    deq1.emplace_front(line_t {1.0, 1.0, 3.0, 4.0});
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (initial values):\n", deq1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using deque::emplace_back
    std::deque<line_t> deq2 {};
    deq2.emplace_back(line_t {10.0, 10.0, 30.0, 40.0});
    deq2.emplace_back(line_t {10.0, 20.0, 30.0, 40.0});
    deq2.emplace_back(line_t {20.0, 10.0, 30.0, 40.0});
    deq2.emplace_back(line_t {20.0, 20.0, 30.0, 40.0});
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq2: (initial values):\n", deq2, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

```

    // using deque::insert_range (C++23)
    auto iter_insert = deq1.begin() + deq1.size() / 2;
#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges
    deq1.insert_range(iter_insert, deq2);
#else
    deq1.insert(iter_insert, deq2.begin(), deq2.end());
#endif
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after insert_range):\n", deq1, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Function `Ch04_01_ex3()` opens with a `using line_t = Line<double>` statement that defines an alias `line` type for this example to improve readability. Following the declaration of `deq1`, `Ch04_01_ex3()` employs four `emplace_front()` calls to insert four `line_t` objects into `deq1`. Member function `emplace_front()` differs from `push_front()` in that the former constructs the object at the proper position within the container. `Emplace` member functions are often faster than declaring an object and performing a discrete push since this requires execution of both a constructor and a copy operation. The ensuing code block illustrates the use of `emplace_back()`, which performs an `emplace` construction at the back end of `deq1`. Following the `emplace` operations, `Ch04_01_ex3()` utilizes `std::deque::insert_range()` (C++23) to insert additional `line_t` objects into `deq1`. Note the use of the preprocessor statement `#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges` to verify compiler support for `insert_range()`. If the current C++ implementation doesn't support `insert_range()`, `Ch04_01_ex3()` uses `std::deque::insert()` to carry out the same operation.

In Listing 4-1-4, function `Ch04_01_ex4()` employs function `std::deque::append_range()` (C++23) to append elements from array `arr1` to the end of `deq1`. Note that this code block also utilizes macro `__cpp_lib_containers_ranges` to confirm compiler support for `append_range()`.

Listing 4-1-4. Example `Ch04_01 - Ch04_01_ex4()`

```

void Ch04_01_ex4()
{
    const char* fmt "{:5s}";

    // initialize deque of strings
    std::deque<std::string> deq1 {"Jan", "Feb", "Mar", "Apr",
    "May", "Jun"};
}

```

```

MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (initial values):\n", deq1, fmt);

// using append_range (C++23)
std::array<std::string, 6> arr1 {"Jul", "Aug", "Sep", "Oct",
    "Nov", "Dec"};

#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges
    deq1.append_range(arr1);
#else
    deq1.insert(deq1.end(), arr1.begin(), arr1.end());
#endif
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after append_range):\n", deq1, fmt);

// using std::sort
std::sort(deq1.begin(), deq1.end());
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after sort using operator<):\n", deq1, fmt);

std::sort(deq1.begin(), deq1.end(), std::greater<>());
MT::print_ctr("deq1 (after sort using operator>):\n", deq1, fmt);

// using std::ranges::sort
std::deque deq2 {deq1};
std::ranges::sort(deq2);
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq2 (after ranges::sort using operator<):\n",
    deq2, fmt);

std::ranges::sort(deq2, std::greater<>());
MT::print_ctr("deq2 (after ranges::sort using operator>):\n",
    deq2, fmt);

// using relational operators
std::println("\ndeq1 == deq2: {:s}", deq1 == deq2);
std::swap(deq1[5], deq1[7]);
std::println("deq1 <= deq2: {:s}", deq1 <= deq2);
std::println("deq1 >= deq2: {:s}", deq1 >= deq2);
}

```

Following the insertions, `Ch04_01_ex4()` exercises `std::sort()` to sort the elements of `deq1` in ascending order. Recall that the default relational operator utilized by `std::sort()` is operator `<`. The next call to `std::sort()` utilizes function object `std::greater<>()` as an argument to sort the elements of `deq1` in descending. Function object `std::greater<>()` is a wrapper for a class's operator `>` and is often utilized to override the default behavior of `std::sort()` and other algorithm functions. The next code block utilizes algorithm `std::ranges::sort()` (C++20) to perform the same sorting operations using `deq2`. It's important to recognize here that except for the container type, `Ch04_01_ex4()`'s use of `std::sort()` and `std::ranges::sort()` are identical to the usages that you saw in example `Ch03_01` for `std::vector`.

The final code block of `Ch04_01_ex4()` illustrates the use of relational operators with deques. These expressions perform lexicographical compares using corresponding element positions of `deq1` and `deq2`.

Listing 4-1-5 shows the code for the concluding function of example `Ch04_01`. Following the creation of `std::deque deq1` and `deq2`, `Ch04_01_ex5()` exercises `std::remove()` and `std::deque::erase()` to remove all occurrences of `rem_value` from `deq1`. This code is the `std::deque` counterpart of the `std::vector` erase-remove idiom that you learned about in Chapter 3 (see example `Ch03_03` and Figure 3-5). The ensuing code block utilizes function `std::erase()` (C++23) to carry out the same erase operation using `deq2`.

Listing 4-1-5. Example `Ch04_01` – `Ch04_01_ex5()`

```
void Ch04_01_ex5()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:6.1f}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};
    constexpr double rem_val {-1.0};
    std::println("\nrem_val: {:.1f}", rem_val);

    // create test deques
    std::deque<double> deq1 {10.0, 20.0, rem_val, 30.0, 40.0,
        rem_val, 50.0, rem_val, 60.0, 70.0};
    std::deque<double> deq2 {deq1};

    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (initial values):\n", deq1, fmt, 10);
    std::println("deq1.size(): {d}", deq1.size());
}
```

```

// using std::remove and std::deque::erase (erase-remove idiom)
auto iter_rem = std::remove(deq1.begin(), deq1.end(), rem_val);
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after std::remove):\n", deq1, fmt, epl_max);
std::println("deq1.size(): {:d}", deq1.size());

auto num_erased1 = deq1.end() - iter_rem;
deq1.erase(iter_rem, deq1.end());
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after erase):\n", deq1, fmt, epl_max);
std::println("num_erased1: {:d}", num_erased1);
std::println("deq1.size(): {:d}", deq1.size());

// using std::erase (C++20)
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq2 (initial values):\n", deq2, fmt, 10);
std::println("deq2.size(): {:d}", deq2.size());
auto num_erased2 = std::erase(deq2, rem_val);
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq2 (after std::erase):\n", deq2, fmt, epl_max);
std::println("num_erased2: {:d}", num_erased2);
std::println("deq2.size(): {:d}", deq2.size());
}

```

Here are the results for example Ch04_01:

```

----- Results for example Ch04_01 -----

----- Ch04_01_ex1() -----

deq1:   10   20   30   40   50
deq2:   50  100  150  200  250

deq3:  100  200  300  400  500  600
deq4: 1050 1100 1150 1200 1250 1300

----- Ch04_01_ex2() -----

deq1 (after push_back operations):
  50.0   60.0   70.0   80.0

deq1 (after push_front operations):
  10.0   20.0   30.0   40.0   50.0   60.0   70.0   80.0

```

CHAPTER 4 SEQUENCE CONTAINERS – PART 2

deq1 (after pop_back operations):

10.0 20.0 30.0 40.0 50.0 60.0

deq1 (after pop_front operations):

30.0 40.0 50.0 60.0

deq1 (after insert):

30.0 40.0 1000.0 2000.0 3000.0 4000.0 5000.0 50.0 60.0

----- Ch04_01_ex3() -----

deq1 (initial values):

[(1, 1, 3, 4) | (3.6056, 1.5000)] [(1, 0, 3, 4) | (4.4721, 2.0000)]

[(0, 1, 3, 4) | (4.2426, 1.0000)] [(0, 0, 3, 4) | (5.0000, 1.3333)]

deq2: (initial values):

[(10, 10, 30, 40) | (36.0555, 1.5000)] [(10, 20, 30, 40) | (28.2843, 1.0000)]

[(20, 10, 30, 40) | (31.6228, 3.0000)] [(20, 20, 30, 40) | (22.3607, 2.0000)]

deq1 (after insert_range):

[(1, 1, 3, 4) | (3.6056, 1.5000)] [(1, 0, 3, 4) | (4.4721, 2.0000)]

[(10, 10, 30, 40) | (36.0555, 1.5000)] [(10, 20, 30, 40) | (28.2843, 1.0000)]

[(20, 10, 30, 40) | (31.6228, 3.0000)] [(20, 20, 30, 40) | (22.3607, 2.0000)]

[(0, 1, 3, 4) | (4.2426, 1.0000)] [(0, 0, 3, 4) | (5.0000, 1.3333)]

----- Ch04_01_ex4() -----

deq1 (initial values):

Jan Feb Mar Apr May Jun

deq1 (after append_range):

Jan Feb Mar Apr May Jun Jul Aug Sep Oct Nov Dec

deq1 (after sort using operator<):

Apr Aug Dec Feb Jan Jul Jun Mar May Nov Oct Sep

deq1 (after sort using operator>):

Sep Oct Nov May Mar Jun Jul Jan Feb Dec Aug Apr

```

deq2 (after ranges::sort using operator<):
Apr Aug Dec Feb Jan Jul Jun Mar May Nov Oct Sep
deq2 (after ranges::sort using operator>):
Sep Oct Nov May Mar Jun Jul Jan Feb Dec Aug Apr

deq1 == deq2: true
deq1 <= deq2: true
deq1 >= deq2: false

----- Ch04_01_ex5() -----

rem_val: -1.0

deq1 (initial values):
 10.0 20.0 -1.0 30.0 40.0 -1.0 50.0 -1.0 60.0 70.0
deq1.size(): 10

deq1 (after std::remove):
 10.0 20.0 30.0 40.0 50.0 60.0 70.0 -1.0 60.0 70.0
deq1.size(): 10

deq1 (after erase):
 10.0 20.0 30.0 40.0 50.0 60.0 70.0
num_erased1: 3
deq1.size(): 7

deq2 (initial values):
 10.0 20.0 -1.0 30.0 40.0 -1.0 50.0 -1.0 60.0 70.0
deq2.size(): 10

deq2 (after std::erase):
 10.0 20.0 30.0 40.0 50.0 60.0 70.0
num_erased2: 3
deq2.size(): 7

```

Compared to container class `std::vector`, `std::deque` provides additional capabilities that are advantageous in many applications. As mentioned earlier, `std::deques` are often utilized to implement algorithms that require LIFO or FIFO processing. You probably already know that stacks and queues are exemplars of LIFO and FIFO containers, respectively. Before using a `std::deque` as a stack or queue, you should consider using a container adaptor class such as `std::stack` and `std::queue`. You'll study container adaptor classes in Chapter 9.

Using `std::list`

A `std::list` is a sequential container that's an abstraction of a doubly linked list. Figure 4-2 illustrates the logical structure of a `std::list`. Like a `std::deque`, `std::lists` support fast constant-time insertions and removals using either container end. Mid-container insertions and removals are also performed in constant time since these operations are achievable using pointer manipulations instead of object copies or moves. And unlike the other sequence containers that you've learned about thus far, inserting or removing elements from a `std::list` doesn't invalidate any iterators, except those that reference a removed element.

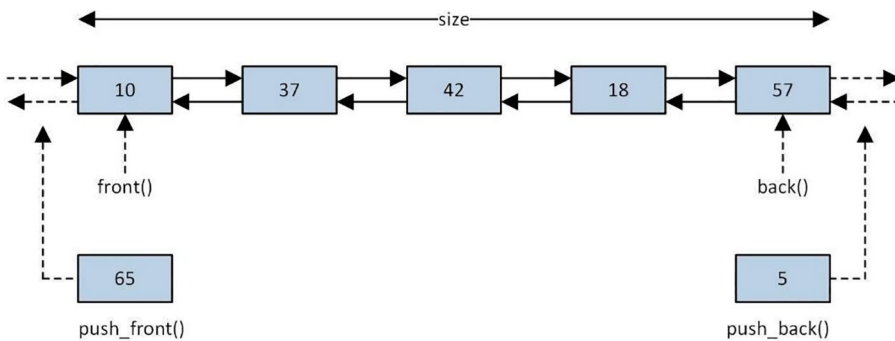


Figure 4-2. Logical structure of a `std::list`

A `std::list` container does not support random access operations, which means a program can't access its elements using operator `[]` or `at()`. A program must exploit iterators to traverse a `std::list` container, but this movement can be carried out in either direction. Lack of random access operations also means that some STL algorithms can't be used with `std::lists`; however, class `std::list` defines suitable alternatives for some of these algorithms.

Source code example Ch04_02 demonstrates how to carry out common operations using `std::lists`. Listing 4-2-1 shows the source code for function `Ch04_02_ex1()`. In the opening code block, note that the declaration of `list1` includes an initializer `list`, which specifies the initial elements. The next code block utilizes `push_front()` and `push_back()` to add an element to the front and back ends of `list1`, respectively. A program can also employ `pop_front()` and `pop_back()` to remove elements from a `std::list`.

Listing 4-2-1. Example Ch04_02 – Ch04_02_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch04_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <array>
#include <iterator>
#include <list>
#include <stdexcept>
#include "Ch04_02.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "Point2D.h"

void Ch04_02_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:<5d}";
    std::list<int> list1 {20, 30, 40, 40, 50, 60, 70, 70, 70, 80};
    MT::print_ctr("list1 (initial values):\n", list1, fmt);

    // using list::push_front and list::push_back
    list1.push_front(10);
    list1.push_back(90);
    MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (after push_front, push_back):\n", list1, fmt);
    std::print("list1.size(): {:<d}\n", list1.size());
    std::print("list1.front(): {:<d}\n", list1.front());
    std::print("list1.back(): {:<d}\n", list1.back());
}
```

```

// using std::advance
auto iter_mid = list1.begin();
std::advance(iter_mid, list1.size() / 2);

// using list::insert
std::array<int, 3> more_vals {-40, -50, -60};
list1.insert(iter_mid, more_vals.begin(), more_vals.end());
MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (after insert):\n", list1, fmt);
std::print("list1.size(): {:d}\n", list1.size());
std::print("list1.front(): {:d}\n", list1.front());
std::print("list1.back(): {:d}\n", list1.back());

// using remove
list1.remove(40);
list1.remove(70);
MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (after remove):\n", list1, fmt);
std::print("list1.size(): {:d}\n", list1.size());
std::print("list1.front(): {:d}\n", list1.front());
std::print("list1.back(): {:d}\n", list1.back());

// using remove_if
auto rem_op = [] (int x) { return x % 60 == 0; };
list1.remove_if(rem_op);
MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (after remove_if):\n", list1, fmt);
std::print("list1.size(): {:d}\n", list1.size());
std::print("list1.front(): {:d}\n", list1.front());
std::print("list1.back(): {:d}\n", list1.back());
}

```

The statement `auto iter_mid = list1.begin()` initializes an iterator to the first element in `list1`. The next expression, `std::advance(iter_mid, list1.size() / 2)`, adjusts `iter_mid` so that it points to the middle element in `list1`. Function `std::advance()` is an iterator helper function that increments `iter_mid` by `list.size() / 2`. The reason `std::advance()` is utilized here instead of calculating `iter_mid + list1.size() / 2` directly is that class `std::list` iterators only support `operator++` and `operator--`, both prefix and postfix. You'll learn more about the

different iterator types and which operations they support later in this chapter. For the current example, using `std::advance()` is more convenient than having to code a for loop that performs `++iter_mid list1.size() / 2` times.¹

The next code block employs `std::list::insert()` to insert the elements from `std::array more_vals` into `list1`. The elements are inserted into `list1` before `iter_mid`. If you scan ahead to the results section for example `Ch04_02`, you'll notice that the elements from `move_vals` are inserted before value 50.

Examples `Ch03_03` and `Ch04_01` exploited global algorithm `std::remove()` to remove all occurrences of a value from a `std::vector` and `std::deque`. This same function can also be utilized to perform removals using a `std::list`. However, the next code block applies `std::list::remove()` to remove all occurrences of 40 and 70 from `list1`. Some STL container classes define member functions that carry out the same operation as a global algorithm. Whenever this occurs, you should favor the use of the member function instead of the global algorithm since the former is likely to be optimized for the container's internal data structures. Another advantage of using `std::list::remove()` here is that this function also erases elements from the list, which means a subsequent call to `std::list::erase()` is not necessary.

The final code block of `Ch04_02_ex1()` exercises `std::line::remove_if()` instead of `std::remove_if()` to remove all elements from `list1` that return true for predicate `rem_pred`.

Listing 4-2-2 shows the source code for `Ch04_02_ex2()`, which demonstrates the use of `std::list::splice()`.

Listing 4-2-2. Example `Ch04_02` – `Ch04_02_ex2()`

```
void Ch04_02_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:s} ";

    // create lists
    std::list<std::string> list1 {"Jan", "Feb", "Mar", "Apr",
        "Sep", "Oct", "Nov", "Dec"};
    std::list<std::string> list2 {"May", "Jun", "Jul", "Aug"};
```

¹Function `std::advance()` essentially performs this calculation.

```

MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (initial values): ", list1, fmt);
MT::print_ctr("list2 (initial values): ", list2, fmt);

// using list::splice
auto iter_splice = list1.begin();
std::advance(iter_splice, 4);

list1.splice(iter_splice, list2);
MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (after splice): ", list1, fmt);
MT::print_ctr("list2 (after splice): ", list2, fmt);
}

```

Following initialization of `list1` and `list2`, `Ch04_02_ex2()` exercises `std::advance()` to calculate an arbitrary point in `list1` for the splice. The next statement, `list1.splice(iter_splice, list2)`, inserts `list2` into `list1` just before `iter_splice` as shown in Figure 4-3. Note in this figure that following the splice operation, `list2` is empty. The splicing of two `std::list`s is a fast operation since it doesn't require any element copy or move operations; it merely updates the internal node pointers of the two `std::list`s.

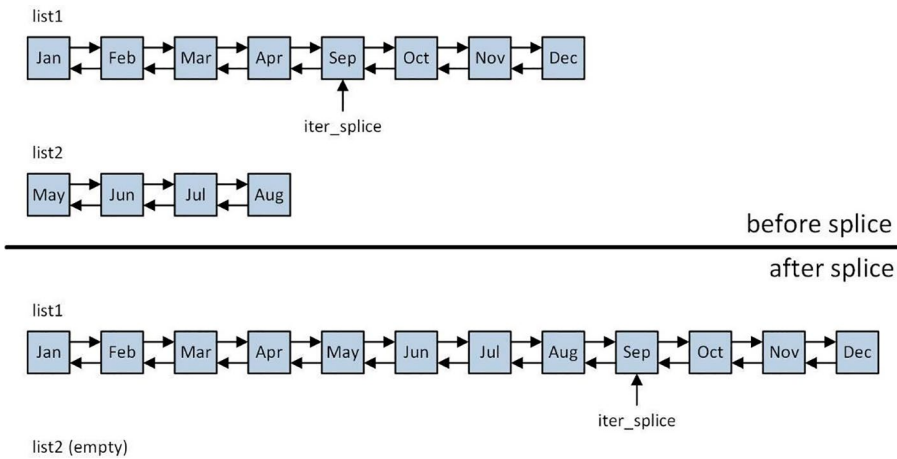


Figure 4-3. List splicing using `std::list`

In Listing 4-2-3, function `Ch04_02_ex3()` performs a simple calculation using containers of type `line_t` (alias for `List<Point2D<double>>`) and iterators (see Listing 1-1-4 for class `Point2D`). Near the top of Listing 4-2-3 are the declarations of three `std::list`s named `list1`, `list2`, and `list3`. Note that `list3` contains `list1.size()` elements, and these are initialized using the `Point2D`'s default constructor.

Listing 4-2-3. Example Ch04_02 - Ch04_02_ex3()

```

void Ch04_02_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {4};

    // create lists
    using list_t = std::list<Point2D<double>>;
    list_t list1 { {10.0, 10.0}, {20.0, 20.0}, {30.0, 30.0},
                  {40.0, 40.0} };
    list_t list2 { {-1.0, -2.0}, {-3.0, -4.0}, {-5.0, -6.0},
                  {-7.0, -8.0} };
    list_t list3 (list1.size());

    if (list1.size() != list2.size())
        throw std::runtime_error("Ch04_02_ex3() - list size error");

    MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (initial values): ", list1, fmt, epl_max);
    MT::print_ctr("list2 (initial values): ", list2, fmt, epl_max);
    MT::print_ctr("list3 (initial values): ", list3, fmt, epl_max);

    // using iterators
    auto iter1 = list1.cbegin();
    auto iter2 = list2.cbegin();
    auto iter3 = list3.begin();
    for (; iter1 != list1.cend(); ++iter1, ++iter2)
        *iter3++ = *iter1 + *iter2;

    MT::print_ctr("\nlist3 (after for loop): ", list3, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Prior to the for loop, `Ch04_02_ex3()` initializes iterators `iter1`, `iter2`, and `iter3`, all of which point to the first elements of their respective lists. Iterators `iter1` and `iter2` are initialized using `cbegin()`, which means they're const iterators and can only be used to read elements from `list1` and `list2`. Besides `cbegin()`, most container classes define const iterator functions `cend()`, `crbegin()`, and `crend()`. Just like a const pointer, using

a `const` iterator precludes inadvertent value modifications and may enable the compiler to generate more efficient code. The arbitrary calculation within the `for` loop adds corresponding `Point2D` elements from `list1` and `list2` and saves the sum in `list3`.

The final `std::list` example, shown in Listing 4-2-4, utilizes `emplace_back()` and `emplace_front()` to initialize two lists of type `std::list<std::string>`. Following initialization of these lists, `Ch04_02_ex4()` utilizes `std::list::sort()` to sort the elements of `list1` and `list2`. Global function `std::sort()` cannot be used here since it requires random access iterators (i.e., an iterator that defines `operator[]`), which class `std::list` does not support. Function `std::list::sort()` performs a stable sort² using `operator<`. An overload of `std::list::sort()` that accepts a binary compare predicate is also available. You'll learn more about sorting algorithms in Chapter 12.

Listing 4-2-4. Example `Ch04_02 - Ch04_02_ex4()`

```
void Ch04_02_ex4()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:14s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {5};

    // using list::emplace_back and list::emplace_front
    std::list<std::string> list1 {};
    std::list<std::string> list2 {};
    list1.emplace_back("Alanine");
    list2.emplace_back("Arginine");
    list1.emplace_front("Asparagine");
    list2.emplace_front("Aspartate");
    list1.emplace_back("Cysteine");
    list2.emplace_back("Glutamine");
    list1.emplace_front("Glutamate");
    list2.emplace_front("Glycine");
    list1.emplace_back("Histidine");
    list2.emplace_back("Isoleucine");
}
```

² A stable sort preserves the order of equivalent elements.

```

list1.emplace_front("Leucine");
list2.emplace_front("Lysine");
list1.emplace_back("Methionine");
list2.emplace_back("Phenylalanine");
list1.emplace_front("Proline");
list2.emplace_front("Serine");
list1.emplace_back("Threonine");
list2.emplace_back("Tryptophan");
list1.emplace_front("Tyrosine");
list2.emplace_front("Valine");

MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (initial values):\n", list1, fmt, epl_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nlist2 (initial values):\n", list2, fmt, epl_max);

// using list::sort
list1.sort();
list2.sort();
MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (after sort):\n", list1, fmt, epl_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nlist2 (after sort):\n", list2, fmt, epl_max);

// using list::merge
list1.merge(list2);
MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (after merge):\n", list1, fmt, epl_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nlist2 (after merge):\n", list2, fmt, epl_max);

// using list::reverse
list1.reverse();
MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (after reverse):\n", list1, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Following the sorts of `list1` and `list2`, `Ch04_02_ex4()` utilizes `list1.merge(list2)` to merge `list2` into `list1`. Member function `std::list::merge()` only works with sorted lists. Like the splice operation that you saw earlier, `std::list::merge()` updates internal pointers of the two `std::list`s; it does not execute any object copy or move operations. Following execution of `list1.merge(list2)`, `list1` contains all elements from the pre-merger lists and `list2` is empty. Note in the results section that the

elements of `list1` are sorted. The final code block of `Ch04_02_ex2()` demonstrates how to use `list1.reverse()`, which reverses the order of elements in `list1`. Here are the results for example `Ch04_02`:

```
----- Results for example Ch04_02 -----  
  
----- Ch04_02_ex1() -----  
list1 (initial values):  
20  30  40  40  50  60  70  70  70  80  
  
list1 (after push_front, push_back):  
10  20  30  40  40  50  60  70  70  70  80  90  
list1.size(): 12  
list1.front(): 10  
list1.back(): 90  
  
list1 (after insert):  
10  20  30  40  40  50  -40 -50 -60 60  70  70  70  80  90  
list1.size(): 15  
list1.front(): 10  
list1.back(): 90  
  
list1 (after remove):  
10  20  30  50  -40 -50 -60 60  80  90  
list1.size(): 10  
list1.front(): 10  
list1.back(): 90  
  
list1 (after remove_if):  
10  20  30  50  -40 -50 80  90  
list1.size(): 8  
list1.front(): 10  
list1.back(): 90  
  
----- Ch04_02_ex2() -----  
  
list1 (initial values): Jan Feb Mar Apr Sep Oct Nov Dec  
list2 (initial values): May Jun Jul Aug
```

```
list1 (after splice): Jan Feb Mar Apr May Jun Jul Aug Sep Oct Nov Dec
list2 (after splice): <empty>
```

```
----- Ch04_02_ex3() -----
```

```
list1 (initial values): (10, 10) (20, 20) (30, 30) (40, 40)
list2 (initial values): (-1, -2) (-3, -4) (-5, -6) (-7, -8)
list3 (initial values): (0, 0) (0, 0) (0, 0) (0, 0)
list3 (after for loop): (9, 8) (17, 16) (25, 24) (33, 32)
```

```
----- Ch04_02_ex4() -----
```

```
list1 (initial values):
Tyrosine      Proline      Leucine      Glutamate    Asparagine
Alanine       Cysteine     Histidine    Methionine    Threonine
```

```
list2 (initial values):
Valine        Serine       Lysine       Glycine       Aspartate
Arginine      Glutamine   Isoleucine   Phenylalanine Tryptophan
```

```
list1 (after sort):
Alanine       Asparagine   Cysteine     Glutamate     Histidine
Leucine       Methionine   Proline      Threonine     Tyrosine
```

```
list2 (after sort):
Arginine      Aspartate    Glutamine    Glycine       Isoleucine
Lysine        Phenylalanine Serine        Tryptophan    Valine
```

```
list1 (after merge):
Alanine       Arginine     Asparagine   Aspartate     Cysteine
Glutamate     Glutamine   Glycine      Histidine     Isoleucine
Leucine       Lysine      Methionine   Phenylalanine Proline
Serine        Threonine   Tryptophan  Tyrosine     Valine
```

```
list2 (after merge):
<empty>
```

list1 (after reverse):

Valine	Tyrosine	Tryptophan	Threonine	Serine
Proline	Phenylalanine	Methionine	Lysine	Leucine
Isoleucine	Histidine	Glycine	Glutamine	Glutamate
Cysteine	Aspartate	Asparagine	Arginine	Alanine

The primary advantage of container `std::list` compared to `std::vector` and `std::deque` is that class `std::list` performs fast element insertions and removals without invalidating existing iterators, except for the removed element. Operations such as merging, sorting, and splicing are also relatively fast since these operations are carried out sans any element copies or moves. The one notable drawback of `std::list` is its lack of random access operations.

Using `std::forward_list`

Container class `std::forward_list` is an abstraction of a singly linked list as shown in Figure 4-4. Operationally, a `std::forward_list` resembles a `std::list` in that element insertions and removals are relatively fast since no copy or move operations are performed; only internal pointers are manipulated. However, a `std::forward_list` can only be traversed using forward iterators. Bidirectional iterators like those of `std::list` are not supported. The lack of bidirectional iterator support also means that a `std::forward_list` does not support common container member functions including `rbegin()` and `rend()`. There's also no `size()` function. More about this later. From a resource perspective, a `std::forward_list` is marginally better than a `std::list`, both in terms of memory space and execution time.

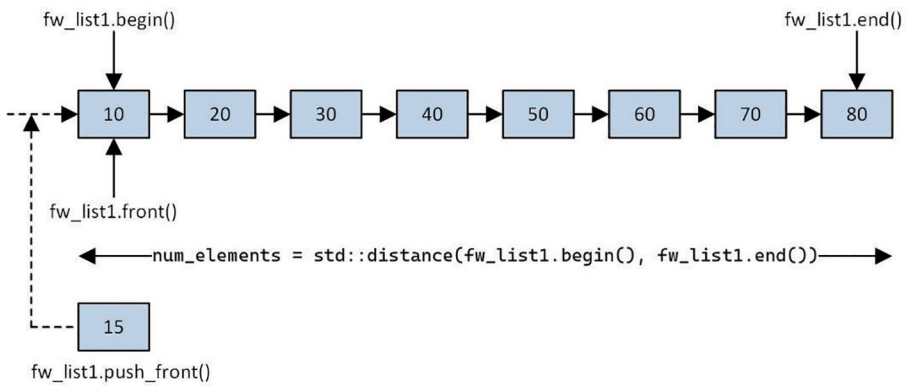


Figure 4-4. Logical structure of a `std::forward_list`

Listing 4-3-1 shows the source code for the first function of source code example Ch04_03. In this listing, function `Ch04_03_ex1()` commences its execution with the creation of a `std::forward_list` named `fw_list1`. Next is a series of `push_front()` calls that add a few more elements to the front end of `fw_list1`. You can also use `pop_front()` to remove an element from the front of a `std::forward_list`. It warrants mentioning here that `std::forward_list` doesn't support back-end insertions or removals, which means that `push_back()` and `pop_back()` are not defined.

Listing 4-3-1. Example Ch04_03 – `Ch04_03_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch04_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <array>
#include <forward_list>
#include <functional>
#include <iterator>
#include <string>
#include "Ch04_03.h"
#include "MT.h"

void Ch04_03_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:3d} ";
```

```

// create forward_list
std::forward_list<int> fw_list1 {10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80};
MT::print_ctr("\nfw_list1 (initial values):\n", fw_list1, fmt);

// using forward_list::push_front
fw_list1.push_front(15);
fw_list1.push_front(25);
fw_list1.push_front(35);
fw_list1.push_front(45);
fw_list1.push_front(55);
fw_list1.push_front(65);
fw_list1.push_front(75);
MT::print_ctr("\nfw_list1 (after push_front):\n", fw_list1, fmt);

// calculate num_elements
auto num_elements = std::distance(fw_list1.begin(), fw_list1.end());
std::println("num_elements: {:d}", num_elements);

// using forward_list::sort
fw_list1.sort();
MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (after sort):\n", fw_list1, fmt);

// using forward_list::reverse
fw_list1.reverse();
MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (after reverse):\n", fw_list1, fmt);
}

```

As mentioned earlier, class `std::forward_list` doesn't define a `size()` function. The reason for this is that maintaining an element count would burden all instances of `std::forward_list` with additional execution overhead, including use cases where it's not needed.³ The next code block in `Ch04_03_ex1()` demonstrates the use of helper function `std::distance()` to calculate the number of elements in a `std::forward_list`. In the current example, `std::distance()` essentially counts the number of iterator `operator++` executions needed to traverse `fw_list1` from `begin()` to `end()`.

³The primary design objective for class `std::forward_list` is zero overhead, both space and time, relative to a hand-coded C-style singly linked list. Maintaining an element count would compromise this objective.

The time required to do this will, of course, vary depending on the number of elements in `fw_list1`. For use cases where determining (in constant time) the number of elements in a `std::forward_list` is critical, you should consider using a `std::list` instead of a `std::forward_list`.

The next code block in `Ch04_03_ex1()` demonstrates the use of `std::forward_list::sort()`. Like class `std::list`, global algorithm `std::sort()` cannot be used with instances of `std::forward_list` since this class doesn't support bidirectional iterators. The final code block of `Ch04_03_ex1()` utilizes `std::forward_list::reverse()` to reverse the elements of `fw_list1`.

Function `Ch04_03_ex2()`, shown in Listing 4-3-2, starts with the creation of two lists of type `fw_list_t` (alias for `std::forward_list<std::string>`). The code blocks that follow the creation of `fw_list1` and `fw_list2` demonstrate the use of `std::forward_list::splice_after()`. In this example, execution of `splice_after(iter_splice, fw_list2)` inserts `fw_list2` into `fw_list1` immediately after string element "tangerine". Note that `std::advance()` is applied to calculate the correct splice position. Following the `splice_after()` operation, `fw_list1` contains nine `std::string` elements, while `fw_list2` is empty.

Listing 4-3-2. Example `Ch04_03 - Ch04_03_ex2()`

```
void Ch04_03_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl {6};
    using fw_list_t = std::forward_list<std::string>;

    // initialize lists
    fw_list_t fw_list1 {"lemon", "lime", "orange", "tangerine",
        "grapefruit"};
    MT::print_ctr("\nfw_list1 (initial values):\n", fw_list1, fmt, epl);

    fw_list_t fw_list2 {"raspberry", "strawberry", "blueberry",
        "blackberry"};
    MT::print_ctr("\nfw_list2 (initial values):\n", fw_list2, fmt, epl);

    // using forward_list::splice
    auto iter_splice = fw_list1.begin();
    std::advance(iter_splice, 3);
```

```

fw_list1.splice_after(iter_splice, fw_list2);
MT::print_ctr("\nfw_list1 (after splice):\n", fw_list1, fmt, epl);
MT::print_ctr("\nfw_list2 (after splice):\n", fw_list2, fmt, epl);

// using forward_list::remove_if
const std::string find_ss {"berry"};
auto rem_op = [&find_ss](std::string s)
    {return s.find(find_ss) != std::string::npos;};

fw_list1.remove_if(rem_op);
MT::print_ctr("\nfw_list1 (after remove_if):\n", fw_list1, fmt, epl);
}

```

In its final code block, `Ch04_03_ex2()` defines a unary lambda expression named `rem_pred` that returns true if string argument `s` contains substring `find_ss` ("berry"). This lambda expression is used as an argument to `std::forward_list::remove_if()` to remove all strings that contain substring `find_ss` from `fw_list1`.

Listing 4-3-3 shows the code for the concluding function of example Ch04_03. Function `std::forward_list::prepend_range()` (C++ 23) is a member function that appends a range of elements to the beginning of a `std::forward_list`. Like some of the previous examples that you've seen, `Ch04_03_ex3()` utilizes preprocessor macro `__cpp_lib_containers_ranges` to confirm compiler support for `prepend_range()`.

Listing 4-3-3. Example Ch04_03 – Ch04_03_ex3()

```

void Ch04_03_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:4d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // create forward_list
    std::forward_list<int> fw_list1 {60, 70, 80, 90, 100};
    MT::print_ctr("\nfw_list1 (initial values):\n", fw_list1, fmt,
        epl_max);
}

```

```

// using forward_list::prepend_range
const std::array<int, 5> arr1 {10, 20, 30, 40, 50};

#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges
    fw_list1.prepend_range(arr1);
#else
    fw_list1.insert_after(fw_list1.before_begin(), arr1.cbegin(),
        arr1.cend());
#endif

MT::print_ctr("\nfw_list1 (after prepend_range):\n", fw_list1, fmt,
    epl_max);

// using forward_list::insert_range_after
auto iter = fw_list1.begin();
std::advance(iter, 3);
const std::array<int, 9> arr2 {41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49};

#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges
    fw_list1.insert_range_after(iter, arr2);
#else
    fw_list1.insert_after(iter, arr2.begin(), arr2.end());
#endif

MT::print_ctr("\nfw_list1 (after insert_range_after):\n",
    fw_list1, fmt,
    epl_max);

// using std::erase_if
std::erase_if(fw_list1, [](int x) { return x % 3 == 0; });
MT::print_ctr("\nfw_list1 (after erase_if):\n", fw_list1, fmt,
    epl_max);
}

```


The next code block in Listing 4-3-3 utilizes `insert_range_after()` (C++23) to insert elements from `arr2` into `fw_list1` immediately after element value 40. Once again, `std::advance()` is applied to calculate a target insert position in `fw_list1`. The final code block in `Ch04_03_ex3()` exploits `std::erase_if()` to erase all evenly divisible-by-three values from `fw_list1`. Note that the predicate expression for `erase_if()` is defined not as a named function object but inline as part of the call, which is typical for a short single-use function object. Here are the results for example `Ch04_03`:

```

----- Results for example Ch04_03 -----

----- Ch04_03_ex1() -----

fw_list1 (initial values):
 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80

fw_list1 (after push_front):
 75 65 55 45 35 25 15 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80
num_elements: 15

list1 (after sort):
 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 65 70 75 80

list1 (after reverse):
 80 75 70 65 60 55 50 45 40 35 30 25 20 15 10

----- Ch04_03_ex2() -----

fw_list1 (initial values):
lemon lime orange tangerine grapefruit

fw_list2 (initial values):
raspberry strawberry blueberry blackberry

fw_list1 (after splice):
lemon lime orange tangerine raspberry strawberry
blueberry blackberry grapefruit

fw_list2 (after splice):
<empty>

```

```

fw_list1 (after remove_if):
lemon lime orange tangerine grapefruit

----- Ch04_03_ex3() -----

fw_list1 (initial values):
 60  70  80  90 100

fw_list1 (after prepend_range):
 10  20  30  40  50  60  70  80  90 100

fw_list1 (after insert_range_after):
 10  20  30  40  41  42  43  44  45  46
 47  48  49  50  60  70  80  90 100

fw_list1 (after erase_if):
 10  20  40  41  43  44  46  47  49  50
 70  80 100

```

Understanding Iterators

Each source code example discussed in this (and the previous) chapter exercised iterators to reference a container's elements or to specify a range for an STL algorithm. For some examples, an iterator could only perform certain operations. The reason for this is that each container is designed to work with a specific iterator type, and each iterator type supports a specific set of operations.

Recall that an iterator is an abstraction of a pointer. Iterators facilitate pointer-like operations that are independent of a container's internal data structure. For example, `operator++` can be utilized to advance an iterator to the next element of a container. For a `std::vector` container, iterator `operator++` performs simple pointer arithmetic. However, for a `std::list` iterator, `operator++` must traverse to the next node in the list. Without iterators, the C++ STL algorithm library would be significantly larger and more complicated since numerous function overloads would be required for each container type.

C++17 defines six iterator types or categories. Each iterator category supports a different set of operational capabilities as shown in Table 4-1.

Table 4-1. C++17 Iterator Categories

Iterator Category	Supported Capabilities	Example Class
Output	<code>*iter = val, ++iter, iter++, *iter++ = val</code>	<code>std::basic_ostream</code>
Input	<code>*iter = val, iter1 == iter2, iter1 != iter2, iter->member, ++iter, iter++, *iter++</code>	<code>std::basic_istream</code>
Forward	Extension of input iterator that adds: <code>val = *iter, iter1 = iter2</code>	<code>std::forward_list</code>
Bidirectional	Extension of forward iterator that adds: <code>--iter, iter--, *iter--</code>	<code>std::list</code>
Random Access	Extension of bidirectional iterator that adds: <code>iter += n, iter -= n, iter + n, n + iter, iter - n, iter1 - iter2, inter[n], iter1 < iter2, iter1 <= iter2, iter1 > iter2, iter1 >= iter2</code>	<code>std::deque</code>
Contiguous	Same as random access iterator; elements are guaranteed to be stored contiguously in memory	<code>std::basic_string</code> <code>std::array,</code> <code>std::vector</code>

In Table 4-1, symbol `iter` denotes an iterator, `n` signifies an integer value, `member` is a class attribute, and `val` is a data value. The important takeaway point from Table 4-1 is that starting from iterator category `input`, each subsequent category provides additional capabilities. Iterator category `output` is a distinct category unto itself.

C++20 defines iterators using a taxonomy of concepts instead of categories. Recall that a C++20 concept is a named constraint that defines valid parameter types for a template class or function. There are 13 iterator concepts. These are listed in Table 4-2.

Table 4-2. C++20 Iterator Concepts

Iterator Concept (namespace std::)	Capabilities
<code>indirectly_readable</code>	Readable using <code>val = *iter</code> Used for pointers, smart pointers, and iterators
<code>indirectly_writable</code>	Writable using <code>*iter = val</code>
<code>weakly_incrementable</code>	Incrementable using <code>++iter</code> and <code>iter++</code> Does not preserve equality
<code>incrementable</code>	Incrementable using <code>++iter</code> and <code>iter++</code> Preserves equality
<code>input_or_output_iterator</code>	Extension of <code>weakly_incrementable</code> that adds <code>*iter</code> Universal concept for all iterators
<code>sentinel_for</code>	Iterator used to locate a sentinel (terminating) value
<code>sized_sentinel_for</code>	Supports <code>it - sentinel_for</code> and <code>sentinel_for - it</code> to determine the distance between <code>sentinel_for</code> iterators in constant time
<code>output_iterator</code>	Extension of <code>indirectly_writable</code> that adds <code>*iter++ = val</code>
<code>input_iterator</code>	Extension of <code>indirectly_readable</code> that adds <code>++iter</code> and <code>iter++</code>
<code>forward_iterator</code>	Extension of <code>input_iterator</code> , <code>incrementable</code> , and <code>sentinel_for</code> that adds copyability, equality comparison, and a multi-pass guarantee
<code>bidirectional_iterator</code>	Extension of <code>forward_iterator</code> that adds <code>--iter</code> and <code>iter--</code>
<code>random_access_iterator</code>	Extension of <code>bidirectional_iterator</code> that adds <code>iter += n</code> , <code>iter -= n</code> , <code>iter + n</code> , <code>n + iter</code> , <code>iter - n</code> , and <code>iter[n]</code>
<code>contiguous_iterator</code>	Extension of <code>random_access_iterator</code> that guarantees elements are stored contiguously in memory

A sentinel value is a special value that signifies the end of a sequence such as the terminating null character for a C-style string. A multi-pass guarantee means that `iter1 == iter2` implies `++iter1 == ++iter2`. Note in Table 4-2 that the bottom six concepts are consistent with the categories presented in Table 4-1. C++20's use of iterator concepts instead of categories facilitates improved compiler error checking and specializations for template algorithms.

You've already seen several examples of iterator usage. Source code example Ch04_04 spotlights iterator categories for various containers. Listing 4-4 shows the C++ code for this example.

Listing 4-4. Example Ch04_04 – Ch04_04_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch04_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <array>
#include <deque>
#include <forward_list>
#include <iterator>
#include <list>
#include <set>
#include <unordered_set>
#include <vector>
#include <typeinfo>
#include "Ch04_04.h"

template <typename T>
void print_concepts(const char* msg, T& ctr)
{
    // test for const iterator
    std::string s{};
    auto iter = ctr.begin();
    auto citer = std::make_const_iterator(iter);
    bool is_const_iter = typeid(iter) == typeid(citer);
```

```

// add surrounding {} or []
auto mk_str = [is_const_iter](const char* s1)
{
    // {} used for const iterator, [] for non-const
    std::string s2 {};
    s2 += (is_const_iter) ? "{" : "[";
    s2 += s1;
    s2 += (is_const_iter) ? "} " : "] ";
    return s2;
};

// construct string of iterator concepts for ctr
if (std::input_iterator<decltype(iter)>)
    s += mk_str("input");
if (std::forward_iterator<decltype(iter)>)
    s += mk_str("forward");
if (std::bidirectional_iterator<decltype(iter)>)
    s += mk_str("bidirectional");
if (std::random_access_iterator<decltype(iter)>)
    s += mk_str("random access");
if (std::contiguous_iterator<decltype(iter)>)
    s += mk_str("contiguous");

std::println("\niterator concepts for {:s}:\n{:s}", msg, s);
}

void Ch04_04_ex1()
{
    // print iterator concepts for different container types
    std::string str1 {};
    print_concepts("str1", str1);
    std::array<int, 2> arr1 {};
    print_concepts("arr1", arr1);

    std::vector<int> vec1 {};
    print_concepts("vec1", vec1);
    std::deque<int> deq1 {};
    print_concepts("deq1", deq1);
}

```

```

    std::list<int> list1 {};
    print_concepts("list1", list1);
    std::forward_list<int> fw_list1 {};
    print_concepts("fw_list1", fw_list1);

    std::set<int> set1 {};
    print_concepts("set1", set1);
    std::unordered_set<int> uno_set1 {};
    print_concepts("uno_set1", uno_set1);
}

void Ch04_04_ex()
{
    std::println("\n----- Ch04_04_ex1() -----");
    Ch04_04_ex1();
}

```

Near the top of Listing 4-4, template function `print_concepts()` contains code that prints the iterator concepts for container argument `ctr`. The first code block in this function checks to see if the iterators for `ctr` are `const`. More about this shortly. Next is a lambda expression named `mk_str()` that adds surrounding `{}` (`const` iterator) or `[]` (`non-const` iterator) to argument `s1`. The remaining code in `print_concepts()` utilizes various C++20 iterator concepts to ascertain valid iterator operations for container `ctr`.

Function `Ch04_04_ex1()` applies `print_concepts()` using the different types of sequence containers. It also exercises `print_concepts()` using containers `std::set` and `std::unordered_set`, whose iterators are `const`. You'll learn more about these container classes in Chapters 7 and 8. Here are the results for example `Ch04_04`:

```

----- Results for example Ch04_04 -----

----- Ch04_04_ex1() -----

iterator concepts for str1:
[input] [forward] [bidirectional] [random access] [contiguous]

iterator concepts for arr1:
[input] [forward] [bidirectional] [random access] [contiguous]

```

```

iterator concepts for vec1:
[input] [forward] [bidirectional] [random access] [contiguous]

iterator concepts for deq1:
[input] [forward] [bidirectional] [random access]

iterator concepts for list1:
[input] [forward] [bidirectional]

iterator concepts for fw_list1:
[input] [forward]

iterator concepts for set1:
{input} {forward} {bidirectional}

iterator concepts for uno_set1:
{input} {forward} {bidirectional}

```

Earlier in this chapter, you saw typical usages of iterator helper functions `std::advance()` and `std::distance()`. A program can also utilize `std::next()` and `std::prev()` to increment or decrement an iterator by *n* counts (i.e., *n* applications of iterator operator++ or operator--). Unlike `std::advance()`, which returns nothing, both `std::next()` and `std::prev()` return an updated iterator. Helper function `std::next()` can be used with a `std::input_iterator` iterator argument, while `std::prev()` requires an iterator argument that supports `std::iterator_bidirectional`.

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- Template class `std::deque` is a sequence container that models a double-ended queue. This class is optimized for element insertions and removals at both ends, which makes it suitable for use cases that require a LIFO or FIFO container.

- Template class `std::list` is an abstraction of a doubly linked list. This class supports fast constant-time insertions and removals at the front end, middle, and back end without copy or move operations. Instances of `std::list` do not support random accesses using `operator[]` or `at()`.
- Template class `std::forward_list` is an abstraction of a singly-linked list that's optimized for front-end insertions and removals in constant time. This class is marginally more efficient, both time and space, than `std::list` since it supports traversals using only forward iterators. Class `std::forward_list` does not define a `size()` member function.
- A C++ iterator is an abstraction of a pointer. Iterators facilitate pointer-like operations with a container in a manner that's independent of a container's internal data structure.
- C++17 defines six iterator categories that support different operational capabilities. C++20 defines a more comprehensive taxonomy of iterator concepts that facilitate improved compiler error messages and template specializations.

CHAPTER 5

General Utilities Library

This chapter covers principal classes from the general utilities library, including

- `std::pair`
- `std::tuple`
- `std::variant`
- `std::optional`
- `std::any`
- `std::expected`

Classes `std::pair` and `std::tuple` are heterogeneous template containers that the STL itself uses. These classes are also handy in many real-world programs. The other four classes incorporate other object(s) and are occasionally used as surrogates for simple structures. Some of these classes also maintain state information regarding the object(s) they hold.

Heterogeneous Containers

In many programs, it is often necessary to bundle two or more heterogeneous objects as a single unit. For example, a function might need to return multiple values – perhaps an `int` and a `std::string` – to its caller. Another common example is the bundling of a key with one or more data values. The classic approach to these scenarios is to declare a small class or structure that maintains the bundled objects as a single unit. While this approach is fine for many use cases, it doesn't lend itself to contexts where either the types or number of objects are unknown.

In Chapter 7, you'll learn how to use STL container class `std::map`. This template class arranges data using key-value pairs. Class `std::map` utilizes template parameters to specify the object types for both the key and value. For a class like `std::map` to be

useful, the key and value must support any object type including user-defined classes. To handle these types of scenarios, the STL provides two template classes named `std::pair` and `std::tuple`. Class `std::pair` bundles two objects into a single unit, while class `std::tuple` bundles an arbitrary number of objects. The STL itself makes use of these classes. For example, the aforementioned `std::map` class utilizes `std::pair` along with other STL classes that you'll learn about later in this book. The remainder of this section explains how to use `std::pair` and `std::tuple`.

Using `std::pair`

A `std::pair` is a template class that bundles two heterogeneous objects into a single unit. The elements of a `std::pair` can be accessed using structure-like named members or via constant indices. Class `std::pair` defines an extensive set of constructors for object creation. Non-member functions include the standard set of relational operators and a non-constructor object creator.

Listing 5-1-1 shows the source code for function `Ch05_01_ex1()`. This function expounds several methods that create objects of type `std::pair`. In the initial code block of `Ch05_01_ex1()`, the statement `std::pair<int, double> pair1 {100, 200.0}` constructs a `std::pair` object that bundles values of type `int` and `double`. The accompanying initializer list supplies the initial values for `pair1`. The next statement utilizes `std::println()` to print the data values of `pair1`. Note that this statement utilizes `pair1.first` and `pair1.second` to access the first (100) and second (200.0) elements of `pair1`. The two elements of any `std::pair` can be referenced using names `first` and `second` as demonstrated in this example.

Listing 5-1-1. Example Ch05_01 - Ch05_01_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch05_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <format>
#include <string>
#include <utility>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch05_01.h"
```

```

void Ch05_01_ex1()
{
    using namespace std::string_literals;

    // pair<int, double>
    std::pair<int, double> pair1 {100, 200.0};
    std::println("pair1.first: {d} pair1.second: {:.1f}",
        pair1.first, pair1.second);

    // pair<std::string, long long>
    std::pair<std::string, long long> pair2 {"Hello, World!", 42LL};
    std::println("pair2.first: {s} pair2.second: {d}",
        pair2.first, pair2.second);

    // using std::make_pair()
    auto pair3 = std::make_pair("cm / inch", 2.54f);
    std::println("pair3.first: {s} pair3.second: {:.2f}",
        pair3.first, pair3.second);

    // pair<> - type deduction
    std::pair pair4 {"L / U.S. gallon"s, 3.785411784};
    std::println("pair4.first: {s} pair4.second: {:.9f}",
        pair4.first, pair4.second);
}

```

The next code block in `Ch05_01_ex1()` constructs `pair2`, which bundles values of type `std::string` and `long long`. In the third code block, `Ch05_01_ex1()` utilizes helper function `std::make_pair()` to create `pair3`, which is an object of type `std::pair<const char*, float>`. The final code block in `Ch05_01_ex1()` utilizes the expression `std::pair pair4 {"L / U.S. gallon"s, 3.785411784}` to construct `pair4`. Note in this statement that `std::pair` is used without explicit types; the compiler deduces the types for `pair4`. Also, note in this statement the use of the literal suffix `s`; this suffix forces deduction for `pair4` as a `std::pair<std::string, double>`. Without the string literal suffix, the compiler will deduce `pair4` as type `std::pair<const char*, double>`.

Listing 5-1-2 shows the code for `Ch05_01_ex2()`. The opening code block in this function contains definitions for `pair1` to `pair5`, all of which are type `std::pair<int, double>`. Note that `pair3` is copy constructed using `pair1`. For `pair4` and `pair5`, the empty initializer list will default initialize elements `first` and `second` to zero.

Listing 5-1-2. Example Ch05_01 - Ch05_01_ex2()

```

void Ch05_01_ex2()
{
    // create std::pairs
    std::pair<int, double> pair1 {100, 200.0};
    std::pair<int, double> pair2 {300, 400.0};
    std::pair<int, double> pair3 {pair1};
    std::pair<int, double> pair4 {};
    std::pair<int, double> pair5 {};

    // using first and second
    pair4.first = pair1.first;
    pair4.second = 350.0;

    // using std::get<>
    std::get<0>(pair5) = pair1.first;    // pair5.first = pair1.first
    std::get<1>(pair5) = -150.0;        // pair5.second = -150.0

    // display values
    std::println("pair1.first: {:d}    pair1.second: {:.1f}",
        pair1.first, pair1.second);
    std::println("pair2.first: {:d}    pair2.second: {:.1f}",
        pair2.first, pair2.second);
    std::println("pair3.first: {:d}    pair3.second: {:.1f}",
        pair3.first, pair3.second);
    std::println("pair4.first: {:d}    pair4.second: {:.1f}",
        pair4.first, pair4.second);
    std::println("pair5.first: {:d}    pair5.second: {:.1f}",
        pair5.first, pair5.second);

    // relational operators
    std::println("\npair1 == pair2: {:s}", pair1 == pair2);
    std::println("pair1 == pair3: {:s}", pair1 == pair3);
    std::println("pair1 > pair4: {:s}", pair1 > pair4);
    std::println("pair1 < pair4: {:s}", pair1 < pair4);
}

```

The code block that follows the creation of `pair1` to `pair5` demonstrates the use of assignment statements to modify the elements of `pair4`. Note that the syntax utilized here is the same as that used to reference the members of a structure. The next code block utilizes `std::get<0>` and `std::get<1>` to assign values to `pair5.first` and `pair5.second`. Global function `std::get<I>(std::pair)` returns a reference to the *i-th* element of a `std::pair`. Since a `std::pair` contains only two elements, indices 0 and 1 correspond to `std::pair` elements `first` and `second`, respectively. The index value `I` that's specified within the `<>` must be a compile-time constant that equals 0 or 1.

Following the series of `std::println()` statements, the final code block in `Ch05_01_ex2()` illustrates relational operator usage between two `std::pairs`. Execution of a relational operator using `std::pairs` initially compares the two `first` elements of each `std::pair`. If the two `firsts` are equivalent, the two `seconds` are then compared to determine the result. When comparing two objects of type `std::pair`, the element types for the `firsts` and `seconds` must be the same, or a suitable conversion must be available. For example, comparing two objects of type `std::pair<int, float>` and `std::pair<int, double>` is acceptable since appropriate type conversions are available. However, comparing a `std::pair<int, float>` against a `std::pair<int, std::string>` will fail to compile.

The final `std::pair` example, shown in Listing 5-1-3, opens with the initialization of `std::vector vec1`. Note that this vector holds objects of type `std::pair<std::string, double>` (alias `pair_t`). The next code block adds more objects of type `pair_t` to the back end of `vec1` using `emplace_back()`. Following the emplacement operations is the definition of a lambda expression named `print_vec()` that's used to print the elements of `vec1`.

Listing 5-1-3. Example `Ch05_01 - Ch05_01_ex3()`

```
void Ch05_01_ex3()
{
    // create vector of pair_t elements
    using pair_t = std::pair<std::string, double>;

    std::vector<pair_t> vec1 { {"Beryllium", 9.0122}, {"Helium", 4.0026},
        {"Neon", 20.180}, {"Nitrogen", 14.007}, {"Oxygen", 15.999} };

    // using emplace_back to add more elements
    vec1.emplace_back(std::make_pair("Lithium", 6.94));
}
```

```

vec1.emplace_back(std::make_pair("Fluorine", 18.998));
vec1.emplace_back(std::make_pair("Boron", 10.81));
vec1.emplace_back(std::make_pair("Hydrogen", 1.0080));
vec1.emplace_back(std::make_pair("Carbon", 12.011));

// print lambda for std::vector<pair_t>
auto print_vec = [](const char* msg, const std::vector<pair_t>& vec)
{
    std::print("{:s}", msg);

    for (const auto& v : vec)
        std::println("{:<12s} {:12.4f}", v.first, v.second);
};

print_vec("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1);

// using std::ranges::sort (operator<)
std::ranges::sort(vec1);
print_vec("\nvec1 (after first sort):\n", vec1);

// using std::ranges::sort (custom predicate)
auto cmp_op = [](const pair_t& pair1, const pair_t& pair2)
    { return pair1.second < pair2.second; };

std::ranges::sort(vec1, cmp_op);
print_vec("\nvec1 (after second sort):\n", vec1);
}

```

Following the first `print_vec()` call, `Ch05_01_ex3()` exploits `std::ranges::sort()` to sort the elements of `vec1`. Recall from the discussions in Chapter 3 that the default relational operator for `std::ranges::sort()` is `operator<`. For the current example, this means comparing two values of type `pair_t` using `operator<` on `pair1.first` and (if necessary) `pair1.second`. The ensuing code block `Ch05_01_ex3()` also utilizes `std::ranges::sort()`, but defines a custom compare predicate that compares `pair1.second` against `pair2.second`. This modifies the sorting algorithm so that it sorts `vec1` in ascending order using atomic mass instead of the element name. Here are the results for example `Ch05_01`:

----- Results for example Ch05_01 -----

----- Ch05_01_ex1() -----

pair1.first: 100 pair1.second: 200.0
pair2.first: Hello, World! pair2.second: 42
pair3.first: cm / inch pair3.second: 2.54
pair4.first: L / U.S. gallon pair4.second: 3.785411784

----- Ch05_01_ex2() -----

pair1.first: 100 pair1.second: 200.0
pair2.first: 300 pair2.second: 400.0
pair3.first: 100 pair3.second: 200.0
pair4.first: 100 pair4.second: 350.0
pair5.first: 100 pair5.second: -150.0

pair1 == pair2: false
pair1 == pair3: true
pair1 > pair4: false
pair1 < pair4: true

----- Ch05_01_ex3() -----

vec1 (initial values):

Beryllium	9.0122
Helium	4.0026
Neon	20.1800
Nitrogen	14.0070
Oxygen	15.9990
Lithium	6.9400
Fluorine	18.9980
Boron	10.8100
Hydrogen	1.0080
Carbon	12.0110

vec1 (after first sort):

Beryllium	9.0122
Boron	10.8100
Carbon	12.0110

Fluorine	18.9980
Helium	4.0026
Hydrogen	1.0080
Lithium	6.9400
Neon	20.1800
Nitrogen	14.0070
Oxygen	15.9990

vec1 (after second sort):

Hydrogen	1.0080
Helium	4.0026
Lithium	6.9400
Beryllium	9.0122
Boron	10.8100
Carbon	12.0110
Nitrogen	14.0070
Oxygen	15.9990
Fluorine	18.9980
Neon	20.1800

Using `std::tuple`

A `std::tuple` is a template class that bundles a heterogeneous collection of N objects into a single object. Class `std::tuple` is a generalization of class `std::pair` that you learned about in the previous section. Like class `std::pair`, you can reference the elements of a `std::tuple` using `std::get<I>(std::tuple)` and a compile-time constant index. Unlike class `std::pair`, `std::tuple` does not define named members (i.e., `first` and `second`).

Listing 5-2-1 shows the source code for function `Ch05_02_01()`, which highlights various `std::tuple` instantiation techniques. The first code block in `Ch05_02_ex1()` defines a four-element tuple named `tup1` whose type is `std::tuple<int, double, std::string_view, char>`. The connected initializer list supplies the initial values for each element of `tup1`. The subsequent series of `std::println()` statements utilize `std::get<I>()` to obtain references to the elements of `tup1`.

Listing 5-2-1. Example Ch05_02 - Ch05_02_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch05_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <numbers>
#include <string>
#include <string_view>
#include <typeinfo>
#include <utility>
#include "Ch05_02.h"
#include "Point2D.h"

void Ch05_02_ex1()
{
    using namespace std::string_view_literals;

    // four-element tuple - explicit types
    std::tuple<int, double, std::string_view, char> tup1
        {10, 20.123456, "Hello, World!", '#'};

    std::println("\nstd::get<0>(tup1): {:d}", std::get<0>(tup1));
    std::println("std::get<1>(tup1): {:f}", std::get<1>(tup1));
    std::println("std::get<2>(tup1): {:s}", std::get<2>(tup1));
    std::println("std::get<3>(tup1): {:c}", std::get<3>(tup1));

    // four-element tuple - std::make_tuple
    auto tup2 {std::make_tuple(100, 200.123456, "Bonjour le
    Monde!"sv, '&')};
    static_assert(typeid(tup1) == typeid(tup2));

    std::println("\nstd::get<0>(tup2): {:d}", std::get<0>(tup2));
    std::println("std::get<1>(tup2): {:f}", std::get<1>(tup2));
    std::println("std::get<2>(tup2): {:s}", std::get<2>(tup2));
    std::println("std::get<3>(tup2): {:c}", std::get<3>(tup2));

    // four-element tuple - type deduction
    std::tuple tup3 {1000, 2000.123456, "Hallo Welt!"sv, '*'};
    static_assert(typeid(tup1) == typeid(tup3));
}

```

```

std::println("\nstd::get<0>(tup3): {:d}", std::get<0>(tup3));
std::println("std::get<1>(tup3): {:f}", std::get<1>(tup3));
std::println("std::get<2>(tup3): {:s}", std::get<2>(tup3));
std::println("std::get<3>(tup3): {:c}", std::get<3>(tup3));

// using std::tuple_size
std::println("\ntup3_size {:d}", std::tuple_
size<decltype(tup3)>::value);

// using std::tuple_element
std::println("\ntup3 types:");
std::println("{:s}", typeid(std::tuple_element
<0, decltype(tup3)>::type).name());
std::println("{:s}", typeid(std::tuple_element
<1, decltype(tup3)>::type).name());
std::println("{:s}", typeid(std::tuple_element
<2, decltype(tup3)>::type).name());
std::println("{:s}", typeid(std::tuple_element
<3, decltype(tup3)>::type).name());
}

```

The next code block in `Ch05_02_ex2()` instantiates `tup2` using `std::make_tuple()`. Note that the third argument of `std::make_tuple()`, `"Bonjour le Monde!"sv`, includes `std::string_view` literal suffix `sv`. This ensures identical types for both `tup1` and `tup2`, which is confirmed by the subsequent `static_assert(typeid(tup1) == typeid(tup2))` statement. The ensuing code block exploits type deduction to instantiate `tup3`. Like `tup2`, the type of `tup3` matches that of `tup1`.

The final two code blocks in `Ch05_02_ex1()` demonstrate the use of `std::tuple_size<>` and `std::tuple_element<>`. Both of these are `std::tuple` helper classes. The former obtains the number of elements in the specified tuple. The expression `std::tuple_size<decltype(tup3)>` is a class, and `::value` is a constant member of this class that denotes the number of tuple elements. The C++ keyword `decltype` retrieves the type for `tup3`. Similarly, `std::tuple_element<0, decltype(tup3)>` is a class, and constant member `::type` yields the type for element 0 of `tup3`.

Demo function `Ch05_02_ex2()`, shown in Listing 5-2-2, illustrates a few common operations using `std::tuple`s and `std::tuple` elements. This function opens with the definition `tup_t` as an alias for `std::tuple<std::string, int, double>`. Following the declarations of tuples `tup0` to `tup3` is the definition of lambda expression `print_tup()`, which prints the elements of a `tup_t`.

Listing 5-2-2. Example Ch05_02 – Ch05_02_ex2()

```
void Ch05_02_ex2()
{
    using tup_t = std::tuple<std::string, int, double>;

    // create test tuples
    tup_t tup0 {"aaaa", 1, 100.0};
    tup_t tup1 {"bbbb", 2, 200.0};
    tup_t tup2 {"cccc", 3, 300.0};
    tup_t tup3 {"dddd", 4, 400.0};

    // print test tuples
    auto print_tup = [](const char* msg, const tup_t& tup)
    {
        std::println("{:s}: [{:s} | {:d} | {:.2f}]", msg,
            std::get<0>(tup), std::get<1>(tup), std::get<2>(tup));
    };

    print_tup("\ntup0 (initial value)", tup0);
    print_tup("tup1 (initial value)", tup1);
    print_tup("tup2 (initial value)", tup2);
    print_tup("tup3 (initial value)", tup3);

    // modification of elements
    tup_t tup4 {tup0};
    print_tup("\ntup4 (initial value)", tup4);
    std::get<0>(tup4) = "AAAA";
    std::get<1>(tup4) *= -1;
    std::get<2>(tup4) /= std::get<2>(tup3);
    print_tup("tup4 (after modifications)", tup4);
}
```

```

// relational operators
auto tup5 {tup0};
print_tup("\ntup5 (initial value)", tup5);
std::println("tup0 == tup5: {:s}", tup0 == tup5);

std::get<2>(tup5) *= 1.5;
print_tup("\ntup5 (after modification)", tup5);
std::println("tup0 < tup5: {:s}", tup0 < tup5);

std::get<1>(tup5) -= 7;
print_tup("\ntup5 (after modification)", tup5);
std::println("tup0 < tup5: {:s}", tup0 < tup5);
}

```

Subsequent to the tuple prints, `Ch05_02_ex2()` utilizes `std::get<I>()` to perform simple calculations using the elements of `tup4`. The final code block in `Ch05_02_ex2()` demonstrates the use of `std::tuple` relational operators. These operators perform lexicographical compares of corresponding elements in the two `std::tuples`. The compare operations terminate following the determination of a definitive result. This means for the first `tup0 < tup5` operation, all three tuple elements are checked; for the second `tup0 < tup5` operation, a definitive result is obtained without comparing the two doubles.

Listing 5-2-3 shows the source code for template function `print_tuple()` and example function `Ch05_02_ex3()`. The purpose of `Ch05_02_ex3()` is to explicate the workings of `print_tuple()`, which prints the elements of a `std::tuple`.

Listing 5-2-3. Example Ch05_02 - Ch05_02_ex3()

```

template <size_t I = 0, typename... TUP_Ts>
constexpr void print_tuple(const char* msg, const std::tuple<TUP_
Ts...>& tup)
{
    if constexpr(I == 0)
        std::print("{:s}", msg);

    if constexpr(I < sizeof...(TUP_Ts))
    {

```

```

        std::print(" | {}", std::get<I>(tup));
        print_tuple<I + 1>(msg, tup);
    }
    else
        std::println(" |");
}

void Ch05_02_ex3()
{
    using namespace std::numbers;
    using namespace std::string_literals;
    using namespace std::string_view_literals;
    using point2d_t = Point2D<unsigned int>;

    // using print_tuple
    auto tup1 = std::make_tuple("Black"s, 1, pi);
    print_tuple("tup1:", tup1);

    auto tup2 = std::make_tuple(pi * 2, "Blue"s, -1, "NFC North"sv);
    print_tuple("tup2:", tup2);

    auto tup3 = std::make_tuple("Chicago Bears"sv, "Detroit Lions"sv,
        "Green Bay Packers"sv, "Minnesota Vikings"sv);
    print_tuple("tup3:", tup3);

    auto tup4 = std::make_tuple(point2d_t {10, 20}, "upper left"s,
        point2d_t {100, 125}, "lower right"s, ln2_v<float>);
    print_tuple("tup4:", tup4);
}

```

In Listing 5-2-3, note that template function `print_tuple()` specifies two parameters. Parameter `size_t I` corresponds to the element index that's required for `std::get<I>()`. Observe that the default value for `I` is zero. The other template parameter, `typename... TUP_Ts`, is a template parameter pack.¹ A template parameter pack is a template parameter that accepts zero or more template arguments.

¹The notation `...` signifies a template parameter pack.

For template function `print_tuple()`, `TUP_Ts` embodies the element types for argument `const std::tuple<TUP_Ts...& tup`). The syntax that's used here facilitates using `print_tuple()` to print the elements of any valid `std::tuple`.

The best way to understand how `print_tuple()` works is to dive into an example. Following its using statements, function `Ch05_02_ex3()` exploits `std::make_tuple("Black"s, 1, pi)` to construct `tup1`, whose type corresponds to `std::tuple<std::string, int, double>`. Function `Ch05_02_ex3()` then employs `print_tuple("tup1:", tup1)` to print the elements of `tup1`. Note here that template argument `I` is not specified, which means that it defaults to zero. Also, note that parameter pack `TUP_Ts` for `tup1` corresponds to `std::string`, `int`, and `double`.

The first expression of `print_tuple()` compares `I == 0`. If true, the ensuing `std::print("{:s}", msg)` prints `msg`, which occurs upon first entry to `print_tuple()`. The next expression in `print_tuple()`, `if constexpr(I < sizeof...(TUP_Ts))`,² compares `I` against the number of template arguments in `TUP_Ts`. If `constexpr(I < sizeof...(TUP_Ts))` is false, all tuple elements have been printed and `print_tuple()` calls `std::println(" |")` to conclude the `std::tuple` print action.

If `constexpr(I < sizeof...(TUP_Ts))` is true, `print_tuple()` exercises `std::get<I>(tuple)` to retrieve and print the *i*-th element of `tup`. Note that `std::println()` utilizes format specifier `{}`. Recall that `{}` is the default format specifier for a given type (assuming it's been defined). Using type-specific format specifiers (e.g., `{:d}`, `{:s}`, etc.) here is not feasible since `print_tuple()` is expected to work with any `std::tuple`.

Following the `std::println()` call, `print_tuple()` utilizes `print_tuple<I + 1>(msg, tup)` to recursively print the next element of `tup`. It is important to recognize here that template function `print_tuple()` is *compile-time* recursive.³ During template instantiation, every use of `print_tuple<I+1>(msg, tup)` compels the compiler to generate code for another instance of `print_tuple()`.⁴ The remaining code in `Ch05_02_ex3()` demonstrates additional usages of `print_tuple()` using assorted test tuples.

²The `sizeof...` operator counts the number of arguments in a template parameter pack.

³This is why `print_tuple()` uses `if constexpr()`.

⁴During its optimization phase, the C++ compiler may combine the different instantiations of `print_tuple()` into a single runtime function. This optimization is performed for each distinct template parameter pack.

Listing 5-2-4 shows the source code for `Ch05_02_ex4()`, which exploits `std::tie()` to unpack the elements of a `std::tuple`. The first use of `std::tie()` unpacks all elements of `tup1` and assigns these values to local variables. More specifically, `std::tie()` returns a `std::tuple` of references to the specified variables. Execution of the assignment operator `std::tuple<Types...>operator=` then copies each element of `tup1` to its corresponding `std::tie()` variable. The second occurrence of `std::tie()` demonstrates the use of `std::ignore`, which represents an unspecified type that essentially skips the corresponding element when unpacking `tup1`.

Listing 5-2-4. Example Ch05_02 – Ch05_02_ex4()

```
void Ch05_02_ex4()
{
    using namespace std::string_literals;

    // using std::tie to unpack tuple
    int x1 {};
    std::string s1 {}, s2 {}, s3 {};

    auto tup1 = std::make_tuple(1, "one"s, "eins"s, "uno"s);
    std::tie(x1, s1, s2, s3) = tup1;
    std::println("x1: {:d} s1: {:s} s2: {:s} s3: {:s}", x1, s1, s2, s3);

    // using std::tie and std::ignore to unpack tuple
    s2 = "*****";
    std::tie(x1, s1, std::ignore, s3) = tup1;
    std::println("x1: {:d} s1: {:s} s2: {:s} s3: {:s}", x1, s1, s2, s3);

    // using structured binding to unpack tuple
    auto tup2 {std::make_tuple(2, "two"s, "zwei"s, "dos"s)};
    auto [x2, s4, s5, s6] = tup2;
    std::println("x2: {:d} s4: {:s} s5: {:s} s6: {:s}", x2, s4, s5, s6);

    // using std::tuple_cat (example 1)
    auto tup3 {std::make_tuple(3, "three"s, "drei"s, "tres"s)};
    auto tup4 {std::make_tuple(4, "four"s, "veir"s, "cuatro"s)};
    auto tup5 = std::tuple_cat(tup3, tup4);
}
```



```

    print_tuple("\ntup5: ", tup5);
    std::println("tup5 size: {:d}", std::tuple_size
    <decltype(tup5)>::value);

    // using std::tuple_cat (example 2)
    auto tup6 = std::tuple_cat(tup3, std::make_tuple(10.5, 20.8), tup4);

    print_tuple("\ntup6: ", tup6);
    std::println("tup6 size: {:d}", std::tuple_size
    <decltype(tup6)>::value);
}

```

The next code block utilizes structured binding to unpack the elements of `tup2`. Note that when using structured binding, the `auto` keyword must be employed since this construct exploits automatic type deduction. Besides `std::tuple`, structured binding can be applied to unpack the elements of a `std::pair`, `struct`, `std::array`, or C-style array. It also can be exploited to return multiple values from a function. You'll see additional examples of structured binding in Chapter 7.

The final two code blocks of `Ch05_02_ex4()` employ `std::tuple_cat()` to perform `std::tuple` concatenation. In the first code block, the expression `tup5 = std::tuple_cat(tup3, tup4)` concatenates `tup3` and `tup4` into a newly constructed `std::tuple` named `tup5`. The concatenation operation is performed left to right using the source `std::tuples'` types and values. A function can also utilize `std::tuple_cat()` to concatenate more than two `std::tuples` as demonstrated in the second `std::tuple` usage example. Here are the results for example `Ch05_02`:

```

----- Results for example Ch05_02 -----

```

```

----- Ch05_02_ex1() -----

```

```

std::get<0>(tup1): 10
std::get<1>(tup1): 20.123456
std::get<2>(tup1): Hello, World!
std::get<3>(tup1): #

std::get<0>(tup2): 100
std::get<1>(tup2): 200.123456
std::get<2>(tup2): Bonjour le Monde!
std::get<3>(tup2): &

```

```
std::get<0>(tup3): 1000
std::get<1>(tup3): 2000.123456
std::get<2>(tup3): Hallo Welt!
std::get<3>(tup3): *
```

```
tup3_size 4
```

```
tup3 types:
```

```
int
```

```
double
```

```
class std::basic_string_view<char,struct std::char_traits<char> >
char
```

```
----- Ch05_02_ex2() -----
```

```
tup0 (initial value): [aaaa | 1 | 100.00]
```

```
tup1 (initial value): [bbbb | 2 | 200.00]
```

```
tup2 (initial value): [cccc | 3 | 300.00]
```

```
tup3 (initial value): [dddd | 4 | 400.00]
```

```
tup4 (initial value): [aaaa | 1 | 100.00]
```

```
tup4 (after modifications): [AAAA | -1 | 0.25]
```

```
tup5 (initial value): [aaaa | 1 | 100.00]
```

```
tup0 == tup5: true
```

```
tup5 (after modification): [aaaa | 1 | 150.00]
```

```
tup0 < tup5: true
```

```
tup5 (after modification): [aaaa | -6 | 150.00]
```

```
tup0 < tup5: false
```

```
----- Ch05_02_ex3() -----
```

```
tup1: | Black | 1 | 3.141592653589793 |
```

```
tup2: | 6.283185307179586 | Blue | -1 | NFC North |
```

```
tup3: | Chicago Bears | Detroit Lions | Green Bay Packers | Minnesota Vikings |
```

```
tup4: | (10, 20) | upper left | (100, 125) | lower right | 0.6931472 |
```

```
----- Ch05_02_ex4() -----
```

```
x1: 1 s1: one s2: eins s3: uno
```

```
x1: 1 s1: one s2: **** s3: uno
```

```
x2: 2 s4: two s5: zwei s6: dos
```

```
tup5: | 3 | three | drei | tres | 4 | four | veir | cuatro |
```

```
tup5 size: 8
```

```
tup6: | 3 | three | drei | tres | 10.5 | 20.8 | 4 | four | veir | cuatro |
```

```
tup6 size: 10
```

Utility Classes

The section explains how to use STL utility classes `std::variant`, `std::optional`, `std::any`, and `std::expected`. These classes generally hold zero or more objects along with state information. They are typically used to simplify data exchange between functions.

Using `std::variant`

A `std::variant` is a C++ template class that holds a single value from a specified set of alternative types. The purpose of this template class is to provide a type-safe replacement for a C-style union. Before continuing, it warrants mentioning that despite its intended usage, `std::variants` and unions are different constructs, and the former doesn't fully replicate the capabilities of the latter. In most use cases, however, a `std::variant` is a superior alternative to `union`. And you can still exploit a `union` in those situations where its unique capabilities are necessary, such as low-level byte manipulations of fundamental types.

Source code example Ch05_03 spotlights elementary operations using `std::variants`. Listing 5-3-1 shows the source code for Ch05_03_ex1().

Listing 5-3-1. Example Ch05_03 - Ch05_03_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch05_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <numbers>
#include <utility>
#include <variant>
#include "Ch05_03.h"
#include "Rect.h"

void Ch05_03_ex1()
{
    std::variant<double, int> var1 {};

    // using var1 with double
    var1 = std::numbers::pi;
    std::println("\nstd::get<0>(var1):      {}", std::get<0>(var1));
    std::println("std::get<double>(var1): {}", std::get<double>(var1));

    // using var1 with int
    var1 = 100;
    std::println("\nstd::get<1>(var1):      {}", std::get<1>(var1));
    std::println("std::get<int>(var1):     {}", std::get<int>(var1));

    // bad variant access generates exception
    try
    {
        auto bad_access = std::get<double>(var1);
        std::println("\nbad_access: {}", bad_access);
    }

    catch (const std::bad_variant_access& ex)
    {
        std::println("\ncaught exception:      {}", ex.what());
    }
}
```

```

// using std::get_if (example 1)
std::print("\nget_if<double>(var1):  ");
if (const double* p_double = std::get_if<double>(&var1))
    std::println("*p_double = {}", *p_double);
else
    std::println("failed as expected\n");

// using std::get_if (example 2)
std::print("get_if<int>(var1):      ");
if (const int* p_int = std::get_if<1>(&var1))
    std::println("*p_int = {}", *p_int);
else
    std::println("unexpected error");
}

```

Function `Ch05_03_ex1()` opens with the statement `std::variant<double, int> var1 {}`. This defines `var1` as a `std::variant` capable of holding two alternative values, either a `double` or `int`. The first expression of the ensuing code block utilizes the expression `var1 = std::numbers::pi` to store `pi` in `var1`. The next two `std::println()` statements demonstrate two different methods for accessing the current value in a `std::variant`. The first method utilizes `std::get<0>(var1)`. When using `std::get<>()` to access the value in a `std::variant`, index 0 corresponds to the first alternative, index 1 the second alternative, and so on. For `var1`, this means that indices 0 and 1 can be used to access the `double` and `int`, respectively. The second `std::println()` statement utilizes `std::get<double>(var1)` to retrieve the `double` value that's currently stored in `var1`. The succeeding code block in `Ch05_03_ex1()` demonstrates using `var1` with an `int`. Note that the two `std::get<>` statements utilize template arguments 1 and `int`, respectively.

Helper function `std::get<>()` will throw a `std::bad_variant_access` exception if it's used to access a `std::variant` alternative that doesn't hold the current value. The try-catch construct of `Ch05_03_ex1()` demonstrates this. The first statement of the try block, `std::get<double>(var1)`, is invalid since `var1` currently holds an `int`. Execution of this statement generates an exception that's caught in the subsequent catch block.

Values of `std::variant` can also be accessed using `std::get_if<>()`. The template argument for `std::get_if<>()` can be a constant index or type just like `std::get<>()`. The primary difference between these two non-member functions is that `std::get_if<>()` returns a `nullptr` on an invalid access instead of throwing an exception. The final two code blocks in `Ch05_03_ex1()` demonstrate proper usage of `std::get_if()`.

Listing 5-3-2-1 shows the source code for class `Rect`, which is used later in this and other examples. Class `Rect` maintains attributes for a rectangle. It also defines relevant relational operators and formatting functions. Note that operator `<=>` and operator `==` carry out their operations using `area()`.

Listing 5-3-2-1. Example Ch05_03 – Class `Rect`

```
//-----
// Rect.h
//-----

#ifndef RECT_H_
#define RECT_H_
#include <format>
#include <ostream>
#include <string>

class Rect
{
    friend struct std::formatter<Rect>;

public:
    // constructors
    Rect() = default;

    Rect(unsigned int x, unsigned int y, unsigned int w, unsigned int h) :
        m_X(x), m_Y(y), m_W(w), m_H(h) {}

    ~Rect();

    // accessors
    unsigned int X() const { return m_X; }
    unsigned int Y() const { return m_Y; }
    unsigned int W() const { return m_W; }
    unsigned int H() const { return m_H; }
```

```

    unsigned int& X() { return m_X; }
    unsigned int& Y() { return m_Y; }
    unsigned int& W() { return m_W; }
    unsigned int& H() { return m_H; }

    void set(unsigned int x, unsigned int y, unsigned int w,
            unsigned int h)
        { m_X = x; m_Y = y; m_W = w; m_H = h; }

    // public member functions
    unsigned int area() const { return m_W * m_H; }

    // operators (see Rect.cpp)
    friend std::ostream& operator<<(std::ostream& os, const Rect& rect);

private:
    std::string to_str() const;

    // private attributes
    unsigned int m_X {};
    unsigned int m_Y {};
    unsigned int m_W {};
    unsigned int m_H {};
};

// relational operators
inline auto operator<=>(const Rect& rect1, const Rect& rect2)
    { return rect1.area() <=> rect2.area(); }

inline bool operator==(const Rect& rect1, const Rect& rect2)
    { return rect1.area() == rect2.area(); }

// class Rect formatter
template <> struct std::formatter<Rect> : std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& fpc)
        { return fpc.begin(); }
};

```

```

    auto format(const Rect& rect, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{}", rect.to_str()); }
};

#endif

//-----
// Rect.cpp
//-----

#include <format>
#include <ostream>
#include <string>
#include "Rect.h"
#include "Common.h"

Rect::~Rect()
{
    // std::println("Rect::~Rect()");    // for demo purposes only
}

std::ostream& operator<<(std::ostream& os, const Rect& rect)
{
    os << rect.to_str();
    return os;
}

std::string Rect::to_str() const
{
    std::string s{};
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "[({:d}, {:d}, {:d}, {:d}) ",
        m_X, m_Y, m_W, m_H);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:d}]", area());
    return s;
}

```


Listing 5-3-2-2 shows the source code for function `Ch05_02_ex2()`. Function `Ch05_02_ex2()` demonstrates the use of a `std::variant` that holds an object of type `Rect` or `std::string`. The first code block in this function uses `var1.emplace<0>(Rect(10, 20, 30, 40))` to store a `Rect` in `var1`. The `std::variant::emplace<>()` functions perform in-place object construction just like the other `emplace()` functions that you've already seen. The ensuing call to `std::holds_alternative<Rect>(var1)` returns `true` if `var1` currently holds a value of type `Rect`; otherwise, it returns `false`. Also, note in this code block the use of `var1.index()`, which returns the index of the currently held object.

Listing 5-3-2-2. Example `Ch05_03 - Ch05_03_ex2()`

```
void Ch05_03_ex2()
{
    std::variant<Rect, std::string> var1 {};

    // using emplace and holds_alternative (example 1)
    var1.emplace<0>(Rect(10, 20, 30, 40));
    if (std::holds_alternative<Rect>(var1))
        std::println("\nvar1 (Rect):  {}", std::get<Rect>(var1));
    std::println("var1.index():  {:d}", var1.index());

    // using emplace and holds_alternative (example 2)
    var1.emplace<1>("one, two, three, four");
    if (std::holds_alternative<std::string>(var1))
        std::println("\nvar1 (std::string):  {}",
            std::get<std::string>(var1));
    std::println("var1.index():  {:d}", var1.index());
}
```

The second code block in `Ch05_03_ex2()` employs `var1.emplace<1>("one, two, three, four")` to store a `std::string` into `var1`. It warrants mentioning here that unlike a union, class `std::variant` ensures that any applicable destructors are executed whenever a new object is stored. To observe this, remove the comment from the `std::println()` statement in `Rect`'s destructor and run the code.

Listing 5-3-3 shows the source code for the `Ch05_03_ex3()`. This example spotlights the use of relational operators and `std::variants`.

Listing 5-3-3. Example Ch05_03 - Ch05_03_ex3()

```

void Ch05_03_ex3()
{
    using namespace std::string_literals;
    using var_t = std::variant<std::string, int>;

    var_t var1 {"red"s};
    var_t var2 {"red"s};
    var_t var3 {"green"s};
    var_t var4 {10};

    // relational operators (same index, same value)
    std::println("\nvar1 == var2: {:s}", var1 == var2);
    std::println("var1 != var2: {:s}", var1 != var2);
    std::println("var1 < var2: {:s}", var1 < var2);
    std::println("var1 <= var2: {:s}", var1 <= var2);
    std::println("var1 > var2: {:s}", var1 > var2);
    std::println("var1 >= var2: {:s}", var1 >= var2);

    // relational operators (same index, different value)
    std::println("\nvar1 == var3: {:s}", var1 == var3);
    std::println("var1 != var3: {:s}", var1 != var3);
    std::println("var1 < var3: {:s}", var1 < var3);
    std::println("var1 <= var3: {:s}", var1 <= var3);
    std::println("var1 > var3: {:s}", var1 > var3);
    std::println("var1 >= var3: {:s}", var1 >= var3);

    // relational operators (different index, different value)
    std::println("\nvar1 == var4: {:s}", var1 == var4);
    std::println("var1 != var4: {:s}", var1 != var4);
    std::println("var1 < var4: {:s}", var1 < var4);
    std::println("var1 <= var4: {:s}", var1 <= var4);
    std::println("var1 > var4: {:s}", var1 > var4);
    std::println("var1 >= var4: {:s}", var1 >= var4);
}

```

Table 5-1 summarizes the specific actions and results for each relational operator. In this table, `v` and `w` are objects of type `std::variant` and `i = v.index()`. Function `std::variant::valueless_by_exception()` returns `false` if and only if the variant contains a value. A variant can become `valueless_by_exception()` if an exception is thrown during value initialization or a type change. Reading from top to bottom, the condition column of Table 5-1 shows the distinct comparisons (in order of execution) for each relational operator. This column is somewhat unwieldy since the relational operators consider indices and `valueless_by_exception()`. What’s important to recognize here is that if the indices are identical and the `std::variants` are not `valueless_by_exception()`, the relational operators carry out standard comparisons.

Table 5-1. *Relational Operators for std::variant*

Operator	Condition	Return Value
<code>v == w</code>	<code>v.index() != w.index()</code>	<code>false</code>
	<code>v.valueless_by_exception()</code>	<code>true</code>
	otherwise	<code>get<i>(v) == get<i>(w)</code>
<code>v != w</code>	<code>v.index() != w.index()</code>	<code>true</code>
	<code>v.valueless_by_exception()</code>	<code>false</code>
	otherwise	<code>get<i>(v) != get<i>(w)</code>
<code>v < w</code>	<code>w.valueless_by_exception()</code>	<code>false</code>
	<code>v.valueless_by_exception()</code>	<code>true</code>
	<code>v.index() < w.index()</code>	<code>true</code>
	<code>v.index() > w.index()</code>	<code>false</code>
	otherwise	<code>get<i>(v) < get<i>(w)</code>
<code>v > w</code>	<code>v.valueless_by_exception()</code>	<code>false</code>
	<code>w.valueless_by_exception()</code>	<code>true</code>
	<code>v.index() > w.index()</code>	<code>true</code>
	<code>v.index() < w.index()</code>	<code>false</code>
	otherwise	<code>get<i>(v) > get<i>(w)</code>

(continued)

Table 5-1. (continued)

Operator	Condition	Return Value
v <= w	v.valueless_by_exception()	true
	w.valueless_by_exception()	false
	v.index() < w.index()	true
	v.index() > w.index()	false
	otherwise	get<i>(v) <= get<i>(w)
v >= w	w.valueless_by_exception()	true
	v.valueless_by_exception()	false
	v.index() > w.index()	true
	v.index() < w.index()	false
	otherwise	get<i>(v) >= get<i>(w)
v <=> w	v.valueless_by_exception()	strong_ordering::equal
	&& w.valueless_by_exception()	strong_ordering::less
	v.valueless_by_exception()	strong_ordering::greater
	w.valueless_by_exception()	c
	c = v.index() <=> w.index(); c != 0 otherwise	get<i>(v) <=> get<i>(w)

Here are the results for example Ch05_03:

```
----- Results for example Ch05_03 -----
----- Ch05_03_ex1() -----
std::get<0>(var1):      3.141592653589793
std::get<double>(var1): 3.141592653589793

std::get<1>(var1):      100
std::get<int>(var1):    100

caught exception:      bad variant access

get_if<double>(var1):  failed as expected
```

```

get_if<int>(var1):      *p_int = 100
----- Ch05_03_ex2() -----
var1 (Rect):  [(10, 20, 30, 40) 1200]
var1.index(): 0

var1 (std::string): one, two, three, four
var1.index(): 1

----- Ch05_03_ex3() -----

var1 == var2: true
var1 != var2: false
var1 < var2: false
var1 <= var2: true
var1 > var2: false
var1 >= var2: true

var1 == var3: false
var1 != var3: true
var1 < var3: false
var1 <= var3: false
var1 > var3: true
var1 >= var3: true

var1 == var4: false
var1 != var4: true
var1 < var4: true
var1 <= var4: true
var1 > var4: false
var1 >= var4: false

```

Using `std::optional`

A `std::optional` object is a template class that encompasses and manages another object, which may or may not be present. Objects of `std::optional` are sometimes exploited to return a value from a function that might fail. The state of a `std::optional`

object is binary; it either contains an object or it contains nothing. If a `std::optional` object contains another object, that object's destructor is executed during execution of the holding `std::optional`'s destructor.

Source code example Ch05_04 spotlights a few conventional usages of `std::optional` objects. Listing 5-4-1-1 shows the source code for class `Nut`. Example Ch05_04 utilizes this class to illustrate the use of `std::optional` objects. It's also used in later chapters.

Listing 5-4-1-1. Example Ch05_04 – Class `Nut`

```
//-----
// Nut.h
//-----

#ifndef NUT_H_
#define NUT_H_
#include <format>
#include <ostream>
#include <string>
#include <vector>

class Nut
{
    friend struct std::formatter<Nut>;

public:
    // order of elements in enum Type must match elements in s_Nuts (see
    Nut.cpp)
    enum class Type : unsigned int
        {Almond, Cashew, Chestnut, Hazelnut, Pecan, Pistachio, Walnut};

    // constructors
    Nut() = default;

    Nut(const std::string& name, unsigned int energy_kj, float
    carbohydrates,
        float fat, float protein) : m_Name {name}, m_EnergyKj {energy_kj},
        m_Carbohydrates {carbohydrates}, m_Fat {fat}, m_Protein {protein}
```

```

{
    m_EnergyKcal = static_cast<unsigned int>(m_EnergyKj * 0.239f
    + 0.5f);
}

// accessors
std::string Name() const { return m_Name; }
unsigned int EnergyKj() const { return m_EnergyKj; }
unsigned int EnergyKcal() const { return m_EnergyKcal; }
float Carbohydrates() const { return m_Carbohydrates; }
float Fat() const { return m_Fat; }
float Protein() const { return m_Protein; }

// operators
friend auto operator<=>(const Nut& nut1, const Nut& nut2)
    { return nut1.m_Name <=> nut2.m_Name; }

friend bool operator==(const Nut& nut1, const Nut& nut2)
    { return nut1.m_Name == nut2.m_Name; }

friend std::ostream& operator<<(std::ostream& os, const Nut& nut)
    { os << nut.to_str(); return os; }

// miscellaneous (see Nut.cpp)
static Nut get_nut(Nut::Type type);
static std::string get_type_string(Nut::Type type);
static std::vector<Nut> get_vector();
static std::string title_str();

private:
    // private member functions (see Nut.cpp)
    std::string to_str() const;

    // private attributes
    std::string m_Name {}; // nut name
    unsigned int m_EnergyKj {}; // energy (kilojoules) per 100g
    unsigned int m_EnergyKcal {}; // energy (kilocalories) per 100g
    float m_Carbohydrates {}; // carbohydrates (g) per 100g

```

```

float m_Fat {};           // fat (g) per 100g
float m_Protein {};     // protein (g) per 100g
};

// class Nut formatter
template <> struct std::formatter<Nut> : std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& pc)
        { return pc.begin(); }

    auto format(const Nut& nut, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{}", nut.to_str()); }
};

#endif

```

```

//-----
// Nut.cpp
//-----

```

```

#include <array>
#include <format>
#include <stdexcept>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Nut.h"

namespace
{
    const std::array<Nut, 7> s_Nuts
    {
        // order of objects below must match enum Nut::Type (see Nut.h)
        Nut {"Almond", 2423, 21.6f, 49.9f, 21.2f},
        Nut {"Cashew", 553, 30.19f, 43.85f, 18.22f},
        Nut {"Chestnut", 820, 28.0f, 1.3f, 1.6f},
        Nut {"Hazelnut", 2629, 16.7f, 60.75f, 15.95f},
        Nut {"Pecan", 2889, 13.86f, 71.97f, 9.17f},
        Nut {"Pistachio", 2351, 27.51f, 45.39f, 20.27f},
    }
}

```



```

        Nut {"Walnut", 2738, 13.71f, 65.21f, 15.23f},
    };
}

Nut Nut::get_nut(Nut::Type type)
{
    auto t = static_cast<unsigned int>(type);

    if (t >= s_Nuts.size())
        throw std::runtime_error("Nut::get_nut() - invalid type");

    return s_Nuts[t];
}

std::string Nut::get_type_string(Nut::Type type)
{
    auto t = static_cast<unsigned int>(type);

    if (t >= s_Nuts.size())
        throw std::runtime_error("Nut::get_type_string() - invalid type");

    return s_Nuts[t].m_Name;
}

std::vector<Nut> Nut::get_vector()
{
    std::vector<Nut> nuts(s_Nuts.begin(), s_Nuts.end());
    return nuts;
}

std::string Nut::to_str() const
{
    std::string s {};
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "[{:<13s}", m_Name);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:>11d}", m_EnergyKj);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:>11d}", m_EnergyKcal);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:>11.2f}", m_Carbohydrates);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:>11.2f}", m_Fat);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:>11.2f}]", m_Protein);
}

```

```

    return s;
}

std::string Nut::title_str()
{
    std::string s {};
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "\n{:<13s}", "Name");
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:>11s}", "EnKj");
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:>12s}", "EnKcal");
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:>11s}", "Carbs");
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:>11s}", "Fat");
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:>12s}\n", "Protein");

    s += std::string(72, '=');
    s += '\n';
    return s;
}

```

The first part of Listing 5-4-1-1 shows the header file for class `Nut`. Near the top of the class definition is an enum named `Type`, which defines symbolic names for the predefined `Nut` objects in `Nut.cpp`. The parameterized constructor for class `Nut` requires a name `std::string` along with various nutritional values. Next is a series of accessor functions. This is followed by the definitions for `operator<=>` and `operator==`.⁵ Note that these operators perform comparisons using attribute `m_Name`. The miscellaneous section contains declarations for `static` functions that the example programs use to obtain `Nut` objects or other related data. File `Nut.cpp` begins an anonymous namespace that contains a `std::array` of predefined `Nut` objects. The remaining code in `Nut.cpp` includes definitions for the previously mentioned `static` functions along with some formatting functions.

Function `Ch05_04_ex1()` demonstrates how to determine if a `std::optional` object contains a value. Listing 5-4-1-2 shows the code for `Ch05_04_ex1()`.

⁵ Recall that the C++ compiler can automatically generate code for the six standard relational operators from these two operators.

Listing 5-4-1-2. Example Ch05_04 – Ch05_04_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch05_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <array>
#include <cmath>
#include <optional>
#include <string>
#include "Ch05_04.h"
#include "Nut.h"

void Ch05_04_ex1()
{
    // std::optional objects
    std::optional<Nut> nut1 {Nut::get_nut(Nut::Type::Almond)};
    std::optional<Nut> nut2 {Nut::get_nut(Nut::Type::Pecan)};
    std::optional<Nut> nut3 {};

    std::print("{:s}", Nut::title_str());

    // using has_value()
    if (nut1.has_value())
        std::println("{} ", nut1.value());
    else
        std::println("no value");

    // using operator bool()
    if (nut2)
        std::println("{} ", *nut2);
    else
        std::println("no value");

    if (nut3)
        std::println("{} ", *nut3);
    else
        std::println("no value");
}

```

In Listing 5-4-1-2, function `Ch05_04_ex1()` opens with the definition of several `std::optional<Nut>` objects. The first two objects, `nut1` and `nut2`, contain `Nut` objects that encompass nutritional data for almonds and pecans. Object `nut3` is a `std::optional<Nut>` object without a contained `Nut`. While not used in this example, a function could exercise `std::optional::operator=` to assign a value to `nut3`.

The second code block in `Ch05_04_ex1()` uses `nut1.has_value()` to test `nut1` for a contained value. Member function `has_value()` returns a `bool` signifying the presence (`true`) or absence (`false`) of a contained value. If `nut1` contains a value, the subsequent `std::println()` call exercises `nut1.value()` to obtain a reference to the current `Nut` value for printing. One important item to note here is that `std::optional::value()` throws a `std::bad_optional_access` exception if it's used with an object that doesn't contain a value.

The next code block demonstrates an alternative method of checking a `std::optional` object for a contained value. The statement `if (nut2)` exploits `std::optional::bool()`, which performs the same operation as `has_value()`. Note the use of (dereference) operator `*` in the ensuing `std::println()` statement to access the contained value in `nut2`. The final code block demonstrates the use of a `std::optional<Nut>` object without a contained value.

Listing 5-4-2 shows the code for function `Ch05_04_ex2()`, which illustrates `std::optional` relational operator usage. Following the initializations of `nut1` to `nut5`, `Ch05_04_ex2()` performs comparisons using objects `nut1` to `nut3`, all of which have contained values. For these comparisons, the relational operators defined by class `Nut` get employed. The next code block compares `nut1` and `nut4`. Note that `nut4` lacks a contained value.

Listing 5-4-2. Example `Ch05_04 - Ch05_04_ex2()`

```
void Ch05_04_ex2()
{
    // create std::optional<Nut> test objects
    std::optional<Nut> nut1 {Nut::get_nut(Nut::Type::Pecan)};
    std::optional<Nut> nut2 {nut1};
    std::optional<Nut> nut3 {Nut::get_nut(Nut::Type::Walnut)};
    std::optional<Nut> nut4 {};
    Nut nut5 {Nut::get_nut(Nut::Type::Almond)};    // value object
```

```

std::println("nut1 name: {}", nut1.has_value() ? nut1->Name() :
"no value");
std::println("nut2 name: {}", nut2.has_value() ? nut2->Name() :
"no value");
std::println("nut3 name: {}", nut3.has_value() ? nut3->Name() :
"no value");
std::println("nut4 name: {}", nut4.has_value() ? nut4->Name() :
"no value");
std::println("nut5 name: {}", nut5.Name());

// Relational operators - example 1
std::println("\ncomparisons using two std::optional<Nut>");
std::println("nut1 == nut2: {:s}", nut1 == nut2);
std::println("nut1 < nut2: {:s}", nut1 < nut2);
std::println("nut1 > nut2: {:s}", nut1 > nut2);

std::println("\nnut1 == nut3: {:s}", nut1 == nut3);
std::println("nut1 < nut3: {:s}", nut1 < nut3);
std::println("nut1 > nut3: {:s}", nut1 > nut3);

// Relational operators - example 2
std::println("\ncomparisons using std::optional<Nut> and no value");
std::println("nut1 == nut4: {:s}", nut1 == nut4);
std::println("nut1 < nut4: {:s}", nut1 < nut4);
std::println("nut1 > nut4: {:s}", nut1 > nut4);

// Relational operators - example 3
std::println("\ncomparisons using std::optional<Nut> and
std::nullopt");
std::println("nut1 == std::nullopt: {:s}", nut1 == std::nullopt);
std::println("nut1 < std::nullopt: {:s}", nut1 < std::nullopt);
std::println("nut1 > std::nullopt: {:s}", nut1 > std::nullopt);

std::println("\nnut4 == std::nullopt: {:s}", nut4 == std::nullopt);
std::println("nut4 < std::nullopt: {:s}", nut4 > std::nullopt);
std::println("nut4 > std::nullopt: {:s}", nut4 < std::nullopt);

```

```

// Relational operators - example 4
std::println("\ncomparisons using using std::optional<Nut> and Nut");
std::println("nut1 == nut5: {:s}", nut1 == nut5);
std::println("nut1 < nut5: {:s}", nut1 < nut5);
std::println("nut1 > nut5: {:s}", nut1 > nut5);
}

```

Table 5-2 summarizes `std::optional` relational operator usages. In this table, symbols `x` and `y` denote objects of type `std::optional<T>`, and `v` denotes an object of type `T`. Table 5-2 contains three relational operator groupings: `x op y`, `x op std::nullopt`, and `x op v` (or `v op x`) where `op` denotes a relational operator. The important item to recognize in Table 5-2 is that when comparing two `std::optional<T>` objects, a normal comparison is performed if both `x.has_value()` and `y.has_value()` are true. When comparing a `std::optional<T>` against an object of type `T`, a normal comparison is performed if `x.has_value()` is true.

Table 5-2. *Relational Operators for `std::optional`*

Operator	Condition	Return Value
<code>x == y</code>	<code>x.has_value() != y.has_value()</code> <code>x.has_value() == false</code> otherwise	false true <code>*x == *y</code>
<code>x != y</code>	<code>x.has_value() != y.has_value()</code> <code>x.has_value() == false</code> otherwise	true false <code>*x != *y</code>
<code>x < y</code>	<code>!y</code> <code>!x</code> otherwise	false true <code>*x < *y</code>

(continued)

Table 5-2. *(continued)*

Operator	Condition	Return Value
x > y	!x	false
	!y	true
	otherwise	*x > *y
x <= y	!x	true
	!y	false
	otherwise	*x <= *y
x >= y	!y	true
	!x	false
	otherwise	*x >= *y
x <=> y	x && y	*x <=> *y
	otherwise	x.has_value() <=> y.has_value()
x == std::nullopt		!x
x <=> std::nullopt		x.has_value() <=> false
x == v		x.has_value() ? *x == v : false
v == x		x.has_value() ? v == *x : false
x != v		x.has_value() ? *x != v : true
v != x		x.has_value() ? v != *x : true
x < v		x.has_value() ? *x < v : true
v < x		x.has_value() ? v < *x : false
x > v		x.has_value() ? *x > v : false
v > x		x.has_value() ? v > *x : true
x <= v		x.has_value() ? *x <= v : true
v <= x		x.has_value() ? v <= *x : false

(continued)

Table 5-2. (continued)

Operator	Condition	Return Value
<code>x >= v</code>		<code>x.has_value() ? *x >= v : false</code>
<code>v >= x</code>		<code>x.has_value() ? v >= *x : true</code>
<code>x <=> v</code>		<code>x.has_value() ? *x <=> v : strong_ordering::less</code>

One real-world downside of `std::optional` usage is the repeated checking (using `has_value()` or `operator bool()`) that a program typically performs to confirm that a `std::optional` object contains a value. To mitigate this problem, C++23 adds several monadic operations to class `std::optional<>`. A monadic operation is a member function that conditionally executes a supplied function based on the state of a `std::optional` object. Monadic operations reduce the number of `if-else` code blocks necessary to execute a series of operations using a `std::optional` object.

Listing 5-4-3 shows the source code example function `Ch05_04_ex3()`. This function demonstrates basic usage of `std::optional<>` monadic operations `and_then()`, `transform()`, and `or_else()`.

Listing 5-4-3. Example Ch05_04 - Ch05_04_ex3()

```
void Ch05_04_ex3()
{
    #if __cpp_lib_optional >= 202110L
        std::array<std::optional<double>, 2> arr1
            { std::optional<double> {}, std::optional<double> {2.0} };
        for (const std::optional<double>& opt : arr1)
        {
            // print opt.value()
            std::print("\nopt.value(): ");
            if (opt)
                std::println("{:f}", opt.value());
            else

```



```

        std::println("no value");

// using std::optional<T>::and_then
auto func_and_then = [](double x) -> std::optional<double>
    { return std::sqrt(x); };

std::optional<double> result_and_then = opt.and_then
(func_and_then);

std::print("result_and_then.value(): ");
if (result_and_then)
    std::println("{:f}", result_and_then.value());
else
    std::println("no value");

// using std::optional<T>::transform
auto func_transform = [](double x) -> int
    { return static_cast<int>(x * x * x); };

std::optional<int> result_transform = opt.transform
(func_transform);

std::print("result_transform.value(): ");
if (result_transform)
    std::println("{:d}", result_transform.value());
else
    std::println("no value");

// using std::optional<T>::or_else
auto func_or_else = []() -> std::optional<double>
    { return 20.0; };

std::optional<double> result_or_else = opt.or_else(func_or_else);

std::print("result_or_else.value(): ");
if (result_or_else)
    std::println("{:f}", result_or_else.value());
else
    std::println("no value");
}

```

```

#else
    std::println("Example Ch05_04_ex3() "
        "requires std::optional monadic operations (C++23)");
#endif
}

```

Near the top of `Ch05_04_ex3()` is the definition of `std::array<std::optional<double>, 2> arr1`. Note that the first `std::optional<double>` object is empty, while the second object contains a value of 2.0. The first code block within the for loop prints the contained value of `opt` (if present). Next is the definition of lambda expression `func_and_then`. Note that this expression requires an argument of type `double`. Also, note that `func_and_then()` calculates the square root of `x` and returns this value in an object of type `std::optional<double>`. The next statement, `result_and_then = opt.and_then(func_and_then)`, calls `func_and_then()`. If `opt` contains a value (`opt1.has_value()` is true), function `func_and_then()` gets executed, which calculates the square root of `opt.value()`. The result of this calculation is returned in an object of type `std::optional<double>`. If `opt1` doesn't contain a value (i.e., `opt1.has_value()` is false), `and_then()` returns an empty object of type `std::optional<double>`.

The next for loop code block in `Ch05_04_ex3()` demonstrates the use of monadic member function `transform()`, which performs a transformation using the value of a `std::optional` object. Lambda expression `func_transform()` defines the transformation to perform. Note that this expression requires an argument of type `double` (the same type as the `std::optional` object) but returns a value of type `int`. Similar to `and_then()`, `opt.transform(func_transform)` executes `func_transform(opt.value())` provided `opt.has_value()` is true. What's important to recognize here is that `opt.transform(func_transform)` takes the `int` value calculated by `func_transform()` and automatically converts this value to an object of type `std::optional<int>`. Note that `result_transform` is declared as a `std::optional<int>`.⁶

The final for loop code block spotlights the use of monadic member function `or_else()`. This function executes lambda expression `func_or_else()` if `opt.has_value()` is false; otherwise, it returns `opt`. Note that `func_or_else()` returns an object of type `std::optional<double>`. Monadic member function `or_else()` is often utilized

⁶Explicit types are used here instead of keyword `auto` to accentuate the actual types.

to provide a default value for a `std::optional<>` object that lacks a value. Before proceeding, you may want to take a quick look at the results section for this example to confirm your understanding of the code in `Ch05_04_ex3()`.

Listing 5-4-4 shows the source code for the next `std::optional` example. This listing begins with the definition of a helper function named `get_test_nut()`, which returns a `std::optional<Nut>`. Note that `std::nullopt` is returned for types `Nut::Type::Pecan` and `Nut::Type::Pistachio` to simulate an error condition. The next helper function, `protein_per_gram()`, calculates the amount of protein (grams) in a one gram serving. Note that the return type for this function is `std::optional<float>`. The final helper function, `protein_per_ounce()`, calculates grams of protein per one ounce serving.

Listing 5-4-4. Example `Ch05_04 - Ch05_04_ex4()`

```
// helper functions
std::optional<Nut> get_test_nut(Nut::Type type)
{
    // return nullopt to simulate error
    if (type == Nut::Type::Pecan || type == Nut::Type::Pistachio)
        return std::nullopt;

    // return valid Nut
    return Nut::get_nut(type);
}

std::optional<float> protein_per_gram(const Nut& nut)
{
    // calculate grams of protein in 1 gram serving
    return nut.Protein() / 100.0f;
}

float protein_per_ounce(float ppg)
{
    // calculate grams of protein in 1 ounce serving
    return ppg * 28.3495f;
}

void Ch05_04_ex4()
{
```

```

#if __cpp_lib_optional >= 202110L
    Nut::Type nut_types[] { Nut::Type::Almond, Nut::Type::Cashew,
        Nut::Type::Pecan, Nut::Type::Walnut };

    for (Nut::Type nut_type : nut_types)
    {
        std::print("nut type: {:10s}", Nut::get_type_string(nut_type));

        // lambda expression for std::optional::or_else
        auto func_or_else = [nut_type]()
            { return std::optional<Nut> { Nut::get_nut(nut_type) }; };

        std::optional<Nut> nut1 = get_test_nut(nut_type);
        std::optional<Nut> nut2 = nut1.or_else(func_or_else);

        if (nut2)
        {
            // display protein per ounce (ppo)
            std::optional<float> ppg = nut2.and_then(protein_per_gram);
            std::optional<float> ppo = ppg.transform(protein_per_ounce);

            if (ppo)
                std::println("protein: {:.4f} g per ounce", ppo.value());
            else
                std::println("ppo has no value");
        }
        else
            std::println("nut2 has no value");
    }
#else
    std::println("Example Ch05_04_ex4() "
        "requires std::optional monadic operations (C++23)");
#endif
}

```

Function `Ch05_04_ex4()` spotlights a series of monadic operations using instances of `std::optional<Nut>`. Within the `for` loop, `nut1` is initialized using helper function `get_test_nut()`. Recall that `get_test_nut()` may return a `std::nullopt` to simulate an error condition. The next statement, `nut2 = nut1.or_else(func_or_else)`, calls `func_or_else()` to initialize `nut2` if `nut1.has_value()` equals `false`; otherwise, `or_else()` returns `nut1`. In the next code block, `Ch05_04_ex4()` utilizes `ppg = nut2.and_then(protein_per_gram)` and `ppo = ppg.transform(protein_per_ounce)` to calculate the amount of protein in a one ounce serving.

Listing 5-4-5 shows the code for `Ch05_04_ex5()`, which exemplifies a chained series of monadic operations. The calculation carried out in this function is the same as the one in `Ch05_04_ex4()`, but the code that's utilized within the `for` loop is shorter and – more importantly – underscores the ultimate intent of the calculation.

Listing 5-4-5. Example `Ch05_04 - Ch05_04_ex5()`

```
void Ch05_04_ex5()
{
    #if __cpp_lib_optional >= 202110L

        Nut::Type nut_types[] { Nut::Type::Almond, Nut::Type::Cashew,
                                Nut::Type::Pecan, Nut::Type::Walnut };

        for (Nut::Type nut_type : nut_types)
        {
            std::print("nut type: {:10s}", Nut::get_type_string(nut_type));

            // lambda expression for std::optional::or_else
            auto func_or_else = [nut_type]()
                { return std::optional<Nut> { Nut::get_nut(nut_type) }; };

            // display protein per ounce (ppo)
            auto ppo = get_test_nut(nut_type)
                .or_else(func_or_else)
                .and_then(protein_per_gram)
                .transform(protein_per_ounce);

            if (ppo)
                std::println("protein: {:.4f} g per ounce", ppo.value());
            else
```

```

        std::println("ppo has no value");
    }
#else
    std::println("Example Ch05_04_ex5() "
        "requires std::optional monadic operations (C++23)");
#endif
}

```

Here are the results for example Ch05_04:

----- Results for example Ch05_04 -----

----- Ch05_04_ex1() -----

Name	EnKj	EnKcal	Carbs	Fat	Protein
[Almond	2423	579	21.60	49.90	21.20]
[Pecan	2889	690	13.86	71.97	9.17]

no value

----- Ch05_04_ex2() -----

```

nut1 name: Pecan
nut2 name: Pecan
nut3 name: Walnut
nut4 name: no value
nut5 name: Almond

```

comparisons using two std::optional<Nut>

```

nut1 == nut2: true
nut1 < nut2: false
nut1 > nut2: false

```

```

nut1 == nut3: false
nut1 < nut3: true
nut1 > nut3: false

```

comparisons using std::optional<Nut> and no value

```

nut1 == nut4: false
nut1 < nut4: false

```

```
nut1 > nut4: true
```

```
comparisons using std::optional<Nut> and std::nullopt
```

```
nut1 == std::nullopt: false
```

```
nut1 < std::nullopt: false
```

```
nut1 > std::nullopt: true
```

```
nut4 == std::nullopt: true
```

```
nut4 < std::nullopt: false
```

```
nut4 > std::nullopt: false
```

```
comparisons using using std::optional<Nut> and Nut
```

```
nut1 == nut5: false
```

```
nut1 < nut5: false
```

```
nut1 > nut5: true
```

```
----- Ch05_04_ex3() -----
```

```
opt.value(): no value
```

```
result_and_then.value(): no value
```

```
result_transform.value(): no value
```

```
result_or_else.value(): 20.000000
```

```
opt.value(): 2.000000
```

```
result_and_then.value(): 1.414214
```

```
result_transform.value(): 8
```

```
result_or_else.value(): 2.000000
```

```
----- Ch05_04_ex4() -----
```

```
nut type: Almond      protein: 6.0101 g per ounce
```

```
nut type: Cashew      protein: 5.1653 g per ounce
```

```
nut type: Pecan       protein: 2.5996 g per ounce
```

```
nut type: Walnut      protein: 4.3176 g per ounce
```

```
----- Ch05_04_ex4() -----
```

```
nut type: Almond      protein: 6.0101 g per ounce
```

```
nut type: Cashew      protein: 5.1653 g per ounce
```

```
nut type: Pecan       protein: 2.5996 g per ounce
```

```
nut type: Walnut      protein: 4.3176 g per ounce
```

Using `std::any`

Class `std::any` is a simple *non-template* container that can hold a single value of any type, which must be copy constructable (i.e., the type defines a copy constructor). The state of a `std::any` object corresponds to whether it contains a value. A `std::any` object without a value is considered empty. Objects of type `std::any` are often utilized to safely convey a single value whose type may vary.

Source code example Ch05_05 highlights the use of `std::any`. Function `Ch05_05_ex1()`, shown in Listing 5-5-1, begins its execution with the statement `std::any val1 {100}`. Following execution of this statement, `val1` contains an `int` and its value is 100. In the ensuing `std::println()` statement, the expression `val1.type().name()` returns a string for the type of value contained in `val1`. The next `std::println()` statement utilizes `std::any_cast<int>(val1)` to obtain the value of the `int` that's stored in `val1`.

Listing 5-5-1. Example Ch05_05 - Ch05_05_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch05_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <any>
#include <numbers>
#include <typeinfo>
#include "Ch05_05.h"
#include "Rect.h"

void Ch05_05_ex1()
{
    using namespace std::string_literals;

    // using std::any - initial value is int
    std::any val1 {100};
    std::println("\nval1 type: {s}", val1.type().name());
    std::println("val1 value: {d}", std::any_cast<int>(val1));

    // change val1 to std::string (literal suffix required)
    val1 = "one, two, three"s;
    std::println("\nval1 type: {s}", val1.type().name());
}
```



```

std::println("val1 value: {:s}", std::any_cast<std::string>(val1));

// using std::any - initial value is double
std::any val2 {std::numbers::pi};
std::println("\nval1 type: {:s}", val2.type().name());
std::println("val2 value: {:.4f}", std::any_cast<double>(val2));

// throws std::bad_any_cast exception
// auto val3 = std::any_cast<std::string>(val2);
}

```

In the next code block, the expression `val1 = "one, two, three"`s changes both the type and value of the object maintained in `val1`. Note that this expression employs literal suffix `s`. This is required to ensure that `val1` contains an object of type `std::string`. Without the literal suffix, `val1` would hold an object of type `const char*`. The following code block creates `std::any` object `val2`, which contains a double that equals the constant π . The final statement of `Ch05_05_ex1()` is commented out since it generates an exception. When using `std::any_cast<T>(const std::any& any_obj)`, the value that's contained in `any_obj` must be one of type `T`. If it isn't, `std::any_cast` throws a `std::bad_any_cast` exception.

Listing 5-5-2 shows the source code for the next `std::any` example. Function `Ch05_05_ex2()` opens with the definition of an empty `std::any` object named `val1`. The `val1.emplace<Rect>(0, 0, 3, 4)` statement that follows emplaces an object of type `Rect` (see Listing 5-3-2-1) into `val1`. In the ensuing `if` statement, `val1.has_value()` returns true if `val1` contains a value; otherwise, it returns false. The next code block utilizes `val1.emplace<std::string>("eins zwei drei")` to store an object of type `std::string` in `val`. When changing the value of a `std::any` object, any applicable destructors are automatically executed. Function `Ch05_05_ex2()`'s final code block utilizes `val1.reset()`, which resets `val1` to the empty state.

Listing 5-5-2. Example `Ch05_05 - Ch05_05_ex2()`

```

void Ch05_05_ex2()
{
    std::any val1 {};

    // using emplace - change to Rect
    val1.emplace<Rect>(0, 0, 3, 4);
}

```

```

if (val1.has_value())
{
    if (val1.type() == typeid(Rect))
        std::println("val1: {}", any_cast<Rect>(val1));
}

// using emplace - change to std::string
val1.emplace<std::string>("eins zwei drei");

if (val1.has_value())
{
    if (val1.type() == typeid(std::string))
        std::println("val1: {}", any_cast<std::string>(val1));
}

// manual reset
val1.reset();

if (val1.has_value())
    std::println("val1.reset() failed!");
else
    std::println("val1.reset() successful");
}

```

The final `std::any` example of Ch05_05, shown in Listing 5-5-3, begins with the definition of a function named `process_message()`. Note that this function requires an argument of type `const std::any&`. Within `process_message()` is a series of `val.type()` checks that test `val` for specific type. If a type match is found, the ensuing `std::println()` statement prints the contained value. If `val` is empty, `val.type()` returns `typeid(void)`. The next function in Listing 5-5-3, `Ch05_05_ex3()`, exercises `process_message()` using a variety of `std::any` objects. Note that the last call to `process_message()` utilizes an empty `std::any` object.

Listing 5-5-3. Example Ch05_05 – Ch05_05_ex3()

```

void process_message(const std::any& val)
{
    if (val.type() == typeid(int))
        std::println("val: {:d}", any_cast<int>(val));
}

```

```

    if (val.type() == typeid(long))
        std::println("val: {:d}", any_cast<long>(val));
    else if (val.type() == typeid(double))
        std::println("val: {:f}", any_cast<double>(val));
    else if (val.type() == typeid(std::string))
        std::println("val: {:s}", any_cast<std::string>(val));
    else if (val.type() == typeid(Rect))
        std::println("val: {}", any_cast<Rect>(val));
    else
        std::println("unexpected type: {:s}", val.type().name());
}

void Ch05_05_ex3()
{
    process_message(std::make_any<int>(100));
    process_message(std::make_any<long>(200L));
    process_message(std::make_any<long long>(300LL));
    process_message(std::make_any<double>(std::numbers::pi));
    process_message(std::make_any<std::string>("lemon lime orange"));
    process_message(std::make_any<Rect>(Rect {0, 0, 30, 40}));
    process_message(std::any {});
}

```

Example function `Ch05_05_ex3()` and `process_message()` utilized `std::any` objects that contained simple types, but it's easy to envision a real-world message processing algorithm that processes different message types embedded within a `std::any` object. The results for `Ch05_05` follow this paragraph. Note that the text output shown for “val1 type” is compiler dependent.

```
----- Results for example Ch05_05 -----
```

```
----- Ch05_05_ex1() -----
```

```
val1 type: int
val1 value: 100
```

```

val1 type:  class std::basic_string<char,struct std::char_
traits<char>,class std::allocator<char> >
val1 value: one, two, three

val1 type:  double
val2 value: 3.1416

----- Ch05_05_ex2() -----
val1: [(0, 0, 3, 4) 12]
val1: eins zwei drei
val1.reset() successful

----- Ch05_05_ex3() -----
val: 100
unexpected type: int
val: 200
unexpected type: __int64
val: 3.141593
val: lemon lime orange
val: [(0, 0, 30, 40) 1200]
unexpected type: void

```

Using `std::expected`

A `std::expected<T, E>` (C++23) object is a template class that *always* contains a value of type `T` or type `E` where `T` is the type of an expected value and `E` is the type of an unexpected value. Class `std::expected` objects are handy for function return values since they can encompass either a success (expected) or an error (unexpected) result.

Listing 5-6-1 shows the source code for example `Ch05_06_ex1()`. The first item to note in this listing is the preprocessor statement `#if __cpp_lib_expected >= 202211L`, which confirms compiler support for class `std::expected`. Next is the definition of enum class `ErrorCode`. This enum defines a few symbolic names for errors that example `Ch05_06` generates. The function that follows, `std::string to_string(ErrorCode ec)`, returns an `ErrorCode`'s string representation for display purposes.

Listing 5-6-1. Example Ch05_06 - Ch05_06_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch05_06_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <cerrno>
#include <cfenv>
#include <cmath>
#include <concepts>
#include <filesystem>
#include <format>
#include <fstream>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include <version>
#include "Ch05_06.h"
#include "MF.h"

#if __cpp_lib_expected >= 202211L
#include <expected>

enum class ErrorCode
    {OpenError, WriteError, CloseError, DomainError, RangeError};

std::string to_string(ErrorCode ec)
{
    static std::string ec_strings[]
        {"OpenError", "WriteError", "CloseError", "DomainError",
         "RangeError"};

    switch (ec)
    {
        case ErrorCode::OpenError:
        case ErrorCode::WriteError:
        case ErrorCode::CloseError:
        case ErrorCode::DomainError:
        case ErrorCode::RangeError:

```

```

        return ec_strings[static_cast<int>(ec)];
    default:
        return "unknown error code";
    }
}

std::expected<std::string, ErrorCode> file_op(const std::string& base_fn)
{
    // add name of results dir to base_fn
    std::string fn = MF::mk_test_filename(base_fn);

    // create test file (fails on invalid base_fn)
    std::ofstream ofs {fn, std::ios_base::out | std::ios_base::trunc};

    if (!ofs.good())
        return std::unexpected(ErrorCode::OpenError);

    // test file writes
    for (char c {'A'}; c <= 'Z'; ++c)
    {
        ofs << std::string(72, c) << '\n';

        if (!ofs.good())
            return std::unexpected(ErrorCode::WriteError);
    }

    // explicit close
    ofs.close();
    if (ofs.fail())
        return std::unexpected(ErrorCode::CloseError);

    // return final filename to caller
    return fn;
}

void Ch05_06_ex1()
{
    // test base name strings (good and bad)
    const std::string base_names[] =

```

```

    {"test1.txt", "test2\\.txt", "test3.txt", "test4/.txt"};

// Perform test file operations
for (const std::string& bn : base_names)
{
    // build base name string
    std::string bn2 {"Ch05_06_ex1_"};
    bn2 += bn;
    std::println("\nbase name: {:s}", bn2);

    // perform file operation
    std::expected<std::string, ErrorCode> result = file_op(bn2);

    if (result.has_value())
    {
        // successful file operation, delete temp file
        std::println("file_op() successful");
        std::println("removing test file {:s}", result.value());
        std::filesystem::remove(result.value());
    }
    else
    {
        // file operation error
        ErrorCode error_code = result.error();
        std::println("file_op() failed ({:s})", to_string(error_code));
    }
}
}

```

The next item in Listing 5-6-1 is the definition of test function `file_op()`, which writes character data to a test file. Note that the return value for `file_op()` is `std::expected<std::string, ErrorCode>`. The first code block in `file_op()` utilizes `MF::mk_test_file()` to prepend a directory name and prefix to `base_fn`.⁷ The ensuing code block opens file `fn` for output. If the open fails, `file_op()` executes `return std::unexpected(ErrorCode::OpenError)`. This returns an object of

⁷See MF.h for more information.

`std::expected<std::string, ErrorCode>` that contains an unexpected value. The next code block in `file_op()` writes test data to the specified file. This is followed by an explicit call to `close()`. Note that a result of `std::unexpected` is generated if either of these operations fail. The final `return fn` statement returns the generated filename to the caller. Note that `fn` is an object of type `std::string`, which matches the expected type of return value `std::expected<std::string, ErrorCode>`.

The opening code block of `Ch05_06_ex1()` defines a C-style array of `std::strings` that represent base names for test files. Note that array `base_names[]` includes both valid and invalid names. Within the `for` loop, the previously described `file_op()` is called and its return value is saved in `result`. The next statement, `result.has_value()`, tests `result` to see if it contains an *expected* value. If true, the ensuing `std::println()` statements print appropriate status messages. Note in the second `std::println()` statement the use of `result.value()`; this returns a reference to the expected `std::string` value that `result` contains. If `result.has_value()` is false, the expression `error_code = result.error()` obtains the unexpected value from `result`. This value is converted to a `std::string` using `to_string()` and printed.

Listing 5-6-2 shows the source code for example function `Ch05_06_ex2()`. This example utilizes `std::expected` to report the results of a numerical calculation. Listing 5-6-2 opens with the definition of template function `calc_result()`. Note that this function requires an argument of type `std::vector<T>` and returns a `std::expected<std::vector<T>, ErrorCode>`. Function `calc_result()` computes `result[i] = sqrt(log10(vec[i]))`. This calculation is arbitrary and inconsequential. What is important are the domain and range error checks performed within the `for` loop. If a domain or range error is detected, `calc_result()` returns `std::unexpected(ErrorCode::DomainError)` or `std::unexpected(ErrorCode::RangeError)`, respectively; otherwise, `std::vector<T> result` is returned.

Listing 5-6-2. Example Ch05_06 – Ch05_06_ex2()

```
template <typename T> requires std::floating_point<T>
std::expected<std::vector<T>, ErrorCode> calc_result(const
std::vector<T>& vec)
{
    errno = 0;
    std::vector<T> result(vec.size());
```



```

// perform test calculation (flag domain & range errors)
for (size_t i = 0; i < result.size(); ++i)
{
    T temp1 = log10(vec[i]);
    if (errno == EDOM)
        return std::unexpected(ErrorCode::DomainError);
    if (errno == ERANGE)
        return std::unexpected(ErrorCode::RangeError);

    T temp2 = sqrt(temp1);
    if (errno == EDOM)
        return std::unexpected(ErrorCode::DomainError);

    result[i] = temp2;
}

return result;
}

void Ch05_06_ex2()
{
    int test_id {};

    // test vectors
    std::vector<std::vector<double>> vecs
    {
        {10.0, 20.0, 30.0, 40.0, 50.0},
        {10.0, 20.0, 0.0, 40.0, 50.0},           // RE - log10(0.0)
        {100.0, 200.0, 300.0, 400.0, 500.0},
        {100.0, 200.0, -300.0, 400.0, 500.0},   // DE - log10(-300.0)
        {1000.0, 2000.0, 3000.0, 4000.0, 5000.0},
        {10.0, 20.0, 0.5, 40.0, 50.0}         // DE - sqrt(log10(0.5))
    };

    auto print_vec = [](const std::vector<double>& vec)
    {
        for (double x : vec)

```

```

        std::print("{:9.4f} ", x);
    std::println("");
};

for (const std::vector<double>& vec : vecs)
{
    std::print("\ntest #{:d} vec:   ", test_id);
    print_vec(vec);

    std::print("test #{:d} result: ", test_id++);

    std::expected<std::vector<double>, ErrorCode> result = calc_
result(vec);

    if (result)
    {
        std::vector<double> result_vec = result.value();
        print_vec(result_vec);
    }
    else
    {
        ErrorCode ec = result.error();
        std::print("{:s}\n", to_string(ec));
    }
}
}

#endif // __cpp_lib_expected

```

Function `Ch05_06_ex2()`, also shown in Listing 5-6-2, contains code that exercises `calc_result()`. Near the top of `Ch05_06_ex2()` are a series of test vectors that contain purposeful values to generate domain and range errors. The for loop within `Ch05_06_ex2()` contains straightforward code. Function `calc_result()` is called for each test `std::vector<double> vec` in `vecs`. The return code from this function is tested using `std::expected::operator::bool()`. If true, the results of the calculation are printed using `print_vec()`; otherwise, `result.error()` is utilized to obtain the unexpected error code, and this value is then converted to a `std::string` prior to being printed. Here are the results for example `Ch05_06`:

----- Results for example Ch05_06 -----

----- Ch05_06_ex1() -----

base name: Ch05_06_ex1_test1.txt
file_op() successful
removing test file ./~~Ch05_06_ex1_test1.txt

base name: Ch05_06_ex1_test2\.txt
file_op() failed (OpenError)

base name: Ch05_06_ex1_test3.txt
file_op() successful
removing test file ./~~Ch05_06_ex1_test3.txt

base name: Ch05_06_ex1_test4/.txt
file_op() failed (OpenError)

----- Ch05_06_ex2() -----

test #0 vec: 10.0000 20.0000 30.0000 40.0000 50.0000
test #0 result: 1.0000 1.1406 1.2154 1.2657 1.3034

test #1 vec: 10.0000 20.0000 0.0000 40.0000 50.0000
test #1 result: RangeError

test #2 vec: 100.0000 200.0000 300.0000 400.0000 500.0000
test #2 result: 1.4142 1.5169 1.5739 1.6131 1.6429

test #3 vec: 100.0000 200.0000 -300.0000 400.0000 500.0000
test #3 result: DomainError

test #4 vec: 1000.0000 2000.0000 3000.0000 4000.0000 5000.0000
test #4 result: 1.7321 1.8169 1.8647 1.8979 1.9233

test #5 vec: 10.0000 20.0000 0.5000 40.0000 50.0000
test #5 result: DomainError

Class `std::expected<T, E>` also supports several monadic operations, including `and_then()`, `transform()`, `or_else()`, and `transform_error()`. The first three monadic operations are analogs of the ones that you learned about earlier in this chapter for `std::optional`. The fourth one, `transform_error()`, facilitates transform operations using the value returned by `std::expected<E, T>::error()` instead of `std::expected<E, T>::value()`. Appendix B contains a list of resources that you can consult for more information regarding these operations.

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- A `std::pair` is a template class that bundles two heterogeneous objects into a single unit. The elements of a `std::pair` can be referenced using structure-like named members or via compile-time constant indices.
- A `std::tuple` is a template class that bundles N heterogeneous objects into a single unit. The elements of a `std::tuple` are referenced using compile-time constant indices.
- A `std::variant` is a type-safe alternative for a union. An instance of `std::variant` can hold one of several alternative types, which are specified using template parameters.
- A `std::optional` is a template class that holds an optional value of a single type. This class is sometimes utilized for return values since the presence or absence of a contained object can signify success or failure. Class `std::optional` supports monadic operations (C++23) that can be chained together to minimize boilerplate code that performs value checks.
- A `std::any` object can (optionally) hold a single value of any copy-constructable object.
- A `std::expected` (C++23) object always holds either an expected (normal) value or an unexpected (error) value. Class `std::expected` also supports monadic operations that can be chained together to minimize boilerplate value checking code.

CHAPTER 6

Smart Pointers

This chapter explains smart pointers and how to use them. Topics discussed include

- Smart pointer primer
- How to use `std::unique_ptr`
- How to use `std::shared_ptr`
- How to use `std::weak_ptr`

Smart Pointer Primer

A raw or native C++ pointer is simply the address of an object in memory. Consider the following frivolous example:

```
void test_ptr1()
{
    // pointer to a fundamental type
    int i {10};
    int* ip = &i;

    *ip += 20;
    i -= 5;
    std::println("i: {:d}", i);
}
```

The code in `test_ptr1()` uses address-of operator `&` to initialize pointer `int* ip`. The next two expressions, `*ip += 20` and `i -= 5`, carry out their operations using the same value in memory. Here's another example that's a bit more interesting:

```
struct X
{
    int ValA {20};
    double ValB {30.0};
};

void test_ptr2()
{
    // pointer to a struct
    X* xp = new X {};

    xp->ValA *= 10;
    xp->ValB /= 5.0;
    std::println("xp->ValA: {:d} xp->ValB: {:f}", xp->ValA, xp->ValB);
    delete xp;
}
```

Function `test_ptr2()` exploits operator `new` to dynamically allocate an instance `X` on the free store.¹ It then utilizes the pointer returned by `new` to perform calculations with structure members `ValA` and `ValB`. Following the calculations, `test_ptr2()` uses `delete xp` to release the previously allocated storage.

The final raw pointer example, `test_ptr3()`, allocates a C-style array and passes a pointer to the allocated array along with the number of elements to a function object that performs a calculation:

```
void test_ptr3()
{
    // pointer to C-style array
    constexpr int n {5};
    int* p = new int[n];

    auto f = [](int* p, int n)
```

¹A reserved section of memory that's used for dynamic allocations.

```

{
    for (int i = 0; i < n; ++i)
    {
        p[i] = 3 * i * i + 2 * i + 4;
        std::println("p[{:d}]: {:d}", i, p[i]);
    }
};

f(p, n);
delete[] p;
}

```

The code pattern of the for loop in `test_ptr3()` is extremely common in legacy C++ code, especially pre-C++11 code. The “problem” with using pointers as shown in `test_ptr2()` and `test_ptr3()` is that you must remember to utilize `delete` or `delete[]` to release the storage space allocated by `new`. More importantly, the code in these functions doesn’t account for the fact that `std::println()` might throw an exception. To address this situation, you can add try-catch blocks, but this often introduces unwelcome code obfuscations, especially when multiple levels of if-elses or function calls are involved.

To address situations like this, modern C++ strongly discourages the use of raw pointers. Instead, programs are encouraged to utilize smart pointers. A smart pointer is an abstraction of a raw pointer that’s used just like the latter. The primary advantage of a smart pointer over a raw pointer is that a smart pointer guarantees execution of all applicable destructors if an exception is thrown. The remainder of this chapter explicates the use of C++ smart pointers `std::unique_ptr`, `std::shared_ptr`, and `std::weak_ptr`.

Using `std::unique_ptr`

A `std::unique_ptr` is a smart pointer that maintains exclusive ownership of an object. Compared to a raw pointer, a `std::unique_ptr` is expedient in that it automatically calls the destructor of the maintained object during execution of its own destructor. This reduces the risk of a memory or other resource leak.

Listing 6-1-1-1 shows the source code for class `Book`, which is used later in this section. Class `Book` is a straightforward class that holds book-related information including author, title, year published, and number of copies. The class itself defines accessor functions to facilitate retrieval of these attributes, two member functions `buy()`

and `sell()` that adjust the number of copies, and formatting functions. It also defines suitable constructors and a destructor. Source code examples `Ch06_01` and `Ch06_02` utilize class `Book` to demonstrate `std::unique_ptr` usage.

Listing 6-1-1-1. Example `Ch06_01` – Class `Book`

```
//-----
// Book.h
//-----

#include <format>
#include <ostream>
#include <string>

class Book
{
    friend struct std::formatter<Book>;

public:
    Book();
    Book(const char* author, const char* title, int year_pub, int num_
        copies);
    ~Book();

    std::string Author() const { return m_Author; };
    std::string Title() const { return m_Title; };
    int YearPub() const { return m_YearPub; };
    int NumCopies() const { return m_NumCopies; };

    void set(const char* author, const char* title, int year_pub, int
        num_copies)
    {
        m_Author = author;
        m_Title = title;
        m_YearPub = year_pub;
        m_NumCopies = num_copies;
    }
}
```



```

    int sell(int num_copies);
    void buy(int num_copies);

private:
    std::string to_str() const;

    std::string m_Author {};
    std::string m_Title {};
    int m_YearPub {};
    int m_NumCopies {};
};

// class Book formatter
template <> struct std::formatter<Book> : std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& fpc)
        { return fpc.begin(); }

    auto format(const Book& book, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{}", book.to_str()); }
};

//-----
// Book.cpp
//-----

#include <format>
#include <stdexcept>
#include <string>
#include "Book.h"
#include "Common.h"

// note: std::println() calls in ctors and dtor are for demo purposes only
Book::Book()
{
    // std::println("class Book - default ctor");
}

```

```

Book::Book(const char* author, const char* title, int year_pub, int num_
copies) :
    m_Author {author}, m_Title {title},
    m_YearPub {year_pub}, m_NumCopies {num_copies}
{
// std::println("class Book - ctor for '{:s}'", m_Title);
}

Book::~Book()
{
// std::println("class Book - dtor for '{:s}'", m_Title);
}

int Book::sell(int num_copies)
{
    if (num_copies < 0)
        throw std::runtime_error("Book::sell() - invalid value: 'num_
copies'");

    if (m_NumCopies >= num_copies)
    {
        m_NumCopies -= num_copies;
        return num_copies;
    }
    else
    {
        int nc_ret = m_NumCopies;
        m_NumCopies = 0;
        return nc_ret;
    }
}

void Book::buy(int num_copies)
{
    if (num_copies < 0)
        throw std::runtime_error("Book::buy() - invalid value: 'num_
copies'");
}

```

```

    m_NumCopies += num_copies;
}

std::string Book::to_str() const
{
    std::string s {};

    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "[{:s}, '{:s}', {:d}, {:d}]",
        m_Author, m_Title, m_YearPub, m_NumCopies);

    return s;
}

```

Listing 6-1-1-2 shows the source code for test function `Ch06_01_ex1()`. In the opening code block of this function, two instances of class `Book` are dynamically allocated using operator `new`. Execution of these statements calls the parameterized constructor that's defined for class `Book`. The next few code blocks carry out `std::println()` and `sell()` operations using the allocated `Book` objects. The final code block utilizes operator `delete` to release `book1` and `book2`. This action also executes the destructor for both `Book` objects.

Listing 6-1-1-2. Example `Ch06_01 - Ch06_01_ex1()`

```

//-----
// Ch06_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <cstdint>
#include <memory>
#include <stdexcept>
#include "Ch06_01.h"
#include "Book.h"
#include "RN.h"

void Ch06_01_ex1()
{
    Book* book1 = new Book("Isaac Newton", "Principia", 1687, 5);
    Book* book2 = new Book("Charles Darwin", "On the Origin of Species",
        1859, 4);
}

```

```

// perform operations - exception unsafe
std::println("\nInitial values:");
std::println("book1: {}", *book1);
std::println("book2: {}", *book2);

book1->sell(2);
book2->sell(3);

std::println("\nAfter sell operations:");
std::println("book1: {}", *book1);
std::println("book2: {}", *book2);

delete book1;
delete book2;
}

```

Function `Ch06_01_ex1()` is correct in that it properly uses `new` and `delete` to allocate and release storage for objects `book1` and `book2`. However, a memory leak will occur if either `sell()` or `std::println()` throws an exception. To address this flaw, `Ch06_01_ex2()` adds a try-catch construct to catch any exceptions thrown by `sell()` or `std::println()`. Listing 6-1-2 shows the source code for this example.

Listing 6-1-2. Example Ch06_01 – Ch06_01_ex2()

```

void Ch06_01_ex2()
{
    Book* book1 = new Book("Marie Curie", "The Discovery of Radium",
        1921, 2);
    Book* book2 = new Book("Albert Einstein", "The Meaning of Relativity",
        1923, 3);

    std::println("\nInitial values:");
    std::println("book1: {}", *book1);
    std::println("book2: {}", *book2);

    try
    {
        book1->sell(1);
        book2->sell(5);
    }
}

```

```

        std::println("\nAfter sell operations:");
        std::println("book1: {}", *book1);
        std::println("book2: {}", *book2);
    }

    catch (const std::exception& ex)
    {
        std::println("caught exception Ch06_01_ex2(): {:s}", ex.what());
    }

    delete book1;
    delete book2;
}

```

The catch block in `Ch06_01_ex2()` only contains a call to `std::println()`. In a production environment, the code in this block would probably be more elaborate. The most important detail to recognize here is that following the catch block are two uses of `delete`, which delete `book1` and `book2` during normal processing or if an exception occurs.

In most C++ programs, adding code to handle potential exceptions is a requirement. However, inserting extra try-catch blocks merely to preclude a memory or other resource leak often results in code bloat and undesirable intricacies. Source code example `Ch06_01_ex3()`, shown in Listing 6-1-3, demonstrates how to use a `std::unique_ptr`, which is a simpler alternative.

Listing 6-1-3. Example `Ch06_01 - Ch06_01_ex3()`

```

void Ch06_01_ex3()
{
    std::unique_ptr<Book> book1 = std::make_unique<Book>("Richard Feynman",
        "Quantum Electrodynamics", 1962, 12);
    std::unique_ptr<Book> book2 = std::make_unique<Book>("Stephen Hawking",
        "A Brief History of Time", 1988, 19);

    std::println("\nInitial values:");
    std::println("book1: {}", *book1);
    std::println("book2: {}", *book2);
}

```

```

    book1->sell(9);
    book2->sell(4);

    std::println("\nAfter sell operations:");
    std::println("book1: {}", *book1);
    std::println("book2: {}", *book2);
}

```

The first statement of `Ch06_01_ex3()` utilizes `std::make_unique<Book>()` to create a smart pointer that encompasses an object of type `Book`. More specifically, function `std::make_unique<Book>()` calls operator `new` to allocate and construct an object of type `Book`; it then inserts a pointer to the newly allocated `Book` object in an instance of `std::unique_ptr<Book>` named `book1`. The next statement in `Ch06_01_ex3()` creates another `std::unique_ptr<Book>` instance named `book2`.

The remaining code in `Ch06_01_ex3()` exercises `std::println()` and `sell()` like the previous two functions. Note that `std::unique_ptr<Book>` objects `book1` and `book2` utilize operator `->` and operator `*` just like a raw pointer. Also, note that there's no extra boilerplate code to ensure deletion of the `Book` objects maintained by `book1` and `book2`. These objects are automatically deleted during execution of the corresponding `std::unique_ptr<Book>` destructors, which occurs even if an exception is thrown. If warranted by the specific use case, you could add a `try-catch` block to `Ch06_01_ex3()` to handle any exceptions thrown by `std::println()` or `sell()`. The crucial takeaway point from this example is that extra boilerplate code is not needed to prevent a memory leak that results from failing to delete one or both of the allocated `Book` objects.

Near the top of example `Ch06_01_ex4()`, shown in Listing 6-1-4, is the definition of a lambda expression named `buy_copies()`. Note that this function object requires an argument of type `std::unique_ptr<Book>&`. A reference is used here since passing a `std::unique_ptr` object by value requires creating a new copy of the smart pointer, which is forbidden. Recall that a `std::unique_ptr` object maintains exclusive ownership of its encompassed object; allowing copy operations would violate this requisite. If you're unsure about using a reference here, change the argument of `buy_copies()` from a reference to a value and recompile the code. The remaining code in `Ch06_01_ex4()` illustrates the use of `buy_copies()`. Note that while `Ch06_01_ex4()` employs a lambda expression, you can also define a regular function that takes an argument of type `std::unique_ptr&`.

Listing 6-1-4. Example Ch06_01 - Ch06_01_ex4()

```

void Ch06_01_ex4()
{
    // std::unique_ptr<Book> passed by reference
    auto buy_copies = [](const std::unique_ptr<Book>& book)
    {
        // RN::get_value<int> returns a random integer value (see RN.h)
        int num_copies = RN::get_value<int>() % 20 + 1;
        book->buy(num_copies);
        return num_copies;
    };

    // pass std::unique_ptr<Book>& to another function
    std::unique_ptr<Book> book = std::make_unique<Book>("Isaac Newton",
        "Principia", 1687, 5);
    std::println("\nbook: {}", *book);
    int num_copies = buy_copies(book);
    std::println("num_copies: {:d}", num_copies);
    std::println("book: {}", *book);
}

```

Function `Ch06_01_ex5()`, shown in Listing 6-1-5, spotlights the use of a `std::unique_ptr` that encompasses a C-style array of `Book` objects. Like the previous example, function `Ch06_01_ex5()` commences with the definition of a lambda expression named `buy_copies()`. Note that for this example, `buy_copies()` requires an argument of type `Book&`.

Listing 6-1-5. Example Ch06_01 - Ch06_01_ex5()

```

void Ch06_01_ex5()
{
    auto buy_copies = [](Book& book)
    {
        int num_copies = RN::get_value<int>() % 20 + 1;
        book.buy(num_copies);
        return num_copies;
    };
}

```

```

constexpr size_t num_books {2};
std::unique_ptr<Book[]> books = std::make_unique<Book[]>(num_books);

// manipulate element book[0]
books[0].set("Isaac Newton", "Principia", 1687, 5);
std::println("\nbooks[0]: {}", books[0]);
int num_copies0 = buy_copies(books[0]);
std::println("num_copies0: {:d}", num_copies0);
std::println("books[0]: {}", books[0]);

// manipulate element book[1]
books[1].set("Charles Darwin", "On the Origin of Species", 1859, 4);
std::println("\nbooks[1]: {}", books[1]);
int num_copies1 = buy_copies(books[1]);
std::println("num_copies1: {:d}", num_copies1);
std::println("books[1]: {}", books[1]);
}

```

Following the definition of the lambda expression is the statement

```
std::unique_ptr<Book[]> books = std::make_unique<Book[]>(num_books);
```

Class `std::unique_ptr` defines a partial specialization for C-style arrays. Note that the object type for `books` is `Book[]`. Following execution of `std::make_unique()`, object `books` maintains exclusive ownership of a C-style `Book[2]` array. The first statement of the next code block, `books[0].set("Isaac Newton", "Principia", 1687, 5)`, initializes `books[0]`. In this expression, `std::unique_ptr<>::operator[]`² returns a reference to the first `Book` object in `books`. Following initialization is a call to `buy_copies(books[0])`. The final code block in `Ch06_01_ex5()` carries out the same operation using `books[2]`.

Listing 6-1-6 shows the source code for demo function `Ch06_01_ex6()`. This function illustrates the use of `std::move()` to transfer the ownership of a `Book` object from one `std::unique_ptr<Book>` to another. Following the `std::move()` operation, the state of `book1` is undefined. It warrants mentioning here that due to the exclusive ownership requisites of a `std::unique_ptr`, `operator=` and the copy constructor are explicitly defined as `delete`.

²For a non-array `std::unique_ptr<>`, `operator[]` is undefined.

Listing 6-1-6. Example Ch06_01 - Ch06_01_ex6()

```

void Ch06_01_ex6()
{
    std::unique_ptr<Book> book1 = std::make_unique<Book>("Isaac Newton",
        "Principia", 1687, 5);
    std::println("book1: {}", *book1);

    // using std::move to transfer ownership
    std::unique_ptr<Book> book2 = std::move(book1);
    std::println("book2: {}", *book2);

    // std::unique_ptr<Book> book3 = book2;    // error - use of deleted
                                            // copy ctor
    // book3 = book2;                        // error - use of deleted
                                            // operator=
}

```

One common use case for `std::unique_ptr` objects is the allocation of a large temporary buffer. For example, loading an entire file into a memory buffer and processing the data from that buffer is often faster than processing smaller chunks of data using multiple reads. The final example function of this section demonstrates the use of `std::make_unique_for_overwrite()`. Listing 6-1-7 shows the source code for this example.

Listing 6-1-7. Example Ch06_01 - Ch06_01_ex7()

```

void Ch06_01_ex7()
{
    constexpr size_t n {10'000'000};

    // buff1 is value-initialized - all elements set to zero
    auto buff1 = std::make_unique<int[]>(n);

    // buff2 is uninitialized
    auto buff2 = std::make_unique_for_overwrite<int[]>(n);

    // fill buffers with random values
    RN::fill_buffer(buff1.get(), n);
    RN::fill_buffer(buff2.get(), n);
}

```

```

    // perform simulated calculation
    int sum1 {}, sum2 {};

    for (size_t i = 0; i < n; ++i)
    {
        sum1 += buff1[i];
        sum2 += buff2[i];
    }

    std::println("sum1: {:d} sum2: {:d}", sum1, sum2);
}

```

The code in function `Ch06_01_ex7()` shows two methods for allocating a temporary buffer. The first method utilizes `std::make_unique()`; the second exploits `std::make_unique_for_overwrite()`. The primary difference between these two techniques is that the former initializes each `int` element in `buff1` to zero, while the latter doesn't. Using an uninitialized buffer is faster, especially for large buffers, when the buffer is going to be overwritten soon after instantiation as demonstrated by the subsequent calls to `RN::fill_buffer()`. Note that `buff1.get()` and `buff2.get()` obtain the `int*` pointers managed by `buff1` and `buff2`, respectively. Here are the results for example `Ch06_01`:

```
----- Results for example Ch06_01 -----
```

```
----- Ch06_01_ex1() -----
```

```
Initial values:
```

```
book1: [Isaac Newton, 'Principia', 1687, 5]
```

```
book2: [Charles Darwin, 'On the Origin of Species', 1859, 4]
```

```
After sell operations:
```

```
book1: [Isaac Newton, 'Principia', 1687, 3]
```

```
book2: [Charles Darwin, 'On the Origin of Species', 1859, 1]
```

```
----- Ch06_01_ex2() -----
```

```
Initial values:
```

```
book1: [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 2]
```

```
book2: [Albert Einstein, 'The Meaning of Relativity', 1923, 3]
```

After sell operations:

```
book1: [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 1]
book2: [Albert Einstein, 'The Meaning of Relativity', 1923, 0]
```

----- Ch06_01_ex3() -----

Initial values:

```
book1: [Richard Feynman, 'Quantum Electrodynamics', 1962, 12]
book2: [Stephen Hawking, 'A Brief History of Time', 1988, 19]
```

After sell operations:

```
book1: [Richard Feynman, 'Quantum Electrodynamics', 1962, 3]
book2: [Stephen Hawking, 'A Brief History of Time', 1988, 15]
```

----- Ch06_01_ex4() -----

```
book: [Isaac Newton, 'Principia', 1687, 5]
num_copies: 18
book: [Isaac Newton, 'Principia', 1687, 23]
```

----- Ch06_01_ex5() -----

```
books[0]: [Isaac Newton, 'Principia', 1687, 5]
num_copies0: 5
books[0]: [Isaac Newton, 'Principia', 1687, 10]

books[1]: [Charles Darwin, 'On the Origin of Species', 1859, 4]
num_copies1: 13
books[1]: [Charles Darwin, 'On the Origin of Species', 1859, 17]
```

----- Ch06_01_ex6() -----

```
book1: [Isaac Newton, 'Principia', 1687, 5]
book2: [Isaac Newton, 'Principia', 1687, 5]
```

----- Ch06_01_ex7() -----

```
sum1: 709820587 sum2: 709820587
```

Recall from the discussions in Chapter 1 that classes `Image` and `ImageT` (see Listings 1-4-1 and 1-5-1) employed container class `std::vector` for the pixel buffers. For these classes, using `std::make_unique_for_overwrite()` would be a better option since calling `std::vector::resize()` to adjust the buffer size can initiate a buffer zeroing operation that adversely affects performance.

Using `std::shared_ptr`

A `std::shared_ptr` is another smart pointer class. Unlike a `std::unique_ptr`, a `std::shared_ptr` shares ownership of an object. An object that's shared between one or more `std::shared_ptr`s is automatically destroyed during destruction of the last owning `std::shared_ptr`. This reduces the risk of a memory or other resource leak. Shared pointers can also be exploited to streamline access to a shared object that's used in multiple threads.

Figure 6-1 shows the logical relationships of several `std::shared_ptr<T>` objects in use. In this diagram, note that `std::shared_ptr` objects `sp1`, `sp2`, and `sp3` contain a pointer of type `T`, and each type `T` pointer points to the same instance of object `T`. Also, note that each `std::shared_ptr` object contains a pointer to a common `ControlBlock`³ object. This object encompasses counters that track the number of `std::shared_ptr` and `std::weak_ptr` instances that share ownership of object `T`. Class `std::weak_ptr<T>` is discussed later in this chapter.

³Object `ControlBlock` is utilized here for exposition purposes. The actual data structures are defined by the C++ implementation.

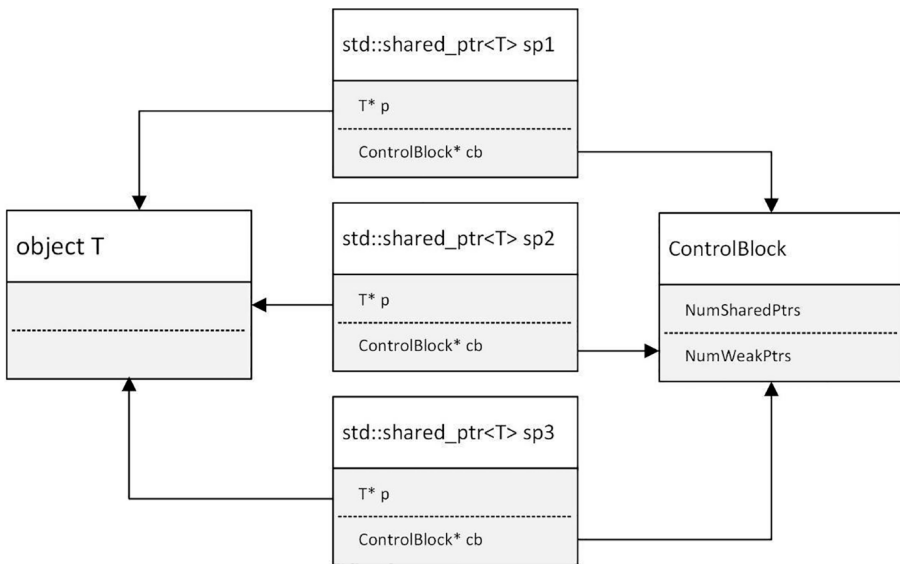


Figure 6-1. Logical relationships of multiple `std::shared_ptr<T>` objects

Using a `std::shared_ptr` is similar to using a `std::unique_ptr`. Listing 6-2-1 shows the source code for example `Ch06_02_ex1()`. This example highlights the basic use of a `std::share_ptr`.

Listing 6-2-1. Example `Ch06_02 - Ch06_02_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch06_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <memory>
#include "Ch06_02.h"
#include "Book.h"
#include "RN.h"

void Ch06_02_ex1()
{
    std::shared_ptr<Book> book1 = std::make_shared<Book>("Richard Feynman",
        "Quantum Electrodynamics", 1962, 12);
    std::shared_ptr<Book> book2 = std::make_shared<Book>("Stephen Hawking",
        "A Brief History of Time", 1988, 19);
}
```

```

std::println("\nInitial values:");
std::println("book1: {}", *book1);
std::println("book2: {}", *book2);

book1->sell(9);
book2->sell(4);

std::println("\nAfter sell operations:");
std::println("book1: {}", *book1);
std::println("book2: {}", *book2);
}

```

The opening code block in `Ch06_02_ex1()` employs `std::make_shared()` to create two `std::shared_ptr<Book>` objects named `book1` and `book2`. The ensuing `std::println()` statements use `book1` and `book2` just like raw pointers to print the `Book` objects. Similarly, operator `->` is exercised to call member function `sell()`.

The next `std::shared_ptr` example, shown in Listing 6-2-2, begins with the definition of a lambda expression named `buy_copies()`. Note that argument `std::shared_ptr<Book> book` is passed by value instead of reference. Unlike a `std::unique_ptr`, passing a `std::shared_ptr` by value is permissible since operator `=` is defined.

Listing 6-2-2. Example `Ch06_02 - Ch06_02_ex2()`

```

void Ch06_02_ex2()
{
    // shared_ptr<Book> passed by value
    auto buy_copies = [](std::shared_ptr<Book> book)
    {
        // RN::get_value<int> returns a random integer value (see RN.h)
        int num_copies = RN::get_value<int>() % 40 + 1;
        book->buy(num_copies);
        return num_copies;
    };

    auto book1 = std::make_shared<Book>("Marie Curie",
        "The Discovery of Radium", 1921, 5);
    std::println("\nInitial value:");
    std::println("book1 (use_count: {}): {}", book1.use_count(), *book1);
}

```

```

// using copy constructor
auto book2 = book1;
std::println("\nAfter book2 assignment:");
std::println("book1 (use_count: {}): {}", book1.use_count(), *book1);
std::println("book2 (use_count: {}): {}", book2.use_count(), *book2);

// using buy_copies()
int num_copies = buy_copies(book1);
std::println("\nafter buy_copies() (num_copies = {:d})", num_copies);
std::println("book1 (use_count: {}): {}", book1.use_count(), *book1);
std::println("book2 (use_count: {}): {}", book2.use_count(), *book2);

// using assignment operator
std::shared_ptr<Book> book3 {};
book3 = book2;
num_copies = buy_copies(book3);
std::println("\nafter buy_copies() (num_copies = {:d})", num_copies);
std::println("book1 (use_count: {}): {}", book1.use_count(), *book1);
std::println("book2 (use_count: {}): {}", book2.use_count(), *book2);
std::println("book3 (use_count: {}): {}", book3.use_count(), *book3);
}

```

Following the definition of `buy_copies()` is a code block that creates `std::shared_ptr<Book> book1`. The `std::println()` statement in the same code block calls `book1.use_count()`, which returns the number `std::shared_ptr` instances that currently share ownership of the managed `Book` object. When using `use_count()` to track `std::shared_ptr` usages, keep in mind that it can return zero (e.g., following a call `std::shared_ptr::reset()`).

In the ensuing code block, the statement `auto book2 = book1` creates a second `std::shared_ptr<Book>` object. Following execution of this statement, `book1` and `book2` share ownership of the same `Book` object. If you scan ahead to the results section for `Ch06_02_ex2()`, you'll notice that `use_count()` returned a value of two instead of one and that identical data is printed for both `book1` and `book2`.

The next code block utilizes `num_copies = buy_copies(book1)` to perform a simulated transaction that updates `m_NumCopies` for the `Book` object maintained by `book1`. In the results section, note that following execution of `buy_copies()`,

`m_NumCopies` is the same for both `book1` and `book2`. The final code block demonstrates the use of `std::shared_ptr::operator=` to initialize `book3`. Following the assignment, `use_count()` returns a value of three as shown in the results section.

Listing 6-2-3 shows the source code for example `Ch06_02_ex3()`. This example demonstrates the creation of additional `std::shared_ptr<Book>` objects in a new scope. Within the `if` code block, the value returned by `book1.use_count()` is four. Following the `if` code block, `book1.use_count()` returns a value of one since `std::shared_ptr<Book>` objects `book2`, `book3`, and `book4` no longer exist. It warrants mentioning here that the creation and deletion of additional `std::shared_ptr<Book>` objects within the `if` block does not entail any additional class `Book` constructor or destructor calls. To observe this, remove the comments from the `std::println()` statements in `Book`'s constructors and destructor, compile, and run the code.

Listing 6-2-3. Example `Ch06_02 - Ch06_02_ex3()`

```
void Ch06_02_ex3()
{
    auto book1 = std::make_shared<Book>("Marie Curie",
        "The Discovery of Radium", 1921, 5);

    std::println("\nOuter scope");
    std::println("book1 (use_count: {}): {}", book1.use_count(), *book1);

    if (book1->YearPub() == 1921)
    {
        // make copies in new scope
        auto book2 = book1;
        auto book3 = book1;
        auto book4 = book1;

        std::println("\nInner scope");
        std::println("book1 (use_count: {}): {}", book1.use_count(),
            *book1);
    }

    std::println("\nOuter scope");
    std::println("book1 (use_count: {}): {}", book1.use_count(), *book1);
}
```


Here are the results for example Ch06_02:

----- Results for example Ch06_02 -----

---- Ch06_02_ex1() ----

Initial values:

book1: [Richard Feynman, 'Quantum Electrodynamics', 1962, 12]

book2: [Stephen Hawking, 'A Brief History of Time', 1988, 19]

After sell operations:

book1: [Richard Feynman, 'Quantum Electrodynamics', 1962, 3]

book2: [Stephen Hawking, 'A Brief History of Time', 1988, 15]

---- Ch06_02_ex2() ----

Initial value:

book1 (use_count: 1): [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 5]

After book2 assignment:

book1 (use_count: 2): [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 5]

book2 (use_count: 2): [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 5]

after buy_copies() (num_copies = 23)

book1 (use_count: 2): [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 28]

book2 (use_count: 2): [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 28]

after buy_copies() (num_copies = 33)

book1 (use_count: 3): [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 61]

book2 (use_count: 3): [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 61]

book3 (use_count: 3): [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 61]

---- Ch06_02_ex3() ----

Outer scope

book1 (use_count: 1): [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 5]

Inner scope

book1 (use_count: 4): [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 5]

Outer scope

book1 (use_count: 1): [Marie Curie, 'The Discovery of Radium', 1921, 5]

Using `std::weak_ptr`

Smart pointer class `std::weak_ptr` facilitates object sharing without object ownership. Instances of `std::weak_ptr` are often used to handle cyclic references involving objects that hold `std::shared_ptr` objects.

Listing 6-3-1 shows the source code for example `Ch06_03_ex1()`. This example demonstrates the use of a `std::weak_ptr`. Function `Ch06_03_ex1()` opens with the creation of a `std::shared_ptr<Book>` instance named `book1`. Immediately after the two `std::println()` calls is the statement `std::weak_ptr book1_wp(book1)`. Following execution of this expression, `book1_wp` references the same `Book` object as `book1`, but it *does not* own the underlying object; it's still owned by `book1`.

Listing 6-3-1. Example `Ch06_03 - Ch06_03_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch06_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <memory>
#include "Ch06_03.h"
#include "Book.h"

void Ch06_03_ex1()
{
    // create std::shared_ptr
    std::shared_ptr<Book> book1 = std::make_shared<Book>("Albert Einstein",
        "The Meaning of Relativity", 1923, 3);

    std::println("\nInitial values:");
    std::println("book1 (use_count: {}): {}", book1.use_count(), *book1);

    // create std::weak_ptr
    std::weak_ptr book1_wp(book1);

    // using lock() - converts std::weak_ptr to std::shared_ptr
    std::shared_ptr<Book> book1_wp_locked = book1_wp.lock();

    if (!book1_wp_locked)
    {
```

```

        // lock() fails if std::weak_ptr object is empty
        std::println("lock failed!");
        return;
    }

    std::println("\nAfter lock()");
    std::println("book1_wp_locked (use_count: {}):\n {}",
        book1_wp_locked.use_count(), *book1_wp_locked);

    std::println("book1 (use_count: {}): {}", book1.use_count(), *book1);

    // using reset()
    std::println("\nAfter reset()");
    std::println("book1 (use_count: {}): {}", book1.use_count(), *book1);
}

```

Unlike `std::share_ptr`, a function can't utilize `operator->` or `operator*()` to dereference the underlying object of a `std::weak_ptr`. To do this, the `std::weak_ptr` must be converted to a `std::shared_ptr` using the member function `lock()`. In function `Ch06_03_ex1()`, the statement `std::shared_ptr<Book> book1_wp_locked = book1_wp.lock()` performs this operation. Note that `std::weak_ptr::lock()` returns an empty `std::shared_ptr` object if the `std::weak_ptr` object is empty. Following the conversion, `book1_wp_locked` can be used just like a regular `std::shared_ptr`. Near the end of `Ch06_03_ex1()` is the statement `book1_wp_locked.reset()`. Execution of this statement removes `book1_wp_locked`'s access to the `Book` object that `book1` maintains. Note in the results section that following execution of `reset()`, `book1.use_count()` equals one instead of two when `book1_wp_locked` was active.

The purpose of `Ch06_03_ex1()` was to illustrate basic `std::weak_ptr` object usage. As utilized in this function, class `std::weak_ptr` doesn't provide any practical advantages compared to `std::shared_ptr`. However, one archetypal use case for a `std::weak_ptr` is to avoid cyclic references between objects that maintain `std::shared_ptr`s. Listing 6-3-2 shows a source code example that demonstrates this capability. This listing opens with the definition of two simple structures named `S1` and `S2`. Note that structure `S1` defines attribute `std::shared_ptr<S2> S2_sp`, while structure `S2` defines attributes `std::shared_ptr<S1> S1_sp` and `std::weak_ptr<S1> S1_wp`.

Listing 6-3-2. Example Ch06_03 – Ch06_03_ex2()

```

struct S2;

struct S1
{
    S1() {std::println("S1 ctor");}
    ~S1() {std::println("S1 dtor");}

    std::shared_ptr<S2> S2_sp {};
};

struct S2
{
    S2() {std::println("S2 ctor");}
    ~S2() {std::println("S2 dtor");}

    std::shared_ptr<S1> S1_sp {};
    std::weak_ptr<S1> S1_wp {};
};

void Ch06_03_ex2()
{
    // cyclic shared_ptrs - destructors not executed
    std::shared_ptr<S1> s1_sp {std::make_shared<S1>()};
    std::shared_ptr<S2> s2_sp {std::make_shared<S2>()};

    s1_sp->S2_sp = s2_sp;
    s2_sp->S1_sp = s1_sp;
}

```

Function `Ch06_03_ex2()`, also shown in Listing 6-3-2, opens with the creation of a `std::shared_ptr<S1>` object named `s1_sp`, which owns an object of type `S1`. The next statement, `std::shared_ptr<S2> s2_sp {std::make_shared<S2>()};`, instantiates `s2_sp` that owns an object of type `S2`. Following creation of the `std::shared_ptr`s, `Ch06_03_ex2()` utilizes `s1_sp->S2_sp = s2_sp` to save a copy of `s2_sp` in the `S1` object that's owned by `s1_sp`. The next statement, `s2_sp->S1_sp = s1_sp`, saves a copy of `s1_sp` in the `S2` object that's owned by `s2_sp`. If you scan ahead to the results section, you'll notice

that the constructors for `S1` and `S2` get executed but the corresponding destructors don't. The reason for this is that `use_count()` equals one for both `S1::S2_sp` and `S2::S1_sp`; a `std::shared_ptr` deletes its maintained object only if `use_count()` equals zero.

Listing 6-3-3 shows the source code for example `Ch06_03_ex3()`. This example is identical to the previous example except for the last statement, `s2_sp->S1_wp = s1_sp`. Execution of this expression saves a copy of `s1_sp` in `s2_sp->S1_wp` whose type is `std::weak_ptr<S1>`. Note in the results section that the destructors for shared objects `S1` and `S2` are now properly executed.

Listing 6-3-3. Example `Ch06_03 - Ch06_03_ex3()`

```
void Ch06_03_ex3()
{
    // cyclic shared_ptr/weak_ptr - destructors executed
    std::shared_ptr<S1> s1_sp {std::make_shared<S1>()};
    std::shared_ptr<S2> s2_sp {std::make_shared<S2>()};

    s1_sp->S2_sp = s2_sp;
    s2_sp->S1_wp = s1_sp;
}
```

In example `Ch06_03`, the definition of structure `S2` includes a `std::shared_ptr` and a `std::weak_ptr` to enable the use of struct `S2` in both `Ch06_03_ex2()` and `Ch06_03_ex3()`. In production code, only the `std::weak_ptr` would be necessary. Here are the results for example `Ch06_03`:

----- Results for example `Ch06_03` -----

----- `Ch06_03_ex1()` -----

Initial values:

```
book1 (use_count: 1): [Albert Einstein, 'The Meaning of Relativity',
1923, 3]
```

After `lock()`

```
book1_wp_locked (use_count: 2):
```

```
    [Albert Einstein, 'The Meaning of Relativity', 1923, 3]
```

```
book1 (use_count: 2): [Albert Einstein, 'The Meaning of Relativity',
1923, 3]
```

After reset()

```
book1 (use_count: 1): [Albert Einstein, 'The Meaning of Relativity',  
1923, 3]
```

```
----- Ch06_03_ex2() -----
```

```
S1 ctor
```

```
S2 ctor
```

```
----- Ch06_03_ex2() -----
```

```
S1 ctor
```

```
S2 ctor
```

```
S1 dtor
```

```
S2 dtor
```

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- Modern C++ strongly discourages the use of raw pointers. For most use cases, smart pointer usage is generally a superior alternative since execution of all applicable destructors is assured.
- A `std::unique_ptr` smart pointer maintains exclusive ownership of an object. An instance of `std::unique_ptr` can't be copied; however, its managed object can be moved to a different `std::unique_ptr`.
- A `std::shared_ptr` shares object ownership with other `std::share_ptrs`. The object maintained by one or more `std::shared_ptrs` is automatically deleted during destruction of the last owning `std::shared_ptr`.
- A `std::weak_ptr` is a smart pointer that facilitates sharing of a non-owned object. They are primarily used to ensure appropriate destructors get executed when cyclic references exist between objects that hold `std::shared_ptr` objects.

CHAPTER 7

Associative Containers

This chapter discusses associative containers, including

- How to use `std::set`
- How to use `std::multiset`
- How to use `std::map`
- How to use `std::multimap`

An associative container maintains a collection of objects (or elements). Unlike a sequence container such as `std::vector` or `std::deque`, an associative container utilizes a comparison function to arrange its elements. This internal arrangement is independent of the element insertion order. The primary advantage of an associative container is that element insertions, searches, and removals have logarithmic instead of linear complexity.

Using `std::set`

A `std::set` is an associative container that holds a sorted collection of *unique* elements (or keys). In this regard, a `std::set` models a mathematical set. A `std::set` is commonly, but not necessarily, implemented using a red-black tree. A red-black tree is similar to a binary tree with the primary difference being the inclusion of extra control data to ensure that the tree remains (approximately) balanced. Unlike sequence containers such as `std::vector` and `std::deque`, you can't directly access the elements of a `std::set` using `operator[]` or `at()`, nor can you change the value of an element in a `std::set` via an iterator. Changing the value of an element in a `std::set` requires removing the old object and inserting a new one.

Listing 7-1-1 shows the source code for example `Ch07_01_ex1()`. This function demonstrates the use of a `std::set`. Near the top of `Ch07_01_ex1()` is the definition of `std::set<int> set1` whose corresponding initializer list supplies the initial values.

The `MT::print_ctr()` statement that follows prints the elements of `set1`. Note in the results section that the elements of `set1` are printed in ascending order. Class `std::set`'s default comparison function for sorting is `std::less<>` (i.e., operator `<`). You'll learn how to specify a different comparison function later in this chapter. The ensuing `std::println()` statement utilizes `set1.size()`, which prints the number of elements in `set1`.

Listing 7-1-1. Example Ch07_01 - Ch07_01_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch07_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <array>
#include <functional>
#include <numbers>
#include <set>
#include <string>
#include "Ch07_01.h"
#include "MT.h"

void Ch07_01_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt1 = "{:d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {5};

    // create set1 - ints
    std::set<int> set1 {20, 40, 100, 50, 90, 70, 10, 30};

    MT::print_ctr("\nset1 (initial values):\n", set1, fmt1, epl_max);
    std::println("set1.size(): {:d}", set1.size());

    // add more elements to set1 using insert()
    std::array<int, 3> vals1 {80, 50, 60};

    for (auto val1 : vals1)
    {
        auto p = set1.insert(val1);
    }
}
```



```

        std::println("set1.insert({:d}) - status: {:s}", *p.first,
            p.second);
    }

    MT::print_ctr("\nset1 (after insertions):\n", set1, fmt1, epl_max);
    std::println("set1.size(): {:d}", set1.size());

    // create set2 - strings
    const char* fmt2 = "{:s} ";
    std::set<std::string> set2 {"New York", "Los Angeles", "Chicago",
        "Houston", "Phoenix", "Philadelphia", "San Antonio", "San Diego"};

    MT::print_ctr("\nset2 (initial values):\n", set2, fmt2, epl_max);
    std::println("set2.size(): {:d}\n", set2.size());

    // add more elements to set2 using emplace()
    std::array<std::string, 3> vals2 {"Dallas", "Phoenix", "Austin"};

    for (const auto& val2 : vals2)
    {
        auto p = set2.emplace(val2);
        std::println("set2.emplace(\"{:s}\") - status: {:s}", *p.first,
            p.second);
    }

    MT::print_ctr("\nset2 (after emplacements):\n", set2, fmt2, epl_max);
    std::println("set2.size(): {:d}", set2.size());
}

```

The next code block in `Ch07_01_ex1()` adds the elements of `vals1` to `set1` using `set1.insert()`. Member function `std::set::insert()` returns a `std::pair`. Element first of this `std::pair` contains a constant iterator to the inserted element or a constant iterator to an existing element in the set. Element second is a `bool` that signifies whether the new element was inserted (`true`) or if it already existed (`false`). Following these insertions, `MT::print_ctr()` prints the elements of `set1` in ascending order.

Like other container objects, elements can be inserted into a `std::set` using emplacements as demonstrated in the subsequent code block with `std::set<std::string> set2`. Recall that an `emplace()` insertion is often faster than

an `insert()` since the element is constructed using memory provided by the container. Doing this often precludes an extra copy or move operation. Note in the range for loop that `set2.emplace()` also returns a `std::pair` that contains an iterator and a `bool` value.

In Listing 7-1-2, function `Ch07_01_ex2()` demonstrates additional `std::set` insertions. The statement `std::set<std::string, std::greater<std::string>> set1` defines a `std::set` that holds `std::string` elements, but uses function object `std::greater<std::string>` for comparisons. The effect of using `std::greater<>` is that elements in `set2` are sorted in descending instead of ascending order.

Listing 7-1-2. Example `Ch07_01 - Ch07_01_ex2()`

```
void Ch07_01_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {5};

    // create set1 - using std::greater for sorting
    std::set<std::string, std::greater<std::string>> set1 { "California",
        "Texas", "Florida", "New York", "Pennsylvania", "Illinois", "Ohio"};

    MT::print_ctr("\nset1 (initial values):\n", set1, fmt, epl_max);

    // add more elements to set1 using insert
    std::array<std::string, 4> vals1
        {"Georgia", "Florida", "North Carolina", "Michigan"};

    set1.insert(vals1.begin(), vals1.end());
    MT::print_ctr("\nset1 (after insert):\n", set1, fmt, epl_max);

    // add more elements to set1 using insert_range (C++23)
#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges
    std::array<std::string, 3> vals2
        {"South Carolina", "Vermont", "Indiana"};

    set1.insert_range(vals2);
    MT::print_ctr("\nset1 (after insert_range):\n", set1, fmt, epl_max);
#else
    std::println("\nstd::set::insert_range() requires C++23");
#endif
}
```

```

// using iterators to access elements of set1
std::println("\nset1 (using iterators)");

for (auto iter = set1.begin(); iter != set1.end(); ++iter)
{
//     *iter += " test";           // error - modifications not allowed
    std::println("{:s}", *iter);
}
}

```

In `Ch07_01_ex2()`'s next code block, the expression `set1.insert(vals1.begin(), vals1.end())` inserts copies of all elements from `vals1` into `set1`. The final code block of `Ch07_01_ex2()` exploits `set1.insert_ranges(vals2)`¹ (C++23) to insert copies of elements from `vals2` into `set1`. This latter insertion method is certainly more convenient when inserting an entire range of elements into a `std::set`, assuming it's supported by the compiler.

The final code block in `Ch07_01_ex2()` shows how to use a `for` loop and iterators to access the elements of `set1`. Recall from earlier discussions that you can't change the value of an element in a `std::set` via an iterator. This is why the expression `*iter += " test"` is commented out. For a `std::set`, the iterators returned by `begin()` and `end()` are constant iterators. Class `std::set` also utilizes bidirectional iterators (see Chapter 4), which means that `std::set`s can't be used with STL algorithms that require random access iterators, such as `std::sort()` or `std::ranges::sort()`.

Listing 7-1-3 shows the source code for example `Ch07_01_ex3()`. This example highlights the use of relational operators with `std::set`s. For two objects of type `std::set<T>` to be equal, they must contain the same number of elements, and the values in corresponding element positions must also be equal. If the two `std::set<T>` objects are different sizes, an element-by-element lexicographical compare is performed. This lexicographical compare is performed using the relational operators defined for `T`, which might be different than the comparison function used to order the elements of a `std::set<T>`.

¹In this and later examples, preprocessor symbol `__cpp_lib_containers_ranges` is tested to confirm compiler support for `insert_ranges()`.

Listing 7-1-3. Example Ch07_01 - Ch07_01_ex3()

```

void Ch07_01_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:5d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // using relational operators
    std::set<int> set1 {100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600};
    std::set<int> set2 {100, 200, 150, 400, 500, 600};
    std::set<int> set3 {100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600};
    std::set<int> set4 {100, 200, 300, 450, 500, 600};

    MT::print_ctr("\nset1 (initial values):\n", set1, fmt, epl_max);
    MT::print_ctr("\nset2 (initial values):\n", set2, fmt, epl_max);
    MT::print_ctr("\nset3 (initial values):\n", set3, fmt, epl_max);
    MT::print_ctr("\nset4 (initial values):\n", set4, fmt, epl_max);

    std::println("\nset1 == set2: {:s}", set1 == set2);
    std::println("set1 != set2: {:s}", set1 != set2);
    std::println("set1 < set2: {:s}", set1 < set2);
    std::println("set1 <= set2: {:s}", set1 <= set2);
    std::println("set1 > set2: {:s}", set1 > set2);
    std::println("set1 >= set2: {:s}", set1 >= set2);

    std::println("\nset1 == set3: {:s}", set1 == set3);
    std::println("set1 < set3: {:s}", set1 < set3);
    std::println("set1 > set3: {:s}", set1 > set3);

    std::println("\nset1 == set4: {:s}", set1 == set4);
    std::println("set1 < set4: {:s}", set1 < set4);
    std::println("set1 > set4: {:s}", set1 > set4);

    // using relational operators (elements in container sorted using
    operator>)
    using set_t = std::set<int, std::greater<int>>;
    set_t set5 {100, 300, 400, 200, 500};
    set_t set6 {100, 300, 400, 200, 600};
    set_t set7 {100, 300, 400, 200, 500};

```

```

MT::print_ctr("\nset5 (initial values):\n", set5, fmt, epl_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nset6 (initial values):\n", set6, fmt, epl_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nset7 (initial values):\n", set7, fmt, epl_max);

std::println("\nset5 == set6: {:s}", set5 == set6);
std::println("set5 < set6: {:s}", set5 < set6);
std::println("set5 > set6: {:s}", set5 > set6);

std::println("\nset5 == set7: {:s}", set5 == set7);
std::println("set5 < set7: {:s}", set5 < set7);
std::println("set5 > set7: {:s}", set5 > set7);
}

```

Example `Ch07_01_ex4()`, shown in Listing 7-1-4, illustrates the use of `std::set::find()` and `std::set::erase()`. These member functions perform element searches and removals, respectively. Example function `Ch07_01_ex4()` also spotlights the use of `std::set::contains()` (C++20). More about this function shortly.

Listing 7-1-4. Example `Ch07_01 - Ch07_01_ex4()`

```

void Ch07_01_ex4()
{
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {5};

    // create set of strings
    std::set<std::string> set1 {"Wyoming", "Vermont", "Alaska", "North
    Dakota", "South Dakota", "Delaware", "Rhode Island", "Montana",
    "Maine"};

    MT::print_ctr("\nset1 (initial values):\n", set1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("");

    // search set1 using find, remove if found
    std::array<std::string, 4> find_vals
        {"New Hampshire", "Alaska", "Hawaii", "Maine"};

    for (const std::string& find_val : find_vals)
    {
        std::print("set1.find(\":s\\") - ", find_val);
    }
}

```

```

    if (auto iter = set1.find(find_val); iter != set1.end())
    {
        set1.erase(iter);
        std::println("removed");
    }
    else
        std::println("not found");
}

MT::print_ctr("\nset1 (after erase operations):\n", set1, fmt,
ep1_max);
std::println("");

// search set1 for values using contains (C++20)
std::array<std::string, 3> contains_vals
    {"Kansas", "South Dakota", "Nebraska"};

for (const std::string& contain_val : contains_vals)
{
    bool b = set1.contains(contain_val);
    std::println("set1.contains(\"{:s}\") - {:s}", contain_val, b);
}
}

```

Function `Ch07_01_ex4()`'s critical code blocks are its two for loops. In the first for loop, `set1.find(find_val)` searches `set1` for element `find_val`. If found, `find()` returns a constant iterator to `find_val` in `set1`; otherwise, `find()` returns `set1.end()`. To remove a value from `set1`, `Ch07_01_ex4()` first verifies that `iter != set1.end()` is true. It then utilizes `set1.erase(iter)` to remove `find_val` from `set1`. The second for loop in `Ch07_04_ex1()` exercises `set1.contains(contain_val)` to determine if `set1` contains element `contain_val`. Member function `contains()` returns true if `contain_vals` exists; otherwise, false is returned.

The final `std::set` example function, `Ch07_01_ex5()`, utilizes `set::merge()` to merge two sets. In this example, which is shown in Listing 7-1-5, values from `std::set<double> set2` are merged into `set1`. During execution of `set1.merge(set2)`, elements from `set2` are *moved* to `set1` only if they do not already exist in `set1`. If you scan ahead to the results section, note that `set2` still contains `std::numbers::sqrt2` and `std::numbers::pi` since these values existed in `set1` prior to the merger.

Listing 7-1-5. Example Ch07_01 - Ch07_01_ex5()

```

void Ch07_01_ex5()
{
    using namespace std::numbers;
    const char* fmt = "{:8.4f}";

    // create test sets
    std::set<double> set1 {pi, e, inv_pi, sqrt2};
    std::set<double> set2 {sqrt2, phi, pi, sqrt3, log2e};

    MT::print_ctr("\nset1 (initial values): ", set1, fmt);
    MT::print_ctr("set2 (initial values): ", set2, fmt);

    // merge sets
    set1.merge(set2);
    MT::print_ctr("\nset1 (after merge): ", set1, fmt);
    MT::print_ctr("set2 (after merge): ", set2, fmt);

    // clear set1
    set1.clear();
    MT::print_ctr("\nset1 (after clear): ", set1, fmt);
}

```

The final code block in Ch07_01_ex5() spotlights the use of `std::set::clear()`. This member function removes all elements from the specified set. Here are the results² for source code example Ch07_01:

```

----- Results for example Ch07_01 -----

----- Ch07_01_ex1() -----

set1 (initial values):
10 20 30 40 50
70 90 100
set1.size(): 8

```

²The results for this and later examples may vary slightly depending on compiler support for C++23 specific features.

CHAPTER 7 ASSOCIATIVE CONTAINERS

```
set1.insert(80) - status: true
set1.insert(50) - status: false
set1.insert(60) - status: true
```

set1 (after insertions):

```
10 20 30 40 50
60 70 80 90 100
set1.size(): 10
```

set2 (initial values):

```
Chicago Houston Los Angeles New York Philadelphia
Phoenix San Antonio San Diego
set2.size(): 8
```

```
set2.emplace("Dallas") - status: true
set2.emplace("Phoenix") - status: false
set2.emplace("Austin") - status: true
```

set2 (after emplacements):

```
Austin Chicago Dallas Houston Los Angeles
New York Philadelphia Phoenix San Antonio San Diego
set2.size(): 10
```

----- Ch07_01_ex2() -----

set1 (initial values):

```
Texas Pennsylvania Ohio New York Illinois
Florida California
```

set1 (after insert):

```
Texas Pennsylvania Ohio North Carolina New York
Michigan Illinois Georgia Florida California
```

set1 (after insert_range):

```
Vermont Texas South Carolina Pennsylvania Ohio
North Carolina New York Michigan Indiana Illinois
Georgia Florida California
```



```
set1 (using iterators)
```

```
Vermont
```

```
Texas
```

```
South Carolina
```

```
Pennsylvania
```

```
Ohio
```

```
North Carolina
```

```
New York
```

```
Michigan
```

```
Indiana
```

```
Illinois
```

```
Georgia
```

```
Florida
```

```
California
```

```
----- Ch07_01_ex3() -----
```

```
set1 (initial values):
```

```
100 200 300 400 500 600
```

```
set2 (initial values):
```

```
100 150 200 400 500 600
```

```
set3 (initial values):
```

```
100 200 300 400 500 600
```

```
set4 (initial values):
```

```
100 200 300 450 500 600
```

```
set1 == set2: false
```

```
set1 != set2: true
```

```
set1 < set2: false
```

```
set1 <= set2: false
```

```
set1 > set2: true
```

```
set1 >= set2: true
```

```
set1 == set3: true
```

```
set1 < set3: false
```

```
set1 > set3: false
```

CHAPTER 7 ASSOCIATIVE CONTAINERS

```
set1 == set4: false
set1 < set4: true
set1 > set4: false
```

```
set5 (initial values):
  500 400 300 200 100
```

```
set6 (initial values):
  600 400 300 200 100
```

```
set7 (initial values):
  500 400 300 200 100
```

```
set5 == set6: false
set5 < set6: true
set5 > set6: false
```

```
set5 == set7: true
set5 < set7: false
set5 > set7: false
```

----- Ch07_01_ex4() -----

```
set1 (initial values):
Alaska Delaware Maine Montana North Dakota
Rhode Island South Dakota Vermont Wyoming
```

```
set1.find("New Hampshire") - not found
set1.find("Alaska") - removed
set1.find("Hawaii") - not found
set1.find("Maine") - removed
```

```
set1 (after erase operations):
Delaware Montana North Dakota Rhode Island South Dakota
Vermont Wyoming
```

```
set1.contains("Kansas") - false
set1.contains("South Dakota") - true
set1.contains("Nebraska") - false
```

```
----- Ch07_01_ex5() -----
```

```
set1 (initial values):  0.3183  1.4142  2.7183  3.1416
set2 (initial values):  1.4142  1.4427  1.6180  1.7321  3.1416

set1 (after
merge):  0.3183  1.4142  1.4427  1.6180  1.7321  2.7183  3.1416
set2 (after merge):    1.4142  3.1416
set1 (after clear): <empty>
```

Using `std::multiset`

A `std::multiset` is an associative container that closely resembles a `std::set`. Like a `std::set`, `std::multiset` insertions, searches, and removals are executed in logarithmic time. Class `std::multiset` also supports most of the same member functions as `std::set`. The primary difference between `std::multiset` and `std::set` is that the former allows insertions of multiple elements (or keys) with the same value.

Example Ch07_02 highlights a few operations using `std::multiset`. In Listing 7-2-1, function `Ch07_02_ex1()` opens with the creation of `std::multiset<int> mset1`, whose initial values are provided in the accompanying initializer list. After creating `mset1`, `Ch07_02_ex()` utilizes `mset1.insert()` to add more elements – including elements that already exist – to `mset1`.

Listing 7-2-1. Example Ch07_02 – `Ch07_02_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch07_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <array>
#include <functional>
#include <set>
#include <string>
#include "Ch07_02.h"
#include "MT.h"
```

```

void Ch07_02_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:6d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // create multiset of integers
    std::multiset<int> mset1 {20, 40, 100, 50, 90, 70, 10, 80, 30};
    MT::print_ctr("\nmset1 (initial values):\n", mset1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("mset1.size(): {:d}", mset1.size());

    // add more elements to mset1 using insert
    mset1.insert(110);
    mset1.insert(90);
    mset1.insert(80);
    mset1.insert(60);
    MT::print_ctr("\nmset1 (after insertions):\n", mset1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("mset1.size(): {:d}", mset1.size());

    // add more elements to mset1 using insert_range (C++23)
#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges
    std::array<int, 5> vals1 {70, 80, 40, 80, 30};

    mset1.insert_range(vals1);
    MT::print_ctr("\nmset1 (after insert_range):\n", mset1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("mset1.size(): {:d}", mset1.size());
#else
    std::println("\nstd::multiset::insert_range() requires C++23");
#endif

    // count occurrences of count_val in mset1
    int count_val {80};
    auto n = mset1.count(count_val);
    std::println("\nmset1.count({:d}) = {:d}", count_val, n);
}

```

The next code block in `Ch07_02_ex1()` utilizes `mset1.insert_range(vals1)` (C++23) to insert values from `vals1` into `mset1`. The final code block illustrates the use of `mset1.count(count_val)`, which returns the number of elements in `mset1` that equal `count_val`. It warrants mentioning here that class `std::set` also includes a `count()` member function, but this function always returns a value of one.

Listing 7-2-2 shows the source code for example `Ch07_02_ex2()`. This function begins its execution with the creation of a `std::multiset<std::string, std::greater<std::string>>` named `mset1`. Like a `std::set`, you can change the comparison function for a `std::multiset`; the default is `std::less<T>()`.

Listing 7-2-2. Example `Ch07_02 - Ch07_02_ex2()`

```
void Ch07_02_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:12s}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {5};

    // set of strings (sorted using operator<)
    std::multiset<std::string, std::greater<std::string>> mset1
        {"Pittsburg", "Atlanta", "Charlotte", "Denver", "Seattle", "Miami",
         "Atlanta", "Dallas", "Denver", "Boise"};

    MT::print_ctr("\nmset1 (initial values):\n", mset1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("mset1.size(): {:d}", mset1.size());

    // add new elements using emplace
    mset1.emplace("Portland");
    mset1.emplace("Atlanta");
    mset1.emplace("Cleveland");
    mset1.emplace("Detroit");
    MT::print_ctr("\nmset1 (after emplacements):\n", mset1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("mset1.size(): {:d}", mset1.size());

    // erase element using value
    mset1.erase("Atlanta");
    MT::print_ctr("\nmset1 (after first erase):\n", mset1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("mset1.size(): {:d}", mset1.size());
}
```

```

// erase all cities that begin with a 'D'
auto iter = mset1.begin();

while (iter != mset1.end())
{
    // *iter is type std::string
    if ((*iter)[0] == 'D')
        iter = mset1.erase(iter);
    else
        ++iter;
}

MT::print_ctr("\nmset1 (after erase loop):\n", mset1, fmt, epl_max);
std::println("mset1.size(): {:d}", mset1.size());
}

```

The next code block in `Ch07_02_ex2()` utilizes `std::multiset::emplace()` to add more elements to `mset1`. To remove an element from a `std::multiset`, you can use `std::multiset::erase()`. Note that execution of `mset1.erase("Atlanta")` removes *all* occurrences of `std::string("Atlanta")` from `mset1`.

The final code block in `Ch07_02_ex2()` contains a `while` loop that removes from `mset1` all city names that begin with a 'D'. Note that `iter` is used just like any other iterator; it's initialized using `mset1.begin()`, and the loop terminates when `iter != mset1.end()` is false. Within the `while` loop, the first letter of the `std::string` pointed to by `iter` is compared against 'D'; if equal, execution of `iter = mset1.erase(iter)` deletes from `mset1` the element pointed to by `iter`. What's important to recognize here is that `mset1.erase(iter)` returns an iterator value that points to the next element in `mset1`. This is why `++iter` is executed only if `(*iter)[0] == 'D'` is false. Here are the results for source code example `Ch07_02`:

```

----- Results for example Ch07_02 -----

----- Ch07_02_ex1() -----

mset1 (initial values):
    10    20    30    40    50    70    80    90   100
mset1.size(): 9

```

```
mset1 (after insertions):
```

```
    10    20    30    40    50    60    70    80    80    90
    90   100   110
```

```
mset1.size(): 13
```

```
mset1 (after insert_range):
```

```
    10    20    30    30    40    40    50    60    70    70
    80    80    80    80    90    90   100   110
```

```
mset1.size(): 18
```

```
mset1.count(80) = 4
```

```
----- Ch07_02_ex2() -----
```

```
mset1 (initial values):
```

```
Seattle    Pittsburg    Miami    Denver    Denver
Dallas     Charlotte    Boise    Atlanta    Atlanta
```

```
mset1.size(): 10
```

```
mset1 (after emplacements):
```

```
Seattle    Portland    Pittsburg    Miami    Detroit
Denver     Denver     Dallas    Cleveland    Charlotte
Boise     Atlanta    Atlanta    Atlanta
```

```
mset1.size(): 14
```

```
mset1 (after first erase):
```

```
Seattle    Portland    Pittsburg    Miami    Detroit
Denver     Denver     Dallas    Cleveland    Charlotte
Boise
```

```
mset1.size(): 11
```

```
mset1 (after erase loop):
```

```
Seattle    Portland    Pittsburg    Miami    Cleveland
Charlotte    Boise
```

```
mset1.size(): 7
```

Using `std::map`

A `std::map<Key, T>` is an associative container that manages key-value pairs. The primary difference between a `std::map<Key, T>` and a `std::set<T>` is that the former manages elements that contain *both* a unique `Key` and a data value of type `T`. Similarities between a `std::map` and `std::set` include the following:

- A `std::map` is commonly implemented using a red-black tree.
- The elements of a `std::map<Key, T>` are sorted using the unique key and `std::less<Key>`. The function object can be overridden.
- Common operations such as insertions, searches, and removals have logarithmic instead of linear performance.
- Class `std::map<Key, T>` supports bidirectional iterators.
- The key of a `std::map<Key, T>` element cannot be changed. To modify an element's key, the old key-value element must be removed and a new one inserted. The value component of a `std::map<Key, T>` element can be modified in place.

Listing 7-3-1 shows the source code for the first `std::map` example. This example commences with the declaration of `std::map<int, std::string> map1`. Note that the key for `map1` is an `int`, while the value is a `std::string`. Also, note that the initializer list for `map1` includes pairs of integers and text strings. Following the declaration of `map1` is a call to `MT::print_map()` (see `Common/MT.h`), which prints the elements of a `std::map`. The `std::println()` statement that follows exercises `map1.size()`. This member function returns the number of elements in `map1`.

Listing 7-3-1. Example Ch07_03 - Ch07_03_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch07_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <array>
#include <format>
#include <functional>
#include <map>
#include <ostream>
```



```

#include <string>
#include <string_view>
#include <tuple>
#include <utility>
#include "Ch07_03.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RGB.h"

void Ch07_03_ex1()
{
    constexpr size_t epl_max {5};
    const char* fmt1 = "[{:3d}, ";
    const char* fmt2 = "{:<6s}] ";

    // simple map (int key, std::string data)
    std::map<int, std::string> map1
        {{0, "zero"}, {1, "one"}, {2, "two"}, {3, "three"}, {4, "four"},
         {5, "five"}, {6, "six"}, {7, "seven"}, {8, "eight"}, {9, "nine"}};

    MT::print_map("\nmap1 (initial values):\n", map1, fmt1, fmt2, epl_max);
    std::println("map1.size(): {:d}", map1.size());

    // using operator[] to modify values (keys are const)
    map1[0] = "null";
    map1[1] = "eins";
    map1[2] = "zwei";
    map1[3] = "drei";
    MT::print_map("\nmap1 (after modifications):\n", map1, fmt1, fmt2,
        epl_max);
    std::println("map1.size(): {:d}", map1.size());

    // using operator[] to add new elements
    map1[10] = "zehn";
    map1[11] = "elf";
    MT::print_map("\nmap1 (after insertions):\n", map1, fmt1, fmt2,
        epl_max);
    std::println("map1.size(): {:d}", map1.size());
}

```

```

// using at() - throws std::out_of_range if key is invalid
std::println("\nmap1.at(2): {}", map1.at(2));
std::println("map1.at(11): {}", map1.at(11));
// std::println("map1.at(47): {}", map1.at(47));           // throws exception

// erase elements
map1.erase(5);
map1.erase(6);
MT::print_map("\nmap1 (after erase operations):\n", map1, fmt1, fmt2,
ep1_max);
std::println("map1.size(): {:d}", map1.size());

// clear map
map1.clear();
MT::print_map("\nmap1 (after clear):\n", map1, fmt1, fmt2, ep1_max);
std::println("map1.size(): {:d}", map1.size());
}

```

The next code block utilizes operator[] to modify the values of elements in map1. For example, the expression map1[0] = "null" changes the value for key 0 from "zero" to "null". You can also exploit operator[] to add new key-value pairs to a std::map. The expression map1[10] = "zehn" adds a new element to map1 whose key-value is 10 and "zehn". The ensuing std::println() statements utilize map1.at(2) and map1.at(11) to print the values associated with keys 2 and 11, respectively. Like other containers, std::map::at() throws an exception if the supplied key is invalid. To observe this, remove the comment from the line that contains map1.at(47) and run the code.

Ch07_03_ex1() applies map1.erase(5) and map1.erase(6) to remove elements with keys 5 and 6 from map1. The final code block in Ch07_03_ex1() illustrates the use of map1.clear(), which removes all elements from map1.

The next std::map example, shown in Listing 7-3-2, begins its execution with the instantiation of std::map<std::string_view, std::string> map1. Each key-value pair in map1 groups a unique three-character airport code and the airport's name. Following initialization of map1, Ch07_03_ex2() employs the expression map1["SYD"] = "Sydney Airport (Sydney, Australia)", which adds a new key-value pair to map1. Note that for a std::map, the key type supplied to operator[] must match the key type for the std::map or a suitable conversion must be available. For the current example, class std::string_view defines a constructor that accepts an argument of type const char*.

Listing 7-3-2. Example Ch07_03 - Ch07_03_ex2()

```

void Ch07_03_ex2()
{
    constexpr size_t epl_max {1};
    const char* fmt1 = "[{:3s}, ";
    const char* fmt2 = "{:^35s} ";

    // initialize map
    std::map<std::string_view, std::string> map1
        {{"ORD", "O'Hare International (Chicago, IL USA)"},
         {"LHR", "Heathrow Airport (London, England UK)"},
         {"ZRH", "Flughafen Zurich (Zurich, Switzerland)"},
         {"AKL", "Auckland Airport (Auckland, New Zealand)"};

    MT::print_map("\nmap1 (initial values):\n", map1, fmt1, fmt2, epl_max);
    std::println("map1.size(): {:d}", map1.size());

    // insert element using new key
    map1["SYD"] = "Sydney Airport (Sydney, Australia)";
    MT::print_map("\nmap1 (after SYD insert):\n", map1, fmt1, fmt2,
        epl_max);
    std::println("map1.size(): {:d}", map1.size());

    // insert new element using emplace
    //
    // notes: emplace returns std::pair<iterator, bool>
    //         returned iterator points to std::pair<Key, T>

    auto [iter1, status1] = map1.emplace
        ( std::make_pair("NRT", "Narita International (Tokyo, Japan)") );

    if (status1)
    {
        std::println("\nmap1.emplace - new element added to map1");
        std::println("key = '{}' value: '{}'", iter1->first, iter1->
            second);
    }
    else

```

```

{
    std::println("\nmap1.emplace - element key already exists
in map1");
    std::println("key = '{} ' value: '{}'", iter1->first,
iter1->second);
}

// insert new element using try_emplace
auto [iter2, status2] = map1.try_emplace
    ("DXB", "Dubai International Airport (Dubai, UAE)");

if (status2)
{
    std::println("\nmap1.try_emplace - new element added to map1");
    std::println("key = '{} ' value: '{}'", iter2->first,
iter2->second);
}
else
    std::println("\nmap1.try_emplace - element key already exists
in map1");

MT::print_map("\nmap1 (after emplacements):\n", map1, fmt1, fmt2,
ep1_max);
std::println("map1.size(): {:d}", map1.size());
std::println("");

// search map using key values and find()
std::array<std::string_view, 4> keys {"ZRH", "LAX", "MCO", "AKL"};

for (const std::string_view& key : keys)
{
    std::print("key: '{:3s}' - ", key);

    if (auto iter = map1.find(key); iter != map1.end())
        std::println("found [{:3s}, {:35s}]", iter->first,
iter->second);
    else

```

```

        std::println("not found");
    }
}

```

The subsequent code block in `Ch07_03_ex2()` adds another element to `map1` using `std::map::emplace()`. The expression

```

auto [iter1, status1] = map1.emplace
    ( std::make_pair("NRT", "Narita International (Tokyo, Japan)") );

```

inserts a new element into `map1` with key "NRT". Member function `emplace()` returns a value of type `std::pair<iterator, bool>`. Note that structured binding is exploited to unbundle the `std::pair`'s elements. For the current example, the structured binding³ construct executes `iter1 = get<0>(pair_emp)` and `status1 = get<1>(pair_emp)` where `pair_emp` is the `std::pair<iterator, bool>` returned by `emplace()`. If `status1` is true, the `emplace()` operation successfully inserted the new element into `map1` and `iter1` points to a `std::pair<std::string_view, std::string>` node – or the inserted element – in `map1`. Note that the ensuing `std::println()` statements employ `iter1->first` and `iter1->second` to print the key and value of the newly inserted element. If `status1` is false, the key already exists in `map1` and `iter1` points to that element.

The next code block in `Ch07_03_ex2()` demonstrates the use of `try_emplace()`. Note that `try_emplace()` requires separate key and value arguments; there are no overloads that accept a `std::pair<Key, T>` object. Execution-wise, the primary difference between `emplace()` and `try_emplace()` is that the latter first checks to see if the specified key already exists in the map. If it does, `try_emplace()` does nothing. Otherwise, it constructs the value object and inserts the key-value pair into the map. Member function `emplace()` constructs the value object *before* checking the `std::map` for an existing key. This execution ordering may be suboptimal in use cases that perform frequency insertions of existing keys.

The final code block in `Ch07_03_ex2()` demonstrates use of `std::map::find()`. This member function searches a `std::map` for a specified key and returns an iterator to a key-value pair if the key is found; otherwise, `find()` returns `end()`.

³Structured binding can also be used to unbundle the elements of a `std::tuple`.

Listing 7-3-3-1 shows the source code for class RGB, which is used later in example Ch07_03_ex3(). Class RGB is a straightforward class that encompasses the red, green, and blue components of a color. Note that this class defines two parameterized constructors; the first one requires distinct `uint8_t` values for color components `r`, `g`, and `b`, while the second one accepts a single `uint32_t`⁴ value. Also, note that for class RGB, operator `<=>` and operator `==` (arbitrarily) compare the `uint32_t` value of a color.

Listing 7-3-3-1. Example Ch07_03 – Class RGB

```
//-----
// RGB.h
//-----

#ifndef RGB_H_
#define RGB_H_
#include <compare>
#include <cstdint>
#include <format>
#include <ostream>
#include <string>

class RGB
{
    friend struct std::formatter<RGB>;

public:
    RGB() = default;
    RGB(uint8_t r, uint8_t g, uint8_t b) : m_R{r}, m_G{g}, m_B{b} {};

    RGB(uint32_t color)
    {
        m_B = color & 0xFF;
        m_G = (color >> 8) & 0xFF;
        m_R = (color >> 16) & 0xFF;
    }
}
```

⁴This format is often utilized to specify HTML colors as demonstrated in later chapters.

```

// accessors
uint8_t R() const { return m_R; }
uint8_t B() const { return m_B; }
uint8_t G() const { return m_G; }
uint8_t& R() { return m_R; };
uint8_t& G() { return m_G; };
uint8_t& B() { return m_B; };
uint32_t ValUint() const { return (m_R << 16) | (m_G << 8) | m_B; }

// operators
friend auto operator<=>(const RGB& rgb1, const RGB& rgb2)
    { return rgb1.ValUint() <=> rgb2.ValUint(); }

friend bool operator==(const RGB& rgb1, const RGB& rgb2)
    { return rgb1.ValUint() == rgb2.ValUint(); }

friend std::ostream& operator<<(std::ostream& os, const RGB& rgb)
    { os << rgb.to_str(); return os;}

private:
    std::string to_str(bool use_hex = true) const;

    uint8_t m_R {};
    uint8_t m_G {};
    uint8_t m_B {};
    uint8_t m_A {};    // reserved for future use
};

// class RGB formatter
template <> struct std::formatter<RGB> : std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& pc)
        { return pc.begin(); }

    auto format(const RGB& rgb, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{}", rgb.to_str()); }
};

#endif

```

```

//-----
// RGB.cpp
//-----

#include <format>
#include <string>
#include "RGB.h"

std::string RGB::to_str(bool use_hex) const
{
    std::string s {};

    if (use_hex)
    {
        uint32_t c = ValUInt();
        std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "0x{:06X}", c);
    }
    else
    {
        std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "({:3d},{:3d},{:3d})",
            m_R, m_G, m_B);
    }

    return s;
}

```

The source code for example `Ch07_03_ex3()`, shown in Listing 7-3-3-2, opens with the definition of `std::map` aliases `cmap_lt_t` and `cmap_gt_t`. The difference between these two types is that the former utilizes `std::less<std::string_view>` for its comparison function while the latter employs `std::greater<std::string_view>`. Both `cmap_lt_t` and `cmap_gt_t` use a key of type `std::string_view` and a value type of `RGB`. Next in Listing 7-3-3-2 is the definition of template function `print_colors()`, which prints the colors of a `cmap_lt_t` or `cmap_gt_t` map.

Listing 7-3-3-2. Example Ch07_03 – Ch07_03_ex3()

```

using cmap_lt_t = std::map<std::string_view, RGB,
std::less<std::string_view>>;
using cmap_gt_t = std::map<std::string_view, RGB,
std::greater<std::string_view>>;

template <typename T>
void print_colors(const char* msg, const T& colors)
{
    std::print("{:s}", msg);

    for (const auto& color : colors)
        std::println("{:<10s} {}", color.first, color.second);
}

void Ch07_03_ex3()
{
    // create map of colors
    cmap_lt_t colors1
    {
        {"Red", 0xFF0000}, {"Green", 0x008000}, {"Blue", 0x0000FF},
        {"Yellow", 0xFFFF00}, {"Cyan", 0x00FFFF}, {"Magenta", 0xFF00FF}
    };

    print_colors("\nmap colors1 (initial values):\n", colors1);

    // std::map relational operators
    cmap_lt_t colors2 {colors1};
    print_colors("\nmap colors2 (initial values):\n", colors2);
    std::println("\ncolors2 == colors1: {:s}", colors2 == colors1);
    std::println("colors2 < colors1: {:s}", colors2 < colors1);
    std::println("colors2 > colors1: {:s}", colors2 > colors1);

    colors2.emplace("Lime", 0x00FF00);
    print_colors("\nmap colors2 (after emplace):\n", colors2);
    std::println("\ncolors2 == colors1: {:s}", colors2 == colors1);
    std::println("colors2 < colors1: {:s}", colors2 < colors1);
    std::println("colors2 > colors1: {:s}", colors2 > colors1);
}

```

```

    // add more colors using insert_range (C++23)
#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges
    auto more_colors = { std::pair<std::string_view, RGB>
        {"Black", RGB {0x00000}}, {"Gray", RGB {0x808080}},
        {"LightGray", RGB {0xD3D3D3}}, {"White", RGB {0xFFFFFF}} };

    colors2.insert_range(more_colors);
    print_colors("\nmap colors2 (initial insert_range):\n", colors2);
#else
    std::println("\nstd::map::insert_range() requires C++23");
#endif

    // create new map using std::greater for key sorts
    cmap_gt_t colors3(colors2.begin(), colors2.end());
    print_colors("\nmap colors3 (initial values):\n", colors3);

    // invalid expressions - different template types
    // cmap_gt_t colors3(colors2);    // compiler error
    // bool colors3 < colors1;       // compiler error
}

```

Function `Ch07_03_ex3()` opens with the creation of `cmap_lt_t` maps `colors1` and `colors2`. The next set of statements demonstrates the use of various relational operators using `colors1` and `colors2`. The code block that occurs after the relational operators exercises `colors2.insert_range(more_colors)` (C++23). This expression inserts the `std::pair<std::string_view, RGB>` objects from `more_colors` into `colors2`. The final executable code block in `Ch07_03_ex3()` utilizes `cmap_gt_t colors3(colors2.begin(), colors2.end())` to instantiate `colors3`. Note in the results section that `colors2` contains the same elements as `colors1`, but the elements are sorted in descending order. It warrants mentioning here that `cmap_lt_t` and `cmap_gt_t` are distinct C++ types. This means that certain operations, such as those shown in the commented-out statements at the end of `Ch07_03_ex3()`, generate compiler errors. The constructor for `colors3` is valid since maps `cmap_lt_t colors2` and `cmap_gt_t colors3` both use the same key-value types.

The final example function of `Ch07_03`, shown in Listing 7-3-4, commences with the creation of `cmap_lt_t colors1` and `cmap_gt_t colors2`. Following the calls to `print_colors()`, `Ch07_03_ex4()` utilizes the expression `colors1.merge(colors2)` to

merge elements from `colors2` into `colors1`. Despite the different types for `colors1` and `colors2`, this expression is valid since both `cmap_lt_t` and `cmap_gt_t` utilize `std::string_view` and `RGB` for the map key-value pair. Note in the results section that following the map merger, `colors2` contains elements that existed in `colors1` prior to the merge operation.

Listing 7-3-4. Example Ch07_03 - Ch07_03_ex4()

```
void Ch07_03_ex4()
{
    // create and print maps
    cmap_lt_t colors1
        {"Red", 0xFF0000}, {"Maroon", 0x800000}, {"Green", 0x008000},
        {"Yellow", 0xFFFF00}};

    cmap_gt_t colors2
        {"Aqua", 0x00FFFF}, {"Teal", 0x008080}, {"Yellow", 0xFFFF00},
        {"Red", 0xFF0000}, {"White", 0xFFFFFFFF}};

    print_colors("\nmap colors1 (initial values):\n", colors1);
    print_colors("\nmap colors2 (initial values):\n", colors2);

    // merge maps - ok since colors1 and colors2 use same <Key, T>
    colors1.merge(colors2);
    print_colors("\nmap colors1 (after merge):\n", colors1);
    print_colors("\nmap colors2 (after merge):\n", colors2);
}
```

Here are the results for source code example Ch07_03:

```
----- Results for example Ch07_03 -----
----- Ch07_03_ex1() -----
map1 (initial values):
[ 0, zero ] [ 1, one ] [ 2, two ] [ 3, three ] [ 4, four ]
[ 5, five ] [ 6, six ] [ 7, seven ] [ 8, eight ] [ 9, nine ]
map1.size(): 10
```

CHAPTER 7 ASSOCIATIVE CONTAINERS

map1 (after modifications):

```
[ 0, null ] [ 1, eins ] [ 2, zwei ] [ 3, drei ] [ 4, four ]  
[ 5, five ] [ 6, six ] [ 7, seven ] [ 8, eight ] [ 9, nine ]  
map1.size(): 10
```

map1 (after insertions):

```
[ 0, null ] [ 1, eins ] [ 2, zwei ] [ 3, drei ] [ 4, four ]  
[ 5, five ] [ 6, six ] [ 7, seven ] [ 8, eight ] [ 9, nine ]  
[ 10, zehn ] [ 11, elf ]  
map1.size(): 12
```

map1.at(2): zwei

map1.at(11): elf

map1 (after erase operations):

```
[ 0, null ] [ 1, eins ] [ 2, zwei ] [ 3, drei ] [ 4, four ]  
[ 7, seven ] [ 8, eight ] [ 9, nine ] [ 10, zehn ] [ 11, elf ]  
map1.size(): 10
```

map1 (after clear):

<empty>

map1.size(): 0

----- Ch07_03_ex2() -----

map1 (initial values):

```
[AKL, Auckland Airport (Auckland, New Zealand)]  
[LHR, Heathrow Airport (London, England UK)]  
[ORD, O'Hare International (Chicago, IL USA)]  
[ZRH, Flughafen Zurich (Zurich, Switzerland)]  
map1.size(): 4
```

map1 (after SYD insert):

```
[AKL, Auckland Airport (Auckland, New Zealand)]  
[LHR, Heathrow Airport (London, England UK)]  
[ORD, O'Hare International (Chicago, IL USA)]  
[SYD, Sydney Airport (Sydney, Australia) ]  
[ZRH, Flughafen Zurich (Zurich, Switzerland)]  
map1.size(): 5
```

```

map1.emplace - new element added to map1
key = 'NRT' value: 'Narita International (Tokyo, Japan)'

map1.try_emplace - new element added to map1
key = 'DXB' value: 'Dubai International Airport (Dubai, UAE)'

map1 (after emplacements):
[AKL, Auckland Airport (Auckland, New Zealand)]
[DXB, Dubai International Airport (Dubai, UAE)]
[LHR, Heathrow Airport (London, England UK)]
[NRT, Narita International (Tokyo, Japan)]
[ORD, O'Hare International (Chicago, IL USA)]
[SYD, Sydney Airport (Sydney, Australia) ]
[ZRH, Flughafen Zurich (Zurich, Switzerland)]
map1.size(): 7

key: 'ZRH' - found [ZRH, Flughafen Zurich (Zurich, Switzerland)]
key: 'LAX' - not found
key: 'MCO' - not found
key: 'AKL' - found [AKL, Auckland Airport (Auckland, New Zealand)]

```

```
----- Ch07_03_ex3() -----
```

```
map colors1 (initial values):
```

```

Blue      0x0000FF
Cyan      0x00FFFF
Green     0x008000
Magenta   0xFF00FF
Red       0xFF0000
Yellow    0xFFFF00

```

```
map colors2 (initial values):
```

```

Blue      0x0000FF
Cyan      0x00FFFF
Green     0x008000
Magenta   0xFF00FF
Red       0xFF0000
Yellow    0xFFFF00

```

CHAPTER 7 ASSOCIATIVE CONTAINERS

```
colors2 == colors1: true
colors2 < colors1: false
colors2 > colors1: false
```

map colors2 (after emplace):

```
Blue      0x0000FF
Cyan      0x00FFFF
Green     0x008000
Lime      0x00FF00
Magenta   0xFF00FF
Red       0xFF0000
Yellow    0xFFFF00
```

```
colors2 == colors1: false
colors2 < colors1: true
colors2 > colors1: false
```

map colors2 (initial insert_range):

```
Black     0x000000
Blue      0x0000FF
Cyan      0x00FFFF
Gray      0x808080
Green     0x008000
LightGray 0xD3D3D3
Lime      0x00FF00
Magenta   0xFF00FF
Red       0xFF0000
White     0xFFFFFFFF
Yellow    0xFFFF00
```

map colors3 (initial values):

```
Yellow    0xFFFF00
White     0xFFFFFFFF
Red       0xFF0000
Magenta   0xFF00FF
Lime      0x00FF00
LightGray 0xD3D3D3
```

```
Green    0x008000
Gray     0x808080
Cyan     0x00FFFF
Blue     0x0000FF
Black    0x000000
```

```
----- Ch07_03_ex4() -----
```

```
map colors1 (initial values):
```

```
Green    0x008000
Maroon   0x800000
Red      0xFF0000
Yellow   0xFFFF00
```

```
map colors2 (initial values):
```

```
Yellow   0xFFFF00
White    0xFFFFFFFF
Teal     0x008080
Red      0xFF0000
Aqua     0x00FFFF
```

```
map colors1 (after merge):
```

```
Aqua     0x00FFFF
Green    0x008000
Maroon   0x800000
Red      0xFF0000
Teal     0x008080
White    0xFFFFFFFF
Yellow   0xFFFF00
```

```
map colors2 (after merge):
```

```
Yellow   0xFFFF00
Red      0xFF0000
```

Using `std::multimap`

If you were to guess that container class `std::multimap` is a `std::map` like container that supports multiple elements using the same key, you would be correct. Most of what you learned in the previous section regarding `std::maps` also applies to `std::multimaps`. Class `std::multimap` includes a few additional member functions that class `std::map` doesn't define, and you'll learn how to properly use these in this section.

Listing 7-4-1 shows the source code for the first `std::multimap` example. Near the top of `Ch07_04_ex1()` is a series of two-letter `std::string_view` objects that denote names of states in the United States. These variables are employed to avoid repetition and improve readability. Next is the declaration of `mulmap_t mmap1`, which contains key-value pairs of US states and cities. Type name `mulmap_t` is an alias for `std::multimap<std::string_view, std::string>`. Note that `mmap1` contains multiple cities from each state. The `std::println()` statement that follows the call to `MT::print_multimap()` exercises `mmap1.size()`, which returns the number of elements in `mmap1`.

Listing 7-4-1. Example Ch07_04 – Ch07_04_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch07_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <array>
#include <iomanip>
#include <iostream>
#include <map>
#include <string>
#include <string_view>
#include "Ch07_04.h"
#include "MT.h"

using mulmap_t = std::multimap<std::string_view, std::string>;

void Ch07_04_ex1()
{
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};
    const char* fmt1 = "[{:<14s} | ";
    const char* fmt2 = "{:>14s}] ";
```



```

// state abbreviations
std::string_view ca {"California"};
std::string_view fl {"Florida"};
std::string_view il {"Illinois"};
std::string_view ny {"New York"};
std::string_view oh {"Ohio"};
std::string_view tx {"Texas"};
std::string_view wi {"Wisconsin"};

mmap_t mmap1
    {{ca, "Los Angeles"}, {ca, "San Francisco"}, {ca, "Fresno"},
     {il, "Chicago"}, {il, "Peoria"}, {il, "Rockford"},
     {oh, "Cleveland"}, {oh, "Columbus"}, {oh, "Cincinnati"},
     {tx, "Houston"}, {tx, "Dallas"}, {tx, "Austin"}, {tx, "El Paso"}};

MT::print_multimap("\nmmap1 (initial values):\n", mmap1, fmt1, fmt2,
    epl_max);
std::println("mmap1.size(): {:d}", mmap1.size());

// add new key/value pairs to mmap1 using insert
mmap1.insert(std::pair {fl, "Orlando"});
mmap1.insert(std::pair {fl, "Miami"});
mmap1.insert(std::pair {fl, "Jacksonville"});
mmap1.insert(std::pair {fl, "Orlando"});
MT::print_multimap("\nmmap1 (after insertions):\n", mmap1, fmt1, fmt2,
    epl_max);
std::println("mmap1.size(): {:d}", mmap1.size());

// add new key/value pairs to mmap1 using emplace
mmap1.emplace(ny, "New York City");
mmap1.emplace(ny, "Buffalo");
mmap1.emplace(ny, "Albany");
mmap1.emplace(ny, "Yonkers");
mmap1.emplace(ny, "Syracuse");
MT::print_multimap("\nmmap1 (after emplacements):\n", mmap1, fmt1,
    fmt2, epl_max);
std::println("mmap1.size(): {:d}", mmap1.size());

```

```

// using count
auto count_il = mmap1.count(il);
auto count_tx = mmap1.count(tx);
std::println("\nnumber of {:s} cities in mmap1: {:d}", il, count_il);
std::println("number of {:s} cities in mmap1: {:d}", tx, count_tx);

// using contains (C++20)
std::println("\nmmap1 contains key {:s}: {:s}", oh,
mmap1.contains(oh));
std::println("mmap1 contains key {:s}: {:s}", wi, mmap1.contains(wi));
}

```

The next two code blocks in `Ch07_04_ex1()` add more elements to `mmap1` using `std::multimap::insert()` and `std::multimap::emplace()`. It warrants merits mentioning here that `std::multimap::try_emplace()` is not defined since `std::multimaps` can hold multiple objects with the same key. Following the insertions, `Ch07_04_ex1()` utilizes `count_il = mmap1.count(il)` to count the number of cities from Illinois in `mmap1`. The next statement, `count_tx = mmap1.count(tx)`, performs the same operation for cities in Texas. The final code block in `Ch07_04_ex1()` demonstrates the use of `mmap1.contains()` (C++20), which returns true if the specified key exists in `mmap1`.

Like `std::map`, container class `std::multimap` defines a member function named `find()` that searches for a specific key value. However, the use of the latter `find()` is somewhat different since a `std::multimap` may contain multiple elements with the same key. Example function `Ch07_04_ex2()`, shown in Listing 7-4-2, illustrates the use of `std::multimap::find()` along with another search function named `std::multimap::equal_range()`.

Listing 7-4-2. Example Ch07_04 - Ch07_04_ex2()

```

void Ch07_04_ex2()
{
    constexpr size_t epl_max {3};
    const char* fmt1 = "[{:3s}, ";
    const char* fmt2 = "{:s} ] ";

    // country abbreviations
    std::string_view ar {"Argentina"};
    std::string_view br {"Brazil"};
}

```

```

std::string_view ca {"Canada"};
std::string_view in {"India"};
std::string_view mx {"Mexico"};

// create and initialize multimap
multimap_t mmap1
    {{br, "Sao Paulo"}, {br, "Rio de Janeiro"}, {br, "Brasilia"},
     {ca, "Montreal"}, {ca, "Toronto"}, {ca, "Edmonton"},
     {ca, "Calgary"}, {ca, "Vancouver"},
     {in, "New Delhi"}, {in, "Chennai"},
     {mx, "Mexico City"}, {mx, "Tijuana"}, {mx, "Ecatepec"}};

MT::print_multimap("\nmmap1 (initial values):\n", mmap1, fmt1, fmt2,
    ep1_max);
std::println("mmap1.size(): {:d}", mmap1.size());

// using multimap::find
std::println("\nsearching mmap1 using find()");
std::array<std::string_view, 3> find_keys {ar, ca, in};

for (const auto& find_key : find_keys)
{
    std::print("\nfind_key: {:s}\n", find_key);

    auto iter = mmap1.find(find_key);

    if (iter == mmap1.end())
        std::println("not found");
    else
    {
        while (iter->first == find_key)
        {
            std::println("found: {:s}, {:s}", iter->first,
                iter->second);

            if (++iter == mmap1.end())
                break;
        }
    }
}

```

```

    }

    // using multimap::equal_range
    std::println("\nsearching mmap1 using equal_range()");

    for (const auto& find_key : find_keys)
    {
        std::println("\nfind_key: {:s}", find_key);

        auto iter_er = mmap1.equal_range(find_key);

        if (iter_er.first->first != find_key)
            std::println("not found");
        else
        {
            for (auto iter = iter_er.first; iter != iter_er.second; ++iter)
                std::println("found: {:s}, {:s}", iter->first,
                    iter->second);
        }
    }
}

```

Similar to the previous example, `Ch07_04_ex2()` defines a few `std::string_view` objects that contain country names. Next is the definition of `mulmap_t mmap1`, which maintains country-city key-value pairs. Following the definition of `mmap1`, function `MT::print_multimap()` prints the elements of `mmap1`.

The next code block in `Ch07_04_ex2()` utilizes `mmap1.find(find_key)` to search `mmap1` for an element that matches `find_key`. If a key match is not found, `find()` returns `mmap1.end()`. Otherwise, it returns an iterator to the first element in `mmap1` that matches `find_key`. The ensuing `while` loop uses `iter` to print the key and value of each element in `mmap1` that matches `find_key`. There are two important details to recognize here. First, iterator `iter` points to an object of type `std::pair<std::string_view, std::string>`, which matches the element type of `mulmap_t`. Second, note that there are two termination checks in the `while` loop: `iter->first == find_key` (terminate if false) and `++iter == mmap1.end()` (terminate if true).

The final code block of `Ch07_04_ex2()` utilizes `mmap1.equal_range(find_key)` to search `mmap1` for `find_key`. In the current example, `equal_range()` returns a `std::pair` of iterators that's saved in `iter_er`. Iterator `iter_er.first` points to the first element in `mmap1` that's not less than `find_key`, while `iter_er.second` points to the first element in `mmap1` that's greater than `find_key`. If `iter_er.first->first != find_key` is true, no key matches were found. Otherwise, the ensuing for loop prints all elements with key `find_key`; these exist in the range `[iter_er.first, iter_er.second)`. Here are the results for source code example `Ch07_04`:

```

----- Results for example Ch07_04 -----

----- Ch07_04_ex1() -----

mmap1 (initial values):
[California | Los Angeles] [California | San Francisco]
[California | Fresno] [Illinois | Chicago]
[Illinois | Peoria] [Illinois | Rockford]
[Ohio | Cleveland] [Ohio | Columbus]
[Ohio | Cincinnati] [Texas | Houston]
[Texas | Dallas] [Texas | Austin]
[Texas | El Paso]
mmap1.size(): 13

mmap1 (after insertions):
[California | Los Angeles] [California | San Francisco]
[California | Fresno] [Florida | Orlando]
[Florida | Miami] [Florida | Jacksonville]
[Florida | Orlando] [Illinois | Chicago]
[Illinois | Peoria] [Illinois | Rockford]
[Ohio | Cleveland] [Ohio | Columbus]
[Ohio | Cincinnati] [Texas | Houston]
[Texas | Dallas] [Texas | Austin]
[Texas | El Paso]
mmap1.size(): 17

```

CHAPTER 7 ASSOCIATIVE CONTAINERS

mmap1 (after emplacements):

[California	|	Los Angeles]	[California	|	San Francisco]
[California	|	Fresno]	[Florida	|	Orlando]
[Florida	|	Miami]	[Florida	|	Jacksonville]
[Florida	|	Orlando]	[Illinois	|	Chicago]
[Illinois	|	Peoria]	[Illinois	|	Rockford]
[New York	|	New York City]	[New York	|	Buffalo]
[New York	|	Albany]	[New York	|	Yonkers]
[New York	|	Syracuse]	[Ohio	|	Cleveland]
[Ohio	|	Columbus]	[Ohio	|	Cincinnati]
[Texas	|	Houston]	[Texas	|	Dallas]
[Texas	|	Austin]	[Texas	|	El Paso]

mmap1.size(): 22

number of Illinois cities in mmap1: 3

number of Texas cities in mmap1: 4

mmap1 contains key Ohio: true

mmap1 contains key Wisconsin: false

----- Ch07_04_ex2() -----

mmap1 (initial values):

[Brazil, Sao Paulo]	[Brazil, Rio de Janeiro]	[Brazil, Brasilia]
[Canada, Montreal]	[Canada, Toronto]	[Canada, Edmonton]
[Canada, Calgary]	[Canada, Vancouver]	[India, New Delhi]
[India, Chennai]	[Mexico, Mexico City]	[Mexico, Tijuana]
[Mexico, Ecatepec]		

mmap1.size(): 13

searching mmap1 using find()

find_key: Argentina

not found

find_key: Canada

found: Canada, Montreal

found: Canada, Toronto

```

found: Canada, Edmonton
found: Canada, Calgary
found: Canada, Vancouver

find_key: India
found: India, New Delhi
found: India, Chennai

searching mmap1 using equal_range()

find_key: Argentina
not found

find_key: Canada
found: Canada, Montreal
found: Canada, Toronto
found: Canada, Edmonton
found: Canada, Calgary
found: Canada, Vancouver

find_key: India
found: India, New Delhi
found: India, Chennai

```

When searching a `std::multimap`, the ordering of elements with equal keys is not guaranteed. The only assurance for these cases is that `std::multimap::find()` and `std::multimap::equal_ranges()` return the necessary iterator information that facilitates access to all key-matched elements. This element ordering ambiguity also applies to `std::multiset::find()`.

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- A `std::set<T>` is an associative container that holds a unique set of elements. The elements of a `std::set<T>` are usually stored in red-black tree; the ordering of elements in this tree is determined using a comparison function that defaults to `std::less<T>`. Element insertions, searches, and removals have logarithmic instead of linear complexity.
- A `std::multiset<T>` is similar to a `std::set<T>` but allows multiple elements of the same value.
- A `std::map<Key, T>` is an associative container that holds pairs of key-value elements. The key of each element in a `std::map<Key, T>` must be unique. Like a `std::set<T>`, the ordering of elements in a `std::map<Key, T>` is determined using a comparison function whose default is `std::less<Key>`. Element insertions, searches, and removals also have logarithmic instead of linear complexity.
- A `std::multimap<Key, T>` is similar to a `std::map<Key, T>` but allows multiple elements with the same key value.

CHAPTER 8

Unordered Associative Containers

This chapter covers unordered associative containers, including

- Unordered associative container primer
- How to use `std::unordered_set`
- How to use `std::unordered_multiset`
- How to use `std::unordered_map`
- How to use `std::unordered_multimap`

An unordered associative container holds a collection of objects or elements. Unlike the (ordered) associative containers that you studied in the previous chapter, unordered associative containers do not order their elements using a tree-like structure and comparison function. Instead, unordered associative containers order their elements using hash functions. For many use cases, the application of a hash function instead of a comparison function yields improved performance.

Unordered Associative Container Primer

In Chapter 7, you learned that compared to a sequence container, an associative container has logarithmic instead of linear complexity when performing common operations, such as element insertions, searches, and removals. You also learned that an associative container typically utilizes a red-black tree to organize its elements, which is the principal reason behind its logarithmic performance properties. For many applications, however, this algorithmic performance enhancement is inadequate, especially when working with containers that possess large numbers of elements.

To address this imbalance, some applications exploit unordered associative containers. Unlike an associative container, an unordered associative container doesn't use an internal tree; it also doesn't order its elements using a key comparison function. Instead, an unordered associative container utilizes a hash function and a hash table to arrange its elements. Before examining the programming aspects of an unordered associative container, a brief overview of hash functions and other hashing concepts is necessary.

Hash Functions and Concepts

A hash function is a function that maps a key value to a fixed-size value. This fixed-size value, commonly an integer, is called a hash value. Once calculated, a hash value is employed as an index into a hash table, which contains (or points to) the key's data. For some containers, the key and data are the same object. Figure 8-1 illustrates the logical relationships between a key, hash function, hash table, and data.

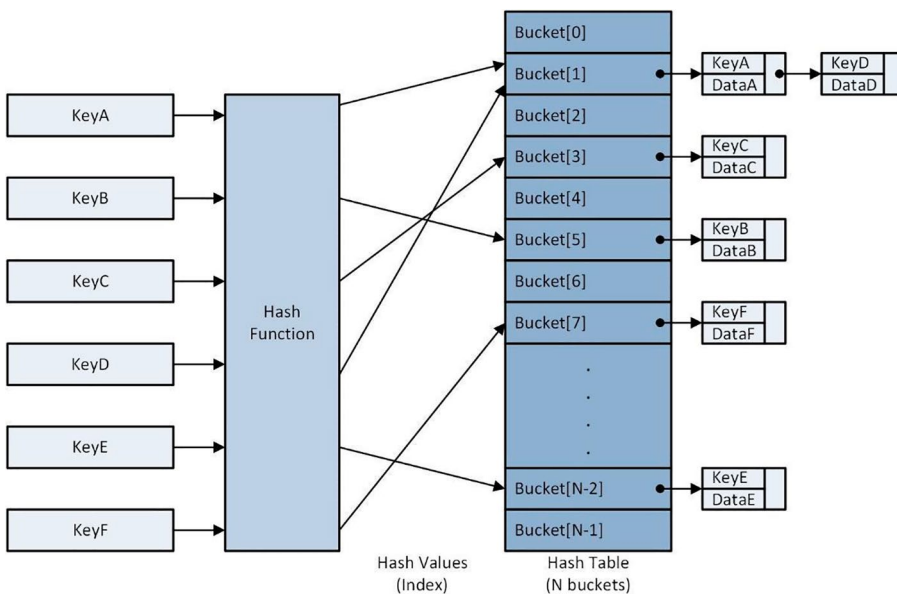


Figure 8-1. Logical relationships between key, hash function, hash table, and data

In Figure 8-1, note that the hash table contains N buckets. Each hash table bucket is often a list of key-data pairs (or just keys). Also, note in this figure that many, but not all, keys map to a unique bucket. A collision occurs when two or more keys map to the same bucket. In this situation, the bucket list is extended to accommodate the new element.

For any STL unordered associative container `ctr`, `ctr.bucket_count()` returns the number of hash table buckets. A hash table load factor is the average number of elements per bucket and can be calculated as follows: `ctr.load_factor() = ctr.size() / ctr.bucket_count()` where `ctr.size()` is the number of container elements. The maximum load factor is the largest allowable load factor. If this value is exceeded due to an element insertion, the container automatically increases the number of buckets; it then performs a rehash operation. A rehash rebuilds the entire hash table using the new bucket count. This reduces the number of elements that are maintained in each bucket, which improves search performance. The downside of a rehash is that it may be a time-consuming operation depending on the number of elements in the container.

The maximum load factor of an unordered associative container can be manually specified using `ctr.max_load_factor(float mlf)`. You can also manually change the number of hash table buckets using `ctr.rehash(std::size_t bucket_count_min)`. During execution of `ctr.rehash()`, the number of hash table buckets is adjusted to at least `bucket_count_min`. It's important to keep in mind that the actual number of hash table buckets is always determined by the container. You'll see example usages of these hash policy functions later in this chapter.

One notable advantage of a hash algorithm is that it doesn't require execution of key comparison functions or tree node traversals to determine a key's bucket within the hash table. A key's hash table bucket can be quickly accessed using simple indexing, which makes it appropriate for use cases that perform frequent searches. Numerous tomes have been written about hash functions and algorithms. Appendix B contains a few references that you can consult for more information regarding these topics.

Using `std::unordered_set`

A `std::unordered_set` is an unordered associative container that incorporates a collection of unique keys. Like its ordered counterpart `std::set`, class `std::unordered_set` models a mathematical set. Its public interface for insertions, searches, and removals resembles that of a `std::set`. All STL unordered associative container classes including `std::unordered_set` define additional public member functions that facilitate customization of the container's internal hash table and hash policy.

Source code example Ch08_01 typifies several usages of class `std::unordered_set`. In Listing 8-1-1-1, note that header file `Ch08_01.h` defines aliases `uno_set_str_t = std::unordered_set<std::string>` and `uno_set_hc_t = std::unordered_set<HtmlColor, size_t(*)(&const HtmlColor&)>`. The former is a `std::unordered_set` that contains keys of `std::string`, while the latter contains keys of `HtmlColor`. Alias `uno_set_hc_t` also specifies a custom hash function. The particulars regarding class `HtmlColor`, shown in Listing 8-1-4-1, and `uno_set_hc_t`'s custom hash function are explained later in this section. Listing 8-1-1-1 additionally shows the source code for `Ch08_01_misc.cpp`. This file defines two overloads for `print_buckets()`. These functions print the buckets of a `uno_set_str_t` or `uno_set_hc_t` container as expounded later in this section.

Listing 8-1-1-1. Example Ch08_01 – Ch08_01.h and Ch08_01_misc.cpp

```
//-----
// Ch08_01.h
//-----

#ifndef CH08_01_H_
#define CH08_01_H_
#include <string>
#include <unordered_set>
#include "Common.h"
#include "HtmlColor.h"

// type aliases for unordered_set of HtmlColor values
using uno_set_str_t = std::unordered_set<std::string>;
using uno_set_hc_t = std::unordered_set<HtmlColor, size_t(*)(&const
HtmlColor&)>;

// Ch08_01_misc.cpp
void print_buckets(const char* msg, const uno_set_str_t& strings);
void print_buckets(const char* msg, const uno_set_hc_t& colors);

// Ch08_01_ex.cpp
extern void Ch08_01_ex();

#endif
```

```

//-----
// Ch08_01_misc.cpp
//-----

#include "Ch08_01.h"
#include "HtmlColor.h"

template <typename T>
void print_stats(const char* msg, const T& uno_set)
{
    // print stats
    std::println("{:s} ", msg);
    std::print("size: {:d} ", uno_set.size());
    std::print("bucket_count: {:d} ", uno_set.bucket_count());
    std::println("load_factor: {:.4f}\n", uno_set.load_factor());
}

void print_buckets(const char* msg, const uno_set_str_t& strings)
{
    print_stats(msg, strings);

    // print buckets of strings
    for (size_t i = 0; i < strings.bucket_count(); ++i)
    {
        if (strings.bucket_size(i) > 0)
        {
            std::print("bucket {:2d}: ", i);

            for (auto iter = strings.begin(i); iter != strings.end(i);
                ++iter)
                std::print("'{}' ", *iter);
            std::println("");
        }
    }
}

```

```

void print_buckets(const char* msg, const uno_set_hc_t& colors)
{
    print_stats(msg, colors);

    // print buckets of colors
    for (size_t i = 0; i < colors.bucket_count(); ++i)
    {
        if (i >= HtmlColor::hash_func_bucket_count)
            break;

        if (colors.bucket_size(i) > 0)
        {
            std::print("bucket {:2d}: ", i);

            for (auto iter = colors.begin(i); iter != colors.end(i);
                ++iter)
                std::print(" {}", iter->Name());
            std::println("");
        }
    }
}

```

Listing 8-1-1-2 shows the source code for example function `Ch08_01_ex1()`. The open code block of this function instantiates `uno_set_str_t set1` whose initializer list supplies the container's initial values. The next statement exercises `print_buckets()` to print the bucket contents of `set1`. If you scan ahead to the results section for example `Ch08_01`, note that `set1` contains six elements and eight buckets.¹ Only three of the buckets - numbers three, five, and seven - contain elements; the remaining buckets are empty. Also shown is the current load factor for `set1`, which is not very meaningful right now given the small number of elements in `set1`.

¹For each example in this chapter, the hash table parameters shown in the results section may vary depending on the C++ compiler.

Listing 8-1-1-2. Example Ch08_01 - Ch08_01_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch08_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <array>
#include <functional>
#include <string>
#include <unordered_set>
#include "Ch08_01.h"
#include "MF.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "HtmlColor.h"

uno_set_str_t Ch08_01_ex1()
{
    // create an unordered set of strings
    uno_set_str_t set1 { "Gulf of Alaska", "Caribbean Sea", "Black Sea",
        "Red Sea", "Gulf of Thailand", "Bering Sea" };

    print_buckets("\nset1 (initial values): ", set1);

    // add more elements using insert and emplace
    set1.insert("Baltic Sea");
    set1.insert("Mediterranean Sea");
    set1.insert("Gulf of Mexico");
    set1.emplace("Ross Sea");
    set1.emplace("Yellow Sea");
    set1.emplace("Greenland Sea");

    // add more elements using insert_range (C++23) or ranges::copy (C++20)
    std::array<std::string, 6> arr1
        {"Labrador Sea", "Amundsen Gulf", "North Sea",
        "Adriatic Sea", "Scotia Sea", "Gulf of Biscay"};

#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges >= 202202L
    set1.insert_range(arr1);
#endif
}

```

```

#else
    std::ranges::copy(arr1, std::inserter(set1, set1.begin()));
#endif

    print_buckets("\nset1 (after insert_range): ", set1);
    return set1;
}

```

Before continuing with `Ch08_01_ex1()`, let's quickly review the code for the first overload of `print_buckets()` in Listing 8-1-1-1. Execution of this function begins with a call to template function `print_stats()`. Function `print_stats()` prints basic statistics for `std::unordered_set uno_set`, including `uno_set.size()` (number of elements), `uno_set.bucket_count()` (number of hash table buckets), and `uno_set.load_factor()` (average number of elements per bucket). Following the call to `print_stats()` is a for loop that prints the elements of each bucket. Function `strings.bucket_size(i)` obtains the number of elements in bucket `i`. If `strings.bucket_size(i) > 0` is true, a second for loop prints the elements of bucket `i`. Note that this for loop references the elements of bucket `i` using an iterator; functions `strings.begin(i)` and `strings.end(i)` return the requisite start and end iterators for bucket `i`. It warrants mentioning here that all unordered associative containers including `std::unordered_set` define universal iterator member functions `begin()`, `cbegin()`, `end()`, and `end()`.

Returning to the code in Listing 8-1-1-2, the code block that follows the first call to `print_stats()` demonstrates the use of `std::unordered_set` member functions `insert()` and `emplace()`. Like other containers, these functions insert a new element into a `std::unordered_set`. The ensuing code block utilizes `set1.insert_range(arr1)` (C++23) or `std::ranges::copy(arr1, std::inserter(set1, set1.begin()))` to insert copies of the `std::string` elements in `arr1` into `set1`. STL helper function `std::inserter(set1, set1.begin())` constructs an insert iterator that `std::ranges::copy()` utilizes to insert elements into `set1`.

Following the element insertions is another call to `print_buckets()`. Note in the results section that the number of elements in `set1` is now 18. More importantly, note that the bucket count is now 64, the load factor is 0.2812, and the maximum number of elements in any bucket is two. As discussed earlier in this section, an unordered associative container will automatically increase the number of buckets and carry out a rehash operation following an insertion whenever the load factor exceeds

`std::unordered_set::max_load_factor()`. The final statement of `Ch08_01_ex1()` returns `set1` so that it can be used in example function `Ch08_01_ex2()`, which is shown in Listing 8-1-2.

Listing 8-1-2. Example Ch08_01 - Ch08_01_ex2()

```
void Ch08_01_ex2(uno_set_str_t set1)
{
    // create new set
    uno_set_str_t set2 {"Yellow Sea", "Red Sea", "Arabian Sea",
        "Baffin Bay",
        "North Sea", "Beaufort Sea", "Caspian Sea", "Gulf of Biscay"};

    // set1 is the same as final output from Ch08_01_ex1()
    // print_buckets("\nset1 (initial values): ", set1);

    print_buckets("\nset2 (initial values): ", set2);

    // merge sets
    set2.merge(set1);
    print_buckets("\nset1 (after merge): ", set1);
    print_buckets("\nset2 (after merge): ", set2);

    // using contains
    std::println("\nset2.contains(\"North Sea\"): {:s}", set2.
        contains("North Sea"));
    std::println("set2.contains(\"Java Sea\"): {:s}", set2.
        contains("Java Sea"));
    std::println("");

    // using extract ("Green Sea" not member of set2)
    std::array<std::string, 3> extract_seas
        {"Black Sea", "Green Sea", "Red Sea"};

    for (const std::string& extract_sea : extract_seas)
    {
        std::print("extract_sea: {:s} - ", extract_sea);

        auto node_handle = set2.extract(extract_sea);
    }
}
```

```

    if (!node_handle.empty())
    {
        std::println("found");
        node_handle.value() = MF::to_upper(node_handle.value());
        set2.insert(std::move(node_handle));
    }
    else
        std::println("not found");
}

print_buckets("\nset2 (after extracts): ", set2);
}

```

Function `Ch08_01_ex2()` opens with the creation of an unordered set named `set2`. Following the `print_buckets()` call, `Ch08_01_ex2()` utilizes `set2.merge(set1)` to merge elements from `set1` into `set2`. Recall that a `std::unordered_set` doesn't allow duplicate keys. Any key that exists in both `set2` and `set1` will remain in `set1` as shown in the results section. Following the merger, the ensuing `std::println()` calls demonstrates the use of `contains()`. This member function returns `true` if the specified `std::string` key exists in `set2`.

The final code block in `Ch08_01_ex2()` illustrates the use of `std::unordered_set::extract()`. This member function moves the specified key - if it exists - from a `std::unordered_set` into an object of `std::unordered_set::node_type`. Member function `extract()` is often utilized in tandem with `insert()` to modify a key value as demonstrated in the ensuing for loop. The expression `node_handle = set2.extract(extract_sea)` searches `set2` for key `extract_sea`. If `!node_handle.empty()` is true, `extract_key` was found and this key moved from `set2` into `node_handle`. Inside the subsequent if block, the expression

```
node_handle.value() = MF::to_upper(node_handle.value());
```

converts the `std::string` key value owned by `node_handle` to uppercase and re-saves this value back in `node_handle`. The `set2.insert(std::move(node_handle))` that follows moves the modified key back into `set2`. It warrants mentioning here that a function can also exercise `erase()/insert()` to modify an existing key in a `std::unordered_set`; however, `extract()/insert()` must be used if the target container holds move-only objects.

Function `Ch08_01_ex3()`, shown in Listing 8-1-3, demonstrates how to use an iterator to remove keys that begin with an 'S' from a container of type `uno_set_str_t`. Inside this function's for loop, the expression `(*iter)[0] == 'S'` checks the first letter of the `std::string` pointed to by `iter` for equality to 'S'. If true, the subsequent expression `iter = set1.erase(iter)` removes the key pointed to by `iter` from `set1`. Execution of `set1.erase(iter)` also returns an iterator to the next key in `set1`. If `(*iter)[0] == 'S'` is false, the `++iter` statement adjusts `iter` so that it points to the next key in `set1`.

Listing 8-1-3. Example `Ch08_01 - Ch08_01_ex3()`

```
void Ch08_01_ex3()
{
    uno_set_str_t set1 {"Superior", "Michigan", "Huron", "Ontario", "Erie",
        "Tahoe", "Iliamna", "Crater", "Becharof", "Clark", "Sakakawea",
        "Pyramid", "Pontchartrain", "Champlain", "Mead", "Flathead",
        "Seneca", "Yellowstone", "Cayuga", "Bear"};

    print_buckets("\nset1 (initial values): ", set1);

    // remove strings that begin with an 'S'
    for (auto iter = set1.begin(); iter != set1.end(); )
    {
        if ((*iter)[0] == 'S')
            iter = set1.erase(iter);
        else
            ++iter;
    }
    print_buckets("\nset1 (after removals): ", set1);
}
```

The final source code example of this section demonstrates how to specify a custom hash function for a `std::unordered_set`. Before continuing, it warrants mentioning that originating a custom hash function that's both algorithmically efficient and statistically optimal for a specific key type is a nontrivial undertaking. The STL defines hash functions for all fundamental types, and you should have a very good reason for not

using one of these. For user-defined classes, consider using one of the STL's predefined hash functions along with a suitable class attribute. Chapter 11 includes an example that utilizes a predefined hash function.

Listing 8-1-4-1 shows the source code for class `HtmlColor`. Function `Ch08_01_ex4()` employs this class to explicate the creation and use of a custom hash function. Class `HtmlColor` is also used in later examples.

Listing 8-1-4-1. Example Ch08_01 – Class `HtmlColor`

```
//-----
// HtmlColor.h
//-----

#ifndef HTML_COLOR_H_
#define HTML_COLOR_H_
#include <cstdint>
#include <format>
#include <functional>
#include <ostream>
#include <string>
#include <vector>

class HtmlColor
{
    friend struct std::formatter<HtmlColor>;
    static const std::vector<HtmlColor> s_HtmlColors;    // all HTML colors

public:

    // simple structs for RGB and HSI values
    struct RGB
    {
        RGB() = default;
        RGB(uint8_t r, uint8_t g, uint8_t b) :
            R {r}, G {g}, B {b} {};
        RGB(uint32_t c)
            { B = c & 0xFF; G = (c >> 8) & 0xFF; R = (c >> 16) & 0xFF; }
        uint32_t get_uint() const
            { return static_cast<uint32_t>(B) | (G << 8) | (R << 16); }
    };
};
```

```

    uint8_t R {};      // red
    uint8_t G {};      // green
    uint8_t B {};      // blue
};

struct HSI
{
    HSI() = default;

    float H {};        // hue
    float S {};        // saturation
    float I {};        // intensity
};

// hash function bucket count
static constexpr size_t hash_func_bucket_count {50};

// hash function for unordered containers
static size_t hash_func(const HtmlColor& color)
    { return color.m_ValRgb.get_uint() % hash_func_bucket_count; }

// hash function for std::searcher (uses default for std::string)
static size_t hash_func_searcher(const HtmlColor& html_color)
    { return std::hash<std::string>{} (html_color.m_Name); }

HtmlColor() = default;
HtmlColor(const HtmlColor& color) :
    m_Name {color.m_Name}, m_ValRgb {color.m_ValRgb} {};

HtmlColor(const std::string& name, uint8_t r, uint8_t g, uint8_t b) :
    m_Name {name}, m_ValRgb {RGB(r, g, b)} {};

HtmlColor(const std::string& name, uint32_t val) :
    m_Name {name}, m_ValRgb {RGB(val)} {};

HtmlColor(const std::string& name, RGB val_rgb) :
    m_Name {name}, m_ValRgb {val_rgb} {};

// accessors
std::string Name() const { return m_Name; }

```

```

RGB ValRgb() const { return m_ValRgb; };
uint8_t R() const { return m_ValRgb.R; }
uint8_t G() const { return m_ValRgb.G; }
uint8_t B() const { return m_ValRgb.B; }

uint32_t ValUint() const { return m_ValRgb.get_uint(); };

HSI ValHSI() const { return get_hsi(); };
float H() const { return get_hsi().H; }
float S() const { return get_hsi().S; }
float I() const { return get_hsi().I; }

// operators
HtmlColor& operator=(const HtmlColor& c1)
    { m_Name = c1.m_Name; m_ValRgb = c1.m_ValRgb; return *this; }

friend auto operator<=>(const HtmlColor& c1, const HtmlColor& c2)
    { return c1.m_Name <=> c2.m_Name; };

friend bool operator==(const HtmlColor& c1, const HtmlColor& c2)
    { return c1.m_Name == c2.m_Name; };

friend std::ostream& operator<<(std::ostream& os, const
HtmlColor& color)
    { os << color.to_str(); return os; }

// miscellaneous HtmlColor functions (see HtmlColor.cpp)
static HtmlColor get(size_t index);
static std::string get_name(size_t index);

static std::vector<HtmlColor> get_vector();
static std::vector<HtmlColor> get_vector(const std::vector<size_t>&
indices);

static std::vector<HtmlColor> get_vector(size_t vec_size,
    bool unique_vals, unsigned int rng_seed);

static std::vector<std::string>
    get_vector_names_only(const std::vector<size_t>& indices);

static size_t num_colors() { return s_HtmlColors.size(); }

```

```

private:
    HSI get_hsi() const;
    std::string to_str(bool use_hex = true) const;

    std::string m_Name {"?"}; // color name
    RGB m_ValRgb {}; // color value
};

// HtmlColor formatter
template <> struct std::formatter<HtmlColor> : std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& pc)
        { return pc.begin(); }

    auto format(const HtmlColor& color, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{}", color.to_str()); }
};

#endif

//-----
// HtmlColor.cpp
//-----

#include <array>
#include <cmath>
#include <cstdint>
#include <random>
#include <stdexcept>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "HtmlColor.h"
#include "MTH.h"

// vector s_HtmlColors contains 141 HtmlColors
const std::vector<HtmlColor> HtmlColor::s_HtmlColors
{
    HtmlColor{"AliceBlue",          0xf0f8ff},
    HtmlColor{"AntiqueWhite",      0xfaebd7},
    HtmlColor{"Aqua",              0x00ffff},

```

```

    // colors AquaMarine - White excluded from listing
    HtmlColor{"WhiteSmoke",          0xf5f5f5},
    HtmlColor{"Yellow",              0xffff00},
    HtmlColor{"YellowGreen",        0x9acd32},
};

// LUT functions
HtmlColor HtmlColor::get(size_t index)
{
    if (index >= s_HtmlColors.size())
        throw std::runtime_error("HtmlColor::get() - invalid index");

    return s_HtmlColors[index];
}

std::string HtmlColor::get_name(size_t index)
{
    if (index >= s_HtmlColors.size())
        throw std::runtime_error("HtmlColor::get_name() - invalid index");

    return s_HtmlColors[index].m_Name;
}

std::vector<HtmlColor> HtmlColor::get_vector()
{
    std::vector<HtmlColor> colors {};
    std::copy(s_HtmlColors.begin(), s_HtmlColors.end(), std::back_
inserter(colors));

    return colors;
}

std::vector<HtmlColor> HtmlColor::get_vector(const std::vector<size_t>&
indices)
{
    std::vector<HtmlColor> colors {};

```



```

    for (auto index : indices)
        colors.push_back(get(index));

    return colors;
}

std::vector<HtmlColor> HtmlColor::get_vector(size_t vec_size,
    bool unique_vals, unsigned int rng_seed)
{
    if (unique_vals && vec_size > s_HtmlColors.size())
        throw std::runtime_error("HtmlColor::get_vector_random() -
            bad args");

    std::mt19937 rng {rng_seed};
    std::uniform_int_distribution<size_t> dist {0, s_HtmlColors.
        size() - 1};

    std::vector<HtmlColor> colors {};

    while (colors.size() < vec_size)
    {
        const HtmlColor& color = s_HtmlColors[dist(rng)];

        if (unique_vals)
        {
            auto iter = std::find(std::begin(colors), std::end(colors),
                color);

            if (iter != std::end(colors))
                continue;
        }

        colors.push_back(color);
    }

    return colors;
}

```

```

std::vector<std::string>
HtmlColor::get_vector_names_only(const std::vector<size_t>& indices)
{
    std::vector<std::string> color_names {};
    for (auto index : indices)
        color_names.push_back(get(index).Name());
    return color_names;
}

// Private member functions
HtmlColor::HSI HtmlColor::get_hsi() const
{
    // See Gonzalez and Woods, "Digital Image Processing (4th edition)",
    // p. 541 - 546 for more information about the RGB to HSI algorithm
    // used below.

    HSI hsi;
    constexpr float eps {0.00001f};           // prevents division by zero
    float r = m_ValRgb.R / 255.0f;
    float g = m_ValRgb.G / 255.0f;
    float b = m_ValRgb.B / 255.0f;

    // Note: theta_deg = 90.0 when r, g, b are equal
    float theta_num = 0.5f * ((r - g) + (r - b));
    float theta_den = std::sqrt((r - g) * (r - g) + (r - b) * (g - b));
    float theta_rad = std::acos(theta_num / (theta_den + eps));
    float theta_deg = MTH::rad_to_deg(theta_rad);
    hsi.H = (b > g) ? 360.0f - theta_deg : theta_deg;

    // Note: saturation is 0 when r, g, b are equal
    float min_rgb = std::min(r, std::min(g, b));
    hsi.S = 1.0f - (3.0f / (r + g + b + eps)) * min_rgb;

    hsi.I = (r + g + b) / 3.0f;
    return hsi;
}

```

```

std::string HtmlColor::to_str(bool use_hex) const
{
    std::string s {};
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "[{:20s} ", m_Name);

    if (use_hex)
    {
        uint32_t c = m_ValRgb.get_uint();
        std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "0x{:06X}]", c);
    }
    else
    {
        unsigned int r = m_ValRgb.R;
        unsigned int g = m_ValRgb.G;
        unsigned int b = m_ValRgb.B;
        std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "({:3d},{:3d},{:3d})",
            r, g, b);
    }

    return s;
}

```

The source code for class `HtmlColor` is admittedly lengthy but reasonably straightforward. For function `Ch08_01_ex4()`, you only need to understand a few features of `HtmlColor`. First, note that `HtmlColor` defines two member structures named `RGB` and `HSI`. These structures are provided to simplify color value representations using different color spaces (`HSI` is used in later chapters). Class `HtmlColor` also defines two attributes: `std::string m_Name` and `RGB m_ValRgb`. These are declared near the end of file `HtmlColor.h`, which is shown in Listing 8-1-4-1.

Following the structure declarations are the statements for `HtmlColor`'s custom hash functions. These are shown using bold text. Value `size_t hash_func_bucket_count` specifies the number of buckets² (i.e., hash table indices) generated by hash function

²As mentioned earlier, the actual number of hash table buckets allocated is determined by the unordered associative container.

`HtmlColor::hash_func()`. Function `HtmlColor::hash_func()` calculates `color.m_ValRgb.get_uint() % hash_func_bucket_count`. `HtmlColor::RGB::get_uint()` converts the distinct R, G, and B color components of an RGB value to a value of type `uint32_t`. To summarize, `HtmlColor::hash_func()` returns a value between `[0, hash_func_bucket_count)`, and this value specifies the hash table bucket that an unordered associative container will use to store an `HtmlColor` object whose hash value equals `HtmlColor::hash_func()` as you'll soon see. Hash function `Html::Color::hash_func_searcher()` is used in Chapter 11.

One other item to note in Listing 8-1-4-1 is the definition of `std::vector<HtmlColor> HtmlColor::s_HtmlColors`, which contains `HtmlColor` objects of all 141 possible `HtmlColor` values. Note that the listing only shows the first and last three colors to save some space.

Listing 8-1-4-2 shows the source code for function `Ch08_01_ex4()`. This function begins with the definition of a `uno_set_hc_t` container named `colors`. Alias `uno_set_hc_t` is a `std::unordered_set` of `HtmlColors`, and its complete definition is shown in Listing 8-1-1-1. Note that the constructor for `colors` specifies two parameters. The first parameter, `HtmlColor::hash_func_bucket_count`, denotes the minimum number of hash table buckets. The second parameter designates a custom hash function for container `colors` to use when adding keys (i.e., objects of type `HtmlColor`) to the hash table.

Listing 8-1-4-2. Example `Ch08_01 - Ch08_01_ex4()`

```
void Ch08_01_ex4()
{
    // instantiate uno_set_hc_t object - custom hash function
    uno_set_hc_t colors(HtmlColor::hash_func_bucket_count,
        HtmlColor::hash_func);

    // change max_load_factor to prevent a rehash
    colors.max_load_factor(100.0f);

    // add HTML colors
    size_t num_colors = HtmlColor::num_colors();
    for (size_t i = 0; i < num_colors; ++i)
        colors.emplace(HtmlColor::get(i));

    print_buckets("--- Bucket values for 'colors' ---", colors);
}
```

Following the definition of `colors` is the statement `colors.max_load_factor(100.0f)`, which sets the maximum load factor for `colors`. A deliberately high value is used here to preclude a rehash of container `colors`. Next is a simple for loop that inserts `HtmlColor` objects into `colors`. Function `HtmlColor::get(i)` returns the *i*-th `HtmlColor` object from vector `HtmlColor::s_HtmlColors`.

The final statement of `Ch08_01_ex4()` prints the buckets of `colors`. Note in the results section that only buckets `[0, hash_func_bucket_count)` contain elements. Also, note the relatively high load factor, which is a consequence of the call to `max_load_factor()`. The number of buckets in `colors` was intentionally limited for exposition purposes. The earlier recommendation of using a predefined hash function along with a suitable class attribute would most certainly apply if the classes and algorithms of example `Ch08_01_ex4()` were to be adapted for a production environment. Here are the complete results for example `Ch08_01`:

```
----- Results for example Ch08_01 -----
----- Ch08_01_ex1() -----
set1 (initial values):
size: 6  bucket_count: 8  load_factor: 0.7500
bucket  3: 'Red Sea' 'Black Sea'
bucket  5: 'Bering Sea' 'Gulf of Alaska'
bucket  7: 'Gulf of Thailand' 'Caribbean Sea'

set1 (after insert_range):
size: 18  bucket_count: 64  load_factor: 0.2812
bucket  2: 'Greenland Sea' 'Yellow Sea'
bucket  3: 'Mediterranean Sea'
bucket  8: 'Amundsen Gulf'
bucket 15: 'Gulf of Thailand'
bucket 17: 'Scotia Sea'
bucket 19: 'Red Sea'
bucket 27: 'North Sea'
bucket 31: 'Adriatic Sea'
bucket 33: 'Labrador Sea'
bucket 37: 'Gulf of Alaska' 'Bering Sea'
```

CHAPTER 8 UNORDERED ASSOCIATIVE CONTAINERS

bucket 39: 'Gulf of Mexico' 'Caribbean Sea'
bucket 49: 'Gulf of Biscay'
bucket 51: 'Ross Sea'
bucket 59: 'Black Sea' 'Baltic Sea'

----- Ch08_01_ex2() -----

set2 (initial values):
size: 8 bucket_count: 8 load_factor: 1.0000

bucket 1: 'Gulf of Biscay'
bucket 2: 'Yellow Sea'
bucket 3: 'North Sea' 'Red Sea'
bucket 4: 'Beaufort Sea' 'Arabian Sea'
bucket 5: 'Caspian Sea'
bucket 7: 'Baffin Bay'

set1 (after merge):
size: 4 bucket_count: 64 load_factor: 0.0625

bucket 2: 'Yellow Sea'
bucket 19: 'Red Sea'
bucket 27: 'North Sea'
bucket 49: 'Gulf of Biscay'

set2 (after merge):
size: 22 bucket_count: 64 load_factor: 0.3438

bucket 2: 'Greenland Sea' 'Yellow Sea'
bucket 3: 'Mediterranean Sea'
bucket 8: 'Amundsen Gulf'
bucket 13: 'Caspian Sea'
bucket 15: 'Gulf of Thailand'
bucket 17: 'Scotia Sea'
bucket 19: 'Red Sea'
bucket 27: 'North Sea'
bucket 28: 'Arabian Sea'
bucket 31: 'Adriatic Sea'
bucket 33: 'Labrador Sea'

```

bucket 37: 'Gulf of Alaska' 'Bering Sea'
bucket 39: 'Gulf of Mexico' 'Caribbean Sea'
bucket 47: 'Baffin Bay'
bucket 49: 'Gulf of Biscay'
bucket 51: 'Ross Sea'
bucket 52: 'Beaufort Sea'
bucket 59: 'Black Sea' 'Baltic Sea'

set2.contains("North Sea"): true
set2.contains("Java Sea"): false

extract_sea: Black Sea - found
extract_sea: Green Sea - not found
extract_sea: Red Sea - found

set2 (after extracts):
size: 22  bucket_count: 64  load_factor: 0.3438

bucket  2: 'Greenland Sea' 'Yellow Sea'
bucket  3: 'Mediterranean Sea'
bucket  8: 'Amundsen Gulf'
bucket 13: 'Caspian Sea'
bucket 15: 'Gulf of Thailand'
bucket 17: 'Scotia Sea'
bucket 19: 'RED SEA'
bucket 27: 'North Sea'
bucket 28: 'Arabian Sea'
bucket 31: 'Adriatic Sea'
bucket 33: 'Labrador Sea'
bucket 37: 'Gulf of Alaska' 'Bering Sea'
bucket 39: 'Gulf of Mexico' 'Caribbean Sea'
bucket 47: 'Baffin Bay'
bucket 49: 'Gulf of Biscay'
bucket 51: 'Ross Sea'
bucket 52: 'Beaufort Sea'
bucket 59: 'BLACK SEA' 'Baltic Sea'

```

CHAPTER 8 UNORDERED ASSOCIATIVE CONTAINERS

----- Ch08_01_ex3() -----

set1 (initial values):

size: 20 bucket_count: 64 load_factor: 0.3125

- bucket 2: 'Mead'
- bucket 4: 'Seneca' 'Pontchartrain'
- bucket 5: 'Huron'
- bucket 12: 'Sakakawea'
- bucket 20: 'Flathead'
- bucket 30: 'Superior'
- bucket 36: 'Champlain' 'Iliamna'
- bucket 38: 'Yellowstone' 'Clark'
- bucket 39: 'Pyramid'
- bucket 43: 'Cayuga'
- bucket 46: 'Tahoe'
- bucket 51: 'Bear'
- bucket 54: 'Crater'
- bucket 55: 'Ontario'
- bucket 56: 'Erie'
- bucket 59: 'Michigan'
- bucket 61: 'Becharof'

set1 (after removals):

size: 17 bucket_count: 64 load_factor: 0.2656

- bucket 2: 'Mead'
- bucket 4: 'Pontchartrain'
- bucket 5: 'Huron'
- bucket 20: 'Flathead'
- bucket 36: 'Champlain' 'Iliamna'
- bucket 38: 'Yellowstone' 'Clark'
- bucket 39: 'Pyramid'
- bucket 43: 'Cayuga'
- bucket 46: 'Tahoe'
- bucket 51: 'Bear'
- bucket 54: 'Crater'


```

bucket 55: 'Ontario'
bucket 56: 'Erie'
bucket 59: 'Michigan'
bucket 61: 'Becharof'

```

```
----- Ch08_01_ex4() -----
```

```
--- Bucket values for 'colors' ---
```

```
size: 141 bucket_count: 64 load_factor: 2.2031
```

```

bucket 0: MintCream MediumTurquoise Ivory DarkGreen Crimson Black
bucket 1: DeepSkyBlue
bucket 2: Chartreuse BlueViolet
bucket 3: PaleVioletRed LightSlateGray
bucket 4: MediumSpringGreen LightBlue Gray DarkRed
bucket 5: MediumBlue GreenYellow Blue
bucket 6: Turquoise Silver LightGreen
bucket 7: SpringGreen
bucket 8: OldLace Maroon
bucket 9: DarkKhaki
bucket 10: Yellow PowderBlue LightGoldenrodYellow Lavender Khaki Honeydew
          Gainsboro DarkSalmon Beige
bucket 11: SlateBlue
bucket 12: MidnightBlue LightSalmon DarkOrchid
bucket 14: SandyBrown AquaMarine
bucket 15: White LightPink LavenderBlush DimGray
bucket 16: PaleTurquoise
bucket 17: MediumOrchid DarkGray
bucket 18: Green
bucket 19: RosyBrown DarkSeaGreen
bucket 20: Orange Linen Goldenrod Gold FloralWhite DarkOrange Chocolate
bucket 21: GhostWhite
bucket 22: MediumAquamarine Coral
bucket 23: PeachPuff MistyRose MediumVioletRed LightGray DarkCyan
bucket 24: YellowGreen IndianRed
bucket 25: Azure AntiqueWhite
bucket 26: Olive LawnGreen

```

bucket 27: SeaGreen PapayaWhip
bucket 28: Navy CadetBlue
bucket 29: Moccasin
bucket 30: Tan SteelBlue Snow Red PaleGreen PaleGoldenrod LimeGreen
Lime Indigo
bucket 31: Wheat SkyBlue RebeccaPurple CornFlowerBlue Burlywood
bucket 32: Salmon
bucket 33: MediumPurple AliceBlue
bucket 34: Orchid LightYellow LightSteelBlue Brown
bucket 35: WhiteSmoke Pink Navajowhite Magenta LemonChiffon Fuchsia
Cyan Aqua
bucket 36: Violet Purple LightCoral
bucket 37: SaddleBrown Plum
bucket 38: Thistle Seashell Cornsilk
bucket 39: OliveDrab DarkViolet DarkGoldenrod DarkBlue
bucket 40: MediumSlateBlue LightSeaGreen HotPink
bucket 41: Peru
bucket 42: ForestGreen
bucket 43: DarkMagenta
bucket 44: SlateGray OrangeRed Bisque
bucket 45: Tomato RoyalBlue DarkTurquoise DarkSlateGray BlanchedAlmond
bucket 46: Teal LightSkyBlue Firebrick
bucket 47: Sienna MediumSeaGreen DeepPink DarkSlateBlue
bucket 49: LightCyan DodgerBlue DarkOliveGreen

Using `std::unordered_multiset`

A `std::unordered_multiset` closely resembles a `std::unordered_set`. The primary difference is that a `std::unordered_multiset` can hold multiple instances of the same key. A `std::unordered_multiset` supports all of the public member functions that you learned in the previous section for `std::unordered_set`. It also adds a few extra functions that expedite operations with non-unique keys.

Source code example Ch08_02 spotlights a few elementary usages of class `std::unordered_multiset`. Listing 8-2-1-1 opens with the header file `Ch08_02.h`. In this file, note the definition of alias `uno_mset_t = std::unordered_multiset<HtmlColor, size_t(*)(&const HtmlColor&>`. This alias represents a `std::unordered_multiset` container that holds objects of type `HtmlColor` (see Listing 8-1-4-1). It also specifies custom hash functions just like you saw in example `Ch08_01_ex4()` (see Listing 8-1-4-2). The next file in Listing 8-2-1-1, `Ch08_02_misc.cpp`, contains the definition of function `print_buckets()`. This function prints the buckets of a `uno_mset_t` container and closely parallels the `print_buckets()` functions that you studied in the previous section (see Listing 8-1-1-1).

Listing 8-2-1-1. Example Ch08_02 – `Ch08_02.h` and `Ch08_02_misc.cpp`

```
//-----
// Ch08_02.h
//-----

#ifndef CH08_02_H_
#define CH08_02_H_
#include <unordered_set>
#include "Common.h"
#include "HtmlColor.h"

// type alias for example Ch08_02
using uno_mset_t = std::unordered_multiset<HtmlColor,
    size_t(*)(&const HtmlColor&>;

// Ch08_02_ex.cpp
extern void Ch08_02_ex();

// Ch08_02_misc.cpp
extern void print_buckets(const char* msg, const uno_mset_t& colors);
#endif

//-----
// Ch08_02_misc.cpp
//-----

#include "Ch08_02.h"
#include "HtmlColor.h"
```

```

void print_buckets(const char* msg, const uno_mset_t& colors)
{
    // print stats
    std::println("{:s}", msg);
    std::print("size: {} ", colors.size());
    std::print("bucket_count: {} ", colors.bucket_count());
    std::println("load_factor: {}", colors.load_factor());

    // print buckets
    std::string sep = '\n' + std::string(11, ' ');

    for (size_t i = 0; i < colors.bucket_count(); ++i)
    {
        if (i >= HtmlColor::hash_func_bucket_count)
            break;

        if (colors.bucket_size(i) != 0)
        {
            unsigned int add_nl {};
            std::print("\nbucket {:2d}: ", i);

            // print elements in current bucket
            for (auto iter = colors.begin(i); iter != colors.end(i);
                ++iter)
            {
                std::print("{} ", *iter);

                if ((++add_nl % 2) == 0 && std::next(iter) !=
                    colors.end(i))
                    std::print("{:s}", sep);
            }
        }
    }

    std::println("");
}

```

Listing 8-2-1-2 contains the definition of function `Ch08_02_ex1()`. Execution of this function begins with the instantiation of a `uno_mset_t` named `colors`. Note that the definition of `colors` includes constructor arguments `HtmlColor::hash_func_bucket_count` and `HtmlColor::hash_func`. These arguments supply the initial bucket count along with a custom hash function for `uno_mset_t` container `colors`.

Listing 8-2-1-2. Example `Ch08_02 - Ch08_02_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch08_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <string>
#include <unordered_set>
#include "Ch08_02.h"
#include "HtmlColor.h"
#include "MF.h"

void Ch08_02_ex1()
{
    uno_mset_t colors(HtmlColor::hash_func_bucket_count,
        HtmlColor::hash_func);

    // add elements to colors using emplace
    for (size_t i = 0; i < HtmlColor::num_colors(); i += 10)
        colors.emplace(HtmlColor::get(i));

    // add elements to colors using insert
    for (size_t i = 0; i < HtmlColor::num_colors(); i += 20)
        colors.insert(HtmlColor::get(i));

    // using merge to add duplicates
    uno_mset_t more_colors(HtmlColor::hash_func_bucket_count,
        HtmlColor::hash_func);

    HtmlColor test_color1 {HtmlColor::get(HtmlColor::num_colors() / 2)};
    HtmlColor test_color2 {HtmlColor::get(HtmlColor::num_colors() / 5)};
    std::println("\ntest_color1: {}", test_color1);
    std::println("test_color2: {}", test_color2);
}
```

```

more_colors.insert(test_color1);
more_colors.insert(test_color1);
more_colors.insert(test_color1);
more_colors.insert(test_color2);
more_colors.insert(test_color2);

colors.merge(more_colors);
print_buckets("\ncolors (initial values):", colors);

// using extract and insert
HtmlColor test_color3 {"FalseColor", 0x123456};
std::vector<HtmlColor> test_colors {test_color1, test_color2,
test_color3};

for (auto test_color : test_colors)
{
    auto iter = colors.find(test_color);

    for (; iter != colors.end(); iter = colors.find(test_color))
    {
        // extract node
        auto node_handle = colors.extract(test_color);

        // convert name to upper case
        HtmlColor html_color_ex = node_handle.value();
        std::string name {html_color_ex.Name()};
        MF::to_upper(name);

        // reinsert updated color
        node_handle.value() = HtmlColor {name, html_color_ex.ValRgb()};
        colors.insert(std::move(node_handle));
    }
}

print_buckets("\ncolors (after extract/insert operations):", colors);
}

```

The next three code blocks in `Ch08_02_ex1()` spotlight various methods for adding new keys to `colors`. The first code block utilizes `colors.emplace(HtmlColor::get(i))`. Recall that function `HtmlColor::get(i)` returns the *i*-th color value from vector `HtmlColor::s_HtmlColors` (see Listing 8-1-4-1). The next code block exploits `colors.insert(HtmlColor::get(i))` to add more colors. The `i += 20` that the second for loop uses ensures that multiple keys get inserted into `colors`. The third code block exploits `colors.merge(more_colors)` to explicitly insert duplicate keys into `colors`. Execution of `merge()` moves all keys from `more_colors` into `colors`. Following execution of `merge()`, container `more_colors` contains zero keys.

Like a `std::unordered_set`, a function can't directly modify a key that's maintained in a `std::unordered_multiset`. To change a key, you must remove it, change its value, and reinsert it back into the container. The final code block in `Ch08_02_ex1()` demonstrates this technique. Within the for loop, `colors.find(test_color)` is exploited to determine if at least one instance of `test_color` exists in `colors`. If `test_color` doesn't exist, `find()` returns `colors.end()`; otherwise, `find()` returns an iterator to the first occurrence of `test_color` in `colors`. In the next code block, `node_handle = colors.extract(test_color)` extracts `test_color` from `colors`. This is followed by a code block that converts the name of `html_color_ex`, which is the extracted `HtmlColor`, to uppercase. Following the conversion, the statements `node_handle.value() = HtmlColor {name, html_color_ex.ValRgb()}` and `colors.insert(std::move(node_handle))` reinsert the updated `HtmlColor` back into container `colors`. For the current example, the updated `HtmlColor` will be inserted back into the same bucket since the calculated hash function value is not dependent on the color's name. However, key ordering for this bucket may differ from the ordering that existed prior to the `extract()/insert()` operation. To observe this, review the results section for `Ch08_02_ex1()` and compare the contents of bucket number 12 before and after the `extract()/insert()` operation. Here are the results for example `Ch08_02`:

```
----- Results for example Ch08_02 -----
----- Ch08_02_ex1() -----
test_color1: [LightSalmon           0xFFA07A]
test_color2: [DarkOliveGreen       0x556B2F]

colors (initial values):
size: 28  bucket_count: 64  load_factor: 0.4375
```

CHAPTER 8 UNORDERED ASSOCIATIVE CONTAINERS

```

bucket 2: [BlueViolet          0x8A2BE2]
bucket 4: [Gray                0x808080]
bucket 8: [Maroon              0x800000] [Maroon          0x800000]
bucket 12: [MidnightBlue       0x191970] [LightSalmon     0xFFA07A]
           [LightSalmon        0xFFA07A] [LightSalmon     0xFFA07A]
           [LightSalmon        0xFFA07A] [DarkOrchid      0x9932CC]
bucket 15: [LavenderBlush      0xFFF0F5] [LavenderBlush  0xFFF0F5]
           [DimGray            0x696969] [DimGray         0x696969]
bucket 24: [YellowGreen        0x9ACD32] [YellowGreen     0x9ACD32]
bucket 27: [SeaGreen           0x2E8B57] [SeaGreen        0x2E8B57]
bucket 30: [Tan                0xD2B48C]
bucket 33: [AliceBlue          0xF0F8FF] [AliceBlue       0xF0F8FF]
bucket 35: [Cyan               0x00FFFF] [Cyan            0x00FFFF]
bucket 37: [Plum              0xDDA0DD]
bucket 44: [OrangeRed          0xFF4500] [OrangeRed       0xFF4500]
bucket 49: [DarkOliveGreen     0x556B2F] [DarkOliveGreen  0x556B2F]

```

colors (after extract/insert operations):

size: 28 bucket_count: 64 load_factor: 0.4375

```

bucket 2: [BlueViolet          0x8A2BE2]
bucket 4: [Gray                0x808080]
bucket 8: [Maroon              0x800000] [Maroon          0x800000]
bucket 12: [LIGHTSALMON        0xFFA07A] [LIGHTSALMON     0xFFA07A]
           [LIGHTSALMON        0xFFA07A] [LIGHTSALMON     0xFFA07A]
           [MidnightBlue       0x191970] [DarkOrchid      0x9932CC]
bucket 15: [LavenderBlush      0xFFF0F5] [LavenderBlush  0xFFF0F5]
           [DimGray            0x696969] [DimGray         0x696969]
bucket 24: [YellowGreen        0x9ACD32] [YellowGreen     0x9ACD32]
bucket 27: [SeaGreen           0x2E8B57] [SeaGreen        0x2E8B57]
bucket 30: [Tan                0xD2B48C]
bucket 33: [AliceBlue          0xF0F8FF] [AliceBlue       0xF0F8FF]
bucket 35: [Cyan               0x00FFFF] [Cyan            0x00FFFF]
bucket 37: [Plum              0xDDA0DD]
bucket 44: [OrangeRed          0xFF4500] [OrangeRed       0xFF4500]
bucket 49: [DARKOLIVEGREEN     0x556B2F] [DARKOLIVEGREEN  0x556B2F]

```


Using `std::unordered_map`

The next unordered associative container that you'll scrutinize is `std::unordered_map`. Like the (ordered) associative container `std::map` that you studied in Chapter 7, a `std::unordered_map` holds key-value (or key-data) pairs. Similarities between a `std::unordered_map` and a `std::unordered_set` include the following:

- The elements of a `std::unordered_map<Key, T>` are maintained using a hash function and hash table similar to the conceptual model that's shown in Figure 8-1.
- The hash function is applied to the Key; the value component T does not affect an element's position in the hash table.
- Class `std::unordered_map` supports forward iterators.
- The key of a `std::unordered_map<Key, T>` element cannot be changed. To modify an element's key, the old key-value element must be extracted and a new one inserted. The value component of a `std::unordered_map<Key, T>` element can be modified in place.

The public interface for `std::unordered_map` closely resembles the one that you learned for `std::map`.

Listing 8-3-1-1 shows the source code for file `Ch08_03.h`. The two items of interest in this file are the alias definitions for `uno_map_t` and `uno_map_hf_t`. Note that both aliases define `std::unordered_map` containers that use `std::strings` for the keys and values. The latter alias also specifies a custom hash function that requires an argument of type `std::string`.

Listing 8-3-1-1. Example `Ch08_03` – `Ch08_03.h`

```
//-----
// Ch08_03.h
//-----

#ifndef CH08_03_H_
#define CH08_03_H_
#include <string>
#include <unordered_map>
#include "Common.h"
```

```

// type aliases for example Ch08_03
using uno_map_t = std::unordered_map<std::string, std::string>;
using uno_map_hf_t = std::unordered_map<std::string, std::string,
    size_t(*) (const std::string&)>;

// Ch08_03_ex.cpp
extern void Ch08_03_ex();

// Ch08_03_misc.cpp
uno_map_t get_airports(int id);
void get_airports(uno_map_hf_t& map, int id);
void print_buckets(const char* msg, const uno_map_hf_t& map);

#endif

```

Listing 8-3-1-2 shows the source code for `Ch08_03_misc.cpp`. This file contains two overloads for `get_airports()`, which perform `std::unordered_map` initializations. Note that each key-value pair consists of an airport code and airport name. Also, note that `get_airports()`'s integer argument selects a group of airports. The function `print_buckets()` prints the airport codes of a `uno_map_hf_t` map.

Listing 8-3-1-2. Example Ch08_03 – Ch08_03_misc.cpp

```

//-----
// Ch08_03_misc.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <format>
#include <iterator>
#include <string>
#include <unordered_map>
#include "Ch08_03.h"

uno_map_t get_airports(int id)
{
    uno_map_t map;

    if (id == 1)
    {

```

```

    map.emplace("ABQ", "Albuquerque International");
    map.emplace("BWI", "Baltimore/Washington International");
    map.emplace("BOS", "Logan International");
    map.emplace("CLT", "Charlotte Douglas International");
    map.emplace("DEN", "Denver International");
    map.emplace("DFW", "Dallas Fort Worth International");
    map.emplace("DSM", "Des Moines International");
    map.emplace("DTS", "Detroit Metro Wayne County");
}
else
{
    map.emplace("FAI", "Fairbanks International");
    map.emplace("ITO", "Hilo International");
    map.emplace("LAX", "Los Angeles International");
    map.emplace("LGA", "LaGuardia");
    map.emplace("MCO", "Orlando International");
    map.emplace("ORD", "O'Hare International");
    map.emplace("PHX", "Phoenix Sky Harbor International");
    map.emplace("SEA", "Seattle-Tacoma International");
}

return map;
}

void get_airports(uno_map_hf_t& map, int id)
{
    std::ranges::copy(get_airports(id), std::inserter(map, map.begin()));
}

void print_buckets(const char* msg, const uno_map_hf_t& map)
{
    // print stats
    std::println("{:s}", msg);
    std::print("size: {} ", map.size());
    std::print("bucket_count: {} ", map.bucket_count());
    std::println("load_factor: {} \n", map.load_factor());
}

```

```

// print buckets (airport code only)
unsigned int add_nl {};
size_t bc = map.bucket_count();

for (size_t i = 0; i < bc; ++i)
{
    if (map.bucket_size(i) != 0)
    {
        std::string s {};
        std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "bucket {:2d}: ", i);

        for (auto iter = map.begin(i); iter != map.end(i); ++iter)
            std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:4s}",
                iter->first);

        if ((++add_nl % 2) == 0)
            std::println("{:40s}", s);
        else
            std::print("{:40s}", s);
    }
}

if (add_nl % 2 != 0)
    std::println("");
}

```

Example function `Ch08_03_ex1()`, shown near the top of Listing 8-3-1-3, utilizes `get_airports()` to initialize two `uno_map_t` containers named `map1` and `map2`. Following the initializations, the expression `map2.merge(map1)` moves all elements from `map1` to `map2` provided the element doesn't already exist in `map2`. For the current example, all `map1` elements are moved to `map2`.

Listing 8-3-1-3. Example `Ch08_03 - Ch08_03_ex1()`

```

//-----
// Ch08_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <array>

```

```

#include <cctype>
#include <iostream>
#include <iterator>
#include <string>
#include <unordered_map>
#include <utility>
#include "Ch08_03.h"
#include "MT.h"

void Ch08_03_ex1()
{
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};
    const char* fmt1 = "[{:3s}, ";
    const char* fmt2 = "{:^35s}] ";

    // initialize unordered maps
    uno_map_t map1 = get_airports(1);
    MT::print_unordered_map("\nmap1 (initial values):\n",
        map1, fmt1, fmt2, epl_max);

    uno_map_t map2 = get_airports(2);
    MT::print_unordered_map("\nmap2 (initial values):\n",
        map2, fmt1, fmt2, epl_max);

    // merge maps
    map2.merge(map1);
    MT::print_unordered_map("\nmap1 (after merge):\n",
        map1, fmt1, fmt2, epl_max);
    MT::print_unordered_map("\nmap2 (after merge):\n",
        map2, fmt1, fmt2, epl_max);

    // insert new elements
    map2.insert(std::make_pair("COD", "Yellowstone Regional"));
    map2["MHT"] = "Manchester-Boston Regional";

    MT::print_unordered_map("\nmap2 (after insertions):\n",
        map2, fmt1, fmt2, epl_max);
}

```

```

// find keys in map
std::array<std::string, 4> keys {"LAX", "PIT", "COD", "CHS"};

std::println("\nfind keys in map2");
for (auto key : keys)
{
    std::print("key: {s} - ", key);

    if (auto iter = map2.find(key); iter != map2.end())
        std::println("{s}", iter->second);
    else
        std::println("not found");
}

// erase elements from map
auto pred = [](const auto& elem)
    { auto const& [key, value] = elem; return key[0] == 'D'; };

auto num_erasures = std::erase_if(map2, pred);

std::println("\nnum_erasures = {d}", num_erasures);
MT::print_unordered_map("\nmap2 (after erasures):\n",
    map2, fmt1, fmt2, epl_max);
}

```

The code block that follows `merge()` demonstrates two methods of adding new elements to a `std::unordered_map()`. The statement `map2.insert(std::make_pair("COD", "Yellowstone Regional"))` inserts a new airport key-value pair into `map2`. The expression `map2["MHT"] = "Manchester-Boston Regional"` also inserts a new element into `map2`. Like a `std::map`, class `std::unordered_map` overloads operator[], which facilitates its use for new element insertions or accesses of existing elements as demonstrated in this example.

The next code block in `Ch08_03_ex1()` consists of a range for loop that searches `map2` for airport codes. Note the use of the expression `iter = map2.find(key); if iter != map2.end()` is true, key exists in `map2` and the subsequent `std::println()` statement utilizes `iter->second` to print the airport's name.

The final code block of `Ch08_03_ex1()` commences with the definition of a lambda expression named `pred` that returns `true` if the first letter of the airport code equals `'D'`. The next statement, `num_erasures = std::erase_if(map2, pred)`, exploits global algorithm `std::erase_if()` to erase all key-value pairs from `map2` whose airport code begins with the letter `'D'`. Note that `erase_if()` returns the number of elements that it removed from `map2`.

Listing 8-3-2 shows the code for the next `std::unordered_map` example. Function `Ch08_03_ex2()` opens with the definition of a lambda expression named `hash_func`. This crude function returns a `size_t` value that's derived using the first letter of an airport code.

Listing 8-3-2. Example `Ch08_03 - Ch08_03_ex2()`

```
void Ch08_03_ex2()
{
    // simple hash function
    auto hash_func = [](const std::string& s) -> size_t
    {
        auto c = static_cast<unsigned char>(s[0]);
        return std::isalpha(c) ? std::toupper(c) - 'A' + 1 : c % 32;
    };

    // initialize map1
    constexpr size_t num_buckets {32};
    uno_map_hf_t map1(num_buckets, hash_func);
    get_airports(map1, 1);
    print_buckets("\nmap1 (initial values)", map1);

    // initialize map2
    uno_map_hf_t map2(num_buckets, hash_func);
    get_airports(map2, 2);
    print_buckets("\nmap2 (initial values)", map2);

    // merge maps
    map2.merge(map1);
    print_buckets("\nmap2 (after merge)", map2);
}
```

```

// using relational operators (only operator== is defined)
auto map3 {map2};
std::println("\nmap2 == map3: {:s}", map2 == map3);
std::println("map2 != map3: {:s}", map2 != map3);
}

```

The next code block `Ch08_03_ex2()` instantiates a `uno_map_hf_t` container named `map1`. In the statement `uno_map_hf_t map1(num_buckets, hash_func)`, constructor argument `num_buckets` specifies the hash table's minimum bucket count, while `hash_func` supplants the container's default hash function. The instantiation of `map2` follows `map1` and utilizes the same programming construct. If you scan ahead to the results section, note that each element's bucket number corresponds to the first letter of its airport code as expected. This is also true following execution of `map2.merge(map1)`. The final code block in `Ch08_03_ex2()` demonstrates the use of `operator==`. This is the only relational operator defined for a `std::unordered_map` and all other unordered associative containers (starting with C++20, `operator!=` is synthesized from `operator==`).

Example function `Ch08_03_ex3()`, shown in Listing 8-3-3, spotlights the use of member function `std::unordered_map::insert_range()` (C++23). The expression `map1.insert_range(map2)` inserts copies of elements from `map2` into `map1`. When utilizing `insert_range()` or any other insertion function, it's important to keep in mind that an element insertion may trigger a rehash operation, which would invalidate all existing iterators.

Listing 8-3-3. Example `Ch08_03 - Ch08_03_ex3()`

```

void Ch08_03_ex3()
{
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};
    const char* fmt1 = "[{:3s}, ";
    const char* fmt2 = "{:^35s}] ";

    // initialize unordered maps
    uno_map_t map1 = get_airports(1);
    uno_map_t map2 = get_airports(2);
}

```



```

    // using insert_range, copies elements from map2 to map1
#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges
    map1.insert_range(map2);
#else
    map1.insert(map2.begin(), map2.end());
#endif
    MT::print_unordered_map("\nmap1 (after insert_range):\n",
        map1, fmt1, fmt2, epl_max);

    // modify value component of each map1 key-value pair
    const std::string str1 = "International";
    const std::string str2 = "Intl.";

    for (auto iter = map1.begin(); iter != map1.end(); ++iter)
    {
        // iter->first points to key (airport code)
        // iter->second points to value (airport name)
        auto pos = iter->second.find(str1);

        if (pos != std::string::npos)
        {
            // replace str1 with str2 using replace_with_ranges (C++23)
            auto iter_b = iter->second.begin() + pos;
            auto iter_e = iter_b + str1.size();

#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges
            iter->second.replace_with_range(iter_b, iter_e, str2);
#else
            iter->second.replace(iter_b, iter_e, str2.begin(), str2.end());
#endif
        }
    }

    MT::print_unordered_map("\nmap1 (after replace_with_ranges):\n",
        map1, fmt1, fmt2, epl_max);
}

```

The final code block in `Ch08_03_ex3()` demonstrates traversing a container of type `uno_map_t` using iterators. A `uno_map_t` iterator essentially points to an object of type `std::pair<std::string, std::string>`. The code within the for loop replaces each occurrence of substring `str1` in an airport name (`iter->second`) with `str2`. Recall that the data value of a `std::unordered_map` can be modified in place. Also, note the use of `std::string::replace_with_range()` (C++23). In the current example, execution of this function replaces characters between `[iter_b, iter_e)` with characters from `[str2.begin(), str2.end())`. Here are the results for example `Ch08_03`:

```

----- Results for example Ch08_03 -----
----- Ch08_03_ex1() -----
map1 (initial values):
[ABQ,    Albuquerque International    ] [BOS,    Logan International    ]
[BWI, Baltimore/Washington International ] [CLT, Charlotte Douglas International ]
[DEN,    Denver International        ] [DFW, Dallas Fort Worth International ]
[DSM,    Des Moines International     ] [DTS,    Detroit Metro Wayne County  ]

map2 (initial values):
[FAI,    Fairbanks International     ] [ITO,    Hilo International        ]
[LAX,    Los Angeles International    ] [LGA,    LaGuardia                ]
[MCO,    Orlando International        ] [ORD,    O'Hare International        ]
[PHX, Phoenix Sky Harbor International ] [SEA,    Seattle-Tacoma International ]

map1 (after merge):
<empty>

map2 (after merge):
[ABQ,    Albuquerque International    ] [BOS,    Logan International    ]
[BWI, Baltimore/Washington International ] [CLT, Charlotte Douglas International ]
[DEN,    Denver International        ] [DFW, Dallas Fort Worth International ]
[DSM,    Des Moines International     ] [DTS,    Detroit Metro Wayne County  ]
[FAI,    Fairbanks International     ] [ITO,    Hilo International        ]
[LAX,    Los Angeles International    ] [LGA,    LaGuardia                ]
[MCO,    Orlando International        ] [ORD,    O'Hare International        ]
[PHX, Phoenix Sky Harbor International ] [SEA,    Seattle-Tacoma International ]

```

map2 (after insertions):

```
[ABQ,    Albuquerque International ] [BOS,    Logan International ]
[BWI, Baltimore/Washington International ] [CLT, Charlotte Douglas International ]
[COD,    Yellowstone Regional ] [DEN,    Denver International ]
[DFW, Dallas Fort Worth International ] [DSM,    Des Moines International ]
[DTS,    Detroit Metro Wayne County ] [FAI,    Fairbanks International ]
[ITO,    Hilo International ] [LAX,    Los Angeles International ]
[LGA,    LaGuardia ] [MCO,    Orlando International ]
[MHT,    Manchester-Boston Regional ] [ORD,    O'Hare International ]
[PHX, Phoenix Sky Harbor International ] [SEA,    Seattle-Tacoma International ]
```

find keys in map2

key: LAX - Los Angeles International

key: PIT - not found

key: COD - Yellowstone Regional

key: CHS - not found

num_erasures = 4

map2 (after erasures):

```
[ABQ,    Albuquerque International ] [BOS,    Logan International ]
[BWI, Baltimore/Washington International ] [CLT, Charlotte Douglas International ]
[COD,    Yellowstone Regional ] [FAI,    Fairbanks International ]
[ITO,    Hilo International ] [LAX,    Los Angeles International ]
[LGA,    LaGuardia ] [MCO,    Orlando International ]
[MHT,    Manchester-Boston Regional ] [ORD,    O'Hare International ]
[PHX, Phoenix Sky Harbor International ] [SEA,    Seattle-Tacoma International ]
```

----- Ch08_03_ex2() -----

map1 (initial values)

size: 8 bucket_count: 32 load_factor: 0.25

bucket 1: ABQ

bucket 2: BOS BWI

bucket 3: CLT

bucket 4: DFW DEN DTS DSM

map2 (initial values)

size: 8 bucket_count: 32 load_factor: 0.25

bucket 6: FAI

bucket 9: ITO

bucket 12: LGA LAX

bucket 13: MCO

CHAPTER 8 UNORDERED ASSOCIATIVE CONTAINERS

```
bucket 15: ORD          bucket 16: PHX
bucket 19: SEA
```

```
map2 (after merge)
size: 16 bucket_count: 32 load_factor: 0.5
```

```
bucket 1: ABQ          bucket 2: BWI BOS
bucket 3: CLT          bucket 4: DSM DTS DEN DFW
bucket 6: FAI          bucket 9: ITO
bucket 12: LGA LAX     bucket 13: MCO
bucket 15: ORD         bucket 16: PHX
bucket 19: SEA
```

```
map2 == map3: true
map2 != map3: false
```

```
----- Ch08_03_ex3() -----
```

```
map1 (after insert_range):
```

[ABQ,	Albuquerque International	]	[BOS,	Logan International]
[BWI,	Baltimore/Washington International	]	[CLT,	Charlotte Douglas International]
[DEN,	Denver International	]	[DFW,	Dallas Fort Worth International]
[DSM,	Des Moines International	]	[DTS,	Detroit Metro Wayne County]
[FAI,	Fairbanks International	]	[ITO,	Hilo International]
[LAX,	Los Angeles International	]	[LGA,	LaGuardia]
[MCO,	Orlando International	]	[ORD,	O'Hare International]
[PHX,	Phoenix Sky Harbor International	]	[SEA,	Seattle-Tacoma International]

```
map1 (after replace_with_ranges):
```

[ABQ,	Albuquerque Intl.	]	[BOS,	Logan Intl.]
[BWI,	Baltimore/Washington Intl.	]	[CLT,	Charlotte Douglas Intl.]
[DEN,	Denver Intl.	]	[DFW,	Dallas Fort Worth Intl.]
[DSM,	Des Moines Intl.	]	[DTS,	Detroit Metro Wayne County]
[FAI,	Fairbanks Intl.	]	[ITO,	Hilo Intl.]
[LAX,	Los Angeles Intl.	]	[LGA,	LaGuardia]
[MCO,	Orlando Intl.	]	[ORD,	O'Hare Intl.]
[PHX,	Phoenix Sky Harbor Intl.	]	[SEA,	Seattle-Tacoma Intl.]

Using `std::unordered_multimap`

A `std::unordered_multimap` container replicates a `std::unordered_map` but supports multiple elements with the same key. The next example, named `Ch08_04`, illustrates the basics of a `std::unordered_multimap`. Listing 8-4-1-1 shows the source code for header file `Ch08_04.h`. This file starts with the definition of a simple structure named `Airport`, which contains a few airport-related data members. Next is the definition of alias `uno_mmap_t = std::unordered_multimap<std::string_view, Airport>`. Note that this container class type utilizes a key of type `std::string_view`. The actual key value will be a two-letter country code.

Listing 8-4-1-1. Example `Ch08_04` – `Ch08_04.h`

```
//-----
// Ch08_04.h
//-----

#ifndef CH08_04_H_
#define CH08_04_H_
#include <string>
#include <string_view>
#include <unordered_map>
#include "Common.h"

struct Airport
{
    std::string_view IataCode {};
    double Latitude {};
    double Longitude {};
    std::string City {};
};

// unordered_multimap<country code, Airport>
using uno_mmap_t = std::unordered_multimap<std::string_view, Airport>;

// Ch08_04_ex.cpp
extern void Ch08_04_ex();
```

```
// Ch08_04_misc.cpp
extern uno_mmap_t get_airports();
extern void print_buckets(const char* msg, const uno_mmap_t& airports);

#endif
```

Listing 8-4-1-2 shows the source code for functions `get_airport()` and `print_buckets()`. The former utilizes a series of `emplace()` calls to construct a `uno_mmap_t` of airports, while the latter prints its buckets. Please note that the geocoordinates used in `get_airports()` are included for exposition purposes only. They are not suitable for actual navigation.

Listing 8-4-1-2. Example Ch08_04 – Ch08_04_misc.cpp

```
//-----
// Ch08_04_misc.cpp
//-----

#include "Ch08_04.h"

uno_mmap_t get_airports()
{
    // create unordered multimap using country code as key
    uno_mmap_t airports {};

    airports.emplace("AU", Airport {"MEL", -37.6733, 144.8433,
    "Melbourne"});
    airports.emplace("AU", Airport {"SYD", -33.9461, 151.1772, "Sydney"});
    airports.emplace("CA", Airport {"YYC", 51.1225, -114.0133, "Calgary"});
    airports.emplace("CA", Airport {"YVR", 49.1947, -123.1839,
    "Vancouver"});
    airports.emplace("CA", Airport {"YYZ", 53.3100, -113.5794, "Toronto"});
    airports.emplace("CN", Airport {"PEK", 40.0725, 116.5975, "Beijing"});
    airports.emplace("CN", Airport {"PVG", 31.1433, 121.8053, "Shanghai"});
    airports.emplace("CH", Airport {"ZRH", 47.4314, 8.5492, "Zurich"});
    airports.emplace("CL", Airport {"SCL", -33.3928, -70.7911,
    "Santiago"});
    airports.emplace("DE", Airport {"BER", 52.3667, 13.5033, "Berlin"});
    airports.emplace("DE", Airport {"FRA", 50.0333, 8.5706, "Frankfurt"});
```

```

airports.emplace("DE", Airport {"MUN", 48.3539, 11.7861, "Munich"});
airports.emplace("FR", Airport {"CDG", 49.0097, 2.5478, "Paris"});
airports.emplace("FR", Airport {"TLS", 43.6350, 1.3678, "Toulouse"});
airports.emplace("GB", Airport {"GLA", 55.8719, -4.4331, "Glasgow"});
airports.emplace("GB", Airport {"LHR", 51.4775, -0.4614, "London"});
airports.emplace("JP", Airport {"KIX", 34.4306, 135.2303, "Osaka"});
airports.emplace("JP", Airport {"NRT", 35.7653, 140.3856, "Tokyo"});
airports.emplace("NO", Airport {"BGO", 60.2936, 5.2181, "Bergen"});
airports.emplace("NO", Airport {"OSL", 60.2028, 11.0839, "Oslo"});
airports.emplace("SE", Airport {"ARN", 59.5019, 17.9186, "Stockholm"});
airports.emplace("US", Airport {"JFK", 40.6397, -74.0789, "New York"});
airports.emplace("US", Airport {"LAX", 33.9425, -118.4081, "Los
Angeles"});
airports.emplace("US", Airport {"ORD", 41.9786, -87.9047, "Chicago"});

return airports;
}

void print_buckets(const char* msg, const uno_mmap_t& airports)
{
    // print stats
    std::println("{:s}", msg);
    std::print("size: {} ", airports.size());
    std::print("bucket_count: {} ", airports.bucket_count());
    std::println("load_factor: {}\n", airports.load_factor());

    // print buckets
    for (size_t i {0}; i < airports.bucket_count(); ++i)
    {
        if (airports.bucket_size(i) != 0)
        {
            std::println("bucket {:2d}:", i);

            for (auto iter = airports.begin(i); iter != airports.
end(i); ++iter)
            {
                const Airport& ap = iter->second;

```

```

        std::println("  {:2s} | {:3s} [{:9.4f}, {:9.4f}] {:40s}",
                    iter->first, ap.IataCode, ap.Latitude, ap.Longitude,
                    ap.City);
    }
}
std::println("");
}

```

Example function `Ch08_04_ex1()`, shown in Listing 8-4-1-3, begins its execution by calling the previously described `get_airports()` and `print_buckets()`. The declaration of array `keys_codes` is next. This array contains a series of two-letter country codes. Within the `for` loop, execution of `range = airports.equal_range(key_code)` returns a pair of iterators. If `range.first == range.second` is true; no country code match was found. Otherwise, the `Airport` objects between iterators `[range.first, range.second)` match the current `key_code`. Function `Ch08_04_ex1()` then executes a second `for` loop that converts the city name to uppercase. Like a `std::unordered_set`, the value component of a `std::unordered_map` element can be modified in place.

Listing 8-4-1-3. Example `Ch08_04 - Ch08_04_ex1()`

```

//-----
// Ch08_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <array>
#include <string_view>
#include <unordered_map>
#include "Ch08_04.h"
#include "MF.h"

void Ch08_04_ex1()
{
    // create unordered_multimap
    uno_mmap_t airports = get_airports();
    print_buckets("\nairports (initial values):", airports);
}

```



```

// search airports for matching country codes
std::array<std::string_view, 5> key_codes {"CH", "FR", "NL",
"NO", "US"};

for (const auto& key_code : key_codes)
{
    auto range = airports.equal_range(key_code);
    std::print("\nkey_code: {s} - match ", key_code);

    if (range.first == range.second)
        std::println("not found");
    else
    {
        std::println("found");

        // change city name to upper case
        for (auto iter = range.first; iter != range.second; ++iter)
        {
            Airport& airport = iter->second;
            airport.City = MF::to_upper(airport.City);

            std::println(" updating city name: {s}", airport.City);
        }
    }
}

print_buckets("\nairports (after city name updates):", airports);
}

```

The results for example Ch08_04 follow this paragraph. Note in the output that bucket number 58 contains airports for two different countries and that the iterator pair returned by `equal_range()` spans only the elements that matched `key_code "NO"`. Like a `std::unordered_set`, inserting an element into an unordered associate container will always place elements with the same key value in the same bucket, but the ordering within that bucket is not guaranteed. To observe this effect, transpose the `emplace()` calls for airports "BGO" and "OSL" in `get_airports()` and execute the code.

```
----- Results for example Ch08_04 -----  
  
----- Ch08_04_ex1() -----  
  
airports (initial values):  
size: 24 bucket_count: 64 load_factor: 0.375  
  
bucket 9:  
  CA | YYC [ 51.1225, -114.0133] Calgary  
  CA | YVR [ 49.1947, -123.1839] Vancouver  
  CA | YYZ [ 53.3100, -113.5794] Toronto  
bucket 12:  
  GB | GLA [ 55.8719, -4.4331] Glasgow  
  GB | LHR [ 51.4775, -0.4614] London  
bucket 17:  
  FR | CDG [ 49.0097, 2.5478] Paris  
  FR | TLS [ 43.6350, 1.3678] Toulouse  
bucket 20:  
  CN | PEK [ 40.0725, 116.5975] Beijing  
  CN | PVG [ 31.1433, 121.8053] Shanghai  
bucket 23:  
  JP | KIX [ 34.4306, 135.2303] Osaka  
  JP | NRT [ 35.7653, 140.3856] Tokyo  
bucket 25:  
  US | JFK [ 40.6397, -74.0789] New York  
  US | LAX [ 33.9425, -118.4081] Los Angeles  
  US | ORD [ 41.9786, -87.9047] Chicago  
bucket 27:  
  AU | MEL [ -37.6733, 144.8433] Melbourne  
  AU | SYD [ -33.9461, 151.1772] Sydney  
bucket 34:  
  DE | BER [ 52.3667, 13.5033] Berlin  
  DE | FRA [ 50.0333, 8.5706] Frankfurt  
  DE | MUN [ 48.3539, 11.7861] Munich  
bucket 37:  
  SE | ARN [ 59.5019, 17.9186] Stockholm
```

bucket 46:

CH | ZRH [47.4314, 8.5492] Zurich

bucket 58:

NO | BGO [60.2936, 5.2181] Bergen

NO | OSL [60.2028, 11.0839] Oslo

CL | SCL [-33.3928, -70.7911] Santiago

key_code: CH - match found

updating city name: ZURICH

key_code: FR - match found

updating city name: PARIS

updating city name: TOULOUSE

key_code: NL - match not found

key_code: NO - match found

updating city name: BERGEN

updating city name: OSLO

key_code: US - match found

updating city name: NEW YORK

updating city name: LOS ANGELES

updating city name: CHICAGO

airports (after city name updates):

size: 24 bucket_count: 64 load_factor: 0.375

bucket 9:

CA | YYC [51.1225, -114.0133] Calgary

CA | YVR [49.1947, -123.1839] Vancouver

CA | YYZ [53.3100, -113.5794] Toronto

bucket 12:

GB | GLA [55.8719, -4.4331] Glasgow

GB | LHR [51.4775, -0.4614] London

bucket 17:

FR | CDG [49.0097, 2.5478] PARIS

FR | TLS [43.6350, 1.3678] TOULOUSE

bucket 20:

CHAPTER 8 UNORDERED ASSOCIATIVE CONTAINERS

```
CN | PEK [ 40.0725, 116.5975] Beijing
CN | PVG [ 31.1433, 121.8053] Shanghai
bucket 23:
JP | KIX [ 34.4306, 135.2303] Osaka
JP | NRT [ 35.7653, 140.3856] Tokyo
bucket 25:
US | JFK [ 40.6397, -74.0789] NEW YORK
US | LAX [ 33.9425, -118.4081] LOS ANGELES
US | ORD [ 41.9786, -87.9047] CHICAGO
bucket 27:
AU | MEL [ -37.6733, 144.8433] Melbourne
AU | SYD [ -33.9461, 151.1772] Sydney
bucket 34:
DE | BER [ 52.3667, 13.5033] Berlin
DE | FRA [ 50.0333, 8.5706] Frankfurt
DE | MUN [ 48.3539, 11.7861] Munich
bucket 37:
SE | ARN [ 59.5019, 17.9186] Stockholm
bucket 46:
CH | ZRH [ 47.4314, 8.5492] ZURICH
bucket 58:
NO | BGO [ 60.2936, 5.2181] BERGEN
NO | OSL [ 60.2028, 11.0839] OSLO
CL | SCL [ -33.3928, -70.7911] Santiago
```

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- The elements of an unordered associative container are organized using hash functions and hash tables.
- A hash function maps a key value to a fixed-size index. This index is then used to select a hash table bucket that maintains the element.

- A hash function will always map identical key values to the same bucket. The ordering of elements with a specific bucket is not guaranteed.
- Load factor is the average number of elements per hash table bucket. Maximum load factor is the maximum allowable load factor. A rehash operation, which adds more buckets to the hash table and reorders the elements, occurs if the maximum load factor is exceeded.
- Unordered associative container classes `std::unordered_set` and `std::unordered_multiset` maintain collections of keys using hash functions and hash tables. The former supports unique keys, while the latter maintains multiple keys with the same value.
- Unordered associative container classes `std::unordered_map` and `std::unordered_multimap` maintain collections of key-value pairs. The hash function is applied to the key. The value component of a key-value pair can be modified in place.
- The STL defines hash functions for fundamental types. An unordered associative container can also be configured to exploit a custom hash function when such use can be justified.

CHAPTER 9

Container Adaptors

This chapter discusses STL container adaptors, including

- Container adaptor primer
- How to use `std::stack`
- How to use `std::queue`
- How to use `std::priority_queue`
- Flat container adaptors

Container Adaptor Primer

A container adaptor is a template class that repurposes an STL sequence container class to provide specific functionality. The STL includes two varieties of container adaptors. The first variety encompasses classes `std::stack`, `std::queue`, and `std::priority_queue`. These tried-and-true container adaptors define public interfaces that are deliberately simple and intuitive. The second container adaptor variety includes `std::flat_set`, `std::flat_multiset`, `std::flat_map`, and `set::flat_multimap`. These C++23 classes utilize STL sequence containers to provide functional behavior that parallels the corresponding associative container classes (see Chapter 7) but with improved performance for certain use cases. Table 9-1 summarizes several distinguishing aspects of these container adaptors.

Table 9-1. *STL Container Adaptors*

Container Adaptor	Default Container	Alternate Containers	Element Access, Insertions, and Removals
<code>std::stack<T></code>	<code>std::deque<T></code>	<code>std::vector<T></code> <code>std::list<T></code>	<code>top()</code> , <code>push()</code> , <code>pop()</code>
<code>std::queue<T></code>	<code>std::deque<T></code>	<code>std::list<T></code>	<code>front()</code> , <code>back()</code> , <code>push()</code> , <code>pop()</code>
<code>std::priority_queue<T></code>	<code>std::vector<T></code>	<code>std::deque<T></code>	<code>top()</code> , <code>push()</code> , <code>pop()</code>
<code>std::flat_set<Key></code>	<code>std::vector<Key></code>	<code>std::deque<Key></code>	Same as <code>std::set<Key></code>
<code>std::flat_multiset<Key></code>	<code>std::vector<Key></code>	<code>std::deque<Key></code>	Same as <code>std::multiset<Key></code>
<code>std::flat_map<Key, T></code>	<code>std::vector<Key></code> <code>std::vector<T></code>	<code>std::deque<Key></code> <code>std::deque<T></code>	Same as <code>std::map<Key, T></code>
<code>std::flat_multimap<Key, T></code>	<code>std::vector<Key></code> <code>std::vector<T></code>	<code>std::deque<Key></code> <code>std::deque<T></code>	Same as <code>std::multimap<Key, T></code>

While reading the rest of this chapter, keep in mind the following points:

- As mentioned earlier, all container adaptors manipulate sequence containers internally; however, they are *not* sequence containers. Think of them as wrapper classes for the underlying sequence containers that furnish specific but limited functionality.
- In Table 9-1, the column labeled “Default Container” specifies the adaptor’s default underlying sequence container, while column “Alternate Containers” shows supported alternatives.
- For most use cases, the default sequence container offers the best performance. The alternate containers are normally specified only when they deliver improved element insertion or removal performance for a particular data type.

- A function cannot access an adaptor's underlying sequence container(s). It must use the public interface functions.
- Iterators cannot be used to access the elements of a `std::stack`, `std::queue`, or `std::priority_queue`. This means that most STL algorithms will not work with these classes.

Using `std::stack`

A `std::stack` is a container adaptor that provides last-in-first-out (LIFO) functionality using `push()` and `pop()` operations. A common visual metaphor for a software stack is a pile of plates. A new plate can only be inserted (pushed) onto the pile's top, and only the topmost plate can be removed (popped). Plates within the pile are not accessible. Figure 9-1 illustrates the logical structure of a `std::stack` that uses a `std::deque` for its underlying sequence container. This figure also illustrates execution of operations `push()` and `pop()`.

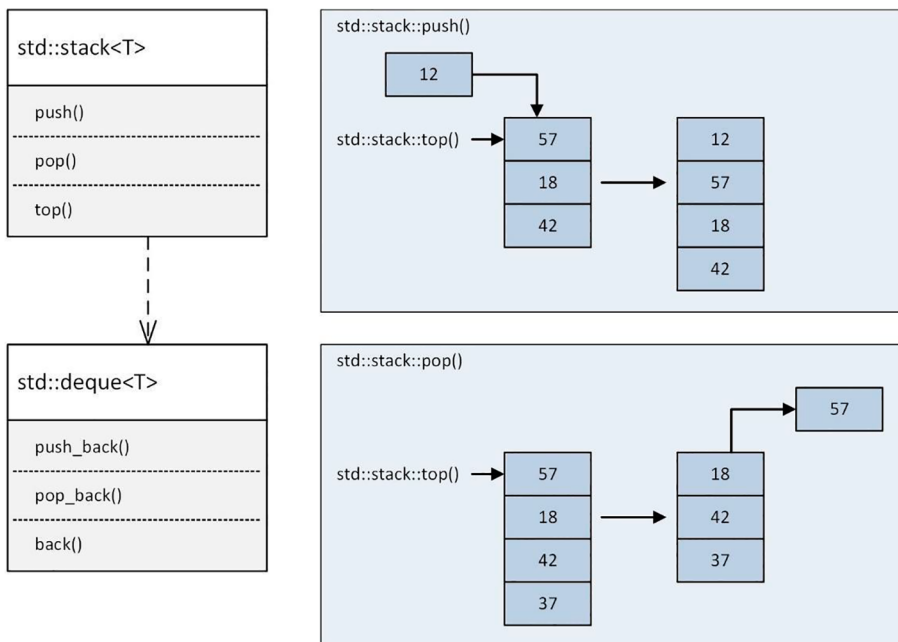


Figure 9-1. Container adaptor `std::stack`

Recall from Table 9-1 that a `std::stack` can also utilize either a `std::vector` or `std::list` for its underlying sequence container. These containers along with `std::deque` define member functions `push_back()`, `pop_back()`, and `back()`. Container adaptor `std::stack` utilizes these functions to implement its `push()`, `pop()`, and `top()` operations, respectively.

Listing 9-1-1 shows the source code for example `Ch09_01_ex1()`. This function demonstrates how to perform elementary operations using `std::stack`s. The opening code block of `Ch09_01_ex1()` defines a lambda expression named `print_words()`, which prints the elements of a `std::stack<std::string>`. In this function, the expression `auto stk {words}` copy-constructs a new instance of argument `words`. The reason for creating a copy of argument `words` is that adaptor `std::stack` doesn't support iterators or define any public member functions that allow direct access to its elements. Currently,¹ the only straightforward means of printing a `std::stack`'s elements is to utilize sequences of `top()` and `pop()`.

Listing 9-1-1. Example `Ch09_01 - Ch09_01_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch09_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <deque>
#include <ranges>
#include <stack>
#include <string>
#include "Ch09_01.h"
#include "TowerOfHanoi.h"

void Ch09_01_ex1()
{
    // print words lambda
    auto print_words = [](const char* msg, const std::stack<std::
    string>& words)
```

¹The C++23 standard defines specializations of template class `std::formatter<>` for container adaptors `std::stack`, `std::queue`, and `std::priority_queue`. These specializations can be exploited to generate formatted text of a container adaptor's elements. As I write this, mainstream C++ compilers do not support the `std::formatter<>` specializations for container adaptors.

```

{
    auto stk {words};

    std::println("{:s} (size = {:d})", msg, stk.size());

    while (!stk.empty())
    {
        // using top() and pop()
        std::print("| {:s} ", stk.top());
        stk.pop();
    }

    std::println("|");
};

// create stack (std::stack doesn't support initializer lists)
const auto il1 = {"brought ...", "fathers", "our", "ago",
"years", "and"};
std::stack<std::string> words1(il1.begin(), il1.end());
print_words("\nwords1 (initial values)", words1);

// using push and emplace
words1.push("score");
words1.emplace("four");
print_words("\nwords1 (after push and emplace)", words1);

// create stack (constructor initialized using std::deque)
const std::deque<std::string> deq2
    {"apple", "banana cream", "blueberry"};

std::stack<std::string> words2(deq2);
print_words("\nwords2 (initial values)", words2);

// using push_range
std::stack<std::string> words3 {words2};
print_words("\nwords3 (initial values)", words3);

const auto il3 = {"cherry", "key lime", "peach", "pecan", "turtle"};
#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges
words3.push_range(il3);

```

```

    print_words("\nwords3 (after push_range)", words3);
#else
    for (const auto& s : il3)
        words3.push(s);
    print_words("\nwords3 (after push operations)", words3);
#endif
}

```

The next code block in `print_words()` utilizes a `while` loop to print the elements of `stk`. Member function `stk.empty()` returns `true` if `stk` contains zero elements. The ensuing `std::println()` statement utilizes `stk.top()` to access and print the topmost element of `stk`. This is followed by a `stk.pop()`, which removes the topmost `std::string` from `stk`. You may be wondering why `top()` and `pop()` are defined distinctly instead of a single member function that combines both operations. Defining a `top_and_pop()` member function would necessitate an element copy operation even in situations where only a `pop()` is required. You can always define a custom `top_and_pop()` function, and you'll see an example of this later.

Before continuing, it warrants mentioning that using `top()` or `pop()` with an empty `std::stack` results in undefined behavior. A function that uses `std::stack` adaptors should always include appropriate checks using `empty()` or `size()`. It's also not a bad idea to throw an exception if detection of an empty stack is erroneous.

Returning to the code of `Ch09_01_ex1()`, the first code block following the definition of `print_words()` instantiates a `std::stack<std::string>` adaptor named `words1`. Note that this code block defines an explicit initializer list of text strings; iterators `il1.begin()` and `il1.end()` are passed to the constructor for `words1`. The reason for this is that adaptor class `std::stack` doesn't support object construction using an initializer list (e.g., `std::stack<std::string> stk {"one", "two"}` is invalid). Following the instantiation of `words1`, `Ch09_01_ex1()` utilizes `print_words()` to print its elements.

In the next code block, the statements `words1.push("score")` and `words1.emplace("four")` push two more elements onto `words1`. The code block that follows instantiates another `std::stack<std::string>` adaptor named `words2`. Note here that an object of type `std::deque<std::string>` is passed to the constructor of `words2`. This is possible since the underlying container for adaptor `words2` is a `std::deque<std::string>`.

The final code block of `Ch09_01_ex1()` demonstrates the use of `words2.push_range()` (C++ 23), which pushes the elements of `il3` onto stack `words3`. The elements of `il3` are pushed using the same order as they appear in the initializer list (i.e., "cherry" is pushed first followed by "key lime", etc.). The actual elements pushed onto `words3` are, of course, `std::strings` that get constructed using the `const char*` members of `il3`.

The archetypal example of stack usage is the well-known Tower of Hanoi (TOH) algorithm. In this algorithm, numbered discs must be moved from a source peg to a target peg using an intermediate peg. A disc can only be moved to another peg if its value is less than the topmost disc on the target peg. A disc can also be moved to an empty peg. Figure 9-2 illustrates the TOH peg and disc arrangements in greater detail.

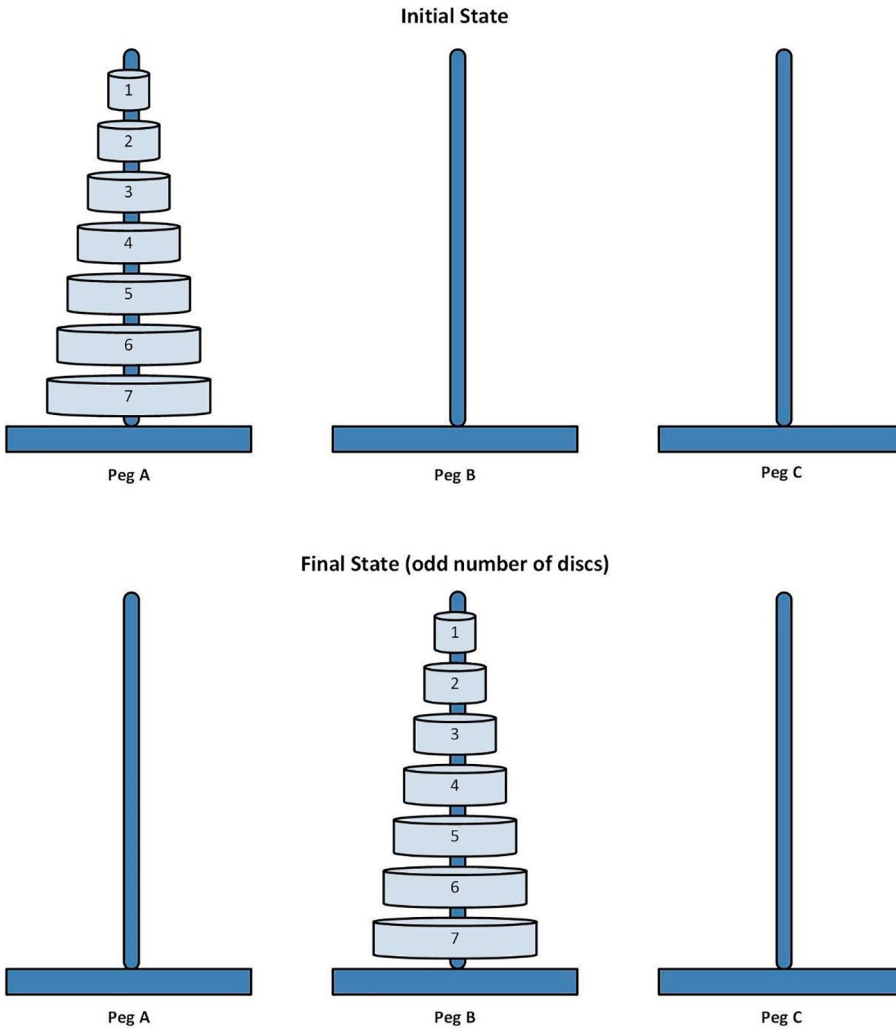


Figure 9-2. Tower of Hanoi algorithm peg and disc arrangements

The TOH algorithm typically starts with all of the discs on PegA as shown in Figure 9-2. If the number of discs is even, PegC is the final target; otherwise, it's PegB. The number of moves required to transfer N discs from PegA to the target peg is $2^N - 1$.

Listing 9-1-2-1 shows the source code for class TowerOfHanoi. Near the top of the class declaration is the definition of an alias named `uint_t`. This defines the integer type for a disc. Function `TowerOfHanoi::run()` is the only public member function. This function requires two arguments: the number of discs and a verbose flag that enables stack dumps and other status messages during execution. Alias `peg_t` is a TOH

algorithm `peg`, which corresponds to a container adaptor of type `std::stack<uint, std::vector<uint_t>>`. Adaptor `peg_t` utilizes a `std::vector<uint_t>` for its underlying container since this sequence container is typically faster when used with a fundamental type such as `uint_t` compared to a `std::deque<uint_t>`.² The private member functions of class `TowerOfHanoi` are declared next. The attributes of class `TowerOfHanoi` include `peg_t` objects `m_PegA`, `m_PegB`, and `m_PegC` along with a `bool` named `m_Verbose`.

Listing 9-1-2-1. Example Ch09_02 – Class `TowerOfHanoi`

```
//-----
// TowerOfHanoi.h
//-----

#ifndef TOWER_OF_HANOI_H_
#define TOWER_OF_HANOI_H_

#include <cstdint>
#include <stack>
#include <vector>

class TowerOfHanoi
{
public:
    using uint_t = uint64_t;
    constexpr static uint_t s_NumDiscsMax {63};

    void run(uint_t num_discs, bool verbose);

private:
    using peg_t = std::stack<uint_t, std::vector<uint_t>>;

    uint_t top_and_pop(peg_t& peg);
    void move_disc(peg_t& peg_from, peg_t& peg_to, const char* msg);
};
```

² Recall that the elements of a `std::vector` are stored in contiguous memory, which means fast copy operations should a reallocation of `std::vector`'s internal buffer become necessary during the insertion of a new `uint_t` element.

```

void print_peg();
void print_peg(const char* msg, const peg_t& peg);

peg_t m_PegA {};          // source peg
peg_t m_PegB {};          // target peg (num discs is odd)
peg_t m_PegC {};          // target peg (num discs is even)
bool m_Verbose {};        // print status messages if true
};

#endif

//-----
// TowerOfHanoi.cpp
//-----

#include <stdexcept>
#include "Common.h"
#include "TowerOfHanoi.h"

TowerOfHanoi::uint_t TowerOfHanoi::top_and_pop(peg_t& peg)
{
#ifdef _DEBUG
    if (peg.empty())
        throw std::runtime_error("peg stack is empty()");
#endif

    // pop disc from peg, return value to caller
    uint_t disc = peg.top();
    peg.pop();
    return disc;
}

void TowerOfHanoi::move_disc(peg_t& peg_from, peg_t& peg_to, const
char* msg)
{
    // move disc
    uint_t disc = top_and_pop(peg_from);
    peg_to.push(disc);
}

```

```

    if (m_Verbose)
        std::println("{:s}", msg);
}

void TowerOfHanoi::print_pegs()
{
    print_peg("PegA", m_PegA);
    print_peg("PegB", m_PegB);
    print_peg("PegC", m_PegC);
}

void TowerOfHanoi::print_peg(const char* msg, const peg_t& peg)
{
    peg_t peg_temp {peg};
    std::print("{:s}:", msg);

    while (!peg_temp.empty())
        std::print("{:2d} ", top_and_pop(peg_temp));
    std::println("");
}

void TowerOfHanoi::run(uint_t num_discs, bool verbose)
{
    if (num_discs == 0 || num_discs > s_NumDiscsMax)
        throw std::runtime_error("invalid value - 'num_discs'");

    // num_moves = pow(2, num_discs) - 1
    // target_peg = PegB/PegC for num_discs odd/even
    m_Verbose = verbose;
    uint_t num_moves = (uint_t(1) << num_discs) - 1;
    std::string target_peg = (num_discs & 1) ? "PegB" : "PegC";

    // place discs on source peg (m_PegA)
    for (uint_t i {num_discs}; i >= 1; --i)
        m_PegA.push(i);

    std::println(
        "Start (num_discs: {:d}, num_moves: {:d}, target_peg: {:s})",
        num_discs, num_moves, target_peg);
    print_pegs();
}

```



```

for (uint_t i {0}; i < num_moves; ++i)
{
    if (m_Verbose)
        std::print("\nMove {:d} - ", i);

    if (i % 3 == 0)
    {
        if (!m_PegA.empty() && (m_PegB.empty() || m_PegA.top()
        < m_PegB.top()))
            move_disc(m_PegA, m_PegB, "PegA to PegB");
        else
            move_disc(m_PegB, m_PegA, "PegB to PegA");
    }
    else if (i % 3 == 1)
    {
        if (!m_PegA.empty() && (m_PegC.empty() || m_PegA.top()
        < m_PegC.top()))
            move_disc(m_PegA, m_PegC, "PegA to PegC");
        else
            move_disc(m_PegC, m_PegA, "PegC to PegA");
    }
    else
    {
        if (!m_PegB.empty() && (m_PegC.empty() || m_PegB.top()
        < m_PegC.top()))
            move_disc(m_PegB, m_PegC, "PegB to PegC");
        else
            move_disc(m_PegC, m_PegB, "PegC to PegB");
    }

    if (m_Verbose)
        print_pegs();
}

std::println(
    "\nStop (num_discs: {:d}, num_moves: {:d}, target_peg: {:s})",

```

```

    num_discs, num_moves, target_peg);
    print_pegs();
}

```

Also shown in Listing 9-1-2-1 are the member functions for class `TowerOfHanoi`, the first of which is named `top_and_pop()`. As implied by its name, this member function reads the topmost disc from `peg_t` `peg`. It then pops the same disc from `peg` and returns its value to the caller. The `TowerOfHanoi` algorithm performs multiple top-and-pop operations, so it makes sense to define a single function that combines both stack operations. The next member function, `move_disc()`, transfers a disc from `peg_from` to `peg_to`. Note that this member function exploits `top_and_pop()`. Adaptor member function `push()` is utilized to place the removed disc onto `peg_to`. The next two functions in `TowerOfHanoi.cpp`, `print_pegs()` and `print_peg()`, carry out print operations. Note that `print_peg()` instantiates a local copy of argument `peg`, and this object exploits `top_and_pop()` to print `peg`'s discs.

The TOH disc move algorithm code is located in member function `run()`. The opening code blocks of this function carry out the requisite initializations. The first for loop in `run()` places the initial set of discs on `m_PegA`. The second for loop performs the disc moves. A legal move from `peg X` to `peg Y` requires the following conditions:

- Peg X must not be empty AND.
- Peg Y must be empty OR the topmost disc of `peg X` must be less than the topmost disc of `peg Y`.

Since there are three pegs, only three distinct move actions are possible as outlined in Table 9-2.

Table 9-2. *Tower of Hanoi Disc Moves*

Iteration	Possible Moves
<code>i % 3 == 0</code>	If legal, move disc from <code>m_PegA</code> to <code>m_PegB</code> ; otherwise, move disc from <code>m_PegB</code> to <code>m_PegA</code>
<code>i % 3 == 1</code>	If legal, move disc from <code>m_PegA</code> to <code>m_PegC</code> ; otherwise, move disc from <code>m_PegC</code> to <code>m_PegA</code>
<code>i % 3 == 2</code>	If legal, move disc from <code>m_PegB</code> to <code>m_PegC</code> ; otherwise move disc from <code>m_PegC</code> to <code>m_PegB</code>

Listing 9-1-2-2 shows the source code for example function `Ch09_01_ex2()`. This function exercises `TowerOfHanoi::run()` using both even and odd disc counts. To observe the actual disc moves, enable preprocessor symbol `TOH_VERBOSE_TEST`, recompile, and execute.

Listing 9-1-2-2. Example `Ch09_01 - Ch09_01_ex2()`

```

// #define TOH_VERBOSE_TEST

void Ch09_01_ex2()
{
    // verbose mode test
#ifdef TOH_VERBOSE_TEST
    TowerOfHanoi tow0 {};
    TowerOfHanoi::uint_t num_discs0 {7};

    std::println("\nbegin run0");
    tow0.run(num_discs0, true);
#endif

    // using even number of discs
    TowerOfHanoi tow1 {};
    TowerOfHanoi::uint_t num_discs1 {20};

    std::println("\nbegin run1");
    tow1.run(num_discs1, false);

    // using odd number of discs
    TowerOfHanoi tow2 {};
    TowerOfHanoi::uint_t num_discs2 {21};

    std::println("\n\nbegin run2");
    tow2.run(num_discs2, false);
}

```

Here are the results for example Ch09_01:

```

----- Results for example Ch09_01 -----
----- Ch09_01_ex1() -----
words1 (initial values) (size = 6)
| and | years | ago | our | fathers | brought ... |
words1 (after push and emplace) (size = 8)
| four | score | and | years | ago | our | fathers | brought ... |
words2 (initial values) (size = 3)
| blueberry | banana cream | apple |
words3 (initial values) (size = 3)
| blueberry | banana cream | apple |
words3 (after push_range) (size = 8)
| turtle | pecan | peach | key lime | cherry | blueberry | banana cream
| apple |
----- Ch09_01_ex2() -----

begin run1
Start (num_discs: 20, num_moves: 1048575, target_peg: PegC)
PegA: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
PegB:
PegC:

Stop (num_discs: 20, num_moves: 1048575, target_peg: PegC)
PegA:
PegB:
PegC: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20

begin run2
Start (num_discs: 21, num_moves: 2097151, target_peg: PegB)
PegA: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21
PegB:
PegC:

```

Stop (num_discs: 21, num_moves: 2097151, target_peg: PegB)

PegA:

PegB: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21

PegC:

Using `std::queue`

A `std::queue` is a container adaptor that provides first-in-first-out (FIFO) functionality using `push()` and `pop()` operations. Like a `std::stack`, the public interface for a `std::queue` is succinct. Figure 9-3 shows the logical structure of a `std::queue` that uses a `std::deque` for its underlying sequence container. This figure also illustrates execution of `std::queue::push()` and `std::queue::pop()`.

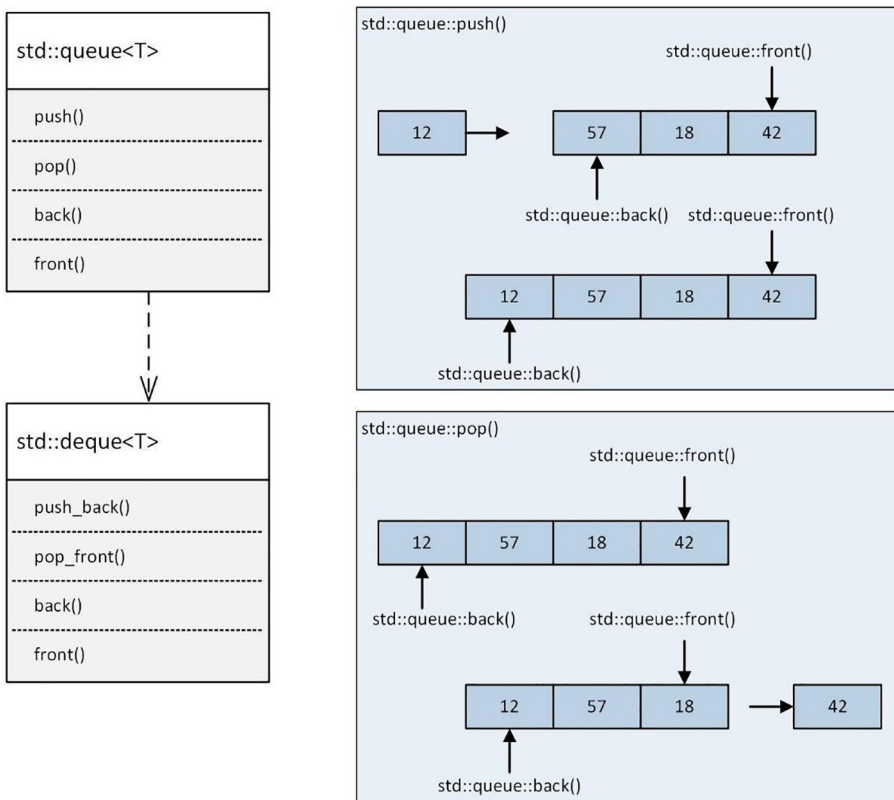


Figure 9-3. Container adaptor `std::queue`

Container adaptor function `std::queue::push()` adds a new element to the back of a queue, while `std::queue::pop()` removes the queue's frontmost element. A function can also read the back or frontmost element of a `std::queue` using member functions `back()` and `front()`, respectively.

Using a `std::queue` is not that much different than using a `std::stack`. Listing 9-2-1 shows the source code for example `Ch09_02_ex1()`. The first code block in this function utilizes a `std::deque<int>` to initialize `std::queue<int> queue1`. Like a `std::stack`, adaptor `std::queue` does not support constructor initialization using an initializer list. The next code block demonstrates using `push()` and `emplace()` to add new elements to the back of `queue1`. This is followed by a series of `std::println()` statements that exhibit usages of member functions `front()`, `back()`, `size()`, and `empty()`.

Listing 9-2-1. Example `Ch09_02 - Ch09_02_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch09_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <deque>
#include <queue>
#include <string>
#include "Ch09_02.h"
#include "MT.h"

void Ch09_02_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:4d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {15};

    // create queue (std::queue doesn't support initializer lists)
    std::deque<int> x {10, 20, 30, 40};
    std::queue<int> queue1(x);
    MT::print_queue("\nqueue1 (initial values):\n", queue1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using push() and emplace()
    queue1.push(50);
    queue1.emplace(60);
    MT::print_queue("\nqueue1 (after insertions):\n", queue1, fmt,
        epl_max);
}
```

```

// using front(), back(), size(), and empty()
std::println("\nqueue1.front(): {:d}", queue1.front());
std::println("queue1.back():  {:d}", queue1.back());
std::println("queue1.size():  {:d}", queue1.size());
std::println("queue1.empty():  {:s}", queue1.empty());

// using pop()
queue1.pop();
queue1.pop();
MT::print_queue("\nqueue1 (after pop operations):\n", queue1, fmt,
ep1_max);

// using relational operators
std::queue<int> queue2 {queue1};
MT::print_queue("\nqueue2 (initial values):\n", queue2, fmt, ep1_max);

std::println("\nqueue1 == queue2: {:s}", queue1 == queue2);
std::println("queue1 != queue2: {:s}", queue1 != queue2);
std::println("queue1 < queue2:  {:s}", queue1 < queue2);
std::println("queue1 <= queue2: {:s}", queue1 <= queue2);
std::println("queue1 > queue2:  {:s}", queue1 > queue2);
std::println("queue1 >= queue2: {:s}", queue1 >= queue2);
}

```

Following the calls to `std::println()` is the definition of `queue2`. Note that this `std::queue<int>` object is copy-constructed using the elements of `queue1`. Next is a sequence of six `std::println()` calls that spotlights the use of `std::queue`'s relational operators. Like other container relational operators, these operators carry out lexicographical compares of corresponding elements in `queue1` and `queue2`.

The next example, shown in Listing 9-2-2, highlights a few more operations using container adaptor `std::queue`. Near the top of `Ch09_02_ex2()` is the definition of alias `queue_t`, which corresponds to a container adaptor of type `std::queue<std::string>`. In the code block that follows, `queue_t queue1` is initialized using iterators. The constructor overload of `std::queue` that accepts iterator arguments is new to C++23. The subsequent code block utilizes `push_range()` (C++23) to add more elements to `queue2`. In the current example, `push_range()` effectively performs multiple push operations using the strings of `il2`. The final code block of `Ch09_02_ex2()` exploits `swap()` to exchange the elements of `queue1` and `queue2`.

Listing 9-2-2. Example Ch09_02 - Ch09_02_ex2()

```

void Ch09_02_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:20s}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {4};
    using queue_t = std::queue<std::string>;

    const auto il1 = {"apple", "banana cream",
                     "blueberry", "cherry", "key lime", "peach", "pecan", "turtle"};

    // initialize queue1 (ctor is C++23)
#ifdef __cpp_lib_adaptor_iterator_pair_constructor
    queue_t queue1(il1.begin(), il1.end());
#else
    queue_t queue1 {};
    for (auto s : il1)
        queue1.push(s);
#endif

    MT::print_queue("\nqueue1 (initial values):\n", queue1, fmt, epl_max);

    // initialize queue2 (push_range is C++23)
    const auto il2 = {"pumpkin", "raspberry", "custard", "coconut cream",
                     "lemon meringue", "strawberry"};

    queue_t queue2 {};
#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges
    queue2.push_range(il2);
    MT::print_queue("\nqueue2 (using push_range):\n", queue2, fmt,
                    epl_max);
#else
    for (const auto& s : il2)
        queue2.push(s);
    MT::print_queue("\nqueue2 (using push ops):\n", queue2, fmt, epl_max);
#endif
}

```



```

    // swap queue1 and queue2
    queue1.swap(queue2);
    MT::print_queue("\nqueue1 (after swap):\n", queue1, fmt, epl_max);
    MT::print_queue("\nqueue2 (after swap):\n", queue2, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Here are the results for example Ch09_02:

```

----- Results for example Ch09_02 -----

```

```

----- Ch09_02_ex1() -----

```

```

queue1 (initial values):

```

```

    10  20  30  40

```

```

queue1 (after insertions):

```

```

    10  20  30  40  50  60

```

```

queue1.front(): 10

```

```

queue1.back(): 60

```

```

queue1.size(): 6

```

```

queue1.empty(): false

```

```

queue1 (after pop operations):

```

```

    30  40  50  60

```

```

queue2 (initial values):

```

```

    30  40  50  60

```

```

queue1 == queue2: true

```

```

queue1 != queue2: false

```

```

queue1 < queue2: false

```

```

queue1 <= queue2: true

```

```

queue1 > queue2: false

```

```

queue1 >= queue2: true

```

```
----- Ch09_02_ex2() -----
```

```
queue1 (initial values):
```

```
apple          banana cream    blueberry    cherry
key lime      peach              pecan        turtle
```

```
queue2 (using push_range):
```

```
pumpkin      raspberry    custard      coconut cream
lemon meringue  strawberry
```

```
queue1 (after swap):
```

```
pumpkin      raspberry    custard      coconut cream
lemon meringue  strawberry
```

```
queue2 (after swap):
```

```
apple          banana cream    blueberry    cherry
key lime      peach              pecan        turtle
```

Using `std::priority_queue`

A `std::priority_queue` is another queue-like container adaptor. The primary difference between a `std::queue` and a `std::priority_queue` is that the latter orders its elements using a compare function. The default comparison function object for a `std::priority_queue` is `std::less<>`. Note that adaptor `std::priority_queue` applies this function object to order its elements in *descending* order. In other words, the frontmost element is the largest.³ To order the elements of a priority queue in *ascending* order – where the smallest element is frontmost – a `std::priority_queue` can be declared using function object `std::greater<>` as you’ll soon see. Figure 9-4 depicts the logical structure of a `std::priority_queue`. This figure also illustrates the execution of member functions `push()` and `pop()`.

³This is different than most other STL default uses of `std::less<>`, which arranges elements in ascending order.

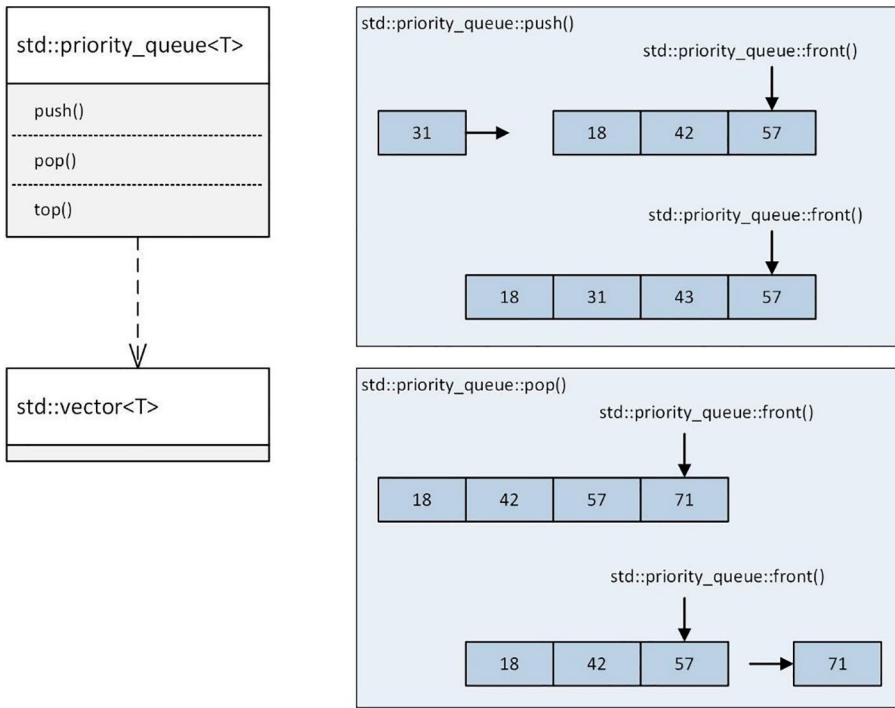


Figure 9-4. Container adaptor `std::priority_queue`

The default underlying sequence container of a `std::priority_queue` is a `std::vector`. You can change this to a `std::deque`. The elements of a `std::priority_queue` are arranged as a heap. A heap is a tree-like data structure that optimally orders a group of elements. Heaps are commonly exploited to implement efficient sorting algorithms and priority queues. For the current example, it's not necessary to understand the algorithmic mechanisms of a heap. You'll learn more about this data structure in Chapter 12.

Listing 9-3-1-1 shows the source code for class `RegPolygon`. The `std::priority_queue` examples that you'll examine in this section utilize this class. Class `RegPolygon` is also used in later chapters.

Listing 9-3-1-1. Example Ch09_03 – Class RegPolygon

```
//-----
// RegPolygon.h
//-----

#ifndef REG_POLYGON_H_
#define REG_POLYGON_H_
#include <format>
#include <string>
#include <vector>

class RegPolygon
{
    friend struct std::formatter<RegPolygon>;

    static constexpr int NumSidesDef = 3;
    static constexpr double Radius1Def = 1.0;

public:
    RegPolygon() { calc_values(NumSidesDef, Radius1Def); }
    RegPolygon(int num_sides, double radius1) { calc_values(num_sides,
radius1); }

    // accessors
    int NumSides() const { return m_NumSides; }
    double Radius1() const { return m_Radius1; };
    double SideLength() const { return m_SideLength; }
    double Radius2() const { return m_Radius2; };
    double Perimeter() const { return m_Perimeter; };
    double VertexAngle() const { return m_VerVertexAngle; };
    double Area() const { return m_Area; };

    void set(int num_sides, double radius1) { calc_values(num_sides,
radius1); }

    // relational operators
    friend auto operator<=>(const RegPolygon& rp1, const RegPolygon& rp2)
        { return rp1.m_Area <=> rp2.m_Area; }
};

```

```

friend bool operator==(const RegPolygon& rp1, const RegPolygon& rp2)
    { return rp1.m_Area == rp2.m_Area; }

// public member functions
static std::vector<RegPolygon> get_random_polygons(size_t num_polygons,
    unsigned int rng_seed1, unsigned int rng_seed2);

static std::string title_str();

private:
void calc_values(int num_sides, double radius1);
std::string to_str() const;

// RegPolygon attributes
int m_NumSides {};
double m_Radius1 {}; // inscribed radius
double m_SideLength {};
double m_Radius2 {}; // circumscribed radius
double m_Perimeter {};
double m_VertexAngle {}; // labeled theta in figure
double m_Area {};
};

// class RegPolygon formatter
template <> struct std::formatter<RegPolygon> : std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& pc)
        { return pc.begin(); }

    auto format(const RegPolygon& rp, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{}", rp.to_str()); }
};

#endif

//-----
// RegPolygon.cpp
//-----

```

```

#include <cmath>
#include <iomanip>
#include <numbers>
#include <ostream>
#include <random>
#include <stdexcept>
#include <sstream>
#include <vector>
#include "RegPolygon.h"
#include "MTH.h"

std::vector<RegPolygon> RegPolygon::get_random_polygons(size_t num_
polygons,
                unsigned int rng_seed1, unsigned int rng_seed2)
{
    std::mt19937 rng_num_sides {rng_seed1};
    std::uniform_int_distribution<int> dist_num_sides {3, 30};

    std::mt19937 rng_radius {rng_seed2};
    std::uniform_real_distribution<double> dist_radius {0.5, 25.0};

    std::vector<RegPolygon> polygons {};

    for (size_t i = 0; i < num_polygons; ++i)
    {
        int num_sides = dist_num_sides(rng_num_sides);
        double radius1 = dist_radius(rng_radius);

        polygons.emplace_back(num_sides, radius1);
    }

    return polygons;
}

std::string RegPolygon::title_str()
{
    static std::string s {};

    if (s.empty())

```

```

    {
        s += "Sides      ";
        s += "Radius1    ";
        s += "SideLen     ";
        s += "Radius2     ";
        s += "Perim       ";
        s += "VerAng      ";
        s += "Area\n";
        s += std::string(74, '=');
    }

    return s;
}

void RegPolygon::calc_values(int num_sides, double radius1)
{
    using namespace std::numbers;

    // validate arguments
    static std::string s1 { "RegPolygon::CalcValues(): invalid value - " };
    if (num_sides < 3)
        throw std::runtime_error(s1 + "'num_sides'");
    if (radius1 <= 0.0)
        throw std::runtime_error(s1 + "'radius1'");

    // calculate polygon parameters
    m_NumSides = num_sides;
    m_Radius1 = radius1;

    m_SideLength = 2.0 * m_Radius1 * std::tan(MTH::deg_to_rad(180.0 / m_
    NumSides));
    m_Perimeter = m_NumSides * m_SideLength;
    m_VertexAngle = (m_NumSides - 2) / static_cast<double>(m_NumSides)
    * 180.0;

    m_Radius2 = 0.5 * m_SideLength
                * MTH::csc(MTH::deg_to_rad(180.0 / m_NumSides));
}

```

```

    m_Area = m_NumSides * m_Radius1 * m_Radius1
            * std::tan(MTH::deg_to_rad(180.0 / m_NumSides));
}

std::string RegPolygon::to_str() const
{
    std::string s {};
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "[{:4d}, ", m_NumSides);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:9.3f} | ", m_Radius1);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:9.3f}, ", m_SideLength);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:9.3f}, ", m_Radius2);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:9.3f}, ", m_Perimeter);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:9.3f}, ", m_VertexAngle);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:9.3f}]", m_Area);

    return s;
}

```

The first part of Listing 9-3-1-1 shows the declaration for class `RegPolygon`. For the examples of this section, there are two particulars to note here. First, operator `<=>` and operator `==` carry out their comparisons using attribute `m_Area`. Second, the parameterized constructor for `RegPolygon` requires two argument values: `num_sides` and (inscribed radius) `radius1`. Member function `calc_values()` utilizes these values to calculate the regular polygon's circumscribed radius, side length, perimeter, vertex angle, and area. Figure 9-5 shows a six-sided (hexagon) regular polygon along with the inscribed and circumscribed circles.

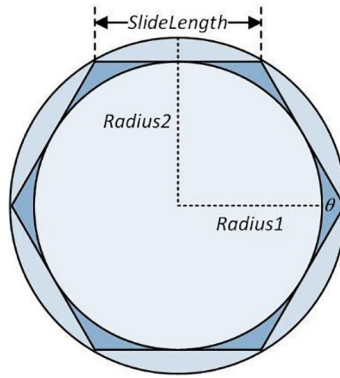


Figure 9-5. Six-sided (hexagon) regular polygon

File `RegPolygons.cpp`, also shown in Listing 9-3-1-1, contains the actual code for `calc_values()`. This file also includes the requisite code necessary to print the attributes of a `RegPolygon` object using `std::println()`. Member function `get_random_polygons()`, used in later chapters, generates a `std::vector<RegPolygon>` of regular polygons using random values for `num_sides` and `radius1`.

Example function `Ch09_03_ex1()`, shown in Listing 9-3-1-2, begins its execution with the creation of a `std::priority_queue<RegPolygon>` named `polygons1`. Note that like `std::stack` and `std::queue`, class `std::priority_queue` doesn't support constructor initializer lists, which is why the constructor for `polygons1` uses iterator arguments. Following the creation of `polygons1`, `MT::print_priority_queue()` (see `Common/MT.h`) is exercised to print its elements. If you scan ahead to the results section, you'll notice that the `RegPolygon` objects of `polygons1` are ordered by area from largest to smallest.

Listing 9-3-1-2. Example `Ch09_03 - Ch09_03_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch09_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <deque>
#include <functional>
#include <queue>
#include "Ch09_03.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RegPolygon.h"
```

```

void Ch09_03_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {1};

    // create priority queue of RegPolygons
    // RegPolygon::operator<=> uses area
    const auto il1 =
        {RegPolygon {3, 1.0}, RegPolygon {4, 3.0}, RegPolygon {5, 2.0}};
    std::priority_queue<RegPolygon> polygons1(il1.begin(), il1.end());

    std::println("{:s}", RegPolygon::title_str());
    MT::print_priority_queue("\npolygons1 (initial values):\n",
        polygons1, fmt, epl_max);

    // add more polygons
    polygons1.push(RegPolygon {6, 4.0});
    polygons1.push(RegPolygon {4, 8.0});
    polygons1.emplace(RegPolygon {8, 5.0});
    polygons1.emplace(RegPolygon {10, 3.0});

    MT::print_priority_queue("\npolygons1 (after push/emplace
operations):\n",
        polygons1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("\npolygons1.size(): {}", polygons1.size());
    std::println("\npolygons1.top():\n{}", polygons1.top());

    // remove elements
    polygons1.pop();
    polygons1.pop();

    MT::print_priority_queue("\npolygons1 (after pop operations):\n",
        polygons1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("\npolygons1.size(): {}", polygons1.size());
    std::println("\npolygons1.top():\n{}", polygons1.top());
}

```

The next code block demonstrates the use of member functions `push()` and `emplace()` to add more polygons to `polygons1`. During execution of each call to `push()` or `emplace()`, the new `RegPolygon` object is inserted into `polygons1`, and the internal heap is adjusted to maintain proper (largest to smallest) ordering by area as shown in the results section. The ensuing two calls to `std::println()` demonstrate the use of `size()` and `top()`. The former returns the number of elements in `polygons1`, while `top()` returns the frontmost (largest) element. Calling `top()` or `pop()` using an empty `std::priority_queue` results in undefined behavior. The final code block of `Ch09_03_ex1()` spotlights the use of `pop()`, which removes the frontmost element from `polygons1`.

Listing 9-3-2 shows the source code for example `Ch09_03_ex2()`. Prior to the start of this function are several alias definitions. Note that type `pq_t` is a `std::priority_queue` and that it holds `RegPolygons`. Also, note that function object `std::greater<RegPolygon>` is utilized to order the elements of a `pq_t`, which means that the frontmost element will contain the smallest by area `RegPolygon` object.

Listing 9-3-2. Example `Ch09_03 - Ch09_03_ex2()`

```
// type aliases for custom priority_queue
using value_t = RegPolygon;
using container_t = std::deque<RegPolygon>;
using cmp_t = std::greater<RegPolygon>;
using pq_t = std::priority_queue<value_t, container_t, cmp_t>;

void Ch09_03_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {1};

    // create priority queue of RegPolygons
    // add polygons using push_range
    pq_t polygons1 {};

    const auto il1 = {RegPolygon {3, 1.0}, RegPolygon {4, 3.0},
                    RegPolygon {5, 2.0}, RegPolygon {6, 4.0}};

#ifdef __cpp_lib_containers_ranges
    polygons1.push_range(il1);
#endif
}
```

```

#else
    for (const auto rp : il1)
        polygons1.push(rp);
#endif

    std::println("{:s}", RegPolygon::title_str());
    MT::print_priority_queue("\npolygons1 (initial values):\n",
        polygons1, fmt, epl_max);

    // add more polygons
    polygons1.emplace(RegPolygon {3, 0.5});
    polygons1.emplace(RegPolygon {10, 0.25});
    polygons1.emplace(RegPolygon {12, 0.0125});

    MT::print_priority_queue("\npolygons1 (after emplace operations):\n",
        polygons1, fmt, epl_max);

    // remove elements
    polygons1.pop();
    polygons1.pop();
    MT::print_priority_queue("\npolygons1 (after pop operations):\n",
        polygons1, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

The opening code block of `Ch09_03_ex2()` utilizes `push_range()` (C++23) to add elements to `polygons1`. Note in the results section that the elements of `polygons1` are arranged in ascending order by area. The ensuing code block utilizes `emplace()` to add more `RegPolygons` to `polygons1`. The final code block of `Ch09_03_ex2()` exercises member function `pop()` twice to remove the two smallest `RegPolygons` from `polygons1`. Here are the results for example `Ch09_03`:

```

----- Results for example Ch09_03 -----

```

```

----- Ch09_03_ex1() -----

```

Sides	Radius1	SideLen	Radius2	Perim	VerAng	Area
=====						
polygons1 (initial values):						
[4,	3.000 |	6.000,	4.243,	24.000,	90.000,	36.000]

CHAPTER 9 CONTAINER ADAPTORS

```
[ 5, 2.000 | 2.906, 2.472, 14.531, 108.000, 14.531]
[ 3, 1.000 | 3.464, 2.000, 10.392, 60.000, 5.196]
```

polygons1 (after push/emplace operations):

```
[ 4, 8.000 | 16.000, 11.314, 64.000, 90.000, 256.000]
[ 8, 5.000 | 4.142, 5.412, 33.137, 135.000, 82.843]
[ 6, 4.000 | 4.619, 4.619, 27.713, 120.000, 55.426]
[ 4, 3.000 | 6.000, 4.243, 24.000, 90.000, 36.000]
[ 10, 3.000 | 1.950, 3.154, 19.495, 144.000, 29.243]
[ 5, 2.000 | 2.906, 2.472, 14.531, 108.000, 14.531]
[ 3, 1.000 | 3.464, 2.000, 10.392, 60.000, 5.196]
```

polygons1.size(): 7

polygons1.top():

```
[ 4, 8.000 | 16.000, 11.314, 64.000, 90.000, 256.000]
```

polygons1 (after pop operations):

```
[ 6, 4.000 | 4.619, 4.619, 27.713, 120.000, 55.426]
[ 4, 3.000 | 6.000, 4.243, 24.000, 90.000, 36.000]
[ 10, 3.000 | 1.950, 3.154, 19.495, 144.000, 29.243]
[ 5, 2.000 | 2.906, 2.472, 14.531, 108.000, 14.531]
[ 3, 1.000 | 3.464, 2.000, 10.392, 60.000, 5.196]
```

polygons1.size(): 5

polygons1.top():

```
[ 6, 4.000 | 4.619, 4.619, 27.713, 120.000, 55.426]
```

----- Ch09_03_ex2() -----

Sides	Radius1	SideLen	Radius2	Perim	VerAng	Area
3	1.000	3.464	2.000	10.392	60.000	5.196
5	2.000	2.906	2.472	14.531	108.000	14.531
4	3.000	6.000	4.243	24.000	90.000	36.000
6	4.000	4.619	4.619	27.713	120.000	55.426

polygons1 (initial values):

```
[ 3, 1.000 | 3.464, 2.000, 10.392, 60.000, 5.196]
[ 5, 2.000 | 2.906, 2.472, 14.531, 108.000, 14.531]
[ 4, 3.000 | 6.000, 4.243, 24.000, 90.000, 36.000]
[ 6, 4.000 | 4.619, 4.619, 27.713, 120.000, 55.426]
```

polygons1 (after emplace operations):

```
[ 12,    0.013 |    0.007,    0.013,    0.080,    150.000,    0.001]
[ 10,    0.250 |    0.162,    0.263,    1.625,    144.000,    0.203]
[  3,    0.500 |    1.732,    1.000,    5.196,    60.000,    1.299]
[  3,    1.000 |    3.464,    2.000,   10.392,    60.000,    5.196]
[  5,    2.000 |    2.906,    2.472,   14.531,   108.000,   14.531]
[  4,    3.000 |    6.000,    4.243,   24.000,    90.000,   36.000]
[  6,    4.000 |    4.619,    4.619,   27.713,   120.000,   55.426]
```

polygons1 (after pop operations):

```
[  3,    0.500 |    1.732,    1.000,    5.196,    60.000,    1.299]
[  3,    1.000 |    3.464,    2.000,   10.392,    60.000,    5.196]
[  5,    2.000 |    2.906,    2.472,   14.531,   108.000,   14.531]
[  4,    3.000 |    6.000,    4.243,   24.000,    90.000,   36.000]
[  6,    4.000 |    4.619,    4.619,   27.713,   120.000,   55.426]
```

Flat Container Adaptors

The ISO C++23 standard specifies four new flat container adaptors: `std::flat_set`, `std::flat_multiset`, `std::flat_map`, and `std::flat_multimap`. The public interfaces for these adaptor classes are roughly the same as the corresponding associative containers you studied in Chapter 7. Differences between a flat container adaptor and its counterpart associative container include

- The elements of a flat container adaptor are usually maintained in a `std::vector` or `std::deque`. The elements of an associative container are maintained using a red-black tree.
- Flat container adaptors have (worst case) linear complexity for element insertions and removals; associative containers have logarithmic complexity.
- Iterators for flat container adaptor iterators are random access; associative container iterators are bidirectional.

- Searching a flat container adaptor for an element is likely to be faster than the same element search using an associative container.
- A flat container adaptor consumes less memory than its counterpart associative container.

Flat container adaptors are best suited for use cases that favor frequent element searches over insertions and/or removals. The primary reason for this is that the elements of a flat container adaptor are stored in contiguous memory since the default underlying sequence container is a `std::vector` (for a `std::deque`, clusters of adjacent elements are often stored in contiguous memory). This improves processor cache utilization (fewer cache misses), which directly affects search performance. As I write this, none of the mainstream C++ compilers support flat container adaptors. Hopefully, this changes soon so that the putative search advantages of flat container adaptors can be substantiated using a multiplicity of real-world data types.

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- A `std::stack` container adaptor provides last-in-first-out functionality using `std::stack::push()` and `std::stack::pop()`. The stack's topmost element can be accessed using `std::stack::top()`.
- A `std::queue` container adaptor provides first-in-first-out functionality using `std::queue::push()` and `std::queue::pop()`. You can use `std::queue::front()` or `std::queue::back()` to access the first or last elements of a `std::queue`.
- A `std::priority_queue` container adaptor is a queue-like entity that orders its elements using a compare function. The default compare function is `std::less<>`. A `std::priority_queue` uses this function to arrange its elements in descending order (i.e., the frontmost element is the largest). You can use `std::greater<>` to arrange the elements of a `std::priority_queue` in ascending order.

- The C++23 standard defines a new set of flat container adaptors: `std::flat_set`, `std::flat_multiset`, `std::flat_map`, and `std::flat_multimap`. Unlike their associative container counterparts, each flat container adaptor maintains its elements in a sequence container. Flat container adaptors are best suited for use cases that carry out frequent element searches relative to insertions and/or removals.

CHAPTER 10

Algorithms – Part 1

Thus far in this book, you've learned how to use a variety of STL container classes, including sequence containers, associative containers, and unordered associative containers. Modern C++ programming also mandates a comprehensive understanding of STL algorithms. This chapter commences your study of the STL algorithm library. In this chapter, you'll learn how to exploit a multiplicity of elementary and practical STL algorithms, including

- Counting algorithms
- Minimum and maximum algorithms
- Copy algorithms
- Move algorithms
- Reversal algorithms
- Replacement algorithms
- Removal algorithms
- Fill algorithms

The algorithms selected for coverage in this chapter will also prepare you for the more advanced algorithms that you'll study in later chapters.

Algorithm Primer

The STL algorithm library is an extensive collection of template functions that perform operations on containers or ranges. There are two distinct categories of STL algorithms. The first category includes those algorithms formalized by the C++11 standard. These algorithms typically carry out their operations over a range of elements that's specified by a pair of iterators. For example, execution of `std::sort(ctr.begin(), ctr.end())`

sorts the elements of container `ctr` between `[ctr.begin(), ctr.end())` (i.e., all elements in `ctr`). The advantage of using iterator arguments is that it's straightforward to specify a subrange within a container over which an algorithm should operate. The downside is that, more often than not, a program wants an algorithm to carry out its actions using the container's complete collection of elements. Repeatedly designating `ctr.begin()` and `ctr.end()` for every algorithm entails lots of extra typing; it's also potentially error prone.

The second category of STL algorithms includes the range (or constrained) variants of C++20 and later, which are defined in namespace `std::ranges`. These algorithms support the use of container names as arguments. For instance, `std::ranges::sort(ctr)` sorts the elements of container `ctr`. In this example, argument `ctr` is the C++ shorthand for `[ctr.begin(), ctr.end())`. Most of the algorithms defined in `std::ranges` also support additional features including projections. These topics are covered in Chapter 14.

While reading this book's chapters that explain STL algorithms, you should keep in mind the following points:

- Some containers define member functions that carry out the same operation as a global algorithm. For example, to reverse the elements of a `std::list`, you could use member function `std::list::reverse()` or global algorithm `std::reverse()`. If possible, you should favor the use of container-specific algorithms since these functions are likely optimized for the container's internal data structures.
- Most C++ STL algorithms embrace multiple overloads. These overloads typically define parameters that modify an algorithm's default behavior. The source code examples of this book cover a wide variety of STL algorithm usages, but you should always consult a reliable C++ reference (see Appendix B) to learn more about additional overload options for each STL algorithm.
- An STL algorithm may not work with every container class. The driving factor is usually the type of iterators that the algorithm requires. For example, `std::sort()` requires random access iterators, which means that this algorithm can't be used with a `std::list` or `std::forward_list`. STL algorithms that modify a container's

elements are often not usable with associative or unordered associative containers since these containers use an element's value to position it within a tree or hash table.

- Global algorithms defined in namespaces `std` and `std::ranges` cannot be used to add or remove elements from a container. You must use a container member function to carry out these actions.
- You should *never* make any assumptions regarding the performance of an STL algorithm vs. a custom-coded counterpart. *Always* perform benchmark testing to confirm any putative performance gains. You'll learn more about this in Chapter 16.

Counting Algorithms

Source code example Ch10_01 spotlights the use of several counting and counting-like algorithms. The first group includes algorithms `std::count()`, `std::ranges::count()`, `std::count_if()`, and `std::ranges::count_if()`. The former two count the number of element occurrences in a container, while the latter two count the number of elements that return `true` for a user-defined predicate function. The second group encompasses algorithms `std::any_of()`, `std::all_of()`, and `std::none_of()` along with the counterpart algorithms in namespace `std::ranges`. These algorithms apply a unary predicate to each element of a container and return `true` if the predicate returned `true` for some, all, or none of the container's elements.

Listing 10-1-1 shows the source code for example function `Ch10_01_ex1()`, which illustrates the use of `std::count()`. The opening code block of this function instantiates and initializes `std::vector<int> vec1`. In the next code block, the expression `count10 = std::count(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 10)` counts the number of elements in `vec1` that equal 10. More specifically, `std::count()` counts the number of elements between `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())` that equal 10. Algorithm `std::count()` supports the use of container iterator subranges. For example, execution of `std::count(vec1.begin() + 2, vec1.end(), 10)` would skip the first two elements of `vec1`. Unsurprisingly, `std::count()` carries out its comparisons using `operator==` that's defined for the element type.

Listing 10-1-1. Example Ch10_01 – Ch10_01_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch10_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <deque>
#include <set>
#include <vector>
#include <utility>
#include "Ch10_01.h"
#include "AminoAcid.h"
#include "MT.h"

namespace
{
    const std::initializer_list<int> c_Numbers { 10, 20, 30, -10, 40,
        50, 80, 10,
            50, -60, 10, 80, -90, 10, 80, 90, 60, 120, 90, 80, 60, 10,
            -20, -70 };
};

void Ch10_01_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:5d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {12};

    // using std::count with std::vector
    std::vector<int> vec1 {c_Numbers};
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    auto count10 = std::count(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 10);
    auto count75 = std::ranges::count(vec1, 75);
    std::println("\ncount10: {:d}", count10);
    std::println("count70: {:d}", count75);
}

```

```

// using std::count with std::multiset
// (elements ordered in ascending order)
std::multiset<int> mset1 {c_Numbers};
MT::print_ctr("\nmset1:\n", mset1, fmt, epl_max);

auto count40 = std::count(mset1.begin(), mset1.end(), 40);
auto count50 = std::ranges::count(mset1, 50);
std::println("\ncount40: {:d}", count40);
std::println("count80: {:d}", count50);
}

```

The flexibility of specifying a range using iterators for `std::count()` is convenient for less-frequent use cases. However, for the vast majority of use cases, you want algorithms like `std::count()` to carry out their operations using all container elements. The next statement in `Ch10_01_ex1()`, `count75 = std::ranges::count(vec1, 75)`, counts the number of elements in `vec1` that equal 75. In this expression, the use of variable name `vec1` is basically an abbreviation for the range `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())`. More importantly, note the use of namespace `std::ranges`. As mentioned earlier, this namespace defines constrained versions of most pre-C++20 algorithms.

The next code block in Listing 10-1-1 utilizes `std::count()` and `std::ranges::count()` to count matching elements in `std::multiset<int> mset1`. It's extremely important to recognize here that `Ch10_01_ex1()` utilizes algorithms `std::count()` and `std::ranges::count()` to count matching elements in a `std::multiset` just like it did in the previous code block to count matching elements in a `std::vector`. This is a fundamental advantage conveyed by the STL in that its algorithms can be applied to a variety of container types.

If you scan ahead to the results section for example `Ch10_01`, you'll notice that `MT::print_ctr()` printed different element orderings for `vec1` and `mset1`. Recall that unlike a `std::vector`, a `std::multiset` orders its elements as explained in Chapter 7, and this ordering is reflected when `MT::print_ctr()` prints the specified container's elements using a range for loop (see `Common/MT.h`).

Source code example `Ch10_01_ex2()`, shown in Listing 10-1-2, demonstrates the use of `std::count_if()` and `std::ranges::count_if()`. The open code block of this function defines two unary predicates named `neg_pred()` and `div30_pred()`. The former returns true if `x` is negative, while the latter returns true if `x` is evenly divisible by 30. Next is the instantiation and initialization of `std::deque<int> deq1`.

Listing 10-1-2. Example Ch10_01 - Ch10_01_ex2()

```

void Ch10_01_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:5d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {12};

    // predicates for std::count_if
    auto neg_pred = [](int x) { return x < 0; };
    auto div30_pred = [](int x) { return x % 30 == 0; };

    // using std::count_if
    std::deque<int> deq1 {c_Numbers};
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1:\n", deq1, fmt, epl_max);

    auto num_neg = std::count_if(deq1.begin(), deq1.end(), neg_pred);
    std::println("\nnum_neg: {:d}", num_neg);

    // using std::ranges::count_if
    auto num_div30 = std::ranges::count_if(deq1, div30_pred);
    std::println("num_div30: {:d}", num_div30);
}

```

Following the definitions of predicates `neg_pred()` and `div30_pred()`, `Ch10_01_ex2()` utilizes `std::count_if(deq1.begin(), deq1.end(), neg_pred)` to count the number of negative values in `deq1`. Like `std::count()`, algorithm `std::count_if()` can carry out its operations using an iterator subrange (e.g., `std::count_if(deq1.begin() + 2, deq1.end() - 1, neg_pred)`). The next code block exploits `std::ranges::count_if(deq1, div30_pred)` to count the number of elements in `deq1` that are evenly divisible by 30.

The STL algorithm examples shown thus far have been applied to various containers holding elements of type `int`. Real-world applications normally incorporate numerous user-defined classes. The next example function, `Ch10_01_ex3()`, utilizes a user-defined class named `AminoAcid`.

Amino acids are the building blocks of proteins. Chemically, an amino acid contains an amino group (nitrogen and hydrogen), a central α -carbon atom, and a carboxyl group (carbon, oxygen, and hydrogen). Attached to the central α -carbon atom is a side chain of additional elements (hydrogen, carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur) that differentiate

one amino acid from another. Figure 10-1 depicts the general form of an amino acid. The human genome directly encodes 20 standard amino acids. Each standard amino acid is identified by a sanctioned name, a one-letter code, and a three-letter code. For example, amino acid glycine is recognizable in scientific literature by its name and the one- and three-letter codes G and Gly, respectively.

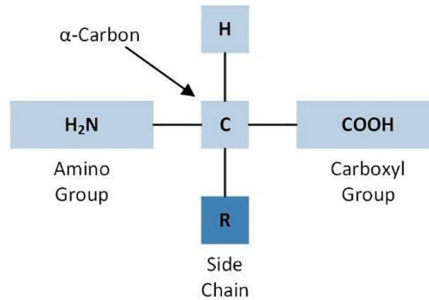


Figure 10-1. Amino acid general form

Listing 10-1-3-1 shows the source code for the definition of class AminoAcid. This class is used in Ch10_01_ex3(); it's also used in later chapters. Toward the bottom of file AminoAcid.h are the class's attributes. Note that each AminoAcid instance includes attributes m_Name, m_Code1, and m_Code3, which correspond to an amino acid's name and its two codes. Additional AminoAcid attributes include molecular mass m_MolMass and side chain (polarity) type m_SideChain. Note that enum AminoAcid::SC defines valid side chain types. Class AminoAcid's inclusion of m_MolarMass and m_SideChain were chosen as representative examples of the numerous chemical properties, both qualitative and quantitative, that characterize amino acids.

Listing 10-1-3-1. Example Ch10_01 – AminoAcid.h

```
//-----
// AminoAcid.h
//-----

#ifndef AMINIO_ACID_H_
#define AMINIO_ACID_H_
#include <cstdint>
#include <format>
#include <optional>
```

```

#include <string>
#include <tuple>
#include <vector>

// AA tuple <3-letter code, full name 1-letter code, molecular mass>
using AaTuple = std::tuple<std::string, std::string, char, double>;

class AminoAcid
{
    friend struct std::formatter<AminoAcid>;
    static constexpr unsigned int s_RngSeedDefault {1001};

public:
    // amino acid side chain types
    enum class SC : unsigned int
        { Unknown, Acidic, Basic, NonPolar, UnchargedPolar };

    static constexpr char BadCode1 {'?'};
    static constexpr const char* BadCode3 = "???" ;

    // constructors
    AminoAcid() = default;

    explicit AminoAcid(const char* name, char code1, const char* code3,
        double mol_mass, SC side_chain) : m_Name {name}, m_Code1 {code1},
        m_Code3 {code3},
        m_MolMass {mol_mass}, m_SideChain {side_chain} {};

    // accessors
    const std::string& Name() const { return m_Name; }
    char Code1() const { return m_Code1; }
    std::string Code3() const { return m_Code3; }
    double MolMass() const { return m_MolMass; }
    SC SideChain() const { return m_SideChain; }

    // operators
    friend auto operator<=>(const AminoAcid& aa1, const AminoAcid& aa2)
        { return aa1.m_Name <=> aa2.m_Name; }
    friend bool operator==(const AminoAcid& aa1, const AminoAcid& aa2)
        { return aa1.m_Name == aa2.m_Name; }

```



```

// helper functions (see AminoAcid.cpp)
static std::optional<AminoAcid> find(char code1);
static std::optional<AminoAcid> find(const std::string& code3);
static bool is_valid(char code1);
static bool is_valid(const std::string& code3);
static char to_code1(const std::string& code3);
static std::string to_code3(char code1);
static std::string to_string(SC side_chain, bool short_text = true);

// vector generators (see AminoAcid.cpp)
static std::vector<AminoAcid> get_vector_all();
static std::vector<char> get_vector_all_code1();
static std::vector<std::string> get_vector_all_code3();
static std::vector<double> get_vector_all_mol_mass();
static std::vector<std::string> get_vector_all_name();
static std::vector<char> get_vector_random_code1(size_t num_aa,
    unsigned int rng_seed = s_RngSeedDefault);
static std::vector<std::string> get_vector_random_code3(size_t num_aa,
    unsigned int rng_seed = s_RngSeedDefault);
static std::vector<AaTuple> get_vector_tuple();

private:
    std::string to_str() const;

    std::string m_Name {};           // full name
    char m_Code1 {};                // 1-letter code
    std::string m_Code3 {};         // 3-letter code
    double m_MolMass {};            // molecular mass (g/mol)
    SC m_SideChain {SC::Unknown};   // side chain type
};

// class AminoAcid formatter
template <> struct std::formatter<AminoAcid> : std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& fpc)
        { return fpc.begin(); }
};

```

```

    auto format(const AminoAcid& aa, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{:s}", aa.to_str()); }
};

#endif

```

Note in Listing 10-1-3-1 that class `AminoAcid` compares attribute `m_Name` during execution of `operator<=>` and `operator==`. Following the operators are the declarations for a series of helper functions and vector generator functions. More about this shortly.

Listing 10-1-3-2 shows the definition of class `AminoAcid`. For now, take note of these items. Near the top of file `AminoAcid.cpp` is an anonymous namespace that defines a `std::vector<AminoAcid>` of the 20 standard amino acids. About halfway down the listing are the definitions for a series of functions that begin with the prefix `get_vector_`. Each of these functions builds a `std::vector` of amino acid properties. The final function in Listing 10-1-3-2, `AminoAcid::to_str()`, is called by the formatter for class `AminoAcid` to create a `std::string` of an `AminoAcid`'s attributes.

Listing 10-1-3-2. Example Ch10_01 – `AminoAcid.cpp`

```

//-----
// AminoAcid.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <format>
#include <optional>
#include <random>
#include "AminoAcid.h"

using SC = AminoAcid::SC;

namespace
{
    // standard amino acids
    const std::vector<AminoAcid> c_AminoAcids
    {
        AminoAcid {"Alanine",      'A', "Ala",  89.094, SC::NonPolar},
        AminoAcid {"Arginine",     'R', "Arg", 174.203, SC::Basic},
        AminoAcid {"Asparagine",   'N', "Asn", 132.119, SC::UnchargedPolar},

```

```

AminoAcid {"AsparticAcid", 'D', "Asp", 133.104, SC::Acidic},
AminoAcid {"Cysteine", 'C', "Cys", 121.154, SC::NonPolar},
AminoAcid {"Glutamine", 'Q', "Gln", 146.146, SC::UnchargedPolar},
AminoAcid {"GlutamicAcid", 'E', "Glu", 147.131, SC::Acidic},
AminoAcid {"Glycine", 'G', "Gly", 75.067, SC::NonPolar},
AminoAcid {"Histidine", 'H', "His", 155.156, SC::Basic},
AminoAcid {"IsoLeucine", 'I', "Ile", 131.175, SC::NonPolar},
AminoAcid {"Leucine", 'L', "Leu", 131.175, SC::NonPolar},
AminoAcid {"Lysine", 'K', "Lys", 146.189, SC::Basic},
AminoAcid {"Methionine", 'M', "Met", 149.208, SC::NonPolar},
AminoAcid {"Phenylalanine", 'F', "Phe", 165.192, SC::NonPolar},
AminoAcid {"Proline", 'P', "Pro", 115.132, SC::NonPolar},
AminoAcid {"Serine", 'S', "Ser", 105.093, SC::UnchargedPolar},
AminoAcid {"Threonine", 'T', "Thr", 119.119, SC::UnchargedPolar},
AminoAcid {"Tryptophan", 'W', "Trp", 204.228, SC::NonPolar},
AminoAcid {"Tyrosine", 'Y', "Tyr", 181.191, SC::UnchargedPolar},
AminoAcid {"Valine", 'V', "Val", 117.148, SC::NonPolar},
};

};

// helper functions
std::optional<AminoAcid> AminoAcid::find(char code1)
{
    auto pred = [code1](const AminoAcid& aa) { return aa.Code1() ==
code1; };
    auto iter = std::ranges::find_if(c_AminoAcids, pred);
    return (iter != c_AminoAcids.end()) ? std::optional(*iter) :
std::nullopt;
}

std::optional<AminoAcid> AminoAcid::find(const std::string& code3)
{
    auto pred = [code3](const AminoAcid& aa) { return aa.Code3() ==
code3; };
    auto iter = std::ranges::find_if(c_AminoAcids, pred);

```

```

    return (iter != c_AminoAcids.end()) ? std::optional(*iter) :
        std::nullopt;
}

bool AminoAcid::is_valid(char code1)
{
    std::optional<AminoAcid> aa = AminoAcid::find(code1);
    return aa.has_value();
}

bool AminoAcid::is_valid(const std::string& code3)
{
    std::optional<AminoAcid> aa = AminoAcid::find(code3);
    return aa.has_value();
}

char AminoAcid::to_code1(const std::string& code3)
{
    std::optional<AminoAcid> aa = AminoAcid::find(code3);
    return aa.has_value() ? aa.value().Code1() : AminoAcid::BadCode1;
}

std::string AminoAcid::to_code3(char code1)
{
    std::optional<AminoAcid> aa = AminoAcid::find(code1);
    return aa.has_value() ? aa.value().Code3() : AminoAcid::BadCode3;
}

std::string AminoAcid::to_string(SC side_chain, bool short_text)
{
    switch (side_chain)
    {
        case SC::Acidic:
            return (short_text) ? "A " : "Acidic";
        case SC::Basic:
            return (short_text) ? "B " : "Basic";
        case SC::NonPolar:
            return (short_text) ? "NP" : "NonPolar";
    }
}

```

```

        case SC::UnchargedPolar:
            return (short_text) ? "UP" : "UnchargedPolar";
        default:
            return (short_text) ? "???" : "?????";
    }
}

// vector generators
std::vector<AminoAcid> AminoAcid::get_vector_all()
{
    return c_AminoAcids;
}

std::vector<char> AminoAcid::get_vector_all_code1()
{
    std::vector<char> amino_acids {};
    for (const AminoAcid& aa : c_AminoAcids)
        amino_acids.push_back(aa.Code1());
    return amino_acids;
}

std::vector<std::string> AminoAcid::get_vector_all_code3()
{
    std::vector<std::string> amino_acids {};
    for (const AminoAcid& aa : c_AminoAcids)
        amino_acids.push_back(aa.Code3());
    return amino_acids;
}

std::vector<double> AminoAcid::get_vector_all_mol_mass()
{
    std::vector<double> amino_acids {};
    for (const AminoAcid& aa : c_AminoAcids)
        amino_acids.push_back(aa.MolMass());
    return amino_acids;
}

```

```

std::vector<std::string> AminoAcid::get_vector_all_name()
{
    std::vector<std::string> amino_acids {};
    for (const AminoAcid& aa : c_AminoAcids)
        amino_acids.push_back(aa.Name());
    return amino_acids;
}

std::vector<char> AminoAcid::get_vector_random_code1(size_t num_aa,
    unsigned int rng_seed)
{
    const int dist_max = static_cast<int>(c_AminoAcids.size() - 1);
    std::mt19937 rng {rng_seed};
    std::uniform_int_distribution<int> dist {0, dist_max};

    std::vector<char> amino_acids(num_aa);

    for (size_t i = 0; i < amino_acids.size(); ++i)
        amino_acids[i] = c_AminoAcids[dist(rng)].Code1();
    return amino_acids;
}

std::vector<std::string> AminoAcid::get_vector_random_code3(size_t num_aa,
    unsigned int rng_seed)
{
    std::vector<char> amino_acids1 = get_vector_random_code1(num_aa,
    rng_seed);
    std::vector<std::string> amino_acids3{};

    for (auto aa_code1 : amino_acids1)
        amino_acids3.push_back(to_code3(aa_code1));
    return amino_acids3;
}

std::vector<AaTuple> AminoAcid::get_vector_tuple()
{
    std::vector<AaTuple> aa_vec {};
}

```

```

for (const AminoAcid& aa : c_AminoAcids)
{
    aa_vec.emplace_back(std::make_tuple(aa.m_Code3, aa.m_Name,
    aa.m_Code1,
    aa.m_MolMass));
}

return aa_vec;
}

// private member functions
std::string AminoAcid::to_str() const
{
    std::string s {};
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "[{:<16s}", m_Name);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:c}|", m_Code1);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:3s}|", m_Code3);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:7.3f}|", m_MolMass);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:2s}]", to_string(m_SideChain));
    return s;
}

```

Source code example `Ch10_01_ex3()`, shown in Listing 10-1-3-3, demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::any_of()`, `std::ranges::all_of()`, and `std::ranges::none_of()`. The first statement of `Ch10_01_ex3()` calls `AminoAcid::get_vector_all()`.¹ The return value from this function is a `std::vector<AminoAcid>` that contains all 20 standard amino acids. This result is used to initialize `vec1`. Next is a C-style array named `mm_vals` that contains three molecular mass values.

Listing 10-1-3-3. Example Ch10_01 - Ch10_01_ex3()

```

void Ch10_01_ex3()
{
    // initialize vector of full amino acids
    std::vector<AminoAcid> vec1 {AminoAcid::get_vector_all()};
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, "{} ", 2);
}

```

¹You'll learn how to use the other `AminoAcid::get_vector_` functions in later chapters.

```

// using std::any_of, std::all_of, std::none_of
const double mol_mass_vals[] {75.0, 150.0, 250.0};

for (auto mol_mass : mol_mass_vals)
{
    auto pred_mm = [mol_mass](const AminoAcid& aa)
        { return aa.MolMass() >= mol_mass; };

    // using std::any_of, std::all_of, std::none_of
    bool b_any_of = std::ranges::any_of(vec1, pred_mm);
    bool b_all_of = std::ranges::all_of(vec1, pred_mm);
    bool b_none_of = std::ranges::none_of(vec1, pred_mm);

    std::println("\nMolMass >= {:.2f}", mol_mass);
    std::println("b_any_of:  {:s}", b_any_of);
    std::println("b_all_of:  {:s}", b_all_of);
    std::println("b_none_of: {:s}", b_none_of);
}
}

```

Inside `Ch10_01_ex3()`'s for loop is the definition of unary lambda expression named `pred_mm()`. This expression returns true if `aa.MolMass()` is greater than captured value `mol_mass`. The next three statements within the for loop utilize lambda `pred_mm`. Execution of `std::ranges::any_of(vec1, pred_mm)` returns true if predicate `pred_mm()` is true for at least one `AminoAcid` object in `vec1`. The next statement, `std::ranges::all_of(vec1, pred_mm)`, returns true if `pred_mm()` is true for all elements in `vec1`. Lastly, the statement `std::ranges::none_of(vec1, pred_mm)` returns true if `pred_mm()` is true for none of the elements in `vec1`.

The pre-C++20 counterpart functions of those demonstrated in `Ch10_01_ex3()` are named `std::any_of()`, `std::all_of()`, and `std::none_of()`. These functions carry out their respective actions using the provided iterator arguments (e.g., `vec1.begin()` and `vec1.end()`). Here are the results for example `Ch10_01`:

```
----- Results for example Ch10_01 -----
```

```
----- Ch10_01_ex1() -----
```

```
vec1:
```



```

    10  20  30 -10  40  50  80  10  50 -60  10  80
   -90  10  80  90  60 120  90  80  60  10 -20 -70

```

```
count10: 5
```

```
count70: 0
```

```
mset1:
```

```

   -90 -70 -60 -20 -10  10  10  10  10  10  20  30
    40  50  50  60  60  80  80  80  80  90  90 120

```

```
count40: 1
```

```
count80: 2
```

```
----- Ch10_01_ex2() -----
```

```
deq1:
```

```

    10  20  30 -10  40  50  80  10  50 -60  10  80
   -90  10  80  90  60 120  90  80  60  10 -20 -70

```

```
num_neg: 5
```

```
num_div30: 8
```

```
----- Ch10_01_ex3() -----
```

```
vec1:
```

```

[Alanine      A|Ala| 89.094|NP]  [Arginine     R|Arg|174.203|B ]
[Asparagine   N|Asn|132.119|UP]  [AsparticAcid D|Asp|133.104|A ]
[Cysteine     C|Cys|121.154|NP]  [Glutamine    Q|Gln|146.146|UP]
[GlutamicAcid E|Glu|147.131|A ]  [Glycine      G|Gly| 75.067|NP]
[Histidine    H|His|155.156|B ]  [IsoLeucine   I|Ile|131.175|NP]
[Leucine      L|Leu|131.175|NP]  [Lysine       K|Lys|146.189|B ]
[Methionine   M|Met|149.208|NP]  [Phenylalanine F|Phe|165.192|NP]
[Proline      P|Pro|115.132|NP]  [Serine       S|Ser|105.093|UP]
[Threonine    T|Thr|119.119|UP]  [Tryptophan   W|Trp|204.228|NP]
[Tyrosine     Y|Tyr|181.191|UP]  [Valine       V|Val|117.148|NP]

```

```
MolMass >= 75.00)
```

```
b_any_of: true
```

```
b_all_of: true
```

```
b_none_of: false
```

```

MolMass >= 150.00)
b_any_of: true
b_all_of: false
b_none_of: false

MolMass >= 250.00)
b_any_of: false
b_all_of: false
b_none_of: true

```

Minimum and Maximum Algorithms

Searching a container for its minimum and/or maximum element is a frequent programming task. The STL provides several straightforward algorithms that expedite the finding of a minimum and/or maximum element. Listing 10-2-1 shows the source code for example `Ch10_02_ex1()`. The first code block in this function utilizes `RN::get_vector<double>(20)` to initialize `std::vector<double> vec1` with 20 random values (see `Common/RN.cpp` for the source code). In the next code block, execution of the statement `iter_min1 = std::min_element(vec1.begin(), vec1.end())` obtains an iterator to the smallest element in `vec1`. Similarly, execution of `iter_max1 = std::max_element(vec1.begin(), vec1.end())` returns an iterator to the largest element in `vec1`. The ensuing `std::println()` pair uses iterators `iter_min1` and `iter_max1` to print the actual values.

Listing 10-2-1. Example `Ch10_02 - Ch10_02_ex1()`

```

//-----
// Ch10_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch10_02.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "Nut.h"
#include "RN.h"

```

```

void Ch10_02_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:7.1f} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // initialize vector of doubles
    std::vector<double> vec1 = RN::get_vector<double>(20);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::min_element and std::max_element
    auto iter_min1 = std::min_element(vec1.begin(), vec1.end());
    auto iter_max1 = std::max_element(vec1.begin(), vec1.end());
    std::println("\n*iter_min1: {:.1f}", *iter_min1);
    std::println("*iter_max1: {:.1f}", *iter_max1);

    // using std::ranges::min_element and std::ranges::max_element
    auto iter_min2 = std::ranges::min_element(vec1);
    auto iter_max2 = std::ranges::max_element(vec1);
    std::println("\n*iter_min2: {:.1f}", *iter_min2);
    std::println("*iter_max2: {:.1f}", *iter_max2);

    // using std::minmax_element, returns std::pair<iter, iter>
    auto [iter_min3, iter_max3] = std::minmax_element(vec1.begin(),
    vec1.end());
    std::println("\n*iter_min3: {:.1f}", *iter_min3);
    std::println("*iter_max3: {:.1f}", *iter_max3);

    // using std::ranges::minmax_element
    // std::ranges::minmax_element returns std::ranges::min_max_result
    auto [iter_min4, iter_max4] = std::ranges::minmax_element(vec1);
    std::println("\n*iter_min4: {:.1f}", *iter_min4);
    std::println("*iter_max4: {:.1f}", *iter_max4);
}

```

The next code block demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::min_element(vec1)` and `std::ranges::max_element(vec1)`. These functions also return iterators to the minimum and maximum elements of `vec1`. For use cases where you need to determine both the minimum and maximum element of a container, you can exploit

`std::minmax_element(vec1.begin(), vec1.end())` as shown in `Ch10_02_ex1()`. This function returns a `std::pair` of iterators. Note that the code in `Ch10_02_ex1()` utilizes structured binding to extract the two iterators from the returned `std::pair`.

In the final code block of `Ch10_02_ex1()`, execution of the statement `[iter_min4, iter_max4] = std::ranges::minmax_element(vec1)` returns a structure of type `std::ranges::min_max_result`. Once again, structured binding is employed to extract iterators to the minimum and maximum elements. It warrants mentioning here that structure `std::ranges::min_max_result` contains two members named `min` and `max`. More about this shortly.

Example function `Ch10_02_ex2()`, shown in Listing 10-2-2, presents additional usages of `std::ranges::minmax_element()` using a container of type `std::vector<Nut>` (see Listing 5-4-1-1 for class `Nut`). The default comparison function used by `std::ranges::minmax_element()` and the other minimum/maximum finding functions of this section is `std::less`. For class `Nut`, the relational operators compare attribute `Nut::m_Name`.

Listing 10-2-2. Example `Ch10_02 - Ch10_02_ex2()`

```
void Ch10_02_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {1};

    // create vector of nuts
    std::vector<Nut> nuts = Nut::get_vector();
    MT::print_ctr(Nut::title_str().c_str(), nuts, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::minmax_element (operator<)
    // std::ranges::minmax_element returns std::ranges::min_max_result
    auto result1 = std::ranges::minmax_element(nuts);

    std::println("\nminmax_element using operator<");
    std::println("result1.min: {s}", result1.min->Name());
    std::println("result1.max: {s}", result1.max->Name());
}
```

```

// using std::ranges::minmax_element (fat compare)
auto cmp_fat = [](const Nut& nut1, const Nut& nut2)
    { return nut1.Fat() < nut2.Fat(); };

auto [result2_min, result2_max] = std::ranges::minmax_element(nuts,
    cmp_fat);

std::println("\nminmax_element using cmp_fat");
std::println("result2_min: {s} = {:.4f}",
    result2_min->Name(), result2_min->Fat());
std::println("result2_max: {s} = {:.4f}",
    result2_max->Name(), result2_max->Fat());

// using std::ranges::minmax_element (protein compare)
auto cmp_protein = [](const Nut& nut1, const Nut& nut2)
    { return nut1.Protein() < nut2.Protein(); };

auto [result3_min, result3_max] = std::ranges::minmax_element(nuts, cmp_
    protein);

std::println("\nminmax_element using cmp_protein");
std::println("result3_min: {s} = {:.4f}",
    result3_min->Name(), result3_min->Protein());
std::println("result3_max: {s} = {:.4f}",
    result3_max->Name(), result3_max->Protein());
}

```

In function `Ch10_02_ex2()`, execution of the statement `result1 = std::ranges::minmax_element(nuts)` returns a `std::ranges::minmax_element`. As mentioned earlier, this structure contains two members named `min` and `max`. Elements `min` and `max` can be references, copies, or iterators to elements in the target container. For the current example, `result1.min` and `result1.max` are iterators that point to the minimum and maximum elements in container `nuts`.

Minimum and maximum functions like `std::ranges::minmax_element()` define overloads that accept a user-defined binary compare function. Note in example function `Ch10_02_ex2()` the definition of lambda expression `cmp_fat()`. This expression returns `nut1.Fat() < nut2.Fat()`. Execution of the statement `[result2_min, result2_max] = std::ranges::minmax_element(nuts, cmp_fat)` obtains two iterators that point to the

smallest and largest elements of nuts based on fat content.² In the ensuing code block, lambda expression `cmp_protein()` is utilized to find the smallest and largest elements of nuts based on the amount of protein.

The C++ STL also includes minimum and maximum functions that return values instead of iterators. Listing 10-2-3 shows the source code for example `Ch10_02_ex3()`. This function spotlights the use of `std::ranges::min()` and `std::ranges::max()`. In the current example, these functions return values of type `double` instead of iterators. Function `Ch10_02_ex3()` also demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::minmax()`. Following execution of `result2 = std::ranges::minmax(vec1)`, `result2.min` and `result2.max` contain `vec1`'s minimum and maximum values.

Listing 10-2-3. Example `Ch10_02 - Ch10_02_ex3()`

```
void Ch10_02_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:7.1f} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // initialize vector of doubles
    std::vector<double> vec1 = RN::get_vector<double>(20);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::min and std::ranges::max
    auto min1 = std::ranges::min(vec1);
    auto max1 = std::ranges::max(vec1);
    std::println("\nmin1: {:.1f}", min1);
    std::println("max1: {:.1f}", max1);

    // using std::ranges::minmax
    auto result2 = std::ranges::minmax(vec1);
    std::println("\nresult.min: {:.1f}", result2.min);
    std::println("result.max: {:.1f}", result2.max);
}
```

²A `std::ranges` projection could also be used here. You'll learn how to do this in Chapter 14.

In situations where a container holds multiple instances of the same element, algorithm functions `std::min_element()`, `std::max_element()`, `std::ranges::min_element()`, and `std::ranges::max_element()` return an iterator to the first occurrence of that element in the target container. These functions also return an iterator that matches `end()` if the target container or range is empty. Here are the results for Ch10_02:

----- Results for example Ch10_02 -----

----- Ch10_02_ex1() -----

vec1:

```
  375.0  797.0  951.0  184.0  732.0  780.0  599.0  597.0  157.0  446.0
  156.0  100.0  59.0  460.0  867.0  334.0  602.0  143.0  709.0  651.0
```

*iter_min1: 59.0

*iter_max1: 951.0

*iter_min2: 59.0

*iter_max2: 951.0

*iter_min3: 59.0

*iter_max3: 951.0

*iter_min4: 59.0

*iter_max4: 951.0

----- Ch10_02_ex2() -----

Name	EnKj	EnKcal	Carbs	Fat	Protein
------	------	--------	-------	-----	---------

[Almond	2423	579	21.60	49.90	21.20]
---------	------	-----	-------	-------	--------

[Cashew	553	132	30.19	43.85	18.22]
---------	-----	-----	-------	-------	--------

[Chesnut	820	196	28.00	1.30	1.60]
----------	-----	-----	-------	------	-------

[Hazelnut	2629	628	16.70	60.75	15.95]
-----------	------	-----	-------	-------	--------

[Pecan	2889	690	13.86	71.97	9.17]
--------	------	-----	-------	-------	-------

[Pistachio	2351	562	27.51	45.39	20.27]
------------	------	-----	-------	-------	--------

[Walnut	2738	654	13.71	65.21	15.23]
---------	------	-----	-------	-------	--------

minmax_element using operator<

```
result1.min: Almond
```

```
result1.max: Walnut
```

```
minmax_element using cmp_fat
```

```
result2_min: Chesnut = 1.3000
```

```
result2_max: Pecan = 71.9700
```

```
minmax_element using cmp_protein
```

```
result3_min: Chesnut = 1.6000
```

```
result3_max: Almond = 21.2000
```

```
----- Ch10_02_ex3() -----
```

```
vec1:
```

```
  375.0  797.0  951.0  184.0  732.0  780.0  599.0  597.0  157.0  446.0
  156.0  100.0   59.0  460.0  867.0  334.0  602.0  143.0  709.0  651.0
```

```
min1: 59.0
```

```
max1: 951.0
```

```
result.min: 59.0
```

```
result.max: 951.0
```

Copy Algorithms

Most applications need to copy elements from one container to another. The STL includes several algorithms that simplify this task. Listing 10-3-1 shows the source code for example function `Ch10_03_ex1()`. The opening code block of this function initializes `std::array<int, 10> arr1`. In the next code block, `std::vector<int> vec1(arr1.size())` is constructed first. The subsequent statement, `std::copy(arr1.begin(), arr1.end(), vec1.begin())`, copies all elements between `[arr1.begin(), arr1.end())` to `vec1.begin()`. Exercise care when using this form of `std::copy()` or `std::ranges::copy()`. You *must* ensure that the destination is large enough to hold all of the elements specified by the source iterators.

Listing 10-3-1. Example Ch10_03 – Ch10_03_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch10_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <array>
#include <iterator>
#include <iostream>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch10_03.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "Rect.h"

void Ch10_03_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt "{:d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {15};

    // create array of ints
    std::array<int, 10> arr1 {10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100};
    MT::print_ctr("\narr1: ", arr1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::copy - destination iterator
    std::vector<int> vec1(arr1.size());
    std::copy(arr1.begin(), arr1.end(), vec1.begin());
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1: ", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::copy - std::back_inserter
    std::vector<int> vec2 {-10, 0};
    std::copy(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), std::back_inserter(vec2));
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2: ", vec2, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::copy - different data types
    std::vector<double> vec3 {};
    std::ranges::copy(vec2, std::back_inserter(vec3));
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec3: ", vec3, "{:.1f} ", epl_max);
}
```

```

// using std::ranges::copy
std::vector<double> vec4(vec3.size());
std::ranges::copy(vec3, vec4.begin());
MT::print_ctr("\nvec4: ", vec4, "{:.1f} ", epl_max);
}

```

The subsequent code block utilizes `std::copy(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), std::back_inserter(vec2))` to copy all elements in `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())` to `vec2`. This form of `std::copy()` is somewhat safer since `std::back_inserter()` exploits `std::vector::push_back()` to add new elements to `vec2`. The third code block in `Ch10_03_ex1()` utilizes `std::ranges::copy(vec2, std::back_inserter(vec3))` to copy all elements from `vec2` to `vec3`. Note here that `std::vector<int> vec2` and `std::vector<double> vec3` are different types. The copy works since values of type `int` can be safely converted to doubles.

The next example function, named `Ch10_03_ex2()`, highlights the use of `std::copy_if()`. The code for this example, shown in Listing 10-3-2, opens with an anonymous namespace that contains an initializer list of `Rect` objects (see Listing 5-3-2-1 for class `Rect`). The opening code block of `Ch10_03_ex2()` instantiates `std::vector<Rect1> vec1` using this initializer list. Next is the definition of lambda expression `copy_pred`, which returns true if `rect.area()` is between `[500,000, 4,000,000]`.

Listing 10-3-2. Example Ch10_03 – Ch10_03_ex2()

```

namespace
{
    std::initializer_list<Rect> s_Rects
    {
        {0, 0, 640, 480},    {0, 0, 800, 600},
        {0, 0, 1024, 768}, {0, 0, 1280, 1024},
        {0, 0, 1600, 1200}, {0, 0, 1920, 1080},
        {0, 0, 3840, 2160}, {0, 0, 7680, 4320},
    };
}

```

```

void Ch10_03_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt {"{} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};

    // initialize vector of Rects
    std::vector<Rect> vec1 {s_Rects};
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (original values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    //copy_if predicate
    auto copy_pred = [](const Rect& rect)
        { return rect.area() >= 500'000 && rect.area() <= 4'000'000; };

    // using std::copy_if
    std::vector<Rect> vec2 {};
    std::copy_if(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), std::back_inserter(vec2),
        copy_pred);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (after copy_if):\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::copy_if
    std::vector<Rect> vec3 {};
    std::ranges::copy_if(vec1, std::back_inserter(vec3), copy_pred);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec3 (after ranges::copy_if):\n", vec3, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Following the definition of `copy_pred()` is the statement `std::copy_if(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), std::back_inserter(vec2), copy_pred)`. During execution of this statement, `copy_pred()` is applied to each `Rect` element in `vec1`. If `copy_pred()` returns true for an element, that `Rect` element is copied to `vec2`. The next code block carries out the same operation but utilizes `std::ranges::copy_if()` instead of `std::copy_if()`.

Function `Ch10_03_ex3()`, shown in Listing 10-3-3, demonstrates the use of `std::copy_n()` and `std::ranges::copy_n()`. Unlike the copy functions that you have seen thus far, the `copy_n()` variants copy exactly `n` elements from the specified source to the target. Note that `Ch10_03_ex3()` utilizes `num_elem = std::distance(iter_beg, vec1.end()) - 1` to calculate an arbitrary number of elements to copy.

Listing 10-3-3. Example Ch10_03 – Ch10_03_ex3()

```

void Ch10_03_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt {"{} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};

    std::vector<Rect> vec1 {s_Rects};
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (original values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // calculation of iter_beg and num_elem skips first and last
    // elements of vec1
    auto iter_beg = vec1.begin() + 1;
    auto num_elem = std::distance(iter_beg, vec1.end() - 1);
    std::println("\nnum_elem = {}", num_elem);

    // using std::copy_n (copies n elements starting from specified
    // iterator)
    std::vector<Rect> vec2 {};
    std::copy_n(iter_beg, num_elem, std::back_inserter(vec2));
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (after copy_n):\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::copy_n (copies n elements starting from specified
    // iterator)
    std::vector<Rect> vec3 {};
    std::ranges::copy_n(iter_beg, num_elem, std::back_inserter(vec3));
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec3 (after ranges::copy_n):\n", vec3, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

The STL also includes algorithms `std::copy_backward()` and `std::ranges::copy_backward()`. These functions copy elements from the source to the destination in reverse order. Here are the results for example Ch10_03:

```
----- Results for example Ch10_03 -----
```

```
----- Ch10_03_ex1() -----
```

```
arr1: 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100
```

```
vec1: 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100
```

```
vec2: -10 0 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100
```

```
vec3: -10.0 0.0 10.0 20.0 30.0 40.0 50.0 60.0 70.0 80.0 90.0 100.0
```

```
vec4: -10.0 0.0 10.0 20.0 30.0 40.0 50.0 60.0 70.0 80.0 90.0 100.0
```

```
----- Ch10_03_ex2() -----
```

```
vec1 (original values):
```

```
[(0, 0, 640, 480) 307200] [(0, 0, 800, 600) 480000]
```

```
[(0, 0, 1024, 768) 786432] [(0, 0, 1280, 1024) 1310720]
```

```
[(0, 0, 1600, 1200) 1920000] [(0, 0, 1920, 1080) 2073600]
```

```
[(0, 0, 3840, 2160) 8294400] [(0, 0, 7680, 4320) 33177600]
```

```
vec2 (after copy_if):
```

```
[(0, 0, 1024, 768) 786432] [(0, 0, 1280, 1024) 1310720]
```

```
[(0, 0, 1600, 1200) 1920000] [(0, 0, 1920, 1080) 2073600]
```

```
vec3 (after ranges::copy_if):
```

```
[(0, 0, 1024, 768) 786432] [(0, 0, 1280, 1024) 1310720]
```

```
[(0, 0, 1600, 1200) 1920000] [(0, 0, 1920, 1080) 2073600]
```

```
----- Ch10_03_ex3() -----
```

```
vec1 (original values):
```

```
[(0, 0, 640, 480) 307200] [(0, 0, 800, 600) 480000]
```

```
[(0, 0, 1024, 768) 786432] [(0, 0, 1280, 1024) 1310720]
```

```
[(0, 0, 1600, 1200) 1920000] [(0, 0, 1920, 1080) 2073600]
```

```
[(0, 0, 3840, 2160) 8294400] [(0, 0, 7680, 4320) 33177600]
```

```
num_elem = 6
```

```
vec2 (after copy_n):
```

```
[(0, 0, 800, 600) 480000] [(0, 0, 1024, 768) 786432]
```

```
[(0, 0, 1280, 1024) 1310720] [(0, 0, 1600, 1200) 1920000]
```

```
[(0, 0, 1920, 1080) 2073600] [(0, 0, 3840, 2160) 8294400]
```

```
vec3 (after ranges::copy_n):
```

```
[(0, 0, 800, 600) 480000] [(0, 0, 1024, 768) 786432]
```

```
[(0, 0, 1280, 1024) 1310720] [(0, 0, 1600, 1200) 1920000]
```

```
[(0, 0, 1920, 1080) 2073600] [(0, 0, 3840, 2160) 8294400]
```

Move Algorithms

In C++, `std::move()` is a helper function that facilitates the transfer of an object's resources to another object without performing a copy operation. In Chapter 1, you saw an example that utilized `std::move()` to move an object of type `Image` (see example Ch01_04). Listing 10-4-1 shows the source code for example Ch10_04_ex1(). This function exploits `std::move()` to move an entire container of objects. It also highlights how to move individual objects within a container.

Listing 10-4-1. Example Ch10_04 – Ch10_04_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch10_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch10_04.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "Image.h"

void Ch10_04_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt {"{} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {1};

    std::vector<Image> vec1
    {
        {640, 480}, {800, 600}, {1024, 768}, {1280, 1024},
        {1600, 1200}, {1920, 1080}, {3840, 2160}, {7680, 4320},
    };

    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::move - moves entire container
    std::vector<Image> vec2 {std::move(vec1)};
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (initial values):\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);
}
```

```

// using std::move - moves container's elements
std::vector<Image> vec3 {};

for (auto& im : vec2)
    vec3.push_back(std::move(im));

MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (after std::move):\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec3 (after std::move):\n", vec3, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Function `Ch10_04_ex1()` commences its execution with the definition and initialization of `std::vector<Image> vec1`. Following the call to `MT::print_ctr()` is the statement `std::vector<Image> vec2 {std::move(vec1)}`, whose execution moves container `vec1` including all of its `Image` elements to `vec2`. Following execution of this statement, `vec2` contains eight objects of type `Image`. The state of `vec1` is undefined but prepared for any requisite processing by its destructor.

In the subsequent code block, `Ch10_04_ex1()` utilizes a range for loop to explicitly move each `Image` element in `vec2` to `vec3`. If you scan ahead to the results section, note that `vec1` contains eight default-initialized `Image` objects following execution of the range for loop. The reason for this is that the move assignment operator `Image::operator==(Image&& im)` (see Listing 1-4-2) resets the source `Image` following a move so that it will be properly destroyed when `Image::~Image()` gets executed. Also, note in the results section that `vec2` now contains the eight `Image` objects that were moved from `vec1`.

Listing 10-4-2 shows the source code for example `Ch10_04_ex2()`. This function illustrates the use of `std::swap_ranges()` and `std::ranges::swap_ranges()`. In `Ch10_04_ex2()`, execution of `std::swap_ranges(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), vec2.begin())` swaps (exchanges) the `Image` elements of `vec1` and `vec2`. It warrants mentioning that the behavior of `std::swap_ranges()` is undefined if an element swap is not possible due to an invalid iterator argument. The last code block of `Ch10_04_ex2()` exploits `std::ranges::swap_ranges(vec1, vec3)` to swap the elements of `vec1` and `vec3`.

Listing 10-4-2. Example Ch10_04 – Ch10_04_ex2()

```

void Ch10_04_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt {"{} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {1};

```

```

std::vector<Image> vec1 {{10, 20}, {30, 40}, {50, 60}, {70, 80}};
std::vector<Image> vec2 {{100, 200}, {300, 400}, {500, 600},
{700, 800}};
std::vector<Image> vec3 {{1000, 2000}, {3000, 4000},
{5000, 6000}, {7000, 8000}};

// using std::swap_ranges
std::println("\nBefore std::swap_ranges");
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, ep1_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec2:\n", vec2, fmt, ep1_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec3:\n", vec3, fmt, ep1_max);

std::swap_ranges(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), vec2.begin());

std::println("\nAfter std::swap_ranges");
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, ep1_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec2:\n", vec2, fmt, ep1_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec3:\n", vec3, fmt, ep1_max);

// using std::ranges::swap_ranges
std::ranges::swap_ranges(vec1, vec3);
std::println("\nAfter std::ranges::swap_ranges");
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, ep1_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec2:\n", vec2, fmt, ep1_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec3:\n", vec3, fmt, ep1_max);
}

```

The results for example Ch10_04 follow this paragraph. This output includes minor edits (the output generated by the `std::println()` statements in `Image::~Image()` was removed) to improve readability.

```

----- Results for example Ch10_04 -----
----- Ch10_04_ex1() -----
vec1 (initial values):
[ 640  480  307200 0x0000020DB28C00A0]
[ 800  600  480000 0x0000020DB290B0C0]
[ 1024 768  786432 0x0000020DB2980400]

```



```
[ 1280 1024 1310720 0x0000020DB2AC2060]
[ 1600 1200 1920000 0x0000020DB2C17060]
[ 1920 1080 2073600 0x0000020DB2DF9060]
[ 3840 2160 8294400 0x0000020DB3001060]
[ 7680 4320 33177600 0x0000020DB37FC060]
```

vec2 (initial values):

```
[ 640 480 307200 0x0000020DB28C00A0]
[ 800 600 480000 0x0000020DB290B0C0]
[ 1024 768 786432 0x0000020DB2980400]
[ 1280 1024 1310720 0x0000020DB2AC2060]
[ 1600 1200 1920000 0x0000020DB2C17060]
[ 1920 1080 2073600 0x0000020DB2DF9060]
[ 3840 2160 8294400 0x0000020DB3001060]
[ 7680 4320 33177600 0x0000020DB37FC060]
```

vec2 (after std::move):

```
[ 0 0 0 0x0000000000000000]
[ 0 0 0 0x0000000000000000]
[ 0 0 0 0x0000000000000000]
[ 0 0 0 0x0000000000000000]
[ 0 0 0 0x0000000000000000]
[ 0 0 0 0x0000000000000000]
[ 0 0 0 0x0000000000000000]
[ 0 0 0 0x0000000000000000]
```

vec3 (after std::move):

```
[ 640 480 307200 0x0000020DB28C00A0]
[ 800 600 480000 0x0000020DB290B0C0]
[ 1024 768 786432 0x0000020DB2980400]
[ 1280 1024 1310720 0x0000020DB2AC2060]
[ 1600 1200 1920000 0x0000020DB2C17060]
[ 1920 1080 2073600 0x0000020DB2DF9060]
[ 3840 2160 8294400 0x0000020DB3001060]
[ 7680 4320 33177600 0x0000020DB37FC060]
```

----- Ch10_04_ex2() -----

Before std::swap_ranges

vec1:

```
[ 10  20    200 0x0000020DAF9F5D70]
[ 30  40   1200 0x0000020DAFAE1690]
[ 50  60   3000 0x0000020DAFAE1B50]
[ 70  80   5600 0x0000020DAFAE2720]
```

vec2:

```
[ 100 200  20000 0x0000020DAFA83BA0]
[ 300 400 120000 0x0000020DAFA889E0]
[ 500 600 300000 0x0000020DAFB4F480]
[ 700 800 560000 0x0000020DB28C00A0]
```

vec3:

```
[ 1000 2000 2000000 0x0000020DB260E060]
[ 3000 4000 12000000 0x0000020DB6045060]
[ 5000 6000 30000000 0x0000020DB6BCE060]
[ 7000 8000 56000000 0x0000020DB8872060]
```

After std::swap_ranges

vec1:

```
[ 100 200  20000 0x0000020DAFA83BA0]
[ 300 400 120000 0x0000020DAFA889E0]
[ 500 600 300000 0x0000020DAFB4F480]
[ 700 800 560000 0x0000020DB28C00A0]
```

vec2:

```
[ 10  20    200 0x0000020DAF9F5D70]
[ 30  40   1200 0x0000020DAFAE1690]
[ 50  60   3000 0x0000020DAFAE1B50]
[ 70  80   5600 0x0000020DAFAE2720]
```

vec3:

```
[ 1000 2000 2000000 0x0000020DB260E060]
[ 3000 4000 12000000 0x0000020DB6045060]
```

```
[ 5000  6000 30000000 0x0000020DB6BCE060]
[ 7000  8000 56000000 0x0000020DB8872060]
```

After `std::ranges::swap_ranges`

`vec1:`

```
[ 1000  2000  2000000 0x0000020DB260E060]
[ 3000  4000 12000000 0x0000020DB6045060]
[ 5000  6000 30000000 0x0000020DB6BCE060]
[ 7000  8000 56000000 0x0000020DB8872060]
```

`vec2:`

```
[  10   20   200 0x0000020DAF9F5D70]
[  30   40  1200 0x0000020DAFAE1690]
[  50   60  3000 0x0000020DAFAE1B50]
[  70   80  5600 0x0000020DAFAE2720]
```

`vec3:`

```
[  100  200  20000 0x0000020DAFA83BA0]
[  300  400  120000 0x0000020DAFA889E0]
[  500  600  300000 0x0000020DAFB4F480]
[  700  800  560000 0x0000020DB28C00A0]
```

Reversal Algorithms

Reversing the order of a container's elements is a routine programming task for many applications. The STL provides several algorithms that you can use to carry out this action. Listing 10-5-1 shows the source code for `Ch10_05_ex1()`. This function illustrates the use of algorithms `std::reverse()` and `std::ranges::reverse()`. These algorithms perform in-place reversals. Note in the code that `std::reverse()` requires two iterator arguments that specify the range. The range for `std::ranges::reverse()` can be specified using a container name. The iterator arguments supplied to `std::reverse()` must be bidirectional, which means that the elements are swappable. For `std::ranges::reverse()`, elements of the specified container must also be swappable.

Listing 10-5-1. Example Ch10_05 – Ch10_05_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch10_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <string>
#include <deque>
#include "Ch10_05.h"
#include "MT.h"

namespace
{
    const std::initializer_list<std::string> s_Strings {"one", "two",
        "three",
        "four", "five", "six", "seven", "eight", "nine", "ten", "eleven",
        "twelve"};
}

void Ch10_05_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt {"{:s} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {15};

    // using std::reverse
    std::deque<std::string> deq1 {s_Strings};
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (initial values):\n", deq1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::reverse(deq1.begin(), deq1.end());
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after std::reverse):\n", deq1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::reverse
    std::deque<std::string> deq2 {s_Strings};
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq2 (initial values):\n", deq2, fmt, epl_max);
    std::ranges::reverse(deq2);
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq2 (after std::ranges::reverse):\n", deq2, fmt,
        epl_max);
}

```

The STL also includes reverse-copy algorithms named `std::reverse_copy()` and `std::ranges::reverse_copy()`. The use of these functions is demonstrated in `Ch10_05_ex2()`, whose code is shown in Listing 10-5-2. Execution of `std::reverse_copy(deq1.begin(), deq1.end(), std::back_inserter(deq2))` copies elements between `[deq1.begin(), deq1.end())` in reverse order and stores them in `deq2`. Execution of the statement `std::ranges::reverse_copy(deq1, std::back_inserter(deq3))` performs the same action.

Listing 10-5-2. Example Ch10_05 - Ch10_05_ex2()

```
void Ch10_05_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt {"{:s} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {15};

    std::deque<std::string> deq1 {s_Strings};
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (initial values):\n", deq1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::reverse_copy
    std::deque<std::string> deq2 {};
    std::reverse_copy(deq1.begin(), deq1.end(), std::back_inserter(deq2));
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq2 (after std::reverse_copy):\n", deq2, fmt,
        epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::reverse_copy
    std::deque<std::string> deq3 {};
    std::ranges::reverse_copy(deq1, std::back_inserter(deq3));
    MT::print_ctr("\ndeq3 (after std::ranges::reverse_copy):\n", deq3,
        fmt, epl_max);
}
```

Like their non-copy counterparts, algorithms `std::reverse_copy()` and `std::ranges::reverse_copy()` require ranges that support bidirectional iterators. Also, the source and destination ranges must not overlap. The STL defines other order-altering algorithms, including rotates and shifts. You'll learn about these algorithms in Chapter 13. Here are the results for example `Ch10_05`:

```
----- Results for example Ch10_05 -----  
  
----- Ch10_05_ex1() -----  
  
deq1 (initial values):  
one two three four five six seven eight nine ten eleven twelve  
  
deq1 (after std::reverse):  
twelve eleven ten nine eight seven six five four three two one  
  
deq2 (initial values):  
one two three four five six seven eight nine ten eleven twelve  
  
deq2 (after std::ranges::reverse):  
twelve eleven ten nine eight seven six five four three two one  
  
----- Ch10_05_ex2() -----  
  
deq1 (initial values):  
one two three four five six seven eight nine ten eleven twelve  
  
deq2 (after std::reverse_copy):  
twelve eleven ten nine eight seven six five four three two one  
  
deq3 (after std::ranges::reverse_copy):  
twelve eleven ten nine eight seven six five four three two one
```

Replacement Algorithms

For many applications, a container's elements are not static. Replacements are often necessary to satisfy a functional requirement. The next source code example, named Ch10_05, spotlights the use of several STL algorithm functions that replace one or more occurrences of an element within a container.

Listing 10-6-1 shows the source code for Ch10_06_01(). This example function demonstrates the use of `std::replace()` and `std::ranges::replace()`. Following the definition and initialization of `std::deque<std::string> deq1`, the statement `std::replace(deq1.begin(), deq1.end(), "five"s, "5"s)` replaces all instances of

`std::string("five")` in `deq1` with `std::string("5")`. Note the use of literal suffixes in the call to `std::replace()`. These are required since the old and new value types must match the object type of container `deq1`.

Listing 10-6-1. Example Ch10_06 – Ch10_06_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch10_06_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <deque>
#include <format>
#include <numeric>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch10_06.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "MTH.h"

using namespace std::string_literals;

namespace
{
    const std::initializer_list<std::string> s_Strings {"one", "two", "three",
        "four", "five", "six", "seven", "eight", "nine", "ten", "eleven", "twelve"};
}

void Ch10_06_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt "{:8s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {6};

    // initialize deque of strings
    std::deque<std::string> deq1 {s_Strings};
    MT::print_ctr("deq1 (initial values):\n", deq1, fmt, epl_max);
}
```

```

// using std::replace
std::replace(deq1.begin(), deq1.end(), "five"s, "5"s);
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after std::replace):\n", deq1, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::replace
std::deque<std::string> deq2 {deq1};
deq2.emplace_back("ten");
deq2.emplace_front("ten");
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq2 (initial values):\n", deq2, fmt, epl_max);

std::ranges::replace(deq2, "ten"s, "10"s);
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq2 (after std::ranges::replace):\n", deq2, fmt,
epl_max);
}

```

In `Ch10_06_ex1()`'s second code block, execution of `std::ranges::replace(deq2, "ten"s, "10"s)` replaces all instances of `std::string("ten")` in `deq2` with `std::string(s, "10")`.

Example function `Ch10_06_ex2()`, shown in Listing 10-6-2-1, opens with the definition of `std::vector<ll_t> vec1(n)`. In this expression, `ll_t` is an alias for `long long`. Also, note here that the size of `vec1` is `n`.

Listing 10-6-2-1. Example `Ch10_06 - Ch10_06_ex2()`

```

void Ch10_06_ex2()
{
    using ll_t = long long;
    constexpr size_t n {40};
    const char* fmt {"{:5d} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // using std::iota
    std::vector<ll_t> vec1(n);
    std::iota(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0);
    MT::print_ctr("vec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::replace_if
    std::replace_if(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), MTH::is_prime<ll_t>, -999);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after std::replace_if):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
}

```



```

// using std::ranges::iota (C++23)
std::vector<ll_t> vec2(n);

#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_iota
    std::ranges::iota(vec2, 0);
#else
    std::iota(vec2.begin(), vec2.end(), 0);
#endif
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (initial values):\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::replace_if
std::ranges::replace_if(vec2, MTH::is_prime<ll_t>, -999);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (after std::ranges::replace_if):\n", vec2,
    fmt, epl_max);
std::println("\nstd::ranges::iota() requires C++23");
}

```

Execution of the next statement, `std::iota(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0)`, fills elements `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())` with successive values starting from zero. In the current example, `std::iota()` carries out the following action:

```

ll_t value = 0;
for (auto iter = vec1.begin(); iter != vec1.end(); ++iter, ++value)
    *iter = value;

```

The next code block of `Ch10_06_ex2()` utilizes `std::replace_if(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), MTH::is_prime<ll_t>, -999)` to replace each prime number in `vec1` with `-999`. Template function `MTH::is_prime()`, shown in Listing 10-6-2-2, returns true if argument `x` is a prime number; otherwise, it returns false.

Listing 10-6-2-2. Example Ch10_06 – `MTH::is_prime()`

```

template <typename T> requires std::integral<T>
bool is_prime(T x)
{
    static_assert(std::is_same_v<bool, T> == false,
        "invalid use of type bool");
}

```

```

    if (x == 2 || x == 3)
        return true;

    if ((x % 2 == 0) || (x % 3 == 0) || (x <= 1))
        return false;

    for (T i = 5; i * i <= x; i += 6)
    {
        if ((x % i == 0) || (x % (i + 2) == 0))
            return false;
    }

    return true;
}

```

The definition of `MTH::is_prime()` utilizes the C++ template constraint `requires std::integral<T>` to preclude the use of this template function with a non-integral type. The `static_assert` statement is included since type `bool` is an integral type.

The next two code blocks in `Ch10_06_ex2()` demonstrate the use of `std::ranges::iota()` (C++23) and `std::ranges::replace_if()`. Execution of these functions yields the same result as their non-`std::ranges` counterparts.

In Listing 10-6-3, `Ch10_06_ex3()` employs `std::replace_copy(deq1.begin(), deq1.end(), std::back_inserter(deq2), "five"s, "5"s)` to copy the elements `[deq1.begin(), deq1.end())` from `deq1` to `deq2`; it also replaces each occurrence of `std::string("five")` with `std::string("5")`. The subsequent code block in `Ch10_06_ex3()` utilizes `std::ranges::replace_copy(deq1, std::back_inserter(deq3), "five"s, "5"s)` to perform the same operation.

Listing 10-6-3. Example Ch10_06 – Ch10_06_ex3()

```

void Ch10_06_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt {"{:8s} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {6};

    // initialize deque of strings
    std::deque<std::string> deq1 {s_Strings};
    MT::print_ctr("deq1 (initial values):\n", deq1, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

```

// using std::replace_copy
std::deque<std::string> deq2 {};
std::replace_copy(deq1.begin(), deq1.end(), std::back_inserter(deq2),
    "five"s, "5"s);
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq2 (after std::replace_copy):\n", deq2, fmt,
    epl_max);

// using std::ranges::replace_copy
std::deque<std::string> deq3 {};
std::ranges::replace_copy(deq1, std::back_inserter(deq3),
    "five"s, "5"s);
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq3 (after std::ranges::replace_copy):\n", deq3,
    fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Listing 10-6-4 shows the final example function of Ch10_06, which is named Ch10_06_ex4(). In this function, execution of the statement `std::ranges::replace_copy_if(vec1, std::back_inserter(vec2), MTH::is_prime<ll_t>, -999)` copies elements `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())` from `vec1` to `vec2` and replaces each prime number in `vec2` with `-999`; `vec1` is not modified.

Listing 10-6-4. Example Ch10_06 – Ch10_06_ex4()

```

void Ch10_06_ex4()
{
    using ll_t = long long;
    constexpr size_t n {40};
    const char* fmt {"{:5d} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // initialize vector of integers
    std::vector<ll_t> vec1(n);

#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_iota
    std::ranges::iota(vec1, 0);
#else
    std::iota(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0);
#endif
}

```

```

MT::print_ctr("vec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::replace_copy_if
std::vector<ll_t> vec2 {};

std::ranges::replace_copy_if(vec1, std::back_inserter(vec2),
    MTH::is_prime<ll_t>, -999);

MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (after std::ranges::replace_copy_if):\n",
    vec2, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Here are the results for example Ch10_06:

```

----- Results for example Ch10_06 -----
----- Ch10_06_ex1() -----
deq1 (initial values):
one      two      three   four    five    six
seven    eight   nine    ten     eleven  twelve

deq1 (after std::replace):
one      two      three   four    5       six
seven    eight   nine    ten     eleven  twelve

deq2 (initial values):
ten      one      two     three   four    5
six      seven   eight   nine    ten     eleven
twelve   ten

deq2 (after std::ranges::replace):
10       one      two     three   four    5
six      seven   eight   nine    10     eleven
twelve   10

----- Ch10_06_ex2() -----
vec1 (initial values):
    0    1    2    3    4    5    6    7    8    9
  10   11   12   13   14   15   16   17   18   19

```

```

20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29
30  31  32  33  34  35  36  37  38  39

```

vec1 (after `std::replace_if`):

```

 0   1 -999 -999   4 -999   6 -999   8   9
10 -999  12 -999  14  15  16 -999  18 -999
20  21  22 -999  24  25  26  27  28 -999
30 -999  32  33  34  35  36 -999  38  39

```

vec2 (initial values):

```

 0   1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   9
10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19
20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29
30  31  32  33  34  35  36  37  38  39

```

vec2 (after `std::ranges::replace_if`):

```

 0   1 -999 -999   4 -999   6 -999   8   9
10 -999  12 -999  14  15  16 -999  18 -999
20  21  22 -999  24  25  26  27  28 -999
30 -999  32  33  34  35  36 -999  38  39

```

`std::ranges::iota()` requires C++23

----- Ch10_06_ex3() -----

deq1 (initial values):

```

one    two    three   four    five    six
seven  eight   nine    ten     eleven  twelve

```

deq2 (after `std::replace_copy`):

```

one    two    three   four    5      six
seven  eight   nine    ten     eleven  twelve

```

deq3 (after `std::ranges::replace_copy`):

```

one    two    three   four    5      six
seven  eight   nine    ten     eleven  twelve

```

```
----- Ch10_06_ex4() -----
```

```
vec1 (initial values):
```

```
  0   1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   9
10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19
20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29
30  31  32  33  34  35  36  37  38  39
```

```
vec2 (after std::ranges::replace_copy_if):
```

```
  0   1 -999 -999   4 -999   6 -999   8   9
10 -999  12 -999  14  15  16 -999  18 -999
20  21  22 -999  24  25  26  27  28 -999
30 -999  32  33  34  35  36 -999  38  39
```

Removal Algorithms

For many applications, it is often necessary to remove (or erase) elements from a container. In Chapters 3 and 4, you saw examples of the so-called erase-remove idiom that removed elements from a `std::vector` and `std::deque` (see examples Ch03_03 and Ch04_01). The examples of this section demonstrate additional erase-remove techniques including template usages that carry out element removals using different template types.

Listing 10-7-1 shows the source code for example Ch10_07_ex1(). This example demonstrates the proper use of the erase-remove idiom using `std::remove_if()`. Near the top of Listing 10-7-1 is the definition of a template function named `ch10_remove_if_and_erase()`. This template function requires argument `T& ctr` to be a sequence container that defines `ctr.erase()`.

Listing 10-7-1. Example Ch10_07 – Ch10_07_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch10_07_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <deque>
#include <forward_list>
```

```

#include <list>
#include <numeric>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch10_07.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "MTH.h"

template <class T>
void ch10_remove_if_and_erase(const char* msg, T& ctr)
{
    const char* fmt "{:4d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {15};

    // using std::remove_if and ctr.erase (erase-remove idiom)
    std::print("{:s} - before std::remove_if", msg);
    MTH::print_ctr("\n", ctr, fmt, epl_max);

    auto iter = std::remove_if(ctr.begin(), ctr.end(),
        MTH::is_prime<typename T::value_type>);

    auto num_erased = std::distance(iter, ctr.end());

    ctr.erase(iter, ctr.end());

    std::print("{:s} - after ctr.erase", msg);
    MTH::print_ctr("\n", ctr, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("num_erased: {:d}", num_erased);
}

void Ch10_07_ex1()
{
    using ll_t = long long;
    constexpr size_t n {30};

    // using ch10_remove_and_erase_if with different sequence containers
    std::vector<ll_t> vec1(n);
    std::iota(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0);
    ch10_remove_if_and_erase("\nvec1", vec1);
}

```

```

std::deque<ll_t> deq1(n);
std::iota(deq1.begin(), deq1.end(), n);
ch10_remove_if_and_erase("\ndeq1", deq1);

std::list<ll_t> list1(n);
std::iota(list1.begin(), list1.end(), n * 2);
ch10_remove_if_and_erase("\nlist1", list1);
}

```

In template function `ch10_remove_if_and_erase()`, execution of the statement `iter = std::remove_if(ctr.begin(), ctr.end(), MTH::is_prime<typename T::value_type>)` “removes” all prime numbers from container `ctr` (see Listing 10-6-2-2 for `MTH::is_prime()`’s source code). Recall from the discussions in Chapters 3 and 4 that `std::remove()` doesn’t actually remove any elements from the specified container; it merely shifts retained elements toward the container’s front. Execution of `std::remove_if()` is almost the same except that predicate function `MTH::is_prime()` determines which elements to remove (true) or retain (false). Note that `std::remove_if()` returns an “end” iterator. This iterator can be used to calculate the number of removed elements as demonstrated by the statement `num_erased = std::distance(iter, ctr.end())`.

The iterator returned by `remove_if()` is also needed to actually delete the removed elements from `ctr`. Execution of the statement `ctr.erase(iter, ctr.end())` carries out this action. Figure 10-2 illustrates the erase-remove idiom actions of template function `ch10_remove_if_erase()` in greater detail. The element movements shown in this figure are fundamentally the same as the ones you saw in Chapter 3 (see Figure 3-5). It’s important to fully understand the erase-remove idiom since its use is ubiquitous in pre-C++20 code. Example function `Ch10_07_ex1()`, also shown in Listing 10-7-1, exercises `ch10_remove_if_and_erase()` using various container types.

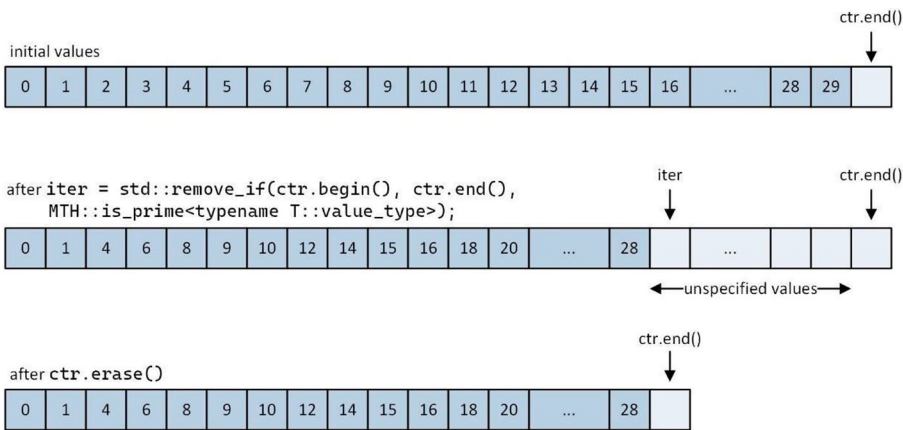


Figure 10-2. Execution of erase-remove idiom

Example function `Ch10_07_ex2()`, shown in Listing 10-7-2, utilizes template function `ch10_erase_if()` to remove elements from various container types. In `ch10_erase_if()`, execution of the statement `num_erased = std::erase_if(ctr, MTH::is_prime<typename T::value_type>)` erases all prime numbers from container `ctr`. No additional STL algorithm calls are necessary. The STL defines non-member overloads of `std::erase_if()` (and `std::erase()`) for all sequence containers, associative containers, and unordered associative containers. For new code, you should favor the use of either `std::erase()` or `std::erase_if()` instead of the pre-C++20 erase-remove idiom that requires explicit coding of distinct remove and erase functions.

Listing 10-7-2. Example Ch10_07 – Ch10_07_ex2()

```
template <class T> requires std::forward_iterator<typename T::iterator>
void ch10_erase_if(const char* msg, T& ctr)
{
    const char* fmt {"{:4d} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {15};

    // using std::erase_if (C++20)
    std::print("{:s} - before std::erase_if", msg);
    MTH::print_ctr("\n", ctr, fmt, epl_max);

    auto num_erased = std::erase_if(ctr, MTH::is_prime<typename
    T::value_type>);
}
```

```

    std::print("{:s} - after std::erase_if", msg);
    MT::print_ctr("\n", ctr, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("num_erased: {:d}", num_erased);
}

void Ch10_07_ex2()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_iota
    using ll_t = long long;
    constexpr size_t n {30};

    // using ch10_erase_if with different sequence containers
    std::vector<ll_t> vec1(n);
    std::ranges::iota(vec1, 0);
    ch10_erase_if("\nvec1", vec1);

    std::deque<ll_t> deq1(n);
    std::ranges::iota(deq1, n);
    ch10_erase_if("\ndeq1", deq1);

    std::list<ll_t> list1(n);
    std::ranges::iota(list1, n * 2);
    ch10_erase_if("\nlist1", list1);

    std::forward_list<ll_t> fw_list1(n);
    std::ranges::iota(fw_list1, n * 3);
    ch10_erase_if("\nfw_list1", fw_list1);
#else
    std::println("Ch10_07_ex2() requires __cpp_lib_ranges_iota (C++23)");
#endif
}

```

Here are the results for example Ch10_07:

----- Results for example Ch10_07 -----

----- Ch10_07_ex1() -----

vec1 - before std::remove_if

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29

vec1 - after ctr.erase

0	1	4	6	8	9	10	12	14	15	16	18	20	21	22
24	25	26	27	28										

num_erased: 10

deq1 - before std::remove_if

30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44
45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59

deq1 - after ctr.erase

30	32	33	34	35	36	38	39	40	42	44	45	46	48	49
50	51	52	54	55	56	57	58							

num_erased: 7

list1 - before std::remove_if

60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74
75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89

list1 - after ctr.erase

60	62	63	64	65	66	68	69	70	72	74	75	76	77	78
80	81	82	84	85	86	87	88							

num_erased: 7

----- Ch10_07_ex2() -----

vec1 - before std::erase_if

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29

CHAPTER 10 ALGORITHMS – PART 1

vec1 - after std::erase_if

0 1 4 6 8 9 10 12 14 15 16 18 20 21 22
24 25 26 27 28

num_erased: 10

deq1 - before std::erase_if

30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44
45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59

deq1 - after std::erase_if

30 32 33 34 35 36 38 39 40 42 44 45 46 48 49
50 51 52 54 55 56 57 58

num_erased: 7

list1 - before std::erase_if

60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74
75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89

list1 - after std::erase_if

60 62 63 64 65 66 68 69 70 72 74 75 76 77 78
80 81 82 84 85 86 87 88

num_erased: 7

fw_list1 - before std::erase_if

90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104
105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119

fw_list1 - after std::erase_if

90 91 92 93 94 95 96 98 99 100 102 104 105 106 108
110 111 112 114 115 116 117 118 119

num_erased: 6

Fill Algorithms

Another universal programming action in many applications is to set all elements in a container to the same value. For these use cases, you can employ `std::fill()`, `std::ranges::fill()`, `std::fill_n()`, or `std::ranges::fill_n()`. Listing 10-8-1 shows the source code for example `Ch10_08_ex1()`. This example spotlights the use of `std::fill()` and `std::ranges::fill()`.

Listing 10-8-1. Example Ch10_08 – Ch10_08_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch10_08_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <numeric>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch10_08.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "Rect.h"

namespace
{
    const std::vector<Rect> s_Rectangles
    {
        {0, 0, 640, 480}, {0, 0, 800, 600}, {0, 0, 1024, 768},
        {0, 0, 1280, 1024}, {0, 0, 1600, 1200}, {0, 0, 1920, 1080},
        {0, 0, 3840, 2160}, {0, 0, 7680, 4320}
    };
}

void Ch10_08_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt "{:4d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // using std::fill
    std::vector<int> vec1(10);
    MT::print_ctr("vec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
}
```

```

std::fill(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), -1);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after std::fill):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::fill
std::vector<int> vec2(10);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (initial values):\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);

std::ranges::fill(vec2, -2);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after std::ranges::fill):\n", vec2, fmt,
epl_max);
}

```

In Listing 10-8-1, execution of `std::fill(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), -1)` sets each element in `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())` to `-1`. The ensuing code block utilizes `std::ranges::fill(vec2, -2)` to set each element in `[vec2.begin(), vec2.end())` to `-2`.

Function `Ch10_08_ex2()`, shown in Listing 10-8-2, demonstrates the use of `std::fill()` and `std::ranges::fill()` with user-defined class `Rect` (see Listing 5-3-2-1).

Listing 10-8-2. Example Ch10_08 – Ch10_08_ex2()

```

void Ch10_08_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt {"{} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};
    const Rect fill_val {0, 0, 96, 72};

    // using std::fill
    std::vector<Rect> vec1 {s_Rectangles};
    MT::print_ctr("vec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::fill(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), fill_val);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after std::fill):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::fill
    std::vector<Rect> vec2 {s_Rectangles};
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (initial values):\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);
    std::ranges::fill(vec2, fill_val);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (after std::fill):\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Listing 10-8-3 shows the final fill example. In function `Ch10_08_ex3()`, execution of the statement `std::ranges::fill_n(iter_beg, num_elem, Rect{10, 20, 30, 40})` copy-assigns `Rect{10, 20, 30, 40}` to each `[iter, iter + num_elem)` element. You can also use `std::fill_n()` to perform the same action.

Listing 10-8-3. Example Ch10_08 - Ch10_08_ex3()

```
void Ch10_08_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt {"{} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};

    std::vector<Rect> vec1 {s_Rectangles};
    MT::print_ctr("vec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::fill_n
    auto iter_beg = vec1.begin() + 1;
    auto num_elem = std::distance(vec1.begin() + 1, vec1.end() - 1);
    std::println("\nnum_elem = {:d}", num_elem);
    std::ranges::fill_n(iter_beg, num_elem, Rect{10, 20, 30, 40});
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after std::fill_n):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
}
```

Here are the results for source code example Ch10_08:

```
----- Results for example Ch10_08 -----
----- Ch10_08_ex1() -----
vec1 (initial values):
  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0
vec1 (after std::fill):
 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1
vec2 (initial values):
  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0
vec1 (after std::ranges::fill):
 -2 -2 -2 -2 -2 -2 -2 -2 -2 -2
```

----- Ch10_08_ex2() -----

vec1 (initial values):

```
[(0, 0, 640, 480) 307200] [(0, 0, 800, 600) 480000]  
[(0, 0, 1024, 768) 786432] [(0, 0, 1280, 1024) 1310720]  
[(0, 0, 1600, 1200) 1920000] [(0, 0, 1920, 1080) 2073600]  
[(0, 0, 3840, 2160) 8294400] [(0, 0, 7680, 4320) 33177600]
```

vec1 (after std::fill):

```
[(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912] [(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912]  
[(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912] [(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912]  
[(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912] [(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912]  
[(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912] [(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912]
```

vec2 (initial values):

```
[(0, 0, 640, 480) 307200] [(0, 0, 800, 600) 480000]  
[(0, 0, 1024, 768) 786432] [(0, 0, 1280, 1024) 1310720]  
[(0, 0, 1600, 1200) 1920000] [(0, 0, 1920, 1080) 2073600]  
[(0, 0, 3840, 2160) 8294400] [(0, 0, 7680, 4320) 33177600]
```

vec2 (after std::fill):

```
[(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912] [(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912]  
[(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912] [(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912]  
[(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912] [(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912]  
[(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912] [(0, 0, 96, 72) 6912]
```

----- Ch10_08_ex3() -----

vec1 (initial values):

```
[(0, 0, 640, 480) 307200] [(0, 0, 800, 600) 480000]  
[(0, 0, 1024, 768) 786432] [(0, 0, 1280, 1024) 1310720]  
[(0, 0, 1600, 1200) 1920000] [(0, 0, 1920, 1080) 2073600]  
[(0, 0, 3840, 2160) 8294400] [(0, 0, 7680, 4320) 33177600]
```

num_elem = 6


```
vec1 (after std::fill_n):
[(0, 0, 640, 480) 307200] [(10, 20, 30, 40) 1200]
[(10, 20, 30, 40) 1200] [(10, 20, 30, 40) 1200]
[(10, 20, 30, 40) 1200] [(10, 20, 30, 40) 1200]
[(10, 20, 30, 40) 1200] [(0, 0, 7680, 4320) 33177600]
```

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- The C++ STL includes an extensive collection of algorithms that carry out operations using containers or ranges of elements.
- Algorithms `std::count()` and `std::ranges::count()` count the number of container/range elements that match a specified value. Algorithms `std::count_if()` and `std::ranges::count_if()` count the number of elements that return true for a specified predicate.
- Algorithms `std::min_element()`, `std::ranges::min_element()`, `std::max_element()`, and `std::ranges::max_element()` return iterators to the minimum or maximum elements in a range. Algorithms `std::minmax_element()` and `std::ranges::minmax_element()` return iterators to both the minimum and maximum elements. Algorithms `std::ranges::min()` and `std::ranges::max()` return values instead of iterators.
- Copy operations can be carried out using algorithms `std::copy()`, `std::ranges::copy()`, `std::copy_if()`, and `std::ranges::copy_if()`.
- Helper function `std::move()` prepares an object to facilitate transfer of its resources to another object.
- Algorithms `std::reverse()` and `std::ranges::reverse()` reverse the ordering of a container's elements. Algorithms `std::reverse_copy()` and `std::ranges::reverse_copy()` generate reverse-ordered copies of a range.

- Element replacements can be performed using `std::replace()` and `std::ranges::replace()`. Predicate-controlled element replacements can be achieved using `std::replace_if()` or `std::ranges::replace_if()`.
- Algorithms `std::remove()` and `std::ranges::remove()` remove all instances of an element from a container. You can also use `std::remove_if()` and `std::ranges::remove_if()` to perform predicate-controlled element removals. When necessary, use a container's `erase()` function to complete the erase-remove idiom. For applications developed using C++20 or later, you can use `std::erase()` or `std::erase_if()` instead of a removal function.
- Algorithms `std::fill()` and `std::ranges::fill()` set every element in a container or range to the same value. You can also use `std::fill_n()` and `std::ranges::fill_n()` to fill a sequence of `n` elements.

CHAPTER 11

Algorithms – Part 2

This chapter is a continuation of the previous chapter. It covers additional STL algorithms, including

- For_Each algorithms
- Transformation algorithms
- Generation algorithms
- Find algorithms
- Contains algorithms
- Search algorithms
- Accumulate and fold algorithms

Some sections in this chapter only cover the C++20/23 algorithms of namespace `std::ranges`. However, you should keep in mind that many of these algorithms also have pre-C++20 counterparts in namespace `std`. You should also keep in mind that most STL algorithms define multiple overloads. Always review all possible options and select the most appropriate overload for each use case.

For_Each Algorithms

A `for_each` algorithm applies a function object to each dereferenced iterator in a range. These algorithms are sometimes utilized as an alternative to an explicitly coded range for loop. Listing 11-1-1 shows the source code for example `Ch11_01_ex1()`. This example illustrates the use of `std::for_each()` and `std::ranges::for_each()`.

Listing 11-1-1. Example Ch11_01 – Ch11_01_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch11_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <array>
#include <cmath>
#include <numbers>
#include <numeric>
#include "Ch11_01.h"
#include "MT.h"

void Ch11_01_ex1()
{
    using namespace std::numbers;
    const char* fmt = "{:9.2f} ";
    size_t epl_max {8};

    // initialize test array of radii
    std::array<double, 8> radii {};
    std::iota(radii.begin(), radii.end(), 1);
    MT::print_ctr("sphere radii:\n", radii, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::for_each to print sphere areas
    auto sphere_area = [](double r)
        { std::print("{:9.2f} ", 4.0 * pi * r * r); };

    std::println("\nsphere surface areas:");
    std::for_each(radii.begin(), radii.end(), sphere_area);
    std::println("");

    // using std::ranges::for_each to print sphere volumes
    auto sphere_vol = [](double r)
        { std::print("{:9.2f} ", 4.0 * pi * r * r * r / 3.0); };
}

```

```

std::println("\nsphere volumes:");
std::ranges::for_each(radii, sphere_vol);
std::println("");
}

```

The first code block in `Ch11_01_ex1()` uses `std::iota()` to initialize `std::array<double, 8> radii`. In the subsequent code block, `Ch11_01_ex1()` defines `sphere_area()`, which calculates and prints the surface area of a sphere using the supplied radius argument. In the same code block, the statement `std::for_each(radii.begin(), radii.end(), sphere_area)` applies `sphere_area()` to each dereferenced iterator in `[radii.begin(), radii.end())`. In the current example, execution of `std::for_each()` does not modify the values in array `radii` since radius `r` is passed by value to `sphere_area()`. The final code block of `Ch11_01_ex1()` utilizes `std::ranges::for_each()` with function object `sphere_vol()` to calculate sphere volumes. Note here that `std::ranges::for_each()` employs container name `radii` for the range argument.

Example `Ch11_01_ex2()`, shown in Listing 11-1-2, spotlights the use of `std::for_each_n()` and `std::ranges::for_each_n()`. These STL algorithms are used to calculate and print octahedron surface areas and volumes using various edge lengths. Note that both `std::for_each_n()` and `std::ranges_for_each_n()` specify the target range using a begin iterator and element count.

Listing 11-1-2. Example `Ch11_01 - Ch11_01_ex2()`

```

void Ch11_01_ex2()
{
    using namespace std::numbers;
    const char* fmt = "{:9.2f} ";
    size_t epl_max {8};

    // initialize test array of edge lengths
    std::array<double, 8> edge_lengths {};
    std::iota(edge_lengths.begin(), edge_lengths.end(), 1);
    MT::print_ctr("octahedron edge lengths:\n", edge_lengths, fmt,
    epl_max);
}

```

```

// using std::for_each_n to print octahedron areas
auto octahedron_area = [](double el)
    { std::print("{:9.2f} ", 2.0 * sqrt3 * el * el); };

std::println("\noctahedron surface areas:");
std::for_each_n(edge_lengths.begin(), edge_lengths.size(),
    octahedron_area);
std::println("");

// using std::ranges::for_each_n to print octahedron volumes
auto octahedron_vol = [](double el)
    { std::print("{:9.2f} ", sqrt2 * el * el * el / 3.0); };

std::println("\noctahedron volumes:");
std::ranges::for_each_n(edge_lengths.begin(), edge_lengths.size(),
    octahedron_vol);
std::println("");
}

```

Listing 11-1-3 shows source code for function `Ch11_01_ex3()`. Note that lambda expression `dodecahedron_area()` specifies an argument of type `double&` instead of `double`. Also, note that `dodecahedron_area()` calculates $x = 15.0 * \text{phi} / \text{std::sqrt}(3.0 - \text{phi})$. The use of a reference here means that following execution of `std::ranges::for_each(areas, dodecahedron_area)`, `std::array<double, 8> areas` contains calculated dodecahedron areas instead of edge lengths.

Listing 11-1-3. Example Ch11_01 – Ch11_01_ex3()

```

void Ch11_01_ex3()
{
    using namespace std::numbers;
    const char* fmt = "{:9.2f} ";
    size_t epl_max {8};

    // using std::ranges::for_each to calculate dodecahedron areas
    std::array<double, 8> areas {};
    std::iota(areas.begin(), areas.end(), 1);
    MT::print_ctr("dodecahedron edge lengths:\n", areas, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

```

auto dodecahedron_area = [](double& x)
    { x *= 15.0 * phi / std::sqrt(3.0 - phi); };

std::ranges::for_each(areas, dodecahedron_area);
MT::print_ctr("\ndodecahedron surface areas:\n", areas, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::for_each to calculate dodecahedron volumes
std::array<double, 8> volumes {};
std::iota(volumes.begin(), volumes.end(), 1);

auto dodecahedron_vol = [](double& x)
    { x *= 5.0 * phi * phi * phi / (6.0 - 2.0 * phi); };

std::ranges::for_each(volumes, dodecahedron_vol);
MT::print_ctr("\ndodecahedron volumes:\n", volumes, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

The second code block in `Ch11_01_ex3()` utilizes `dodecahedron_vol()` and `std::ranges::for_each()` to compute dodecahedron volumes. Like the area calculation, `std::array<double, 8> volumes` contains dodecahedron volumes instead of edge lengths following execution of `std::ranges::for_each()`. Here are the results for example `Ch11_01`:

```

----- Results for example Ch11_01 -----
----- Ch11_01_ex1() -----
sphere radii:
    1.00    2.00    3.00    4.00    5.00    6.00    7.00    8.00
sphere surface areas:
    12.57   50.27  113.10  201.06  314.16  452.39  615.75  804.25
sphere volumes:
    4.19   33.51  113.10  268.08  523.60  904.78 1436.76 2144.66
----- Ch11_01_ex2() -----

```

octahedron edge lengths:

1.00 2.00 3.00 4.00 5.00 6.00 7.00 8.00

octahedron surface areas:

3.46 13.86 31.18 55.43 86.60 124.71 169.74 221.70

octahedron volumes:

0.47 3.77 12.73 30.17 58.93 101.82 161.69 241.36

----- Ch11_01_ex3() -----

dodecahedron edge lengths:

1.00 2.00 3.00 4.00 5.00 6.00 7.00 8.00

dodecahedron surface areas:

20.65 41.29 61.94 82.58 103.23 123.87 144.52 165.17

dodecahedron volumes:

7.66 15.33 22.99 30.65 38.32 45.98 53.64 61.30

It warrants mentioning that all of the `std::for_each()` algorithms shown in example Ch11_01 ignore any value returned by the supplied lambda expression. For use cases where a return value is advantageous, a transformation algorithm can be applied as discussed in the next section.

Transformation Algorithms

A transformation algorithm applies a unary or binary function object to one or two input ranges. The result of each function object calculation is then saved to an output range.

Listing 11-2-1 shows the source code for example function `Ch11_02_ex1()`. This function exemplifies the use of `std::transform()` and `std::ranges::transform()`.

Listing 11-2-1. Example Ch11_02 – Ch11_02_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch11_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <deque>
#include <list>
#include <numbers>
#include <numeric>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch11_02.h"
#include "AminoAcid.h"
#include "MF.h"
#include "MT.h"

void Ch11_02_ex1()
{
    using namespace std::numbers;
    const char* fmt {"{:9.2f} "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {8};

    // create test vector of radii
    std::vector<double> radii(8);
    std::iota(radii.begin(), radii.end(), 1);
    MT::print_ctr("sphere radii:\n", radii, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::transform
    std::vector<double> areas(radii.size());
    auto sphere_area = [](double r) { return 4.0 * pi * r * r; };
    std::transform(radii.begin(), radii.end(), areas.begin(), sphere_area);
    MT::print_ctr("\nsphere surface areas:\n", areas, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::transform
    std::vector<double> volumes(radii.size());
    auto sphere_vol = [](double r) { return 4.0 * pi * r * r * r / 3.0; };

```

```

    std::ranges::transform(radii, volumes.begin(), sphere_vol);
    MT::print_ctr("\nsphere volumes:\n", volumes, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Example function `Ch11_02_ex1()` opens with the definition of `std::vector<double> radii(8)`. The subsequent statement utilizes `std::iota()` to initialize the elements of `radii`. The definition of lambda expression `sphere_area()` follows. Note that this function object calculates and *returns* the surface area for a sphere of radius `r`. In the expression `std::transform(radii.begin(), radii.end(), areas.begin(), sphere_area)`, the first two arguments – `radii.begin()` and `radii.end()` – specify an input range. Argument `areas.begin()` designates the first position of an output range. Note that the size of `areas` must equal or exceed the size of `radii`. The current use of `std::transform()` applies `sphere_area()` to each radius element in `[radii.begin(), radii.end())` and saves each calculated area to the corresponding position in `[areas.begin(), areas.end())`.

In the ensuing code block, the expression `std::ranges::transform(radii, volumes.begin(), sphere_vol)` calculates sphere volumes and saves these values in `std::vector<double> volumes`. Like other `std::ranges` examples that you’ve already seen, container name `radii` specifies the input range for `std::ranges::transform()`.

Example function `Ch11_02_ex2()`, shown in Listing 11-2-2, starts with the definition `std::vector<char> aa1` that contains single-letter lowercase codes for several amino acids. In the subsequent code block, execution of `std::ranges::transform(aa1, aa1.begin(), tr_op1)` applies `tr_op1()` to each element in `aa1`. Note that the output iterator in this expression is `aa1.begin()`, which means that the current use of `std::ranges::transform()` performs an in-place lower-to-uppercase transformation of the single-letter codes in `aa1`.

Listing 11-2-2. Example `Ch11_02 - Ch11_02_ex2()`

```

void Ch11_02_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt1 {"'{:c}'  "};
    const char* fmt3 {"'{:3s}'  "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {12};
}

```

```

// test sequence of amino acid codes (non-standard lower case)
// (code 'x' is intentionally invalid)
std::vector<char> aa1 {'a', 'g', 'l', 't', 'v', 'p', 'f', 'n', 'x',
    'c', 'd'};
MT::print_ctr("aa1 (initial values)\n", aa1, fmt1, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::transform (inplace transformation)
auto tr_op1 = [](char aa) { return MF::to_upper(aa); };
std::ranges::transform(aa1, aa1.begin(), tr_op1);
MT::print_ctr("\naa1 (after transformation):\n", aa1, fmt1, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::transform (non-inplace transformation)
auto tr_op2 = [](char aa) { return AminoAcid::to_code3(aa); };
std::deque<std::string> aa3 {};
std::ranges::transform(aa1, std::back_inserter(aa3), tr_op2);
MT::print_ctr("\naa3:\n", aa3, fmt3, epl_max);
}

```

The ensuing code block in `Ch11_02_ex2()` opens with the definition of lambda expression `tr_op2()`. This function object exploits `AminoAcid::to_code3(aa)` to convert a single letter amino acid code to a three letter `std::string`. Next is the definition of `std::deque<std::string> aa3 {}`. This is followed by a call to `std::ranges::transform(aa1, std::back_inserter(aa3), tr_op2)`.¹ Execution of this statement converts each single letter code in `[aa1.begin(), aa1.end())` to its corresponding three-letter code and saves the results in `aa3`. It is important to recognize here that different container types are employed for the input and output ranges.

Listing 11-2-3 shows the code for the final transformation example, which carries out a transformation operation using two input ranges. Execution of function `Ch11_02_ex3()` opens with the initialization of two `std::vector<std::string>` containers named `vec1` and `vec2`. Next is the definition of binary operator `tr_op()`. This operator returns the result of an ordinary `std::string` concatenation using arguments `s1` and `s2`.

¹Recall that `std::back_inserter()` is a helper function that applies a container's `push_back()` member function to insert elements into the specified container.

Listing 11-2-3. Example Ch11_02 – Ch11_02_ex3()

```

void Ch11_02_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt {"{:12s}  "};
    constexpr size_t epl_max {5};

    // initialize test vectors
    std::vector<std::string> vec1 {"one", "two", "three", "four",
    "five"};
    std::vector<std::string> vec2 {"un", "deux", "trois", "quatre",
    "cinq"};
    MT::print_ctr("vec1:  ", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2:  ", vec2, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::transform (binary operator)
    auto tr_op = [](const std::string& s1, const std::string& s2)
        { return s1 + '-' + s2; };

    std::list<std::string> list1 {};
    std::ranges::transform(vec1, vec2, std::back_inserter(list1), tr_op);
    MT::print_ctr("\nlist1: ", list1, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Next in Listing 11-2-3 is the definition of `std::list<std::string> list1 {}`. The ensuing statement, `std::ranges::transform(vec1, vec2, std::back_inserter(list1), tr_op)`, applies `tr_op()` using corresponding elements from `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())` and `[vec2.begin(), vec2.end())`. Each `tr_op()` result is saved in `list1`. STL algorithms `std::transform()` and `std::ranges::transform()` are particularly expedient in a variety of use cases. You'll see additional examples of these functions in later chapters. Here are the results for source code example Ch11_02:

----- Results for example Ch11_02 -----

----- Ch11_02_ex1() -----

sphere radii:

1.00	2.00	3.00	4.00	5.00	6.00	7.00	8.00
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------

sphere surface areas:

12.57 50.27 113.10 201.06 314.16 452.39 615.75 804.25

sphere volumes:

4.19 33.51 113.10 268.08 523.60 904.78 1436.76 2144.66

----- Ch11_02_ex2() -----

aa1 (initial values)

'a' 'g' 'l' 't' 'v' 'p' 'f' 'n' 'x' 'c' 'd'

aa1 (after transformation):

'A' 'G' 'L' 'T' 'V' 'P' 'F' 'N' 'X' 'C' 'D'

aa3:

'Ala' 'Gly' 'Leu' 'Thr' 'Val' 'Pro' 'Phe' 'Asn' '???' 'Cys' 'Asp'

----- Ch11_02_ex3() -----

vec1: one two three four five

vec2: un deux trois quatre cinq

list1: one-un two-deux three-trois four-quatre five-cinq

Generation Algorithms

A generation algorithm assigns the return value of successive user-specified function evaluations to each element of a range. These functions somewhat resemble `std::iota()`, but provide a greater amount of algorithmic flexibility as you'll soon see.

Listing 11-3-1 shows a simple example for `std::generate()`. In this listing, `Ch11_03_ex1()` opens with the declaration of `std::vector<double> vec1(20)`. Next is the definition of lambda expression `gen_op = [next_val = 0.0]() mutable { double x = next_val; next_val += 0.25; return x; }`. Successive executions of `gen_op()` return 0.00, 0.25, 0.50, etc.

Listing 11-3-1. Example Ch11_03 – Ch11_03_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch11_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <fstream>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch11_03.h"
#include "MF.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "MTH.h"

void Ch11_03_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:8.2f}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // using std::generate
    // note: no arguments allowed for gen_op()
    std::vector<double> vec1(20);

    auto gen_op = [next_val = 0.0]() mutable
        { double x = next_val; next_val += 0.25; return x; };

    std::generate(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), gen_op);
    MT::print_ctr("vec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Subsequent to the definition of `gen_op()` is the statement `std::generate(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), gen_op)`. Execution of this statement calls `gen_op()` for each element in `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())`. The generation function supplied to `std::generate()` must be void of any arguments, which is why `next_val` is defined as a local variable in `gen_op()`.

In example `Ch11_03_ex2()`, shown in Listing 11-3-2, lambda expression `gen_op()` includes some arbitrary logic to simulate a more sophisticated generation function. Note again that lambda expression `gen_op()` exploits a local variable to maintain data between successive calls.

Listing 11-3-2. Example Ch11_03 – Ch11_03_ex2()

```

void Ch11_03_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:2c}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {30};

    // using std::ranges::generate
    std::vector<char> vec1(26);

    auto gen_op = [next_char = 'A']() mutable
        { char c = next_char++; return (c & 0x01) ? c : MF::to_lower(c); };

    std::ranges::generate(vec1, gen_op);
    MT::print_ctr("vec1: ", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Listing 11-3-3-1 shows the source code for example Ch11_03_ex3(). This function opens with a series of parameters that `MTH::generate_sine_wave()` uses to generate data points for a discrete sine wave. More on this shortly. The resultant data points generated by `MTH::generate_sine_wave()`, which harnesses `std::ranges::generate_n()`, are saved `std::vector<double> vec1`. The remaining code in `Ch11_03_ex3()` saves the data points in `vec1` to a CSV file.

Listing 11-3-3-1. Example Ch11_03 – Ch11_03_ex3()

```

void Ch11_03_ex3()
{
    constexpr double amplitude {1.0};
    constexpr double frequency {5.0};
    constexpr double phase {0.0};
    constexpr double t_start {0.0};
    constexpr double t_end {1.0};
    constexpr double t_step {0.001};

    // create sine wave vector (uses std::generate_n)
    std::vector<double> vec1 = MTH::generate_sine_wave(amplitude, frequency,
        phase, t_start, t_end, t_step);

    std::println("vec.size(): {d}", vec1.size());
}

```

```

// write sine wave vector to CSV file
std::string fn = MF::mk_test_filename("ch11_03_ex2.csv");
std::ofstream ofs {fn, std::ios_base::out | std::ios_base::trunc};

if (!ofs.good())
{
    std::println("file open failed: {:s}", fn);
    return;
}

double t {t_start};

for (auto v : vec1)
{
    std::println(ofs, "{:.6f}, {:.6f}", t, v);
    t += t_step;
}

ofs.close();
std::println("results saved to file {:s}", fn);
}

```

Listing 11-3-3-2 shows the source code for `MTH::generate_sine_wave()` (see `Common/MTH.h`). Note that this template function specifies two template parameters. Parameter typename `T` is the floating-point data type, and class `C` is the return container type, which defaults to `std::vector<T>`.

Listing 11-3-3-2. Example Ch11_03 – `MTH::generate_sine_wave()`

```

template <typename T, class C = std::vector<T>> requires std::floating_
point<T>
auto generate_sine_wave(T amplitude, T frequency, T phase_deg,
    T t_start, T t_end, T t_step)
{
    // create target container
    auto num_points = static_cast<std::size_t>((t_end - t_start) / t_step) + 1;
    C sine_wave(num_points);
}

```



```

// define lambda expression for std::ranges::generate_n
T omega = 2 * std::numbers::pi_v<T> * frequency;
T phase_rad = MTH::deg_to_rad(phase_deg);

auto sw_op = [t = t_start, t_step, omega, amplitude, phase_rad]
() mutable
{
    auto x = amplitude * std::sin(omega * t + phase_rad);
    t += t_step;
    return x;
};

// using std::ranges::generate_n
std::ranges::generate_n(std::begin(sine_wave), sine_wave.
size(), sw_op);
return sine_wave;
}

```

Function `MTH::generate_sine_wave()` calculates $x_i = A \sin(2\pi ft + \phi)$ where A is the amplitude, f is the frequency, t is time, and ϕ is the phase angle. The total number of points generated for the sine wave equals `static_cast<std::size_t>((t_end - t_start) / t_step) + 1`. Note that this corresponds to a data point every `t_step` seconds between `[t_start, t_stop]`.

In `MTH::generate_sine_wave()`, STL algorithm function `std::ranges::generate_n()` utilizes function object `sw_op()` to fill range `[sine_wave.begin(), sine_wave.begin() + num_points)` with discrete sine wave data points. Note that lambda `sw_op()` captures most of the previously described sine wave parameters while local variable `t` is the time value. Figure 11-1 shows a plot that was generated using the sine wave parameters defined near the top of `Ch11_03_ex3()`.

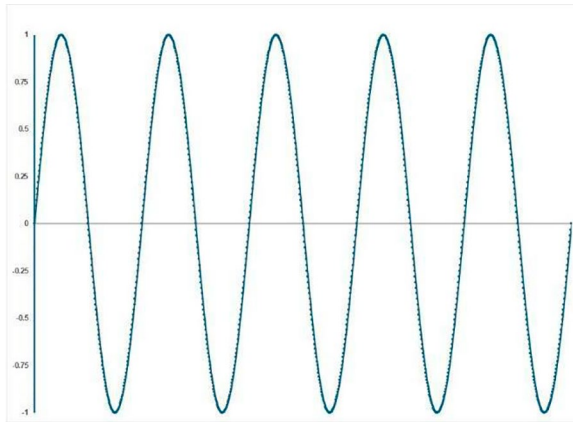


Figure 11-1. *Ch11_03_ex3()* sine wave plot generated by `MTH::generate_sine_wave()` using `std::ranges::generate_n()`

Here are the results for example Ch11_03:

```

----- Results for example Ch11_03 -----

----- Ch11_03_ex1() -----
vec1:
    0.00  0.25  0.50  0.75  1.00  1.25  1.50  1.75  2.00  2.25
    2.50  2.75  3.00  3.25  3.50  3.75  4.00  4.25  4.50  4.75

----- Ch11_03_ex2() -----
vec1: A b C d E f G h I j K l M n O p Q r S t U v W x Y z

----- Ch11_03_ex3() -----
vec.size(): 1001
results saved to file ./~~ch11_03_ex2.csv
    
```

Find Algorithms

Ascertaining the existence of an element in a container is a common programming task. To expedite this undertaking, the C++ STL includes several find algorithm functions that you can use. Listing 11-4-1-1 shows the header file for class `Airport`. This class is employed later in this section and in subsequent chapters.

Listing 11-4-1-1. Example Ch11_04 – Airport.h

```
//-----
// Airport.h
//-----

#ifndef AIRPORT_H_
#define AIRPORT_H_
#include <format>
#include <optional>
#include <string>
#include <utility>
#include <vector>

class Airport
{
    friend struct std::formatter<Airport>;

public:
    class GeoCoord
    {
    public:
        enum class Units {Ignore, mi, km};

        GeoCoord() = default;

        GeoCoord(int lat_deg, int lat_min, int lat_sec, char lat_quad,
                 int lon_deg, int lon_min, int lon_sec, char lon_quad) :
            LatDeg {lat_deg}, LatMin {lat_min}, LatSec {lat_sec}, LatQuad
            {lat_quad},
            LonDeg {lon_deg}, LonMin {lon_min}, LonSec {lon_sec}, LonQuad
            {lon_quad} {}

        // validation functions for latitude and longitude
        static bool is_valid_lat(char quad) {return quad == 'N' ||
        quad == 'S';}
        static bool is_valid_lon(char quad) {return quad == 'E' ||
        quad == 'W';}
    };
};

```

```

static bool is_valid_lat(double lat) {return lat >= -90.0 && lat
<= 90.0;}
static bool is_valid_lon(double lon) {return lon >= -180.0 && lon
<= 180.0;}

// misc functions (see Airport.cpp)
static double calc_distance(const GeoCoord& gc1, const
GeoCoord& gc2,
    Units units);
std::pair<double, double> to_decimal() const;

// latitude and longitude attributes
int LatDeg {}, LatMin {}, LatSec {};
char LatQuad {};

int LonDeg {}, LonMin {}, LonSec {};
char LonQuad {};
};

Airport() = default;
Airport(const std::string& country_code, const std::string& iata_code,
    const std::string& name, const GeoCoord& location) :
    m_CountryCode {country_code}, m_IataCode {iata_code}, m_
    Name {name},
    m_Location {location} {};

// accessors
std::string CountryCode() const { return m_CountryCode; }
void CountryCode(const std::string& country_code)
    { m_CountryCode = country_code; }

std::string IataCode() const { return m_IataCode; }
void IataCode(const std::string& iata_code)
    { m_IataCode = iata_code; }

std::string Name() const { return m_Name; }
void Name(const std::string& name) { m_Name = name; }

GeoCoord Location() const { return m_Location; }
void Location(const GeoCoord& location) { m_Location = location; }

```

```

// operators
friend auto operator<=>(const Airport& ap1, const Airport& ap2)
    { return ap1.m_IataCode <=> ap2.m_IataCode; }

friend bool operator==(const Airport& ap1, const Airport& ap2)
    { return ap1.m_IataCode == ap2.m_IataCode; }

// misc functions
static double calc_distance(const Airport& ap1, const Airport& ap2,
    GeoCoord::Units units)
    { return GeoCoord::calc_distance(ap1.m_Location, ap2.m_Location,
    units); }

// static data generation functions
static std::optional<Airport> get(const std::string& iata_code);
static std::string get_iata_codes_string();

static std::vector<Airport> get_vector_airports();
static std::vector<Airport> get_vector_airports_shuffle
    (unsigned int rng_seed = 42);
static std::vector<std::string> get_vector_iata_codes();
static std::vector<std::string> get_vector_iata_codes_shuffle
    (unsigned int rng_seed = 57);

static std::vector<std::string> get_vector_random_iata_codes(size_t
    num_codes,
    unsigned int rng_seed = 73);

private:
    std::string to_str() const;

    std::string m_CountryCode {};           // country code (ISO 3166-1
                                            alpha-2)
    std::string m_IataCode {};             // airport code (IATA, 3 letters)
    std::string m_Name {};                 // airport name
    GeoCoord m_Location {};                // airport location (lat and lon)
};

```

```

// class Airport formatter
template <> struct std::formatter<Airport> : std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& pc)
        { return pc.begin(); }

    auto format(const Airport& ap, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{}", ap.to_str()); }
};

#endif

```

In Listing 11-4-1-1, the declaration of class `Airport` begins with the declaration of a subclass named `GeoCoord`. This class holds latitude and longitude data for an airport. Following the constructor declarations for `GeoCoord` is a series of `is_valid_()` functions that are used to validate a latitude or longitude value. Function `calc_distance()` computes the great-circle distance between two `GeoCoord` objects. More about this function shortly. The attributes section contains integer degrees, minutes, and seconds (DMS) for both latitude and longitude. Each latitude and longitude value also includes a single-letter quadrant attribute.

If you examine the declaration of class `Airport`, you'll notice that each instance includes a two-letter country code, a three-letter IATA² code that uniquely defines the airport, a name string, and a `GeoCoord` that specifies the airport's location. Comparison functions `operator<=>` and `operator==` carry out their actions using airport IATA codes.

Listing 11-4-1-2 shows the remaining source code for class `Airport`. In this listing, file `Airport.cpp` opens with an anonymous namespace that initializes `std::vector<Airport> c_Airports`. This vector contains values for 30 international airports, but only a few are shown in the listing to save space. Note that each `Airport` object includes all of the previously mentioned attributes.

²International Air Transport Association.

Listing 11-4-1-2. Example Ch11_04 – Airport.cpp

```
//-----
// Airport.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <cmath>
#include <format>
#include <optional>
#include <random>
#include <stdexcept>
#include <string>
#include <utility>
#include <vector>
#include "Airport.h"
#include "MTH.h"

namespace
{
    const std::vector<Airport> c_Airports
    {
        // data below not suitable for navigation purposes
        Airport {"AU", "SYD", "Sydney Kingsford Smith",
            Airport::GeoCoord{33, 56, 46, 'S', 151, 10, 38, 'E'}},
        Airport {"AU", "MEL", "Melbourne",
            Airport::GeoCoord{37, 40, 24, 'S', 144, 50, 36, 'E'}},
        Airport {"BR", "BSB", "Brasilia International",
            Airport::GeoCoord{15, 52, 16, 'S', 47, 55, 7, 'W'}},

        // airports YYC - JFK excluded from listing

        Airport {"US", "LAX", "Los Angeles International",
            Airport::GeoCoord{33, 56, 33, 'N', 118, 24, 29, 'W'}},
        Airport {"US", "MCO", "Orlando International",
            Airport::GeoCoord{28, 25, 46, 'N', 81, 18, 32, 'W'}},
        Airport {"US", "ORD", "O'Hare International",
            Airport::GeoCoord{41, 58, 43, 'N', 87, 54, 17, 'W'}},
    }
}
```

```

    };
};

double Airport::GeoCoord::calc_distance(const Airport::GeoCoord& gc1,
    const Airport::GeoCoord& gc2, Airport::GeoCoord::Units units)
{
    constexpr double earth_radius_mi = 3959.0;
    constexpr double earth_radius_km = 6371.0;

    // convert DMS to decimal
    auto [lat1, lon1] = gc1.to_decimal();
    auto [lat2, lon2] = gc2.to_decimal();
    lat1 = MTH::deg_to_rad(lat1);
    lon1 = MTH::deg_to_rad(lon1);
    lat2 = MTH::deg_to_rad(lat2);
    lon2 = MTH::deg_to_rad(lon2);

    // calculate central angle
    double t1 = std::sin(lat1) * std::sin(lat2);
    double t2 = std::cos(lat1) * std::cos(lat2);
    double t3 = std::cos(lon1 - lon2);
    double angle = std::acos(t1 + t2 * t3);

    // calculate final distance
    if (units == Airport::GeoCoord::Units::mi)
        return angle * earth_radius_mi;
    else if (units == Airport::GeoCoord::Units::km)
        return angle * earth_radius_km;
    else
        return angle;
}

std::pair<double, double> Airport::GeoCoord::to_decimal() const
{
    // make sure lat/lon quads are valid
    if (!Airport::GeoCoord::is_valid_lat(LatQuad))
        throw std::runtime_error("Airport::GeoCoord::to_dec() - bad
        lat quad");
}

```



```

if (!Airport::GeoCoord::is_valid_lon(LonQuad))
    throw std::runtime_error("Airport::GeoCoord::to_dec() - bad
        lon quad");

// convert DMS to decimal, both lat and lon
auto dms_to_dec = [](int deg, int min, int sec)
    { return deg + (min * 60.0 + sec) / 3600.0; };

double lat_dec = dms_to_dec(LatDeg, LatMin, LatSec);
double lon_dec = dms_to_dec(LonDeg, LonMin, LonSec);

if (LatQuad == 'S')
    lat_dec = -lat_dec;

if (LonQuad == 'W')
    lon_dec = -lon_dec;

return std::make_pair(lat_dec, lon_dec);
}

std::optional<Airport> Airport::get(const std::string& iata_code)
{
    // return Airport that matches iata_code
    auto pred = [iata_code](const Airport& a) { return a.IataCode() ==
        iata_code; };
    auto iter = std::ranges::find_if(c_Airports, pred);
    return (iter != c_Airports.end()) ? std::optional(*iter) :
        std::nullopt;
}

std::string Airport::get_iata_codes_string()
{
    // build string of all IATA codes
    std::string iata_codes {};

    for (const Airport& airport : c_Airports)
    {
        iata_codes += airport.IataCode();
        iata_codes += ' ';
    }
}

```

```

    return iata_codes;
}

std::vector<Airport> Airport::get_vector_airports()
{
    return c_Airports;
}

std::vector<Airport> Airport::get_vector_airports_shuffle(unsigned int
rng_seed)
{
    // get shuffled vector of Airports
    std::vector<Airport> airports {c_Airports};
    std::mt19937 rng {rng_seed};
    std::shuffle(airports.begin(), airports.end(), rng);
    std::shuffle(airports.begin(), airports.end(), rng);
    return airports;
}

std::vector<std::string> Airport::get_vector_iata_codes()
{
    // get vector of all IATA codes
    std::vector<std::string> iata_codes {};
    for (const Airport& airport : c_Airports)
        iata_codes.emplace_back(airport.IataCode());
    return iata_codes;
}

std::vector<std::string> Airport::get_vector_iata_codes_shuffle
(unsigned int rng_seed)
{
    // get shuffled vector of IATA codes
    std::vector<std::string> iata_codes {get_vector_iata_codes()};
    std::mt19937 rng {rng_seed};
    std::shuffle(iata_codes.begin(), iata_codes.end(), rng);
    std::shuffle(iata_codes.begin(), iata_codes.end(), rng);
    return iata_codes;
}

```

```

std::vector<std::string> Airport::get_vector_random_iata_codes(size_t
num_codes,
    unsigned int rng_seed)
{
    // generate vector of random IATA codes
    const int dist_max = static_cast<int>(c_Airports.size() - 1);
    std::mt19937 rng {rng_seed};
    std::uniform_int_distribution<int> dist {0, dist_max};

    std::vector<std::string> iata_codes(num_codes);

    for (size_t i = 0; i < iata_codes.size(); ++i)
        iata_codes[i] = c_Airports[dist(rng)].IataCode();
    return iata_codes;
}

std::string Airport::to_str() const
{
    std::string s {};
    auto [lat, lon] = m_Location.to_decimal();

    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s),
        "[{:2s}, {:3s}, {:s} ( {:.4f}, {:.4f} )]",
        m_CountryCode, m_IataCode, m_Name, lat, lon);

    return s;
}

```

Most of the remaining code in `Airport.cpp` is straightforward, but a few functions warrant some comments. Function `Airport::GeoCoord::calc_distance()` calculates the approximate distance between two `GeoCoord` locations. This function first calculates the central angle between the two locations using the following great-circle formula:³

$$\Delta\sigma = \arccos(\sin\phi_1 \sin\phi_2 + \cos\phi_1 \cos\phi_2 \cos\Delta\lambda)$$

³This equation is valid for a perfect sphere. For oblate (flattened) sphere planet earth, the central angle formula is an approximation.

In this equation, ϕ_1 and ϕ_2 are the latitudes, λ_1 and λ_2 are longitudes, and $\Delta\lambda = \lambda_1 - \lambda_2$. To calculate the actual distance, $\Delta\sigma$ is multiplied by the radius of the earth. Before continuing, please note that both the data used in `c_Airports` and the distance calculation performed in `Airport::GeoCoord::calc_distance()` are not suitable for actual navigation purposes.

Function `Airport::GeoCoord::to_decimal()` converts a `GeoCoord` latitude and longitude from DMS to decimal degrees. Note that this function returns a `std::pair<double, double>`. The various `Airport::get_()` functions format and return containers of data derived from `c_Airports`. You'll learn more about these functions as you study the examples that utilize class `Airport`.

Listing 11-4-1-3 shows the source code for example function `Ch11_04_ex1()`. This function uses `std::ranges::find()` to find airport IATA codes. Near the top of `Ch11_04_ex1()`, `std::vector<std::string> iata_codes` is initialized using `Airport::get_vector_iata_codes()`. Listing 11-4-1-2 shows the code for this function, which builds a `std::vector<std::string>` of IATA codes using the data of `c_Airports`.

Listing 11-4-1-3. Example `Ch11_04 - Ch11_04_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch11_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch11_04.h"
#include "Airport.h"
#include "MT.h"

void Ch11_04_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:3s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    std::vector<std::string> iata_codes {Airport::get_vector_iata_codes()};
    MT::print_ctr("\niata_codes\n", iata_codes, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("");

    std::vector<std::string> find_codes {"AKL", "DFW", "FRA", "ORD"};
```

```

for (const std::string& find_code : find_codes)
{
    // using std::ranges::find (uses operator==)
    std::print("IATA code: {s} - ", find_code);
    auto iter = std::ranges::find(iata_codes, find_code);

    if (iter != iata_codes.end())
        std::println("found");
    else
        std::println("not found");
}
}

```

The next item in `Ch11_04_ex1()` is the definition of `std::vector<std::string>` `find_codes`. This vector contains several IATA codes. The ensuing for loop utilizes `iter = std::ranges::find(iata_codes, find_code)` to search `iata_codes` for `find_code`. When searching for a match, `std::ranges::find()` uses `operator==` for the specified data type. If a match is found, `iter` points to the first element in `iata_codes`; otherwise, `iter` equals `iata_codes.end()`.

Example `Ch11_04_ex2()`, shown in Listing 11-4-2, spotlights the use of `std::ranges::find_if()`. This function finds elements in a range using a unary predicate. The opening code block of `Ch11_04_ex2()` utilizes `std::vector<Airport>` `airports = Airport::get_vector_airports()` to initialize a vector of all Airports. Next is the definition of lambda expression `find_op()`:

```

auto find_op = [](const Airport& airport)
{ auto [lat, lon] = airport.Location().to_decimal(); return lat < 0; };

```

Predicate `find_op()` returns true if the airport's latitude (in decimal) is less than zero (i.e., the airport is located in the earth's southern hemisphere). Note that `find_op()` utilizes structured binding to parse out the latitude and longitude from the `std::pair<double, double>` that `to_decimal()` returns.

Listing 11-4-2. Example Ch11_04 - Ch11_04_ex2()

```

void Ch11_04_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {1};

    // vector of airports
    std::vector<Airport> airports = Airport::get_vector_airports();
    MT::print_ctr("\nairports\n", airports, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::find_if (uses specified find predicate)
    auto find_op = [](const Airport& airport)
        { auto [lat, lon] = airport.Location().to_decimal(); return
          lat < 0; };

    std::println("\nairports found:");
    auto iter = airports.begin();

    while (1)
    {
        iter = std::ranges::find_if(iter, airports.end(), find_op);

        if (iter == airports.end())
            break;

        std::println("{} ", *iter);
        iter++;
    }
}

```

Following the definition of `find_op()` is the statement `iter = airports.begin()` that initializes `iter` to the first element in `airports`. Within `Ch11_04_ex2()`'s `while` loop, execution of `iter = std::ranges::find_if(iter, airports.end(), find_op)` returns an iterator to the next `Airport` in `airports` for which `find_op()` is true. It then dereferences this iterator to print the airport's data. If `std::ranges::find_if()` returns `airports.end()`, `find_op()` returned false for all elements in the specified range.

Listing 11-4-3 shows the source code for the next find example. In function `Ch11_04_ex3()`, `std::vector<Airport> find_airports` contains three `Airport`s. For the current example, only the IATA codes are necessary. In `Ch11_04_ex3()`'s while loop, the statement `iter = std::ranges::find_first_of(iter, airports.end(), find_airports.begin(), find_airports.end())` returns an iterator to the first element in `[iter, airports.end())` that matches any of the elements in `find_airports`. For the current example, function `std::ranges::find_first_of()` utilizes `Airport::operator==`, which performs its comparisons using IATA codes.

Listing 11-4-3. Example `Ch11_04 - Ch11_04_ex3()`

```
void Ch11_04_ex3()
{
    std::vector<Airport> airports = Airport::get_vector_airports();

    // list of airports to find (Airport::operator== compares IATA codes)
    std::vector<Airport> find_airports
    {
        Airport {"", "CDG", "", Airport::GeoCoord {}},
        Airport {"", "ZRH", "", Airport::GeoCoord {}},
        Airport {"", "FRA", "", Airport::GeoCoord {}},
    };

    // using std::ranges::find_first_of
    std::println("\nairports found using find_first_of:");
    auto iter = airports.begin();

    while (1)
    {
        iter = std::ranges::find_first_of(iter, airports.end(),
            find_airports.begin(), find_airports.end());

        if (iter == airports.end())
            break;

        std::println("{} ", *iter);
        iter++;
    }
}
```

The final `std::find_example`, shown in Listing 11-4-4, demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::find_last()` (C++23). In Listing 11-4-4, function `Ch11_04_ex4()` utilizes `Airport::get_vector_random_iata_codes(60)` to initialize `std::vector<std::string> iata_codes` with 60 random IATA codes. The next item of note is the declaration of `std::vector<std::string> find_vals`. This vector contains several IATA codes that `std::ranges::find_last()` will search for.

Listing 11-4-4. Example `Ch11_04 - Ch11_04_ex4()`

```

// #define PRINT_SUBRANGE // remove comment to enable

void Ch11_04_ex4()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_find_last
    const char* fmt = "{:3s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {15};
    std::vector<std::string> iata_codes { Airport::get_vector_random_iata_
        codes(60) };
    MT::print_ctr("\niata_codes:\n", iata_codes, fmt, epl_max);

    // iata codes to find
    std::vector<std::string> find_vals
        {"ARN", "IAH", "MXX", "PVG", "WLG"};

    // using std::ranges::find_last
    for (const auto& find_val : find_vals)
    {
        std::print("\nfind_val: {:3s} | airport ", find_val);

        // std::ranges::find_last returns iterator subrange
        // object found      iter_sr = [iter of found obj, iata_
            codes.end())
        // object not found  iter_sr = [iata_codes.end(), iata_
            codes.end())
        auto iter_sr = std::ranges::find_last(iata_codes, find_val);
    }
}

```



```

        if (iter_sr.begin() != iata_codes.end())
        {
#ifdef PRINT_SUBRANGE
            std::println("subrange iter_sr");
            for (auto iter = iter_sr.begin(); iter != iter_sr.end();
                ++iter)
                std::print ("{:3s} ", *iter);
            std::println("");
#endif

            // calculate position
            auto find_pos = std::distance(iata_codes.begin(), iter_sr.begin());
            std::println("found (position = {:d})", find_pos);

            // print found airport
            std::optional<Airport> airport { Airport::get(find_val) };

            if (airport)
                std::println("{} ", airport.value());
        }
        else
            std::println("not found");
    }
#else
    std::println("Ch11_04_ex4() requires __cpp_lib_ranges_find_last
        (C++23)");
#endif
}

```

In `Ch11_04_ex4()`'s range for loop, execution of the statement `iter_sr = std::ranges::find_last(iata_codes, find_val)` returns an iterator subrange. An iterator subrange is simply a range that exists within another range. If `iter_sr.begin() != iata_codes.end()` is true, `find_last()` found an IATA code match and `iter_sr.begin()` points to it in `iata_codes`. The code inside the if block utilizes `find_pos = std::distance(iata_codes.begin(), iter_sr.begin())` to calculate the position of the just found IATA code in `iata_codes`. Execution of `std::optional<Airport> airport { Airport::get(find_val) }` returns an `std::optional<Airport>` object that's used

to print the airport’s data. For the current example, note that `Airport::get(find_val)` will always return a value. Figure 11-2 illustrates the execution of `std::ranges::find_last()` in greater detail.

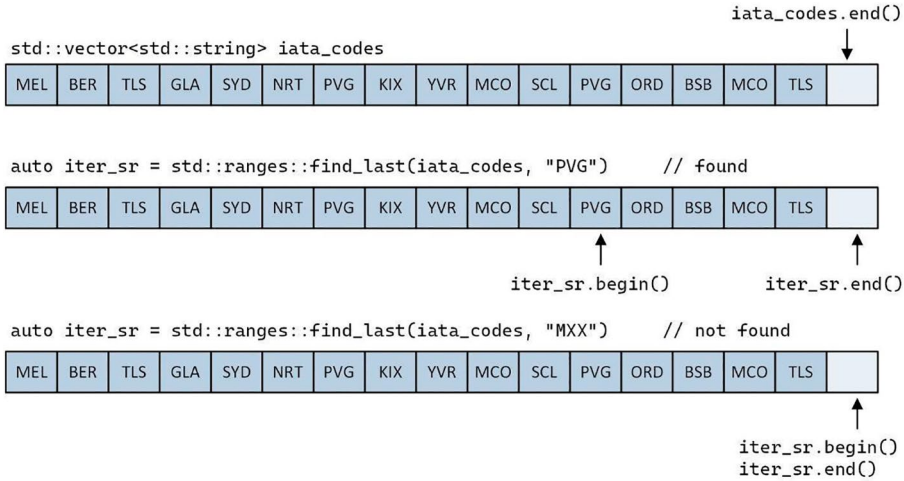


Figure 11-2. Example executions of `iter_sr = std::ranges::find_last(iata_codes, find_val)`

The STL includes other `std::ranges::find_if_` algorithm functions, including `std::ranges::find_if_not()`, `std::ranges::find_last_if()`, `std::ranges::find_last_if_not()`, `std::ranges::find_end()`, and `std::ranges::adjacent_find()`. Here are the results for example Ch11_04:

```

----- Results for example Ch11_04 -----
----- Ch11_04_ex1() -----

iata_codes
SYD MEL BSB YYC YEG YVR YYZ ZRH SCL PEK
PVG BER FRA MUN CDG TLS GLA LHR DEL KIX
NRT OSL AKL WLG ARN IAH JFK LAX MCO ORD

IATA code: AKL - found
IATA code: DFW - not found
IATA code: FRA - found
IATA code: ORD - found
    
```

```
----- Ch11_04_ex2() -----
```

```
airports
```

```
[AU, SYD, Sydney Kingsford Smith (-33.9461, 151.1772)]
[AU, MEL, Melbourne (-37.6733, 144.8433)]
[BR, BSB, Brasilia International (-15.8711, -47.9186)]
[CA, YYC, Calgary International (51.1225, -114.0133)]
[CA, YEG, Edmonton International (43.6767, -79.6306)]
[CA, YVR, Vancouver International (49.1947, -123.1839)]
[CA, YYZ, Toronto Pearson International (53.3100, -113.5794)]
[CH, ZRH, Zurich (47.4314, 8.5492)]
[CL, SCL, Santiago International (-33.3928, -70.7911)]
[CN, PEK, Beijing Capital International (40.0725, 116.5975)]
[CN, PVG, Shanghai Pudong International (31.1433, 121.8053)]
[DE, BER, Berlin Brandenburg (52.3667, 13.5033)]
[DE, FRA, Frankfurt (50.0333, 8.5706)]
[DE, MUN, Munich Franz Josef Stauss (48.3539, 11.7861)]
[FR, CDG, Paris Charles de Gaulle (49.0097, 2.5478)]
[FR, TLS, Toulouse-Blagnac (43.6350, 1.3678)]
[GB, GLA, Glasgow (55.8719, -4.4331)]
[GB, LHR, Heathrow International (51.4775, -0.4614)]
[IN, DEL, Indira Gandhi International (28.5686, 77.1122)]
[JP, KIX, Kansai International (34.4306, 135.2303)]
[JP, NRT, Narita International (35.7653, 140.3856)]
[NO, OSL, Oslo Gardermoen (60.2028, 11.0839)]
[NZ, AKL, Auckland (-37.0081, 174.7917)]
[NZ, WLG, Wellington International (-41.3272, 174.8053)]
[SE, ARN, Stockholm Arlanda (59.5019, 17.9186)]
[US, IAH, George Bush International (29.9844, -95.3414)]
[US, JFK, John F Kennedy International (40.6397, -74.0789)]
[US, LAX, Los Angeles International (33.9425, -118.4081)]
[US, MCO, Orlando International (28.4294, -81.3089)]
[US, ORD, O'Hare International (41.9786, -87.9047)]
```

```
airports found:
```

```
[AU, SYD, Sydney Kingsford Smith (-33.9461, 151.1772)]
[AU, MEL, Melbourne (-37.6733, 144.8433)]
```

```
[BR, BSB, Brasilia International (-15.8711, -47.9186)]  
[CL, SCL, Santiago International (-33.3928, -70.7911)]  
[NZ, AKL, Auckland (-37.0081, 174.7917)]  
[NZ, WLG, Wellington International (-41.3272, 174.8053)]
```

----- Ch11_04_ex3() -----

```
airports found using find_first_of:  
[CH, ZRH, Zurich (47.4314, 8.5492)]  
[DE, FRA, Frankfurt (50.0333, 8.5706)]  
[FR, CDG, Paris Charles de Gaulle (49.0097, 2.5478)]
```

----- Ch11_04_ex4() -----

```
iata_codes:  
KIX PEK GLA DEL TLS YVR DEL TLS CDG PEK YYZ BSB ZRH IAH LHR  
CDG WLG ARN PEK MCO FRA LHR LHR CDG ZRH JFK LAX PEK YEG AKL  
LHR YYC ZRH MUN JFK YYZ LAX YVR YYC WLG ORD YYC MEL ZRH MEL  
BER TLS GLA SYD NRT PVG KIX YVR MCO SCL PVG ORD BSB MCO TLS
```

```
find_val: ARN | airport found (position = 17)  
[SE, ARN, Stockholm Arlanda (59.5019, 17.9186)]
```

```
find_val: IAH | airport found (position = 13)  
[US, IAH, George Bush International (29.9844, -95.3414)]
```

```
find_val: MXX | airport not found
```

```
find_val: PVG | airport found (position = 55)  
[CN, PVG, Shanghai Pudong International (31.1433, 121.8053)]
```

```
find_val: WLG | airport found (position = 39)  
[NZ, WLG, Wellington International (-41.3272, 174.8053)]
```

Contains Algorithms

A contains algorithm returns a `bool` that signifies the existence of an element in a container or range. Listing 11-5-1-1 shows the source code for class `Mineral`. This class is used in example function `Ch11_05_ex1()`; it's also used in later chapters.

Listing 11-5-1-1. Example Ch11_05 – Class `Mineral`

```
//-----
// Mineral.h
//-----

#ifndef MINERAL_H_
#define MINERAL_H_
#include <compare>
#include <format>
#include <string>
#include <vector>

class Mineral
{
    friend struct std::formatter<Mineral>;
    static constexpr unsigned int c_RngSeedDef {119};

public:
    Mineral() = default;
    Mineral(const char* name, double hardness) : m_Name {name},
        m_Hardness {hardness} {};
    Mineral(const std::string& name, double hardness) : m_Name {name},
        m_Hardness {hardness} {};

    // accessors
    std::string Name() const { return m_Name; }
    double Hardness() const { return m_Hardness; }

    // operators
    friend auto operator<=>(const Mineral& mineral1, const Mineral&
        mineral2)
```

```

{
    auto cmp = mineral1.m_Hardness <=> mineral2.m_Hardness;
    return (cmp == 0) ? mineral1.m_Name <=> mineral2.m_Name : cmp;
}

friend bool operator==(const Mineral& mineral1, const Mineral&
mineral2)
{
    return mineral1.m_Hardness == mineral2.m_Hardness &&
        mineral1.m_Name == mineral2.m_Name;
}

// miscellaneous data generation functions
static std::vector<Mineral> get_vector_all();
static std::vector<Mineral> get_vector_all_shuffle(
    unsigned int rng_seed = c_RngSeedDef, unsigned int num_
    shuffles = 4);
static std::vector<Mineral> get_vector_random(std::size_t vec_size,
    unsigned int rng_seed = c_RngSeedDef);
static std::vector<Mineral> get_vector_sample(std::size_t vec_size,
    unsigned int rng_seed = c_RngSeedDef + 7);

private:
    std::string to_str() const;

    std::string m_Name {}; // mineral name
    double m_Hardness {}; // approximate hardness (Mohs scale)
};

// class Mineral formatter
template <> struct std::formatter<Mineral> : std::formatter<std::string>
{
    constexpr auto parse(std::format_parse_context& pc)
        { return pc.begin(); }

    auto format(const Mineral& mineral, std::format_context& fc) const
        { return std::format_to(fc.out(), "{}", mineral.to_str()); }
};

```

```

#endif

//-----
// Mineral.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <format>
#include <limits>
#include <random>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Mineral.h"

namespace
{
    const std::vector<Mineral> c_Minerals
    {
        Mineral {"Talc", 1.0},
        Mineral {"Todorokite", 1.5},
        Mineral {"Kinoite", 2.5},
        Mineral {"Chalcocite", 2.75},
        Mineral {"Hanksite", 3.25},
        Mineral {"Aragonite", 3.75},
        Mineral {"Zincite", 4.25},

        Mineral {"Lindgrenite", 4.5},
        Mineral {"Perovskite", 5.25},
        Mineral {"Anatase", 5.75},

        Mineral {"Chloritoid", 6.5},
        Mineral {"Bowieite", 7.0},
        Mineral {"Topaz", 8.0},

        Mineral {"Tongbaite", 8.5},
        Mineral {"Moissanite", 9.25},

        Mineral {"Dimorphite", 1.5},
        Mineral {"Gypsum", 2.0},
        Mineral {"Galena", 2.625},
        Mineral {"Calcite", 3.0},
        Mineral {"Roselite", 3.5},
        Mineral {"Fluorite", 4.0},
        Mineral
        {"Conichalcite", 4.5},
        Mineral {"Apatite", 5.0},
        Mineral {"Agrellite", 5.5},
        Mineral
        {"Orthoclase", 6.0},
        Mineral {"Quartz", 7.0},
        Mineral {"Zircon", 7.5},
        Mineral
        {"Chrysoberyl", 8.5},
        Mineral {"Corundum", 9.0},
        Mineral {"Diamond", 10.0},
    }
}

```

```

    };
};

std::vector<Mineral> Mineral::get_vector_all()
{
    return c_Minerals;
}

std::vector<Mineral> Mineral::get_vector_all_shuffle(unsigned int rng_seed,
    unsigned int num_shuffles)
{
    std::mt19937_64 rng {rng_seed};
    std::vector<Mineral> minerals {c_Minerals};

    for (unsigned int i {0}; i < num_shuffles; ++i)
        std::shuffle(minerals.begin(), minerals.end(), rng);
    return minerals;
}

std::vector<Mineral> Mineral::get_vector_random(std::size_t vec_size,
    unsigned int rng_seed)
{
    const int dist_max = static_cast<int>(c_Minerals.size() - 1);
    std::mt19937 rng {rng_seed};
    std::uniform_int_distribution<int> dist {0, dist_max};

    std::vector<Mineral> minerals(vec_size);

    for (size_t i {}; i < minerals.size(); ++i)
        minerals[i] = c_Minerals[dist(rng)];
    return minerals;
}

std::vector<Mineral> Mineral::get_vector_sample(size_t vec_size,
    unsigned int rng_seed)
{
    std::vector<Mineral> minerals {};
    std::mt19937_64 rng {rng_seed};
    size_t n = std::min(c_Minerals.size(), vec_size);

```



```

std::sample(c_Minerals.cbegin(), c_Minerals.cend(),
           std::back_inserter(minerals), n, rng);
std::shuffle(minerals.begin(), minerals.end(), rng);
return minerals;
}

std::string Mineral::to_str() const
{
    std::string s{};

    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "[{:<13s} ", m_Name);
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(s), "{:7.3f}]", m_Hardness);
    return s;
}

```

In Listing 11-5-1-1, note that each `Mineral` object includes a name attribute (`m_Name`) and a hardness attribute (`m_Hardness`). The relational operators for class `Mineral`, `operator<=>` and `operator==`, utilize both attributes when performing a comparison with `m_Hardness` having (subjectively) higher precedence.⁴ Near the top of `Mineral.cpp` is a `std::vector<Mineral>` named `c_Minerals`. Like other user-defined classes that you have already seen, class `Mineral` defines a series of `get_vector_()` functions that return initialized `std::vector<Mineral>` objects for test purposes.

Listing 11-5-1-2 shows the source code for example `Ch11_05_ex1()`. The opening code block of this function utilizes `Mineral::get_vector_all()` to initialize `std::vector<Mineral> minerals`. Following the print statements is the definition of `std::vector<Mineral> find_vals`, which includes several `Mineral` instances. Note that each `Mineral` instance in `find_vals` includes both a name and a hardness value.

⁴This precedence was chosen to underscore the use of multiple attributes in `operator<=>` and `operator==`.

Listing 11-5-1-2. Example Ch11_05 – Ch11_05_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch11_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch11_05.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "Mineral.h"

void Ch11_05_ex1()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_contains
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {3};

    // create test vector
    std::vector<Mineral> minerals { Mineral::get_vector_all() };
    MT::print_ctr("\nminerals:\n", minerals, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("");

    // using std::ranges::contains
    std::vector<Mineral> find_vals
        {"Agrellite", 5.5}, {"Kaolinite", 2.5}, {"Zircon", 7.5}};

    for (const auto& find_val : find_vals)
    {
        std::print("find_val: {:12s} | ", find_val.Name());

        if (std::ranges::contains(minerals, find_val))
            std::println("found, hardness = {:.2f}", find_val.Hardness());
        else
            std::println("not found!");
    }
#else
    std::println("Ch11_05_ex1() requires __cpp_lib_ranges_contains (C++23)");
#endif
}

```

The range for loop of `Ch11_05_ex1()` demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::contains()` (C++23). Execution of `std::ranges::contains(minerals, find_val)` returns true if `find_val` exists in `minerals`; otherwise, it returns false. In the current example, STL algorithm `std::ranges::contains()` applies `Mineral::operator==` to carry out its comparisons. Recall that this operator uses `Mineral` attributes `m_Hardness` and `m_Name`. The testing of both attributes is necessary since some minerals have the same hardness value.

Example function `Ch11_05_ex2()`, shown in Listing 11-5-2, spotlights the use of `std::ranges::contains_subrange()` (C++23). This STL algorithm searches a range for a matching subrange and returns true if the subrange exists.

Listing 11-5-2. Example `Ch11_05 - Ch11_05_ex2()`

```
void Ch11_05_ex2()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_contains
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {3};

    // create test vector
    std::vector<Mineral> minerals { Mineral::get_vector_all() };
    MT::print_ctr("\nminerals:\n", minerals, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::contains_subrange - example #1
    std::vector<Mineral> subrange1
        {{ "Conichalcite", 4.5}, {"Lindgrenite", 4.5}, Mineral
        {"Apatite", 5.0}};
    MT::print_ctr("\nsubrange1:\n", subrange1, fmt, epl_max);

    bool bsr1 = std::ranges::contains_subrange(minerals, subrange1);
    std::println("\nsubrange1 {s} in vector minerals",
        bsr1 ? "found" : "not found");

    // using std::ranges::contains_subrange - example #2
    std::vector<Mineral> subrange2
        {{ "Kaolinite", 2.5}, {"Lindgrenite", 4.5}, Mineral
        {"Apatite", 5.0}};
    MT::print_ctr("\nsubrange2:\n", subrange2, fmt, epl_max);
```

```

    bool bsr2 = std::ranges::contains_subrange(minerals, subrange2);
    std::println("\nsubrange2 {s} in vector minerals",
                bsr2 ? "found" : "not found");
#else
    std::println("Ch11_05_ex2() requires __cpp_lib_ranges_contains (C++23)");
#endif
}

```

The use of `std::ranges::contains_subrange()` is clear-cut. In Listing 11-5-2, execution of `std::ranges::contains_subrange(minerals, subrange1)` returns true since `subrange1` exists in `std::vector<Mineral> minerals`. However, execution of `std::ranges::contains_subrange(minerals, subrange2)` returns false since the specified subrange does not exist in `minerals`. Here are the results for example Ch11_05:

```

----- Results for example Ch11_05 -----

----- Ch11_05_ex1() -----

minerals:
[Talc          1.000] [Dimorphite    1.500] [Todorokite    1.500]
[Gypsum       2.000] [Kinoite       2.500] [Galena        2.625]
[Chalcocite   2.750] [Calcite       3.000] [Hanksite      3.250]
[Roselite     3.500] [Aragonite     3.750] [Fluorite      4.000]
[Zincite      4.250] [Conichalcite  4.500] [Lindgrenite   4.500]
[Apatite      5.000] [Perovskite    5.250] [Agrellite     5.500]
[Anatase      5.750] [Orthoclase    6.000] [Chloritoid    6.500]
[Quartz       7.000] [Bowieite      7.000] [Zircon        7.500]
[Topaz        8.000] [Chrysoberyl   8.500] [Tongbaite     8.500]
[Corundum     9.000] [Moissanite    9.250] [Diamond       10.000]

find_val: Agrellite   | found, hardness = 5.50
find_val: Kaolinite   | not found!
find_val: Zircon      | found, hardness = 7.50

----- Ch11_05_ex2() -----

minerals:
[Talc          1.000] [Dimorphite    1.500] [Todorokite    1.500]
[Gypsum       2.000] [Kinoite       2.500] [Galena        2.625]

```

```
[Chalcocite      2.750] [Calcite      3.000] [Hanksite      3.250]
[Roselite       3.500] [Aragonite   3.750] [Fluorite      4.000]
[Zincite        4.250] [Conichalcite 4.500] [Lindgrenite   4.500]
[Apatite        5.000] [Perovskite  5.250] [Agrellite     5.500]
[Anatase        5.750] [Orthoclase  6.000] [Chloritoid    6.500]
[Quartz         7.000] [Bowieite    7.000] [Zircon        7.500]
[Topaz          8.000] [Chrysoberyl 8.500] [Tongbaite     8.500]
[Corundum       9.000] [Moissanite  9.250] [Diamond       10.000]
```

```
subrange1:
```

```
[Conichalcite   4.500] [Lindgrenite   4.500] [Apatite       5.000]
```

```
subrange1 found in vector minerals
```

```
subrange2:
```

```
[Kaolinite      2.500] [Lindgrenite   4.500] [Apatite       5.000]
```

```
subrange2 not found in vector minerals
```

More Find Algorithms

To determine if a container or range starts or ends with a specific sequence of elements, you can use `std::ranges::starts_with()` or `std::ranges::ends_with()` (both C++23). Listing 11-6-1 shows the source code for example function `Ch11_06_ex1()`, which spotlights the use of these functions.

Listing 11-6-1. Example Ch11_06 – Ch11_06_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch11_06_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch11_06.h"
#include "AminoAcid.h"
#include "MT.h"
```

```

void Ch11_06_ex1()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_starts_ends_with
    const char* fmt = "{:3s} ";
    std::size_t epl_max {20};
    constexpr std::size_t num_aa {80};

    // generate vector of random amino acids (code3)
    std::vector<std::string> vec1 {AminoAcid::get_vector_random_code3(num_aa, 100)};
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // create test sequences of amino acids

    std::vector<std::string> seq1(vec1.begin(), vec1.begin() + 4);
    MT::print_ctr("\nseq1: ", seq1, fmt, epl_max);

    std::vector<std::string> seq2(vec1.end() - 4, vec1.end());
    MT::print_ctr("seq2: ", seq2, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::starts_with
    bool bsw1 = std::ranges::starts_with(vec1, seq1);
    bool bsw2 = std::ranges::starts_with(vec1, seq2);
    std::println("\nvec1 starts with aminio acid sequence seq1: {:s}", bsw1);
    std::println("vec1 starts with aminio acid sequence seq2: {:s}", bsw2);

    // using std::ranges::ends_with
    bool bew1 = std::ranges::ends_with(vec1, seq1);
    bool bew2 = std::ranges::ends_with(vec1, seq2);
    std::println("\nvec1 ends with aminio acid sequence seq1: {:s}", bew1);
    std::println("vec1 ends with aminio acid sequence seq2: {:s}", bew2);
#else
    std::println("Ch11_06_ex1() requires __cpp_lib_ranges_starts_ends_with (C++23)");
#endif
}

```

Near the top of Listing 11-6-1, `Ch11_06_ex1()` utilizes `AminoAcid::get_vector_random_code3()` to initialize `std::vector<string> vec1`. This vector contains 100 random amino acids in code3 format (see Listings 10-1-3-1 and 10-1-3-2 for class `AminoAcid`). Next is the instantiation of test sequences `seq1` and `seq2`. Note that both sequences contain four code3 amino acids.

In the ensuing code block, execution of `std::ranges::starts_with(vec1, seq1)` returns true if `vec1` starts with `seq1` (i.e., the first four elements in `vec1` match the four elements of `seq1`); otherwise, it returns false. Similarly, execution of `std::ranges::starts_with(vec1, seq2)` returns true if `vec1` starts with `seq2`.

An example code block that demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::ends_with()` follows. This function checks the end of a range for a matching subrange. Here are the results for example `Ch11_06`:

```

----- Results for example Ch11_06 -----
----- Ch11_06_ex1() -----

vec1:
Leu Phe Gln His His Leu Thr Asn Ala Asp Asn Asp Phe Cys Thr Ile Asn
Trp Lys Arg
Trp Met Cys Leu Asp Lys Asn Ala Cys Glu Val Val Thr Asn Asp Arg Thr
Glu Gln Met
His Phe Tyr Met Thr Tyr Glu Gln Asp Lys Gly Asp Ala Leu Gln Met Ser
Asn Ala Lys
Lys Ile Met Gly Asn His Gly His Ala His Trp Ala Val Ser Arg Lys Trp
Gly Lys Leu

seq1: Leu Phe Gln His
seq2: Trp Gly Lys Leu

vec1 starts with aminio acid sequence seq1: true
vec1 starts with aminio acid sequence seq2: false

vec1 ends with aminio acid sequence seq1: false
vec1 ends with aminio acid sequence seq2: true

```

Search Algorithms

The C++ STL also includes algorithms that search a range for a sequence of elements. Listing 11-7-1 shows the source code for example `Ch11_07_ex1()`. This function demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::search()`, which searches a range for the first occurrence of a sequence that's specified by a second range.

Listing 11-7-1. Example Ch11_07 – Ch11_07_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch11_07_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <functional>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch11_07.h"
#include "HtmlColor.h"
#include "MT.h"

std::vector<std::vector<HtmlColor>> get_sequences(size_t offset)
{
    std::vector<std::vector<HtmlColor>> sequences {};

    for (size_t i = 0; ; ++i)
    {
        // create test sequence of three HtmlColor colors
        size_t indx0 = i * offset;
        size_t indx1 = i * offset + 1;
        size_t indx2 = i * offset + 2;

        if (i == 2)
            ++indx2;    // index for non-matching sequence

        if (indx2 >= HtmlColor::num_colors())
            break;

        std::vector<HtmlColor> sequence {};
        sequence.push_back(HtmlColor::get(indx0));
    }
}
```



```

        sequence.push_back(HtmlColor::get(indx1));
        sequence.push_back(HtmlColor::get(indx2));

        sequences.push_back(sequence);
    }

    return sequences;
}

void Ch11_07_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};

    // initialize vector of HtmlColors
    std::vector<HtmlColor> colors = HtmlColor::get_vector();
    MT::print_ctr("\ncolors:\n", colors, fmt, epl_max);

    // generate HtmlColor color sequences
    std::vector<std::vector<HtmlColor>> sequences = get_sequences(30);

    for (const auto& sequence : sequences)
    {
        MT::print_ctr("\ntest sequence:\n", sequence, fmt, epl_max);

        // using std::ranges::search to find 'sequence' in 'colors'
        // std::ranges::search() returns iterator subrange [iter_b, iter_e)
        auto [iter_b, iter_e] = std::ranges::search(colors, sequence);

        if (iter_b != iter_e)
        {
            // sequence found, calculate position
            auto pos = std::distance(colors.begin(), iter_b);
            std::println("found sequence at position {:d}", pos);
        }
        else
            std::println("sequence not found");
    }
}

```

Listing 11-7-1 commences with the definition of a function named `get_sequences()`. This function generates sequences of `HtmlColor` (see Listing 8-1-4-1) objects for test purposes. Note that `get_sequences()` returns a container of type `std::vector<std::vector<HtmlColor>>`.

Also shown in Listing 11-7-1 is example `Ch11_07_ex1()`. Near the top of this function, execution of the statement `std::vector<HtmlColor> colors = HtmlColor::get_vector()` creates a vector named `colors` that includes instances of all `HtmlColors`. The subsequent statement exploits the previously described `get_sequences()` to generate a series of `std::vector<HtmlColor>` test sequences.

During each iteration of `Ch11_07_ex1()`'s range for loop, execution of the statement `[iter_b, iter_e] = std::ranges::search(colors, sequence)` searches container `colors` for `HtmlColor` sequence `sequence`. Function `std::ranges::search()` returns an iterator subrange that pinpoints the first occurrence of `sequence` in `colors` (if it exists). If `iter_b != iter_e` is true, `sequence` exists in `colors`, and the position of `sequence` within `colors` is then calculated and printed. If the usage of subranges here looks familiar, it's because you saw the same basic technique earlier in this chapter (see Listing 11-4-4 and the accompanying explanations for `std::ranges::find_last()`).

Source code example `Ch11_07_ex2()`, shown in Listing 11-7-2, demonstrates the use of `std::search()`.

Listing 11-7-2. Example `Ch11_07 - Ch11_07_ex2()`

```
void Ch11_07_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};

    // initialize vector of HtmColors
    std::vector<HtmlColor> colors = HtmlColor::get_vector();
    MT::print_ctr("\ncolors:\n", colors, fmt, epl_max);

    // generate HtmlColor sequences
    std::vector<std::vector<HtmlColor>> sequences = get_sequences(31);

    for (const auto& sequence : sequences)
    {
        MT::print_ctr("\ntest sequence:\n", sequence, fmt, epl_max);
    }
}
```

```

// create sequence searcher
std::boyer_moore_searcher searcher(sequence.begin(),
sequence.end(),
    HtmlColor::hash_func_searcher);

// using std::search to find 'sequence' in vector 'colors'
auto iter = std::search(colors.begin(), colors.end(), searcher);

if (iter != colors.end())
{
    auto pos = std::distance(colors.begin(), iter);
    std::println("found sequence at position {:d}", pos);
}
else
    std::println("sequence not found");
}
}

```

The code layout of `Ch11_07_ex2()` closely resembles that of `Ch11_07_ex1()`, but with a few notable differences. First, note the declaration of `std::boyer_moore_searcher searcher` within `Ch11_07_ex2()`'s range for loop. This statement specifies the sequence that the subsequent call to `std::search()` will look for in `std::vector<HtmlColor> colors`. It also specifies a custom hash function for the search algorithm. For class `HtmlColor`, the custom hash function utilizes the `HtmlColor`'s name and STL's default hash function for a `std::string`:

```

static size_t hash_func_searcher(const HtmlColor& html_color)
{ return std::hash<std::string>{} (html_color.m_Name); }

```

As mentioned in Chapter 8, defining a custom hash function that's both algorithmically efficient and statistically solid is a nontrivial undertaking. The current example applies a custom hash function merely to demonstrate the proper use of `std::boyer_moore_searcher`. More about this shortly.

The second item of note in `Ch11_07_ex2()`'s range for loop is that execution of `iter = std::search(colors.begin(), colors.end(), searcher)` returns a single iterator instead of a subrange. If `iter != colors.end()` is true, vector sequence exists in `colors`. STL helper function `std::distance()` is then exploited to calculate and print the position of vector sequence within `colors`.

The STL also defines a `std::default_searcher` and a `std::boyer_moore_horspool_searcher` in addition to the `std::boyer_moore_searcher` that was used in `Ch11_07_ex2()`. The `std::default_searcher` provides functionality that corresponds to the STL's pre-C++17 implementation of `std::search()`. The `std::boyer_moore_searcher` and `std::boyer_moore_horspool_searcher` searchers implement search algorithms that are optimized for text strings. This is why `HtmlColor::hash_function_searcher()` uses `std::hash<std::string>`. Appendix B contains a list of references that you can consult for more information regarding these algorithms.

The final example of this section, `Ch11_07_ex3()`, highlights the use of `std::ranges::mismatch()`. This STL algorithm compares two ranges and returns iterators that identify the position of any mismatch within the two ranges. Listing 11-7-3 shows the source code for this example.

Listing 11-7-3. Example `Ch11_07 - Ch11_07_ex3()`

```
void Ch11_07_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {8};

    // initialize vector of HtmlColor names
    std::vector<std::string> colors {};
    size_t num_colors {HtmlColor::num_colors()};

    for (size_t i = 0; i < num_colors; i += 25)
    {
        auto color {HtmlColor::get(i)};
        colors.emplace_back(color.Name());
    }

    for (size_t i = 0; i < 6; ++i)
    {
        // generate test vectors colors1a and colors2a
        constexpr size_t mmi {42};
        std::vector<std::string> colors1 {colors};
        std::vector<std::string> colors2 {colors};
```

```

if (i == 1)
    colors1.insert(colors1.begin() + 2, HtmlColor::get(mmi).
        Name());
else if (i == 2)
    colors2.insert(colors2.end() - 2, HtmlColor::get(mmi).Name());
else if (i == 3)
    colors1.erase(colors1.begin() + 3);
else if (i == 4)
    colors1.push_back(HtmlColor::get(mmi).Name());
else if (i == 5)
    colors2.push_back(HtmlColor::get(mmi).Name());

// display test vectors
std::println("\nTest #{:d}", i);
MT::print_ctr("colors1a: ", colors1, fmt, epl_max);
MT::print_ctr("colors2a: ", colors2, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::mismatch
auto [iter1, iter2] = std::ranges::mismatch(colors1, colors2);

if (iter1 == colors1.end() && iter2 == colors2.end())
    std::println("no mismatch found");
else
{
    std::println("mismatch found");

    if (iter1 != colors1.end())
        std::println("*iter1 (colors1): {}", *iter1);

    if (iter2 != colors2.end())
        std::println("*iter2 (colors2): {}", *iter2);
}
}
}

```

The opening code block in `Ch11_07_ex3()` initializes `std::vector<std::string>` `colors`, which contains names of `HtmlColors`. The first code block in `Ch11_07_ex3()`'s for loop includes code that initializes two test vectors of `HtmlColors` named `colors1` and `colors2`. The various `if` expressions ensure that `colors1` and `colors2` encompass a mixture of test cases when used later with `std::ranges::mismatch()`.

Following the calls to `MT::print_ctr()` is the expression `[iter1, iter2] = std::ranges::mismatch(colors1, colors2)`. The execution of this statement compares elements in the ranges specified by `colors1` and `colors2`. If `(iter1 == colors1.end() && iter2 == colors2.end())` is true, sequences `colors1` and `colors2` are identical; otherwise, the sequences are different. If the sequences are different, the iterators returned by `std::ranges::mismatch()` point to the discrepant elements within the sequences. It's important to note that the ranges provided to `std::ranges::mismatch()` need not be the same size. Also, note that when a mismatch is found, one of the returned iterators may point to an `end()` element. This is why the `else` expression checks both `iter1` and `iter2` before they are dereferenced in the succeeding calls to `std::println()`.

The results for example `Ch11_07` follow this paragraph. This output has been edited to shorten its length (the vectors of `HtmlColor` names have been shortened). To see the complete output, just compile and run the code.

```

----- Results for example Ch11_07 -----
----- Ch11_07_ex1() -----

colors:
[AliceBlue          0xF0F8FF] [AntiqueWhite          0xFAEBD7]
[Aqua               0x00FFFF] [AquaMarine          0x7FFFD4]
[Azure              0xF0FFFF] [Beige                0xF5F5DC]
...

test sequence:
[AliceBlue          0xF0F8FF] [AntiqueWhite          0xFAEBD7]
[Aqua               0x00FFFF]
found sequence at position 0

test sequence:
[DarkOrchid         0x9932CC] [DarkRed              0x8B0000]

```

[DarkSalmon 0xE9967A]

found sequence at position 30

test sequence:

[LavenderBlush 0xFFF0F5] [LawnGreen 0x7CFC00]

[LightBlue 0xADD8E6]

sequence not found

test sequence:

[MidnightBlue 0x191970] [MintCream 0xF5FFFA]

[MistyRose 0xFFE4E1]

found sequence at position 90

test sequence:

[SeaGreen 0x2E8B57] [Seashell 0xFFFF5EE]

[Sienna 0xA0522D]

found sequence at position 120

----- Ch11_07_ex2() -----

colors:

[AliceBlue 0xF0F8FF] [AntiqueWhite 0xFAEBD7]

[Aqua 0x00FFFF] [AquaMarine 0x7FFFD4]

[Azure 0xF0FFFF] [Beige 0xF5F5DC]

...

test sequence:

[AliceBlue 0xF0F8FF] [AntiqueWhite 0xFAEBD7]

[Aqua 0x00FFFF]

found sequence at position 0

test sequence:

[DarkRed 0x8B0000] [DarkSalmon 0xE9967A]

[DarkSeaGreen 0x8FBC8F]

found sequence at position 31

test sequence:

[LemonChiffon 0xFFACD] [LightBlue 0xADD8E6]

[LightCyan 0xE0FFFF]

sequence not found

test sequence:

[Moccasin 0xFFE4B5] [Navajowhite 0xFFDEAD]
[Navy 0x000080]

found sequence at position 93

test sequence:

[SkyBlue 0x87CEEB] [SlateBlue 0x6A5ACD]
[SlateGray 0x708090]

found sequence at position 124

----- Ch11_07_ex3() -----

Test #0

colors1a: AliceBlue DarkGreen Gray LightYellow OrangeRed SlateBlue
colors2a: AliceBlue DarkGreen Gray LightYellow OrangeRed SlateBlue
no mismatch found

Test #1

colors1a: AliceBlue DarkGreen Firebrick Gray LightYellow OrangeRed
SlateBlue
colors2a: AliceBlue DarkGreen Gray LightYellow OrangeRed SlateBlue
mismatch found
*iter1 (colors1): Firebrick
*iter2 (colors2): Gray

Test #2

colors1a: AliceBlue DarkGreen Gray LightYellow OrangeRed SlateBlue
colors2a: AliceBlue DarkGreen Gray LightYellow Firebrick OrangeRed
SlateBlue
mismatch found
*iter1 (colors1): OrangeRed
*iter2 (colors2): Firebrick

Test #3

colors1a: AliceBlue DarkGreen Gray OrangeRed SlateBlue
colors2a: AliceBlue DarkGreen Gray LightYellow OrangeRed SlateBlue
mismatch found


```

*iter1 (colors1): OrangeRed
*iter2 (colors2): LightYellow

Test #4
colors1a: AliceBlue DarkGreen Gray LightYellow OrangeRed SlateBlue
Firebrick
colors2a: AliceBlue DarkGreen Gray LightYellow OrangeRed SlateBlue
mismatch found
*iter1 (colors1): Firebrick

Test #5
colors1a: AliceBlue DarkGreen Gray LightYellow OrangeRed SlateBlue
colors2a: AliceBlue DarkGreen Gray LightYellow OrangeRed SlateBlue
Firebrick
mismatch found
*iter2 (colors2): Firebrick

```

Accumulate and Fold Algorithms

The final category of algorithms covered in this chapter includes accumulates and folds. Listing 11-8-1 shows the source code for `Ch11_08_ex1()`. This example function demonstrates the use of `std::accumulate()`.

Listing 11-8-1. Example Ch11_08 – Ch11_08_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch11_08_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <functional>
#include <numeric>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch11_08.h"
#include "MF.h"
#include "MT.h"

```

```

#include "RN.h"

void Ch11_08_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:7.1f} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // create vector of random values
    constexpr size_t n {20};
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {1000};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {5};
    std::vector vec1 {RN::get_vector<double>(n, rng_min, rng_max,
    rng_seed)};
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::accumulate
    double sum1 = std::accumulate(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0.0);
    double sum2 = std::accumulate(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(),
    1'000'000'000.0);
    std::println("\nsum1: {:7.1f} sum2: {:7.1f}", sum1, sum2);

    // using std::accumulate with binary operator
    auto acc_op = [](double x, double y) { return x - y; };
    double acc1 = std::accumulate(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0.0, acc_op);
    std::println("\nacc1: {:7.1f}", acc1);
}

```

The opening code block of `Ch11_08_ex1()` utilizes `RN::get_vector()` to initialize `vec1` with 20 random values of type `double`. In the ensuing code block, the expression `sum1 = std::accumulate(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0.0)` sums the elements of `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())`. During the execution of this expression, `std::accumulate()` repeatedly calculates `sum1 += *iter++` where `iter` denotes an iterator that points to an element between `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())`. The `0.0` argument is the initial value that's assigned to `sum1`. The next statement, `sum2 = std::accumulate(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 1'000'000'000.0)`, illustrates the use of `std::accumulate()` with a different initial value.

The default summing behavior of `std::accumulate()` can be modified using a binary operator as shown in the next code block. The statement `acc1 = std::accumulate(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0.0, acc_op)` essentially calculates `acc1 = acc_op(acc1, *iter++)` using all elements of the specified range. Like the non-binary operator variant, `acc1` is initialized to `0.0` before the calculation commences.

Unlike most pre-C++20 algorithms, the STL doesn't define a `std::ranges::accumulate()`. Instead, the C++23 standard specifies a new category of fold algorithms. These algorithms are a bit more flexible than `std::accumulate()` as you will soon see.

A fold algorithm applies a binary operator to the elements of a range and its operation can best be explained using a short snippet of C++ code:

```
std::array<double, 5> x {1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0};
auto op = [](double a, double b) { return a + b; };
double l_init {0.0};
double l_fold = op(op(op(op(op(l_init, x[0]), x[1]), x[2]), x[3]), x[4]));
double r_init {1000.0};
double r_fold = op(x[0], op(x[1], op(x[2], op(x[3], op(x[4], r_init)))));
std::println("l_fold: {:.1f} r_fold: {:.1f}", l_fold, r_fold);
```

In this snippet, `op()` is a binary operator that adds two doubles. The statement `l_fold = op(op(op(op(op(l_init, x[0]), x[1]), x[2]), x[3]), x[4])` is an example of a left fold. Note here that operator `op()` is applied left to right using successive elements of array `x` starting with `x[0]`. Also, note that each `op()` calculation utilizes the previous `op()` result and the next element in array `x`. Value `l_init` furnishes the initial value for the left fold operation. The `std::accumulate()` algorithm that you saw earlier performs a left fold. Returning to the snippet, the statement `r_fold = op(x[0], op(x[1], op(x[2], op(x[3], op(x[4], r_init))))` is an example of a right fold. Note that a right fold applies `op()` to successive elements of array `x` in reverse order starting with the last element `x[4]`. Fold operations can be applied to ranges of any data type provided a suitable binary operator is defined.

Listing 11-8-2 shows the code for example `Ch11_08_ex2()`. This example spotlights the use of several `std::ranges::fold_` algorithms.

Listing 11-8-2. Example Ch11_08 - Ch11_08_ex2()

```

void Ch11_08_ex2()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_fold
    const char* fmt = "{:7.1f} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // create vector of random values
    std::vector<double> vec1 {10.0, 20.0, 30.0, 40.0, 50.0};
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::fold_left, std::ranges::fold_right
    (associative op)
    auto left1 = std::ranges::fold_left(vec1, 0.0, std::plus<double>());
    auto right1 = std::ranges::fold_right(vec1, 0.0, std::plus<double>());
    std::println("\nleft1: {:7.1f} right1: {:7.1f}", left1, right1);

    // using std::ranges::fold_left, std::ranges::fold_right (non-
    associative op)
    auto left2 = std::ranges::fold_left(vec1, 0.0, std::minus<double>());
    auto right2 = std::ranges::fold_right(vec1, 0.0, std::minus<double>());
    std::println("\nleft2: {:7.1f} right2: {:7.1f}", left2, right2);

    // using std::ranges::fold_left_first, std::ranges::fold_right_
    last (assoc)
    // left3, right3 are std::optional<double>
    auto left3 = std::ranges::fold_left_first(vec1, std::plus<double>());
    auto right3 = std::ranges::fold_right_last(vec1, std::plus<double>());
    std::println("\nleft3: {:7.1f} right3: {:7.1f}", left3.value(),
    right3.value());

    // using std::ranges::fold_left_first, std::ranges::fold_right_last
    (non-assoc)
    // left4, right4 are std::optional<double>
    auto left4 = std::ranges::fold_left_first(vec1, std::minus<double>());
    auto right4 = std::ranges::fold_right_last(vec1, std::minus<double>());
    std::println("\nleft4: {:7.1f} right4: {:7.1f}", left4.value(),
    right4.value());

```

```

// using std::ranges::fold_left_first, empty container
std::vector<double> vec2 {};
auto left5 = std::ranges::fold_left_first(vec2, std::plus<double>());

if (left5)
    std::println("\nleft5: {:.1f}", left5.value());
else
    std::println("\nleft5: empty container");
#else
    std::println("Ch11_08_ex2() requires __cpp_lib_ranges_fold (C++23)");
#endif
}

```

Following the initialization of `std::vector<double> vec1`, execution of the statement `left1 = std::ranges::fold_left(vec1, 0.0, std::plus<double>())` sums the elements of `vec1`. In this expression, function object `std::plus<double>()` calls operator+ using two doubles. As used in the current code block, `std::ranges::fold_left()` performs the same calculation as `std::accumulate(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0.0)`. The next statement, `right1 = std::ranges::fold_right(vec1, 0.0, std::plus<double>())`, performs a right fold using the elements of `vec1`. If you scan ahead to the results section, you'll notice that `left1` and `right1` are identical. The reason for this is that `std::plus<double>` is an associative operator. The next code block in `Ch11_08_ex2()` carries out left and right fold operations using `vec1` and function object `std::minus<double>()`. Execution of these fold operations yields different values for `left2` and `right2` since the operations performed by `std::minus<double>()` are non-associative.

The next two code blocks in `Ch11_08_ex2()` demonstrate the use of `std::ranges::fold_left_first()` and `std::ranges::fold_right_last()`. The execution of these fold functions is slightly different. First, both functions return a value of type `std::optional<T>`. Recall that a `std::optional<T>` is an object that might contain a value. More on this shortly. The other difference is that `std::ranges::fold_left_first()` and `std::ranges::fold_right_last()` don't require an initial value; they simply use the first or last element in the specified range.

The final code block in `Ch11_08_ex2()` demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::fold_left_first()` using an empty container. This is where the `std::optional<T>` return value becomes useful. Note that prior to the `std::println()` statement that utilizes

`left5.value()`, `left5` is tested. The reason for this is that execution of `left5.value()` will throw a `std::bad_optional_access` exception if `std::optional<double> left5` doesn't contain a value.

Example function `Ch11_08_ex3()`, shown in Listing 11-8-3, highlights left and right folds using elements of type `std::string`. Following the initialization of `std::vector<std::string> vec1` is the definition of a binary operator named `fold_op_left()`. This operator carries out a concatenation action using `std::string` arguments `s1` and `s2`. Note that `MF::to_upper()` is applied to `s2_temp`, which is a copy of argument `s2`. A copy of `s2` is made since `MF::to_upper()` performs an in-place uppercase conversion and `s2` is declared using the `const` qualifier. The subsequent code block in `Ch11_08_ex3()` defines `fold_op_right()`. This binary operator closely resembles `fold_op_left()` except that it applies `MF::to_upper()` to `s1_temp` instead of `s2_temp`. Both binary operators include a `std::println()` statement so that you can see the output of each fold concatenation step in the results section.

Listing 11-8-3. Example `Ch11_08 - Ch11_08_ex3()`

```
void Ch11_08_ex3()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_fold
    const char* fmt = "{:8s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // create test vector
    std::vector<std::string> vec1
        {"zero", "one", "two", "three", "four", "five", "six", "seven"};
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1: ", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // define binary operators for left and right folds
    auto fold_op_left = [](const std::string& s1, const std::string& s2)
    {
        std::println("s1: {:35s} s2: {:35s}", s1, s2);
        auto s2_temp {s2};
        return s1 + " " + MF::to_upper(s2_temp);
    };
};
```

```

auto fold_op_right = [](const std::string& s1, const std::string& s2)
{
    std::println("s1: {:35s} s2: {:35s}", s1, s2);
    auto s1_temp {s1};
    return MF::to_upper(s1_temp) + " " + s2;
};

// using std::ranges::fold_left_first
std::println("\nexecuting std::ranges::fold_left_first()");
auto left1 = std::ranges::fold_left_first(vec1, fold_op_left);
std::println("\nleft1: {:s}", left1.value());

// using std::ranges::fold_left_right
std::println("\nexecuting std::ranges::fold_right_last()");
auto right1 = std::ranges::fold_right_last(vec1, fold_op_right);
std::println("\nright1: {:s}", right1.value());
#else
    std::println("Ch11_08_ex3() requires __cpp_lib_ranges_fold (C++23)");
#endif
}

```

The next code block in `Ch11_08_ex3()` performs a left fold of `vec1` using `left1 = std::ranges::fold_left_first(vec1, fold_op_left)`. If you scan ahead to the results section, note that `std::string s1` contains the accumulated result of the previous fold actions, while `s2` contains the next string to concatenate. In the current example, execution of `std::ranges::fold_left_first(vec1, fold_op_left)` basically appends the strings of `vec1` into a single string with `MF::to_upper()` being applied to all strings except `vec[0]`. The final code block of `Ch11_08_ex3()` performs a right fold using `right1 = std::ranges::fold_right_last(vec1, fold_op_right)`. Execution of this expression prepends the strings of `vec1` into a single string with `MF::to_upper()` being applied to all strings except `vec[7]`. Here are the results for example `Ch11_08`:

----- Results for example Ch11_08 -----

----- Ch11_08_ex1() -----

vec1:

222.0	56.0	871.0	832.0	207.0	364.0	919.0	980.0	489.0	90.0
612.0	397.0	766.0	355.0	519.0	487.0	297.0	991.0	188.0	809.0

sum1: 10451.0 sum2: 1000010451.0

acc1: -10451.0

----- Ch11_08_ex2() -----

vec1:

10.0	20.0	30.0	40.0	50.0
------	------	------	------	------

left1: 150.0 right1: 150.0

left2: -150.0 right2: 30.0

left3: 150.0 right3: 150.0

left4: -130.0 right4: 30.0

left5: empty container

----- Ch11_08_ex3() -----

vec1: zero one two three four five six seven

executing std::ranges::fold_left_first()

s1: zero	s2: one
s1: zero ONE	s2: two
s1: zero ONE TWO	s2: three
s1: zero ONE TWO THREE	s2: four
s1: zero ONE TWO THREE FOUR	s2: five
s1: zero ONE TWO THREE FOUR FIVE	s2: six
s1: zero ONE TWO THREE FOUR FIVE SIX	s2: seven

left1: zero ONE TWO THREE FOUR FIVE SIX SEVEN


```
executing std::ranges::fold_right_last()
```

```
s1: six           s2: seven
s1: five         s2: SIX seven
s1: four         s2: FIVE SIX seven
s1: three        s2: FOUR FIVE SIX seven
s1: two          s2: THREE FOUR FIVE SIX seven
s1: one          s2: TWO THREE FOUR FIVE SIX seven
s1: zero         s2: ONE TWO THREE FOUR FIVE
SIX seven

right1: ZERO ONE TWO THREE FOUR FIVE SIX seven
```

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- A `for_each` algorithm applies a function object to each dereferenced iterator in a range. These algorithms are sometimes used as an alternative to an explicitly coded range for loop.
- A transformation algorithm applies a unary or binary function object to one or two input ranges. The result of each transformation is then saved to an output range.
- A generation algorithm assigns the return value of successive user-specified function evaluations to each element of a range.
- A find algorithm searches a range for an element that matches a specific value or satisfies the decision logic of a predicate function. The STL also defines find algorithms that determine if a range begins or ends with a sequence that's specified by a separate range.
- A contains algorithm returns a `bool` result that signifies the presence of a value in a range.

- A search algorithm searches a range for a sequence of elements specified by another range. The STL also predefines several searchers that can be used to accelerate the performance of searches using containers or ranges of text strings.
- A fold algorithm applies a binary operator to successive elements in a range. These algorithms are often used to carry out a “summing” action over a range.

CHAPTER 12

Algorithms – Part 3

This chapter expounds more STL algorithms, including

- Sort algorithms
- Binary search algorithms
- Partition algorithms
- Heap algorithms

Like the previous chapter, the content of this chapter mostly targets the algorithms of namespace `std::ranges`. You can also use the pre-C++20 counterparts in namespace `std`. The use of these algorithms might be a better option when maintaining an older code base, especially if switching to a C++20 or later compiler is impracticable.

Sorting Algorithms

Sorting the elements of a container is a critical task for most C++ applications. In Chapters 3 and 4, you studied several examples that exemplified basic use of STL algorithms `std::sort()` and `std::ranges::sort()`. This section briefly reviews these algorithms. It also presents other algorithms that carry out sorting operations.

Listing 12-1-1 shows the source code for example `Ch12_01_ex1()`, which illustrates the use of `std::sort()` and `std::ranges::sort()`. Near the top of `Ch12_01_ex1()`, `std::vector<Airport> airports` is initialized using `Airport::get_vector_airports_shuffle()` (see Listing 11-4-1-2). Following execution of this function, `airports` holds a collection of `Airport` objects. In the next code block, `Ch12_01_ex1()` utilizes `std::sort(airports.begin(), airports.end())` to sort the elements of `airports`.

The default comparison function object for `std::sort()` is `std::less()` (or operator<), and the relational operators for class `Airport` utilize each airport's IATA code.¹ Following execution of `std::sort()`, the elements of `airports` are sorted by IATA code in ascending order.

Listing 12-1-1. Example Ch12_01 – Ch12_01_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch12_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch12_01.h"
#include "Airport.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RN.h"

void Ch12_01_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {1};

    // initialize vector of airports
    std::vector<Airport> airports = Airport::get_vector_airports_shuffle();
    MT::print_ctr("\nairports (before sort):\n", airports, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::sort (uses Airport::operator< which uses IATA code)
    std::sort(airports.begin(), airports.end());
    MT::print_ctr("\nairports (ascending by IATA):\n", airports, fmt,
        epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::sort (custom compare, descending order using
        latitude)
    auto cmp_op = [](const Airport& ap1, const Airport& ap2)
    {
        auto [lat1, lon1] = ap1.Location().to_decimal();
```

¹Recall that class `Airport` defines `operator<=>`, from which the compiler generates `operator<`.

```

        auto [lat2, lon2] = ap2.Location().to_decimal();
        return lat1 > lat2;
    };

    std::ranges::sort(airports, cmp_op);
    MT::print_ctr("\nairports (descending by latitude):\n", airports, fmt,
    ep1_max);
}

```

The ensuing code block opens with the definition of a lambda expression named `cmp_op()`. Note that this expression returns `lat1 > lat2` where `lat1` and `lat2` are the latitudes of `Airports ap1` and `ap2`. Execution of the subsequent `std::ranges::sort(airports, cmp_op)` sorts the elements of `airports` in descending order based on latitude. Unlike the traditional algorithms of namespace `std`, most algorithms in the `std::ranges` namespace support projections. A projection is a transformation that an algorithm applies prior to inspecting an element's value. Their use often yields simpler expressions for algorithms like `std::ranges::sort()`. You'll learn more about projections in Chapter 14.

Example function `Ch12_01_ex2()`, shown in Listing 12-1-2, highlights the use of `std::ranges::stable_sort()`. A stable sort preserves the range's original ordering of equivalent elements.

Listing 12-1-2. Example `Ch12_01 - Ch12_01_ex2()`

```

void Ch12_01_ex2()
{
    auto print_airports = [](const char* msg, const std::vector<Airport>&
    airports)
    {
        size_t nl {};
        std::println("{:s}", msg);

        for (const auto& ap : airports)
        {
            std::print("[{:2s} {:3s} {:32s}] ",
                ap.CountryCode(), ap.IataCode(), ap.Name());
        }
    };
}

```

```

        if (++n1 % 2 == 0)
            std::println("");
    }

    std::println("");
};

// initialize vectors of airports
std::vector<Airport> airports = Airport::get_vector_airports_shuffle();
print_airports("airports (before stable_sort):", airports);

// compare op for sorting
auto cmp_op = [](const Airport& ap1, const Airport& ap2)
    { return ap1.CountryCode() < ap2.CountryCode(); };

// using std::ranges::stable_sort - preserves equivalent orderings
std::ranges::stable_sort(airports, cmp_op);
print_airports("airports (after stable_sort):", airports);
}

```

In Listing 12-1-2, note that lambda expression `cmp_op()` compares country codes of Airports `ap1` and `ap2` using operator `<`. Execution of `std::ranges::stable_sort(airports, cmp_op)` carries out a stable sort using the elements of `airports`. Following execution of this algorithm, container `airports` is sorted in ascending order by country code. Note in the results section that the ordering of airports with matching country codes is the same before and after the call to `std::ranges::stable_sort()`. Unlike `std::ranges::sort()`, execution of `std::ranges::stable_sort()` guarantees this arrangement for equivalent elements.

For some use cases, it's only necessary to partially sort the elements of a range. Computing the median value of a data set is a common example. In Listing 12-1-3, `Ch12_01_ex3()` utilizes `std::ranges::nth_element(vec1, iter_nth)` to determine the median value of `std::vector<int> vec1`, which contains 60 random values. Note that `iter_nth` is an iterator that points to `vec1`'s median element position at `vec1.begin() + vec1.size() / 2`.

Listing 12-1-3. Example Ch12_01 – Ch12_01_ex3()

```

void Ch12_01_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:5d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {12};

    // initialize vector of random integers
    auto vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(60);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::nth_element to find median
    auto iter_nth = vec1.begin() + vec1.size() / 2;

    std::ranges::nth_element(vec1, iter_nth);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after nth_element):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::println("\nmedian value of vec1: {:d}", *iter_nth);
}

```

Following execution of `std::ranges::nth_element()`, `iter_nth` points to the n -th or median element in `vec1`. All elements in `vec1` that precede `iter_nth` are guaranteed to be less than or equal to the `iter_nth` element. However, execution of `std::ranges::nth_element()` does not guarantee any particular ordering for the elements that occur before or after `iter_nth`. It only computes the same n -th element that would occur if the entire range were sorted.

Partial sorts are useful when it's only necessary to establish the first few elements of a completely sorted range. The final example of this section, shown in Listing 12-1-4, demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::partial_sort()`. Function `Ch12_01_ex4()` opens with the definition lambda expression named `print_vec()`. This function object prints the elements of `std::vector<int> v`. It also spotlights the use of `std::ranges::is_sorted()` and `std::ranges::is_sorted_until()`. The former returns `true` if the specified range is already sorted; otherwise, it returns `false`. Execution of `iter_until = std::ranges::is_sorted_until(v)` returns an iterator, and `range[v.begin(), iter_until)` signifies the elements of `vec1` that are already sorted.

Listing 12-1-4. Example Ch12_01 – Ch12_01_ex4()

```

void Ch12_01_ex4()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:5d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {16};

    auto print_vec = [](const std::vector<int>& v)
    {
        // using std::ranges::is_sorted
        std::println("is_sorted:      {:s}", std::ranges::is_sorted(v));

        // using std::ranges::is_sorted_until
        auto iter_until = std::ranges::is_sorted_until(v);
        std::print("is_sorted_until: ");

        if (iter_until != v.end())
            std::println("{:d}", *iter_until);
        else
            std::println("sorted");
    };

    // initialize vector of random integers
    auto vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(16);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial order):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
    print_vec(vec1);

    // using std::ranges::partial_sort - range, middle
    auto iter_ps = vec1.begin() + vec1.size() / 3;
    std::ranges::partial_sort(vec1, iter_ps);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after first partial_sort):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
    print_vec(vec1);

    // using std::ranges::partial_sort - first, middle, last
    std::ranges::partial_sort(iter_ps, vec1.end(), vec1.end());
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after second partial_sort):\n", vec1, fmt,
    epl_max);
    print_vec(vec1);
}

```


Following the definition of `print_vec()`, `Ch12_01_ex4()` utilizes `RN::get_vector<int>(16)` (see `Common/RN.h`) to initialize `vec1`. In the subsequent code block, the expression `iter_ps = vec1.begin() + vec1.size() / 3` computes a “middle” range position for `std::ranges::partial_sort()`. Execution of `std::ranges::partial_sort(vec1, iter_ps)` partially sorts the first `vec1.size() / 3` elements of `vec1`. If you scan ahead to the results section, note that all of the elements in `[vec1.begin(), iter_ps)` are less than or equal to the element pointed to by `iter_ps`. Also, note the output generated by `print_vec()`'s use of `std::ranges::is_sorted()` and `std::ranges::is_sorted_until()`.

The final code block in `Ch12_01_ex4()` exploits `std::ranges::partial_sort(iter_ps, vec1.end(), vec1.end())` to finalize the sort of `vec1`. In this expression, `iter_ps` specifies the range's first element, while `vec1.end()` designates the range's “middle” and last elements. In other words, the current use of `std::ranges::partial_sort()` sorts all elements between `[iter_ps, vec1.end())`. Here are the results for example `Ch12_01`:

```

----- Results for example Ch12_01 -----

----- Ch12_01_ex1() -----

airports (before sort):
[US, JFK, John F Kennedy International (40.6397, -74.0789)]
[NZ, AKL, Auckland (-37.0081, 174.7917)]
[IN, DEL, Indira Gandhi International (28.5686, 77.1122)]
[DE, FRA, Frankfurt (50.0333, 8.5706)]
...
[BR, BSB, Brasilia International (-15.8711, -47.9186)]
[NZ, WLG, Wellington International (-41.3272, 174.8053)]
[CA, YYC, Calgary International (51.1225, -114.0133)]
[FR, TLS, Toulouse-Blagnac (43.6350, 1.3678)]

airports (ascending by IATA):
[NZ, AKL, Auckland (-37.0081, 174.7917)]
[SE, ARN, Stockholm Arlanda (59.5019, 17.9186)]
[DE, BER, Berlin Brandenburg (52.3667, 13.5033)]
[BR, BSB, Brasilia International (-15.8711, -47.9186)]
...

```

```
[CA, YVR, Vancouver International (49.1947, -123.1839)]
[CA, YYC, Calgary International (51.1225, -114.0133)]
[CA, YYZ, Toronto Pearson International (53.3100, -113.5794)]
[CH, ZRH, Zurich (47.4314, 8.5492)]
```

airports (descending by latitude):

```
[NO, OSL, Oslo Gardermoen (60.2028, 11.0839)]
[SE, ARN, Stockholm Arlanda (59.5019, 17.9186)]
[GB, GLA, Glasgow (55.8719, -4.4331)]
[CA, YYZ, Toronto Pearson International (53.3100, -113.5794)]
...
[AU, SYD, Sydney Kingsford Smith (-33.9461, 151.1772)]
[NZ, AKL, Auckland (-37.0081, 174.7917)]
[AU, MEL, Melbourne (-37.6733, 144.8433)]
[NZ, WLG, Wellington International (-41.3272, 174.8053)]
```

----- Ch12_01_ex2() -----

airports (before stable_sort):

```
[US JFK John F Kennedy International      ] [NZ AKL
Auckland                                  ]
[IN DEL Indira Gandhi International      ] [DE FRA
Frankfurt                                ]
[US ORD O'Hare International             ] [DE MUN Munich Franz Josef
Stauss                                  ]
[SE ARN Stockholm Arlanda                ] [CA YVR Vancouver
International                            ]
[AU MEL Melbourne                        ] [US LAX Los Angeles
International                            ]
[GB GLA Glasgow                          ] [US IAH George Bush
International                            ]
[DE BER Berlin Brandenburg                ] [CN PVG Shanghai Pudong
International                            ]
[JP KIX Kansai International              ] [CA YEG Edmonton
International                            ]
[CA YYZ Toronto Pearson International    ] [US MCO Orlando
International                            ]
```

```

[FR CDG Paris Charles de Gaulle      ] [JP NRT Narita
International                          ]
[GB LHR Heathrow International        ] [AU SYD Sydney Kingsford
Smith                                  ]
[NO OSL Oslo Gardermoen              ] [CN PEK Beijing Capital
International                          ]
[CL SCL Santiago International        ] [CH ZRH
Zurich                                ]
[BR BSB Brasilia International        ] [NZ WLG Wellington
International                          ]
[CA YYC Calgary International         ] [FR TLS Toulouse-
Blagnac                                ]

airports (after stable_sort):
[AU MEL Melbourne                    ] [AU SYD Sydney Kingsford
Smith                                  ]
[BR BSB Brasilia International        ] [CA YVR Vancouver
International                          ]
[CA YEG Edmonton International       ] [CA YYZ Toronto Pearson
International                          ]
[CA YYC Calgary International         ] [CH ZRH
Zurich                                ]
[CL SCL Santiago International        ] [CN PVG Shanghai Pudong
International                          ]
[CN PEK Beijing Capital International ] [DE FRA
Frankfurt                              ]
[DE MUN Munich Franz Josef Stauss    ] [DE BER Berlin
Brandenburg                            ]
[FR CDG Paris Charles de Gaulle      ] [FR TLS Toulouse-
Blagnac                                ]
[GB GLA Glasgow                      ] [GB LHR Heathrow
International                          ]
[IN DEL Indira Gandhi International  ] [JP KIX Kansai
International                          ]
[JP NRT Narita International          ] [NO OSL Oslo
Gardermoen                            ]

```

```
[NZ AKL Auckland                ] [NZ WLG Wellington
International                    ]
[SE ARN Stockholm Arlanda       ] [US JFK John F Kennedy
International                      ]
[US ORD O'Hare International     ] [US LAX Los Angeles
International                      ]
[US IAH George Bush International] [US MCO Orlando
International                      ]
```

----- Ch12_01_ex3() -----

vec1 (initial values):

```
375  797  951  184  732  780  599  597  157  446  156  100
 59  460  867  334  602  143  709  651   21   57  970  722
833  939  213   1  182  993  184  618  305  612  525   8
432   24  292  525  612  400  140   47  293  974  367  233
457   91  786  619  200  383  515  984  593  467   47  860
```

vec1 (after nth_element):

```
47  233  367  184  200  293   47  184  157   57  156  100
 59   21  140  334  292  143   24   8  213   1  182  305
 91  375  383  400  432  446  457 460  467  515  525  525
593  597  651  709  612  602  867  599  780  732  951  797
618  993  786  619  860  612  939  984  833  970  722  974
```

median value of vec1: 457

----- Ch12_01_ex4() -----

vec1 (initial order):

```
375  797  951  184  732  780  599  597  157  446  156  100
59  460  867  334
is_sorted:      false
is_sorted_until: 184
```

vec1 (after first partial_sort):

```
59 100 156 157 184 951  797 780 732 599 597 446 375 460 867 334
is_sorted:      false
is_sorted_until: 797
```

```
vec1 (after second partial_sort):
    59 100 156 157 184 334 375 446  460 597  599  732  780  797  867  951
is_sorted:          true
is_sorted_until: sorted
```

Binary Search Algorithms

The STL includes several binary search algorithm functions. These algorithms carry out search actions using forward iterators over *sorted* ranges. Listing 12-2-1 shows the source code for example `Ch12_02_ex2()`, which demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::binary_search()` and `std::ranges::upper_bound()`.

Listing 12-2-1. Example Ch12_02 – Ch12_02_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch12_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch12_02.h"
#include "Airport.h"
#include "MT.h"

void print_airports(const char* msg, const std::vector<Airport>& airports)
{
    size_t nl {};
    std::println("{:s}", msg);

    for (const auto& ap : airports)
    {
        std::print("[{:2s} {:3s} {:32s}] ", ap.CountryCode(),
            ap.IataCode(),
            ap.Name());
        if (++nl % 2 == 0)
            std::println("");
    }
}
```

```

std::vector<Airport> Ch12_02_ex1()
{
    // using std::ranges::sort (uses Airport::operator< which uses
    // IATA code)
    std::vector<Airport> airports = Airport::get_vector_airports_
    shuffle(8191);
    std::ranges::sort(airports);
    print_airports("\nairports (ascending sort by IATA code):", airports);

    // list of airports to search for (Airport::operator== compares
    // IATA codes)
    std::vector<Airport> more_airports
    {
        Airport {"US", "LAX", "Los Angeles International",
            Airport::GeoCoord{33, 56, 33, 'N', 118, 24, 29, 'W'}},
        Airport {"US", "BOS", "Logan
        International", // new
            Airport::GeoCoord{42, 21, 47, 'N', 71, 0, 23, 'W'}},
        Airport {"US", "ORD", "O'Hare International",
            Airport::GeoCoord{41, 58, 43, 'N', 87, 54, 17, 'W'}},
        Airport {"US", "ANC", "Ted Stevens Anchorage
        Intl.", // new
            Airport::GeoCoord{61, 10, 27, 'N', 149, 59, 54, 'W'}},
        // repeat airports to confirm successful insertions
        Airport {"US", "BOS", "Logan Internatioal",
            Airport::GeoCoord{42, 21, 47, 'N', 71, 0, 23, 'W'}},
        Airport {"US", "ANC", "Ted Stevens Anchorage Intl.",
            Airport::GeoCoord{61, 10, 27, 'N', 149, 59, 54, 'W'}},
    };

    for (auto const& new_airport : more_airports)
    {
        // using std::ranges::binary_search
        std::println("\nsearching for airport: {s}", new_airport.
        IataCode());
    }
}

```

```

bool sea_result = std::ranges::binary_search(airports, new_
airport);

if (sea_result)
    std::println("airport found: {}", new_airport);
else
{
    // using std::ranges::upper_bound
    auto iter_insert = std::ranges::upper_bound(airports,
new_airport);
    airports.insert(iter_insert, new_airport);
    std::println("airport not found - added to container");
}
}

print_airports("\nairports (after new airport insertions):", airports);
return airports;
}

```

Near the top of Listing 12-2-1 is the definition of a helper function named `print_airports()` that prints the elements of a `std::vector<Airport>`. Function `Ch12_02_ex1()` utilizes `Airport::get_vector_airports_shuffle()` to initialize `std::vector<Airport> airports`. The next statement, `std::ranges::sort(airports)`, sorts the elements of `vec1` using default comparison function object `std::ranges::less()`. Recall that class `Airport`'s relation operators compare IATA codes, which means that the elements of `vec1` are sorted in ascending order according to these codes. Vector `std::vector<Airports> more_airports` contains a list of additional `Airports` for example searches.

Within `Ch12_02_ex1()`'s range for loop, execution of `std::ranges::binary_search(airports, new_airport)` returns true if `new_airport` exists in `airports`; otherwise, it returns false. In the latter case, `Ch12_02_ex1()`'s execution continues with a call to `iter_insert = std::ranges::upper_bound(airports, new_airport)`. Execution of this function returns an iterator to the first element in `airports` such that `Airport::operator<(const Airport& ap1, const Airport& ap2)` is false. In other words, `iter_insert` points to the correct insertion point in `airports` for `new_airport`. The next statement, `airports.insert(iter_insert, new_airport)`, inserts

`new_airport` into `airports`. It warrants mentioning here that the STL also includes `std::ranges::lower_bound()`, whose use is applicable when the source range is sorted in descending order.

Listing 12-2-2 shows the source code for example `Ch12_02_ex2()`. This function demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::equal_range()`. Prior to its range for loop, `Ch12_02_ex2()` re-sorts the elements of `airports`. Note that `cmp_op` utilizes each `Airport`'s country code and operator `>`, which results in `airports` being sorted in descending order based on country code. Next is the definition of `std::vector<std::string> country_codes`, which includes both valid and invalid codes.

Listing 12-2-2. Example `Ch12_02 - Ch12_02_ex2()`

```
void Ch12_02_ex2(std::vector<Airport>& airports)
{
    // sort airports in descending order by country code
    auto cmp_op = [](const Airport& ap1, const Airport& ap2)
        { return ap1.CountryCode() > ap2.CountryCode(); };

    std::ranges::sort(airports, cmp_op);
    print_airports("\nairports (descending sort by country code):",
        airports);

    // vector below contains invalid country codes for test purposes
    std::vector<std::string> country_codes {"AA", "AU", "DE", "NN",
        "US", "ZZ"};

    for (auto country_code : country_codes)
    {
        Airport ap_temp { country_code, "", "", Airport::GeoCoord{} };

        // using std::ranges::equal_range (must use same sort_op)
        auto iter_sr = std::ranges::equal_range(airports, ap_temp, cmp_op);

        std::println("\nresults for country code '{:s}' ",
            country_code);

        if (iter_sr.begin() == iter_sr.end())
            std::println("no airports found");
    }
}
```



```

else
{
    auto f = [](const auto& ap) { std::println("{} ", ap); };
    std::ranges::for_each(iter_sr, f);
}
}
}

```

Inside the range for loop, execution of `iter_sr = std::ranges::equal_range(airports, ap_temp, cmp_op)` scans airports for elements that match the country code of `ap_temp`. Note here that like the earlier calls to `std::ranges::sort()`, `std::ranges::equal_range()` also utilizes `cmp_op()`. For meaningful results, these functions must apply the same binary comparison function. If `iter_sr.begin() == iter_sr.end()` is true, no elements in airports matched the country code of `ap_temp`. Otherwise, `iter_sr` defines a subrange of matching country codes within airports. In this outcome, function `Ch12_02_ex2()` exploits `std::ranges::for_each()` to print the subrange's Airports. Here are the results for example `Ch12_02`:

```

----- Results for example Ch12_02 -----

```

```

----- Ch12_02_ex1() -----

```

```

airports (ascending sort by IATA code):

```

```

[NZ AKL Auckland                ] [SE ARN Stockholm
                                Arlanda                ]
[DE BER Berlin Brandenburg      ] [BR BSB Brasilia
                                International          ]
[FR CDG Paris Charles de Gaulle ] [IN DEL Indira Gandhi
                                International          ]
[DE FRA Frankfurt              ] [GB GLA
                                Glasgow                  ]
[US IAH George Bush International ] [US JFK John F Kennedy
                                International          ]
[JP KIX Kansai International    ] [US LAX Los Angeles
                                International          ]
[GB LHR Heathrow International  ] [US MCO Orlando
                                International          ]

```

CHAPTER 12 ALGORITHMS – PART 3

```
[AU MEL Melbourne ] [DE MUN Munich Franz Josef
Stauss ]
[JP NRT Narita International ] [US ORD O'Hare
International ]
[NO OSL Oslo Gardermoen ] [CN PEK Beijing Capital
International ]
[CN PVG Shanghai Pudong International ] [CL SCL Santiago
International ]
[AU SYD Sydney Kingsford Smith ] [FR TLS Toulouse-
Blagnac ]
[NZ WLG Wellington International ] [CA YEG Edmonton
International ]
[CA YVR Vancouver International ] [CA YYC Calgary
International ]
[CA YYZ Toronto Pearson International ] [CH ZRH
Zurich ]
```

searching for airport: LAX

airport found: [US, LAX, Los Angeles International (33.9425, -118.4081)]

searching for airport: BOS

airport not found - added to container

searching for airport: ORD

airport found: [US, ORD, O'Hare International (41.9786, -87.9047)]

searching for airport: ANC

airport not found - added to container

searching for airport: BOS

airport found: [US, BOS, Logan Internatioal (42.3631, -71.0064)]

searching for airport: ANC

airport found: [US, ANC, Ted Stevens Anchorage Intl. (61.1742, -149.9983)]

airports (after new airport insertions):

```
[NZ AKL Auckland ] [US ANC Ted Stevens Anchorage
Intl. ]
```

```

[SE ARN Stockholm Arlanda          ] [DE BER Berlin
Brandenburg                        ]
[US BOS Logan International         ] [BR BSB Brasilia
International                        ]
[FR CDG Paris Charles de Gaulle    ] [IN DEL Indira Gandhi
International                          ]
[DE FRA Frankfurt                  ] [GB GLA
Glasgow                                ]
[US IAH George Bush International   ] [US JFK John F Kennedy
International                          ]
[JP KIX Kansai International        ] [US LAX Los Angeles
International                          ]
[GB LHR Heathrow International      ] [US MCO Orlando
International                          ]
[AU MEL Melbourne                  ] [DE MUN Munich Franz Josef
Stauss                                ]
[JP NRT Narita International        ] [US ORD O'Hare
International                          ]
[NO OSL Oslo Gardermoen            ] [CN PEK Beijing Capital
International                          ]
[CN PVG Shanghai Pudong International] [CL SCL Santiago
International                          ]
[AU SYD Sydney Kingsford Smith     ] [FR TLS Toulouse-
Blagnac                                ]
[NZ WLG Wellington International    ] [CA YEG Edmonton
International                          ]
[CA YVR Vancouver International     ] [CA YYC Calgary
International                          ]
[CA YYZ Toronto Pearson International] [CH ZRH
Zurich                                ]

```

----- Ch12_02_ex2() -----

airports (descending sort by country code):

```

[US ANC Ted Stevens Anchorage Intl. ] [US BOS Logan
International                        ]

```

CHAPTER 12 ALGORITHMS – PART 3

```
[US IAH George Bush International      ] [US JFK John F Kennedy
International      ]
[US LAX Los Angeles International      ] [US MCO Orlando
International      ]
[US ORD O'Hare International           ] [SE ARN Stockholm
Arlanda           ]
[NZ AKL Auckland                       ] [NZ WLG Wellington
International     ]
[NO OSL Oslo Gardermoen                ] [JP KIX Kansai
International     ]
[JP NRT Narita International           ] [IN DEL Indira Gandhi
International     ]
[GB GLA Glasgow                        ] [GB LHR Heathrow
International     ]
[FR CDG Paris Charles de Gaulle       ] [FR TLS Toulouse-
Blagnac           ]
[DE BER Berlin Brandenburg             ] [DE FRA
Frankfurt         ]
[DE MUN Munich Franz Josef Stauss     ] [CN PEK Beijing Capital
International     ]
[CN PVG Shanghai Pudong International ] [CL SCL Santiago
International     ]
[CH ZRH Zurich                         ] [CA YEG Edmonton
International     ]
[CA YVR Vancouver International       ] [CA YYC Calgary
International     ]
[CA YYZ Toronto Pearson International ] [BR BSB Brasilia
International     ]
[AU MEL Melbourne                     ] [AU SYD Sydney Kingsford
Smith             ]
```

```
results for country code 'AA'
no airports found
```

```
results for country code 'AU'
[AU, MEL, Melbourne (-37.6733, 144.8433)]
[AU, SYD, Sydney Kingsford Smith (-33.9461, 151.1772)]
```

```

results for country code 'DE'
[DE, BER, Berlin Brandenburg (52.3667, 13.5033)]
[DE, FRA, Frankfurt (50.0333, 8.5706)]
[DE, MUN, Munich Franz Josef Stauss (48.3539, 11.7861)]

results for country code 'NN'
no airports found

results for country code 'US'
[US, ANC, Ted Stevens Anchorage Intl. (61.1742, -149.9983)]
[US, BOS, Logan International (42.3631, -71.0064)]
[US, IAH, George Bush International (29.9844, -95.3414)]
[US, JFK, John F Kennedy International (40.6397, -74.0789)]
[US, LAX, Los Angeles International (33.9425, -118.4081)]
[US, MCO, Orlando International (28.4294, -81.3089)]
[US, ORD, O'Hare International (41.9786, -87.9047)]

results for country code 'ZZ'
no airports found

```

Partition Algorithms

A partition algorithm reorders the elements of a range into two groups: those that return true and those that return false for a specified unary predicate. Partitioning algorithms are handy for use cases that need to discard a large number of elements prior to more advanced processing. Listing 12-3-1 shows the source code for example `Ch12_03_ex1()`. This function demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::partition()` along with several other partition status functions.

Listing 12-3-1. Example Ch12_03 – Ch12_03_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch12_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <numeric>

```

```

#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch12_03.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "MTH.h"

void Ch12_03_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:3d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {20};
    constexpr size_t n {100};

    // initialize test vector of integers
    std::vector<int> vec1(n);
    std::iota(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 1);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (before partition):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::is_partitioned
    bool is_par = std::ranges::is_partitioned(vec1, MTH::is_prime<int>);
    std::println("is_partitioned (before partition): {s}", is_par);

    // using std::ranges::partition (returns iterator subrange to
    // false group)
    std::ranges::partition(vec1, MTH::is_prime<int>);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after partition):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    is_par = std::ranges::is_partitioned(vec1, MTH::is_prime<int>);
    std::println("is_partitioned (after partition): {s}", is_par);

    // using std::ranges::partition_point
    auto iter_pp = std::ranges::partition_point(vec1, MTH::is_prime<int>);
    std::println("\n*iter_pp: {d}", *iter_pp);
}

```

The code in Listing 12-3-1 is straightforward. Following initialization of `std::vector<int> vec1` is the statement `is_par = std::ranges::is_partitioned(vec1, MTH::is_prime<int>)`. The execution of this expression returns false since `vec1` is currently not partitioned into two groups: prime and non-prime numbers (see Listing 10-6-2-2 for `MTH::is_prime()`). To partition `vec1`, `Ch12_03_ex1()`

utilizes `std::ranges::partition(vec1, MTH::is_prime<int>)`. Execution of this statement partitions `vec1` and returns an iterator subrange. More on this later. If you scan ahead to the results section, note that the elements of `vec1` are organized into two groups. The front part of `vec1` contains prime numbers, while the back portion contains non-primes. The prime number group is located in `[vec1.begin(), iter_pp)` where `iter_pp = std::ranges::partition_point(vec1, MTH::is_prime<int>)`. Note that all STL partition functions in `Ch12_03_ex1()` applied predicate `MTH::is_prime<int>`. More importantly, note that the elements in each group are *not* sorted.

In Listing 12-3-2, example function `Ch12_03_ex2()` opens with the definition of lambda expression `print_sr()`, which prints the elements of `[iter_b, iter_e)`. Like the previous example, `Ch12_03_ex2()` exploits `std::ranges::partition(vec1, MTH::is_prime<int>)` to partition the elements of `vec1` into primes and non-primes.

Listing 12-3-2. Example `Ch12_03 - Ch12_03_ex2()`

```
void Ch12_03_ex2()
{
    // print_sr prints elements of [iter_b, iter_e)
    auto print_sr = [](const char* msg, auto iter_b, auto iter_e)
    {
        int add_nl {};
        std::println("\n{s}", msg);

        for (auto iter = iter_b; iter != iter_e; ++iter)
        {
            std::print("{:3d} ", *iter);
            if (++add_nl % 20 == 0)
                std::println("");
        }

        std::println("");
    };

    // create test vector
    std::vector<int> vec1(100);
    std::iota(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 101);
}
```

```

// using std::ranges::partition
auto iter_sr = std::ranges::partition(vec1, MTH::is_prime<int>);

print_sr("prime numbers", vec1.begin(), iter_sr.begin());
print_sr("non-prime numbers", iter_sr.begin(), iter_sr.end());
}

```

The `iter_sr` object that's returned by `std::ranges::partition()` specifies a subrange of elements within `vec1` for which `MTH::is_prime()` is false. The subsequent two calls to `print_sr()` utilize these iterators to print the elements in both `vec1` groups. Note here that `[vec1.begin(), iter_sr.begin())` identifies the prime group, while `[iter_sr.begin(), iter_sr.end())` specifies the non-prime group. Also, note again in the results section that elements within the two groups are not sorted. Here are the results for example `Ch12_03`.

----- Results for example Ch12_03 -----

----- Ch12_03_ex1() -----

vec1 (before partition):

```

 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40
41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60
61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80
81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100

```

is_partitioned (before partition): false

vec1 (after partition):

```

97  2  3 89  5 83  7 79 73 71 11 67 13 61 59 53 17 47 19 43
41 37 23 31 29 26 27 28 25 30 24 32 33 34 35 36 22 38 39 40
21 42 20 44 45 46 18 48 49 50 51 52 16 54 55 56 57 58 15 60
14 62 63 64 65 66 12 68 69 70 10 72  9 74 75 76 77 78  8 80
81 82  6 84 85 86 87 88  4 90 91 92 93 94 95 96  1 98 99 100

```

is_partitioned (after partition): true

*iter_pp: 26


```
----- Ch12_03_ex2() -----
```

```
prime numbers
```

```
101 199 103 197 193 191 107 181 109 179 173 167 113 163 157 151 149
139 137 131
127
```

```
non-prime numbers
```

```
122 123 124 125 126 121 128 129 130 120 132 133 134 135 136 119 138
118 140 141
142 143 144 145 146 147 148 117 150 116 152 153 154 155 156 115 158
159 160 161
162 114 164 165 166 112 168 169 170 171 172 111 174 175 176 177 178
110 180 108
182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 106 192 105 194 195 196 104 198 102 200
```

Heap Algorithms

A binary heap is a tree-based data structure where the value of each parent node is greater than or equal to its two child nodes. Heaps are advantageous in that they carry out common operations such as new element insertions and largest element retrievals with logarithmic complexity. They're also memory efficient since the nodes are typically maintained in an array, which eliminates the need for additional node pointers or other control data.

The archetypal example of real-world heap usage is a priority queue. The `std::priority_queue` container adaptor that you examined in Chapter 9 uses the same STL heap algorithms that you'll study in this section. Figure 12-1 shows an example of a binary heap in tree form. This figure also depicts the ordering of the same nodes in an array.

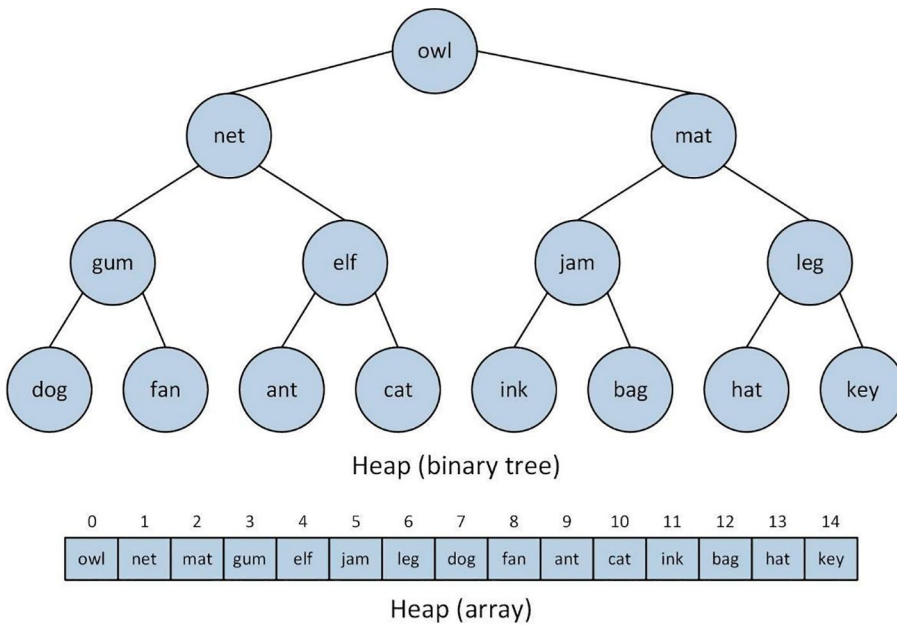


Figure 12-1. Example heap

In Figure 12-1, note that the topmost node is lexicographically the largest node in the tree. Also, note that each heap node is lexicographically greater than or equal to its child nodes. A heap that conforms to this parent-child node ordering scheme is called a max heap. A heap doesn't impose any ordering relationships between sibling nodes. The position of a binary heap node in an array can be easily determined using simple arithmetic. For node i , its left and right children are located at positions $2i + 1$ and $2i + 2$, respectively. The parent of node i is located at position $\lfloor (i - 1)/2 \rfloor$ for all nodes except the root node.

While pursuing the remainder of this section, it's important to keep in mind that a heap is *not* an STL container. It is a logical organization of data that satisfies the aforementioned max-heap property. The elements of a heap can be stored in any STL container that supports random access iterators.

Listing 12-4-1 shows the source code for example `Ch12_04_ex1()`. This example demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::make_heap()`. Near the top of Listing 12-4-1 is the definition of a simple function named `print_heap()`, which prints the elements of `std::vector<std::string> heap`. For now, just note that `print_heap()` accesses the nodes of `heap2` (a copy of a heap) using `std::vector` member functions `front()`, `empty()`, and `pop_back()`.

Listing 12-4-1. Example Ch12_04 – Ch12_04_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch12_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <format>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch12_04.h"
#include "MT.h"

template <class CMP = std::ranges::less>
void print_heap(const std::string& msg, const
std::vector<std::string>& heap,
    CMP cmp = {})
{
    auto heap2 {heap};
    std::print("{:s}", msg);

    while (!heap2.empty())
    {
        std::print("{:3s} ", heap2.front());

        // using std::ranges::pop_heap
        std::ranges::pop_heap(heap2, cmp);
        heap2.pop_back();
    }

    std::println("");
}

void Ch12_04_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:3s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {20};

```

```

// using std::ranges::make_heap with std::less (default)
// (root = largest element)
std::vector<std::string> vec1 { "ink", "elf", "leg", "fan", "cat",
    "bag", "key", "dog", "gum", "ant", "net", "jam", "mat", "hat",
    "owl" };

std::ranges::make_heap(vec1);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 using MT::print_ctr():\n", vec1, fmt, ep1_max);
print_heap("\nvec1 using print_heap():\n", vec1);

// usng std::ranges::make_heap with std::greater
// (root = smallest element)
std::vector<std::string> vec2 { "bag", "hat", "owl", "fan", "dog",
    "ink", "key", "cat", "gum", "ant", "net", "jam", "mat", "elf",
    "leg" };

std::ranges::make_heap(vec2, std::greater {});
MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 using MT::print_ctr():\n", vec2, fmt, ep1_max);
print_heap("\nvec2 using print_heap():\n", vec2, std::greater {});
}

```

The next item in Listing 12-4-1 is example Ch12_04_ex1(). Execution of this function begins with the initialization of `std::vector<std::string> vec1`. The elements in `vec1`'s initializer list are arbitrarily ordered. The next statement, `std::ranges::make_heap(vec1)`, arranges the elements of `vec1` into a max heap. Like most other algorithms in namespace `std::ranges`, `std::ranges::make_heap()` defaults to `std::ranges::less()` for its comparison function object. However, it utilizes this function object to generate a max heap with the *largest* element positioned in the binary tree's root node as shown in Figure 12-1. The subsequent call to `print_heap()` prints the elements of `vec1` in max-heap order. Here's a portion of the output:

```

vec1 using MT::print_ctr():
owl net mat gum elf jam leg dog fan ant cat ink bag hat key

vec1 using print_heap():
owl net mat leg key jam ink hat gum fan elf dog cat bag ant

```

Note the different orderings of `vec1`'s elements generated by the calls to `MT::print_ctr()` and `print_heap()`. The former prints the elements of `vec1` as successively positioned within the container using a range for loop, while the latter prints the elements of `vec1` in max-heap order.

The second half of `Ch12_04_ex1()` utilizes `std::ranges::make_heap()` to construct a heap using the elements of `std::vector<std::string> vec2`. Note here that `std::ranges::make_heap()` utilizes function object `std::ranges::greater()`. This organizes the elements of `vec2` into a min heap, where each parent node is less than or equal to its two child nodes.

Function `Ch12_04_ex2()`, shown in Listing 12-4-2, demonstrates how to perform heap element insertions and removals. Like the previous example, `Ch12_04_ex2()` exploits `std::ranges::make_heap(vec1)` to create a max heap using the elements of `std::vector<std::string> vec1`. In the range for loop that follows, execution of *both* `vec1.push_back(val)` and `std::ranges::push_heap(vec1)` adds a new element to the max heap in `vec1`. More specifically, `vec1.push_back(val)` appends a new element to `vec1` while the ensuing call to `std::ranges::push_heap(vec1)` reconciles the elements of `vec1` to regain the max-heap property.

Listing 12-4-2. Example `Ch12_04 - Ch12_04_ex2()`

```
void Ch12_04_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:3s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {20};

    // using std::ranges::make_heap
    std::vector<std::string> vec1 { "ink", "elf", "leg", "fan", "cat",
        "bag", "key", "dog", "gum", "ant", "net", "jam", "mat", "hat",
        "owl" };

    std::ranges::make_heap(vec1);
    print_heap("\nvec1 after make_heap():\n", vec1);

    // insert more elements
    std::vector<std::string> more_vals { "cap", "pot", "bog", "lip" };
}
```

```

for (const auto& val : more_vals)
{
    // using std::ranges::push_heap
    vec1.push_back(val);
    std::ranges::push_heap(vec1);

    std::string msg = std::format(
        "\nvec1 after push_back() using '{:3s}':\n", val);
    print_heap(msg, vec1);
}

// remove four largest elements
std::print("\nremoving elements: ");
for (auto i = 0; i < 5; ++i)
{
    auto pop_val = vec1.front();

    // using std::ranges::pop_heap
    std::ranges::pop_heap(vec1);
    vec1.pop_back();
    std::print("{:3s} ", pop_val);
}
print_heap("\n\nvec1 after pop_heap() operations:\n", vec1);

// using std::ranges::is_heap
std::println("is_heap(vec1): {:s}", std::ranges::is_heap(vec1));

// using std::ranges::sort_heap (vec1 is no longer a heap)
std::ranges::sort_heap(vec1);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 after std::ranges::sort_heap:\n", vec1, fmt,
    epl_max);
std::println("is_heap(vec1): {:s}", std::ranges::is_heap(vec1));
}

```

The range for loop in the next code block applies `std::ranges::pop_heap(vec1)` and `vec1.pop_back()` to remove the largest heap element from `vec1`. In this expression pair, function `std::ranges::pop_heap(vec1)` moves the largest (front) element of `vec1` to its back end. It also adjusts the elements of `vec1` to regain the max-heap

property. Execution of `vec1.pop_back()` removes the last element from `vec1`. Recall that `std::vectors` are optimized for back-end element insertions and removals. When performing heap element insertions or removals, you must remember to utilize both the container's `push_back()/pop_back()` functions and the heap `push()/pop()` functions as demonstrated in example `Ch12_04_ex2()`. All `std::ranges` heap calls must also apply the same comparison function object. This is why the code in `print_heap()` included calls to both `std::ranges::pop_heap(heap2, cmp)` and `heap2.pop_back()`.

The final code block of `Ch12_04_ex2()` illustrates the use of two more STL heap functions. The first one, `std::ranges::is_heap(vec1)`, returns true if `vec1` is a heap. Execution of `std::ranges::sort_heap(vec1)` sorts the elements of `vec1`. Like `std::ranges::sort()`, the default comparison function for `std::ranges::sort_heap()` is `std::ranges::less()`. Following execution of `std::ranges::sort_heap(vec1)`, `vec1` is no longer a heap since its elements are now sorted in ascending order. Both `std::ranges::is_heap()` and `std::ranges::sort_heap()` define overloads that accept a comparison function object to override the default use of `std::ranges::less()`. Here are the results for example `Ch12_04`:

```
----- Results for example Ch12_04 -----
```

```
----- Ch12_04_ex1() -----
```

```
vec1 using MT::print_ctr():
```

```
owl net mat gum elf jam leg dog fan ant cat ink bag hat key
```

```
vec1 using print_heap():
```

```
owl net mat leg key jam ink hat gum fan elf dog cat bag ant
```

```
vec2 using MT::print_ctr():
```

```
ant bag elf cat dog ink key fan gum hat net jam mat owl leg
```

```
vec2 using print_heap():
```

```
ant bag cat dog elf fan gum hat ink jam key leg mat net owl
```

```
----- Ch12_04_ex2() -----
```

```
vec1 after make_heap():
```

```
owl net mat leg key jam ink hat gum fan elf dog cat bag ant
```

```
vec1 after push_back() using 'cap':
```

```
owl net mat leg key jam ink hat gum fan elf dog cat cap bag ant
```

```
vec1 after push_back() using 'pot':  
pot owl net mat leg key jam ink hat gum fan elf dog cat cap bag ant  
  
vec1 after push_back() using 'bog':  
pot owl net mat leg key jam ink hat gum fan elf dog cat cap bog bag ant  
  
vec1 after push_back() using 'lip':  
pot owl net mat lip leg key jam ink hat gum fan elf dog cat cap bog bag ant  
  
removing elements: pot owl net mat lip  
  
vec1 after pop_heap() operations:  
leg key jam ink hat gum fan elf dog cat cap bog bag ant  
is_heap(vec1): true  
  
vec1 after std::ranges::sort_heap:  
ant bag bog cap cat dog elf fan gum hat ink jam key leg  
is_heap(vec1): false
```

The primary difference between a `std::priority_queue` and a STL heap is that the latter provides access to the underlying container. For many use cases, access to the container's elements is necessary to carry out additional processing. Access to the container's elements is also advantageous for classes whose data is dynamic instead of static (e.g., a class that processes real-time measurements or events).

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- The primary sorting algorithm for C++20 and later is `std::ranges::sort()`. You can also utilize `std::ranges::stable_sort()`, which preserves existing orderings of equivalent elements. Other specialized sorting algorithms include `std::ranges::nth_element()` and `std::ranges::partial_sort()`.

- Algorithm `std::ranges::binary_search()` searches a sorted container or range for element matches. Other searching algorithms include `std::ranges::lower_bound()` and `std::ranges::upper_bound()`. These functions return iterators to the first element in a sorted range that's not less than or greater than a specified value. Function `std::ranges::equal_range()` returns a subrange of elements that equal a specified value.
- Algorithm `std::ranges::partition()` arranges the elements of a container or range into two groups based on the results of a unary predicate.
- Algorithm `std::ranges::make_heap()` arranges the elements of a container or range in accordance with the max-heap (or min-heap) property. To insert a new element into a heap, call the container's `push_back()` function followed by a call to `std::ranges::push_heap()`. To remove a heap element, call `std::ranges::pop_heap()` followed by a call to the container's `pop_back()` function.
- All of the STL algorithms covered in this chapter use `std::ranges::less()` as the default comparison function object, but this can be overridden to use `std::ranges::greater()` or a user-defined comparison function.

CHAPTER 13

Algorithms – Part 4

This chapter is the final chapter that focuses primarily on STL algorithms. Topics covered in this chapter include

- Merge algorithms
- Shuffle and sample algorithms
- Rotate and shift algorithms
- Set algorithms
- Permutation algorithms

The algorithms mentioned in the preceding list tend to be used less frequently than most of the other algorithms you’ve studied in this book. Nevertheless, these algorithms are particularly convenient when the need arises.

Merge Algorithms

A merge algorithm merges the elements of two sorted ranges. Some container classes define member functions that merge elements of the same container type. For example, in Chapter 4 you learned how to use `std::list::merge()` (example Ch04_02). You also learned in Chapter 7 how to merge associative containers `std::set` (example Ch07_01) and `std::map` (example Ch07_02). The content of this section discusses the merge algorithms of namespace `std::ranges`.

Listing 13-1-1 shows the source code for `Ch13_01_ex1()`. This function elucidates the use of `std::ranges::merge()`. The opening code block of `Ch13_01_ex2()` harnesses `RegPolygon::get_random_polygons()` (see Listing 9-3-1-1) to initialize `std::vector<RegPolygon> polygons1` and `std::deque<RegPolygon> polygons2` with random `RegPolygons`. In the next code block, `Ch13_01_ex1()` exercises `std::ranges::sort()` twice to sort the elements of `polygons1` and `polygons2`.

Recall that the default comparison function object for `std::ranges::sort()` is `std::ranges::less()`. Following the calls to `std::ranges::sort()`, the elements of `polygons1` and `polygons2` are sorted in ascending order by polygon area.

Listing 13-1-1. Example Ch13_01 – Ch13_01_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch13_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <deque>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch13_01.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RegPolygon.h"

namespace
{
    // parameters for random RegPolygon generation
    constexpr unsigned int c_Seed1a {17};
    constexpr unsigned int c_Seed2a {13};
    constexpr unsigned int c_Seed1b {19};
    constexpr unsigned int c_Seed2b {23};
    constexpr size_t c_NumPolygons1 {10};
    constexpr size_t c_NumPolygons2 {6};
}

void Ch13_01_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {1};

    // create two containers of random RegPolygons
    std::vector<RegPolygon> polygons1 = RegPolygon::get_random_polygons(
        c_NumPolygons1, c_Seed1a, c_Seed2a);

    std::vector<RegPolygon> polygons_temp = RegPolygon::get_random_
polygons(
```

```

    c_NumPolygons2, c_Seed1b, c_Seed2b);

std::deque<RegPolygon> polygons2 {};
std::ranges::copy(polygons_temp, std::back_inserter(polygons2));

// sort polygon containers (uses RegPolygon::operator<)
std::ranges::sort(polygons1);
std::println("\npolygons1 (after sort)");
std::println("{:s}", RegPolygon::title_str());
MT::print_ctr("", polygons1, fmt, epl_max);

std::ranges::sort(polygons2);
std::println("\npolygons2 (after sort)");
std::println("{:s}", RegPolygon::title_str());
MT::print_ctr("", polygons2, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::merge
std::vector<RegPolygon> polygons3 {};
std::ranges::merge(polygons1, polygons2,
std::back_inserter(polygons3));

std::println("\npolygons3 (after merge)");
std::println("{:s}", RegPolygon::title_str());
MT::print_ctr("", polygons3, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

In its final code block, `Ch13_01_ex1()` applies `std::ranges::merge(polygons1, polygons2, std::back_inserter(polygons3))` to merge elements from `polygons1` and `polygons2` into `polygons3`. There are a few items to note here. First, `polygons1` and `polygons2` are different container types. STL algorithm compatibility is usually dictated by iterator types instead of specific container classes. Second, following execution of `std::ranges::merge()`, the elements of `polygons3` are sorted by area, while `polygons1` and `polygons2` are unchanged. Finally, `std::ranges::merge()` performs a stable merge. A stable merge preserves the ordering of equivalent elements in the output with equivalent elements from the first range preceding those from the second range.

The next source code example, shown in Listing 13-1-2, utilizes `std::ranges::inplace_merge()` to carry out an in-place merge operation. Like the previous example, `Ch13_01_ex2()` utilizes `RegPolygon::get_random_polygons()` to

initialize `polygons1` and `polygons2`. Next is the definition of lambda expression `cmp_op()`, which returns `rp1.NumSides() > rp2.NumSides()` for `RegPolygon` objects `rp1` and `rp2`. Function `Ch13_01_ex2()` utilizes lambda expression `cmp_op()` in the ensuing two calls to `std::ranges::sort()`. Following execution of these sorts, the elements in both `polygons1` and `polygons2` are sorted in descending order based on the number of polygon sides.

Listing 13-1-2. Example Ch13_01 - Ch13_01_ex2()

```
void Ch13_01_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {1};

    // create two vectors of random RegPolygons
    std::vector<RegPolygon> polygons1 = RegPolygon::get_random_polygons(
        c_NumPolygons1, c_Seed1a * 2, c_Seed2a * 2);

    std::vector<RegPolygon> polygons2 = RegPolygon::get_random_polygons(
        c_NumPolygons2, c_Seed2a * 2 , c_Seed2b * 2 );

    // comparison operator
    auto cmp_op = [](const RegPolygon& rp1, const RegPolygon& rp2)
        { return rp1.NumSides() > rp2.NumSides(); };

    // sort polygon vectors using cmp_op
    std::ranges::sort(polygons1, cmp_op);
    std::println("\npolygons1 (after sort)");
    std::println("{:s}", RegPolygon::title_str());
    MT::print_ctr("", polygons1, fmt, epl_max);

    std::ranges::sort(polygons2, cmp_op);
    std::println("\npolygons2 (after sort)");
    std::println("{:s}", RegPolygon::title_str());
    MT::print_ctr("", polygons2, fmt, epl_max);

    // move elements from polygons2 to end of polygons1
    std::ranges::move(polygons2, std::back_inserter(polygons1));
    std::println("\npolygons1 (after move)");
}
```

```

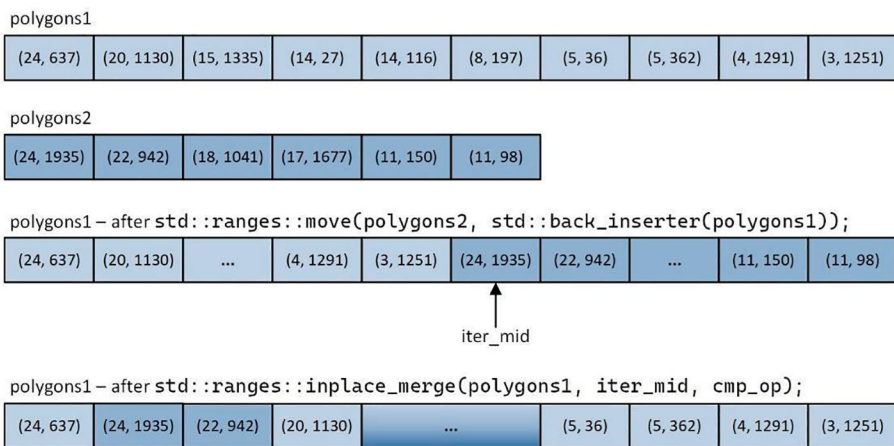
std::println("{:s}", RegPolygon::title_str());
MT::print_ctr("", polygons1, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::inplace_merge (uses cmp_op)
auto iter_mid = std::ranges::next(polygons1.begin(), c_NumPolygons1);
std::ranges::inplace_merge(polygons1, iter_mid, cmp_op);

std::println("\npolygons1 (after inplace_merge)");
std::println("{:s}", RegPolygon::title_str());
MT::print_ctr("", polygons1, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

To carry out an in-place merge using `std::ranges::inplace_merge()`, the elements of both sorted ranges must reside within the same container or range. To accomplish this, `Ch13_01_ex2()` employs `std::ranges::move(polygons2, std::back_inserter(polygons1))` to move all `RegPolygon`s from `polygons2` into `polygons1`. Figure 13-1 illustrates this action in greater detail. Following execution of `std::ranges::move()`, `polygons2` contains valid `RegPolygon` objects, but the actual values are unspecified per the ISO C++ standard.



Note: each box (N, A) = polygon (sides, area)

Figure 13-1. Execution of `std::ranges::move()` and `std::ranges::inplace_merge()`

The final code block of `Ch13_01_ex2()` opens with `iter_mid = std::ranges::next(polygons1.begin(), c_NumPolygons1)`. This statement calculates `iter_mid`, which points to the “middle” element between the two sorted ranges in `polygons1` as shown in Figure 13-1. Execution of `std::ranges::inplace_merge(polygons1, iter_mid, cmp_op)` performs an in-place merge of `polygons1`’s two sorted ranges. Note that `std::ranges::inplace_merge()` applies the same `cmp_op()` that was used earlier to sort `polygons1` and `polygons2`. Here are the results for example `Ch13_01`:

```
----- Results for example Ch13_01 -----
----- Ch13_01_ex1() -----
polygons1 (after sort)
Sides      Radius1    SideLen    Radius2    Perim      VerAng     Area
=====
[ 26,      4.889 |    1.187,    4.925,    30.871,    166.154,    75.467]
[ 14,      8.839 |    4.035,    9.066,    56.485,    154.286,    249.623]
[ 25,     10.007 |    2.528,   10.087,    63.209,    165.600,    316.269]
[ 11,     15.380 |    9.032,   16.029,    99.351,    147.273,    763.999]
[  4,     15.380 |   30.760,   21.750,   123.039,     90.000,    946.167]
[ 27,     18.916 |    4.422,   19.044,   119.390,   166.667,   1129.175]
[  8,     19.085 |   15.811,   20.658,   126.486,   135.000,   1207.015]
[ 25,     19.954 |    5.041,   20.112,   126.036,   165.600,   1257.429]
[  8,     21.556 |   17.858,   23.332,   142.861,   135.000,   1539.771]
[ 17,     22.378 |    8.366,   22.766,   142.228,   158.824,   1591.399]

polygons2 (after sort)
Sides      Radius1    SideLen    Radius2    Perim      VerAng     Area
=====
[ 23,      5.008 |    1.377,    5.055,    31.663,    164.348,    79.281]
[ 15,      5.032 |    2.139,    5.145,    32.089,    156.000,    80.739]
[  9,     11.327 |    8.245,   12.054,    74.208,    140.000,   420.271]
[ 14,     14.561 |    6.647,   14.935,    93.055,    154.286,   677.476]
[  5,     16.893 |   24.547,   20.881,   122.734,   108.000,  1036.665]
[ 24,     19.651 |    5.174,   19.821,   124.182,   165.000,  1220.158]
```

polygons3 (after merge)

Sides	Radius1	SideLen	Radius2	Perim	VerAng	Area
[26,	4.889 |	1.187,	4.925,	30.871,	166.154,	75.467]
[23,	5.008 |	1.377,	5.055,	31.663,	164.348,	79.281]
[15,	5.032 |	2.139,	5.145,	32.089,	156.000,	80.739]
[14,	8.839 |	4.035,	9.066,	56.485,	154.286,	249.623]
[25,	10.007 |	2.528,	10.087,	63.209,	165.600,	316.269]
[9,	11.327 |	8.245,	12.054,	74.208,	140.000,	420.271]
[14,	14.561 |	6.647,	14.935,	93.055,	154.286,	677.476]
[11,	15.380 |	9.032,	16.029,	99.351,	147.273,	763.999]
[4,	15.380 |	30.760,	21.750,	123.039,	90.000,	946.167]
[5,	16.893 |	24.547,	20.881,	122.734,	108.000,	1036.665]
[27,	18.916 |	4.422,	19.044,	119.390,	166.667,	1129.175]
[8,	19.085 |	15.811,	20.658,	126.486,	135.000,	1207.015]
[24,	19.651 |	5.174,	19.821,	124.182,	165.000,	1220.158]
[25,	19.954 |	5.041,	20.112,	126.036,	165.600,	1257.429]
[8,	21.556 |	17.858,	23.332,	142.861,	135.000,	1539.771]
[17,	22.378 |	8.366,	22.766,	142.228,	158.824,	1591.399]

----- Ch13_01_ex2() -----

polygons1 (after sort)

Sides	Radius1	SideLen	Radius2	Perim	VerAng	Area
[24,	14.204 |	3.740,	14.326,	89.759,	165.000,	637.457]
[20,	18.894 |	5.985,	19.130,	119.702,	162.000,	1130.839]
[15,	20.464 |	8.699,	20.921,	130.491,	156.000,	1335.167]
[14,	2.934 |	1.339,	3.009,	18.750,	154.286,	27.504]
[14,	6.040 |	2.757,	6.195,	38.599,	154.286,	116.564]
[8,	7.725 |	6.400,	8.362,	51.200,	135.000,	197.771]
[5,	3.158 |	4.589,	3.904,	22.946,	108.000,	36.234]
[5,	9.987 |	14.512,	12.344,	72.558,	108.000,	362.312]
[4,	17.971 |	35.942,	25.415,	143.770,	90.000,	1291.860]
[3,	15.518 |	53.757,	31.037,	161.271,	60.000,	1251.329]

polygons2 (after sort)

Sides	Radius1	SideLen	Radius2	Perim	VerAng	Area
[24,	24.747 |	6.516,	24.961,	156.386,	165.000,	1935.069]
[22,	17.263 |	4.964,	17.441,	109.212,	163.636,	942.681]
[18,	18.111 |	6.387,	18.390,	114.965,	160.000,	1041.061]
[17,	22.975 |	8.589,	23.373,	146.021,	158.824,	1677.405]
[11,	6.822 |	4.006,	7.110,	44.070,	147.273,	150.325]
[11,	5.521 |	3.242,	5.754,	35.664,	147.273,	98.448]

polygons1 (after move)

Sides	Radius1	SideLen	Radius2	Perim	VerAng	Area
[24,	14.204 |	3.740,	14.326,	89.759,	165.000,	637.457]
[20,	18.894 |	5.985,	19.130,	119.702,	162.000,	1130.839]
[15,	20.464 |	8.699,	20.921,	130.491,	156.000,	1335.167]
[14,	2.934 |	1.339,	3.009,	18.750,	154.286,	27.504]
[14,	6.040 |	2.757,	6.195,	38.599,	154.286,	116.564]
[8,	7.725 |	6.400,	8.362,	51.200,	135.000,	197.771]
[5,	3.158 |	4.589,	3.904,	22.946,	108.000,	36.234]
[5,	9.987 |	14.512,	12.344,	72.558,	108.000,	362.312]
[4,	17.971 |	35.942,	25.415,	143.770,	90.000,	1291.860]
[3,	15.518 |	53.757,	31.037,	161.271,	60.000,	1251.329]
[24,	24.747 |	6.516,	24.961,	156.386,	165.000,	1935.069]
[22,	17.263 |	4.964,	17.441,	109.212,	163.636,	942.681]
[18,	18.111 |	6.387,	18.390,	114.965,	160.000,	1041.061]
[17,	22.975 |	8.589,	23.373,	146.021,	158.824,	1677.405]
[11,	6.822 |	4.006,	7.110,	44.070,	147.273,	150.325]
[11,	5.521 |	3.242,	5.754,	35.664,	147.273,	98.448]

polygons1 (after inplace_merge)

Sides	Radius1	SideLen	Radius2	Perim	VerAng	Area
[24,	14.204 |	3.740,	14.326,	89.759,	165.000,	637.457]
[24,	24.747 |	6.516,	24.961,	156.386,	165.000,	1935.069]
[22,	17.263 |	4.964,	17.441,	109.212,	163.636,	942.681]
[20,	18.894 |	5.985,	19.130,	119.702,	162.000,	1130.839]
[18,	18.111 |	6.387,	18.390,	114.965,	160.000,	1041.061]
[17,	22.975 |	8.589,	23.373,	146.021,	158.824,	1677.405]
[15,	20.464 |	8.699,	20.921,	130.491,	156.000,	1335.167]
[14,	2.934 |	1.339,	3.009,	18.750,	154.286,	27.504]
[14,	6.040 |	2.757,	6.195,	38.599,	154.286,	116.564]
[11,	6.822 |	4.006,	7.110,	44.070,	147.273,	150.325]
[11,	5.521 |	3.242,	5.754,	35.664,	147.273,	98.448]
[8,	7.725 |	6.400,	8.362,	51.200,	135.000,	197.771]
[5,	3.158 |	4.589,	3.904,	22.946,	108.000,	36.234]
[5,	9.987 |	14.512,	12.344,	72.558,	108.000,	362.312]
[4,	17.971 |	35.942,	25.415,	143.770,	90.000,	1291.860]
[3,	15.518 |	53.757,	31.037,	161.271,	60.000,	1251.329]

Shuffle and Sample Algorithms

A shuffle algorithm randomly rearranges the elements of a range such that each possible permutation has the same likelihood of occurrence. A sample algorithm selects N elements from a range without replacements. Both of these algorithms are handy for card game applications or data set generators.

Listing 13-2-1 shows the source code for example `Ch13_02_ex1()`. This example spotlights the use of `std::ranges::shuffle()`. Near the top of `Ch13_02_ex1()`, execution of the statement `std::vector<std::string> vec1 = AminoAcid::get_vector_all_code3()` creates a vector of all 20 standard amino acid three-letter codes (see Listings 10-1-3-1 and 10-1-3-2 for class `AminoAcid`). In the subsequent code block, the statement `std::mt19937 rng {rng_seed}` prepares a random number generator for use by `std::ranges::shuffle()`. Chapter 18 discusses the particulars of STL random number generators in greater detail.

Listing 13-2-1. Example Ch13_02 – Ch13_02_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch13_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <array>
#include <format>
#include <random>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch13_02.h"
#include "AminoAcid.h"
#include "MT.h"

void Ch13_02_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:3s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {20};

    // create vector of random amino acid codes
    std::vector<std::string> vec1 = AminoAcid::get_vector_all_code3();
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // random number generator for std::ranges::shuffle
    unsigned int rng_seed {42};
    std::mt19937 rng {rng_seed};

    // using std::ranges::shuffle
    std::ranges::shuffle(vec1, rng);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after first shuffle):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    std::ranges::shuffle(vec1, rng);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after second shuffle):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

In the code block that follows the creation of random number generator `rng`, `Ch13_02_ex2()` makes two calls to `std::ranges::shuffle(vec1, rng)`. Each of these calls randomly reorders the elements of `vec1`. If you scan ahead to the results section, you'll notice that the elements of `vec1` are rearranged following each call to `std::ranges::shuffle()`.

Example function `Ch13_02_ex2()`, shown in Listing 13-2-2, illustrates the use of `std::ranges::sample()`. The execution of this algorithm randomly selects N elements from a range without replacements. Like the previous example, `Ch13_02_ex2()` initializes a `std::vector<std::string>` of three-letter amino acid codes. It also instantiates random number generator `std::mt19937 rng {rng_seed}`.

Listing 13-2-2. Example Ch13_02 - Ch13_02_ex2()

```
void Ch13_02_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:3s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {20};

    // create vector of random amino acid codes
    std::vector<std::string> vec1 = AminoAcid::get_vector_all_code3();
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // random number generator for std::ranges::sample
    unsigned int rng_seed {111};
    std::mt19937 rng {rng_seed};

    // using std::ranges::sample (sampling without replacements)
    std::array<size_t, 3> sample_sizes {5, 10, 15};

    for (size_t i = 0; i < sample_sizes.size(); ++i)
    {
        std::vector<std::string> sample(sample_sizes[i]);
        std::ranges::sample(vec1, sample.begin(), sample.end(), rng);

        std::string s = std::format("\nsample #{:d}:\n", i);
        MT::print_ctr(s.c_str(), sample, fmt, epl_max);
    }
}
```

The next code block in Listing 13-2-2 exhibits the use of `std::ranges::sample()`. The first statement inside the for loop, `std::vector<std::string> sample(sample_sizes[i])`, instantiates an output vector for the current iteration. This is followed by a call to `std::ranges::sample(vec1, sample.begin(), sample_sizes[i], rng)` that randomly selects `sample_sizes[i]` elements from `vec1` and saves these values in `sample`. During execution of `std::ranges::sample()`, each element within `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())` has an equal chance of being selected. As mentioned earlier, `std::ranges::sample()` makes its selections without replacements, which means there are no duplicates in output vector `sample`.

The for loop in `Ch13_02_ex2()` also could have used the dual iterator overload of `std::ranges::sample()` (e.g., `std::ranges::sample(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), sample.begin(), sample_sizes[i], rng)`). Execution of this overload guarantees a stable sample (i.e., the relative ordering of elements in the output range matches that of the input range) if the input range supports forward iterators. It also warrants mentioning that the behavior of `std::ranges::sample()` is undefined if the output iterator overlaps the input range. Here are the results for example `Ch13_02`:

```

----- Results for example Ch13_02 -----
----- Ch13_02_ex1() -----
vec1 (initial values):
Ala Arg Asn Asp Cys Gln Glu Gly His Ile Leu Lys Met Phe Pro Ser Thr
Trp Tyr Val

vec1 (after first shuffle):
Ile Ala Met Thr Gly His Phe Val Tyr Pro Lys Trp Leu Arg Gln Cys Glu
Asn Asp Ser

vec1 (after second shuffle):
Thr Leu Tyr Lys Asp Val Gly Trp Ile Cys Gln His Arg Glu Phe Pro Ser
Met Ala Asn

----- Ch13_02_ex2() -----
vec1 (initial values):
Ala Arg Asn Asp Cys Gln Glu Gly His Ile Leu Lys Met Phe Pro Ser Thr
Trp Tyr Val

```

sample #0:

Ala Glu Met Thr Trp

sample #1:

Asp Cys Gln Glu Gly Ile Leu Phe Pro Thr

sample #2:

Ala Arg Asn Asp Cys Gln Glu Gly Ile Leu Lys Met Phe Ser Val

Rotate and Shift Algorithms

A rotate algorithm left-rotates the elements of a range. Rotate algorithms are often exploited to implement other algorithms such as sorts. A shift algorithm shifts the elements of a range toward its front or back ends. The former is a left shift, while the latter is a right shift. Figure 13-2 illustrates these operations in greater detail.

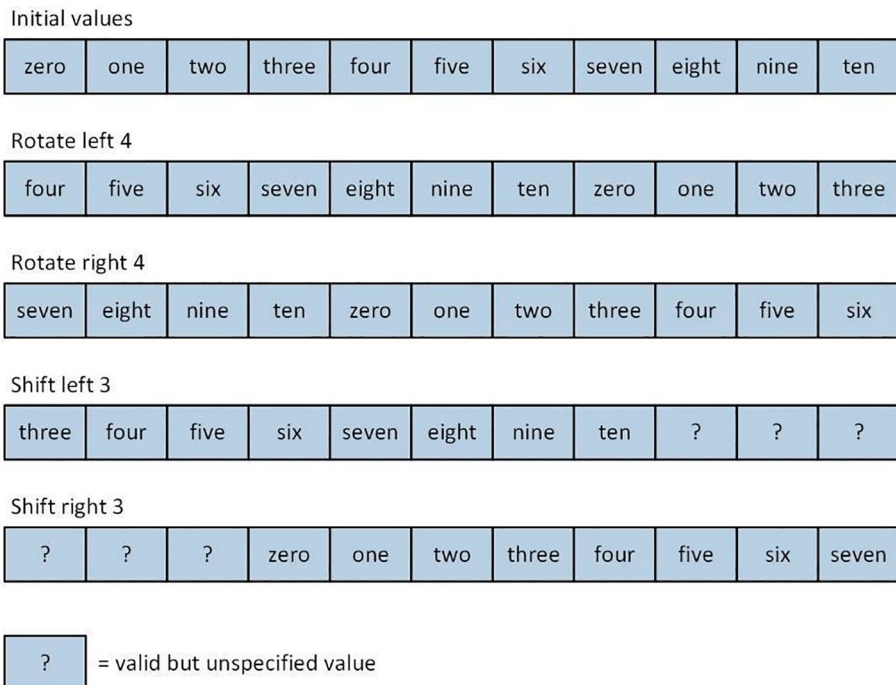


Figure 13-2. Examples of rotate and shift operations

Listing 13-3-1 shows the source code for example Ch13_03_ex1(). This example demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::rotate()`.

Listing 13-3-1. Example Ch13_03 – Ch13_03_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch13_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <deque>
#include <list>
#include <numeric>
#include <stdexcept>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch13_03.h"
#include "MT.h"

static std::initializer_list<std::string> s_StringVals {"zero",
"one", "two",
    "three", "four", "five", "six", "seven", "eight", "nine", "ten"};

void Ch13_03_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:6s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {12};

    // create test vector of strings
    std::vector<std::string> vec1 {s_StringVals};
    MT::print_ctr("vec1 (initial values)\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::rotate (rotates left)
    std::ranges::rotate(vec1, vec1.begin() + 2);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after std::ranges::rotate)\n", vec1, fmt,
epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::rotate_copy (makes copy)
    std::vector<std::string> vec2 {};
```

```

std::ranges::rotate_copy(vec1, vec1.begin() + 3,
std::back_inserter(vec2));
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after std::ranges::rotate_copy)\n", vec1, fmt,
ep1_max);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (after std::ranges::rotate_copy)\n", vec2, fmt,
ep1_max);
}

```

Following the initialization of `std::vector<std::string> vec1` is the statement `std::ranges::rotate(vec1, vec1.begin() + 2)`. The execution of this algorithm rotates the elements of `vec1` to the left (or front) by two element positions. In other words, `vec1.begin() + 2` becomes the new front element of `vec1`. Here's a portion of the output that shows the pre- and post-rotation elements of `vec1`:

```

vec1 (initial values)
zero  one  two   three four  five  six   seven eight nine  ten
vec1 (after std::ranges::rotate)
two   three four  five  six   seven eight nine  ten  zero one

```

In the next code block, execution of `std::ranges::rotate_copy(vec1, vec1.begin() + 3, std::back_inserter(vec2))` stores in `vec2` a copy of `vec1` that's been left-rotated by three elements. Range `vec1` is not modified during this execution of `std::ranges::rotate_copy()`.

Listing 13-3-2 show the source code for example `Ch13_03_ex2()`. This listing opens with the definition of a template function named `rotate_left()`, which rotates `ctr` left by `n` element positions. A rotate element count is used here since it's often easier to express than an iterator position. Note that `rotate_left()` exploits `middle = std::ranges::next(ctr.begin(), n)` to calculate the correct "middle" iterator for `std::ranges::rotate()`. Execution of `std::ranges::rotate()` returns a pair of iterators. The first iterator points to the former front element of `ctr()` at its new location (shown earlier in bold text) *following* the rotate; the second iterator matches `ctr.end()`.

Listing 13-3-2. Example Ch13_03 - Ch13_03_ex2()

```

auto rotate_left(auto& ctr, size_t n)
{
    // rotate ctr left by n elements
    if (n > ctr.size())
        throw std::runtime_error("rotate_left - invalid 'n'");

    // std::ranges::rotate() returns iterators
    // { ctr.begin() + (ctr.end() - middle), ctr.end() }
    auto middle = std::ranges::next(ctr.begin(), n);
    return std::ranges::rotate(ctr, middle);
}

auto rotate_right(auto& ctr, size_t n)
{
    // rotate ctr right by n elements
    if (n > ctr.size())
        throw std::runtime_error("rotate_right - invalid 'n'");

    auto middle = std::ranges::next(ctr.begin(), ctr.size() - n);
    return std::ranges::rotate(ctr, middle);
}

void Ch13_03_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:6s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {12};

    // prints elements of range returned by rotate_left() and
    rotate_right()
    auto print_rotate_result = [](const char* msg, auto rng)
    {
        std::print("{} ", msg);
        for (auto iter = rng.begin(); iter != rng.end(); ++iter)
            std::print("{:6s} ", *iter);
        std::println("");
    };
}

```

```

// using rotate_left (list)
std::list<std::string> list1 {s_StringVals};
MT::print_ctr("list1 (initial values):\n", list1, fmt, epl_max);

auto result_l = rotate_left(list1, 4);
MT::print_ctr("\nlist1 (after rotate_left, n = 4):\n", list1, fmt,
epl_max);
print_rotate_result("\nresult_l:\n", result_l);

// using rotate_right (deque)
std::deque<std::string> deq1 {s_StringVals};
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (initial values):\n", deq1, fmt, epl_max);

auto result_r = rotate_right(deq1, 4);
MT::print_ctr("\ndeq1 (after rotate_right, n = 4):\n", deq1, fmt,
epl_max);
print_rotate_result("\nresult_r:\n", result_r);
}

```

The next item in Listing 13-3-2 is template function `rotate_right()`, which rotates the elements of `ctr` to the right (or back) by `n` element positions. To calculate the correct iterator position for `std::ranges::rotate()`, `rotate_right()` calculates `middle = std::ranges::next(ctr.begin(), ctr.size() - n)`. The behavior of `std::ranges::rotate()` is undefined if the source range is invalid or if the specified middle iterator does not reside within the source range. This is why both `rotate_left()` and `rotate_right()` throw an exception if argument `n` is greater than the number of container elements.

Listing 13-3-2 also shows the source code for example function `Ch13_03_ex2()`. This function exercises `rotate_left()` and `rotate_right()` using containers of type `std::list<std::string>` and `std::deque<std::string>`. In `Ch13_03_ex2()`, lambda expression `print_rotate_result()` prints the elements of the range that's returned from both `rotate_left()` and `rotate_right()`, which is the result returned by `std::ranges::rotate()`.

Example function `Ch13_03_ex3()`, shown in Listing 13-3-3, demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::shift_left()` and `std::ranges::shift_right()` (both C++23).

Listing 13-3-3. Example Ch13_03 – Ch13_03_ex3()

```

void Ch13_03_ex3()
{
#if __cpp_lib_shift >= 202202L
    const char* fmt = "{:6s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {12};

    // transformation op for empty string
    auto tr_op = [](std::string& s) { return (s == "") ? "-----" : s; };

    // using std::ranges::shift_left (moves strings)
    std::vector<std::string> vec1 {s_StringVals};
    MT::print_ctr("vec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
    std::ranges::shift_left(vec1, 3);
    std::ranges::transform(vec1, vec1.begin(), tr_op);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after shift_left, 3):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::shift_right (moves strings)
    std::vector<std::string> vec2 {s_StringVals};
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (initial values):\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);
    std::ranges::shift_right(vec2, 3);
    std::ranges::transform(vec2, vec2.begin(), tr_op);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (after shift_right, 3):\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);
#else
    std::println("Ch13_03_ex3() requires __cpp_lib_shift >= 202202L
(C++23)");
#endif
}

```

One notable difference between a rotate and a shift operation is that execution of the former retains all of the range's original elements, while the latter doesn't. In function Ch13_03_ex3(), execution of `std::ranges::shift_left(vec1, 3)` shifts the elements of `vec1` to the left (front) by three positions. During its execution, `std::ranges::shift_left()` performs move operations to implement actual element shifts. Recall that an object move leaves the original source object in a valid but unspecified state.

Example function `Ch13_03_ex3()` also demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::shift_right(vec2, 3)`. The execution of this algorithm is similar to its left-shift counterpart except that the elements of `vec2` are shifted to the right (back) by three positions.

Note in Listing 13-3-1 that following each shift operation, `Ch13_03_ex3()` utilizes `std::ranges::transform()` to convert empty strings in `vec1` and `vec2` to "-----" for display purposes. The empty strings occur in container positions from which strings were moved to the left or right. Once again, it's important to keep in mind that while setting a moved string to empty is a sensible action, this after-effect is not guaranteed by the ISO C++ standard. Here are the results for example `Ch13_03`:

```

----- Results for example Ch13_03 -----

----- Ch13_03_ex1() -----

vec1 (initial values)
zero  one  two  three  four  five  six  seven  eight  nine  ten
vec1 (after std::ranges::rotate)
two   three  four  five  six  seven  eight  nine  ten  zero  one
vec1 (after std::ranges::rotate_copy)
two   three  four  five  six  seven  eight  nine  ten  zero  one
vec2 (after std::ranges::rotate_copy)
five  six   seven  eight  nine  ten  zero  one  two  three  four
----- Ch13_03_ex2() -----

list1 (initial values):
zero  one  two  three  four  five  six  seven  eight  nine  ten
list1 (after rotate_left, n = 4):
four  five  six  seven  eight  nine  ten  zero  one  two  three

result_l:
zero  one  two  three

deq1 (initial values):
zero  one  two  three  four  five  six  seven  eight  nine  ten

```

deq1 (after rotate_right, n = 4):

seven eight nine ten zero one two three four five six

result_r:

zero one two three four five six

Set Algorithms

The STL includes several algorithms that perform common set operations, including intersection, union, difference, and symmetric difference. These algorithms operate on sorted ranges. Unlike mathematical sets, the STL set algorithms support duplicate elements if they're supported by the container. Listing 13-4-1 shows the source code for example function Ch13_04_ex1(), which demonstrates the use of `std::range`, `s::intersection()`, `std::ranges::union()`, `std::ranges::difference()`, and `std::ranges::symmetric_difference()`.

Listing 13-4-1. Example Ch13_04 – Ch13_04_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch13_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch13_04.h"
#include "HtmlColor.h"
#include "MT.h"

void Ch13_04_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};

    // create test vectors of HtmlColors
    std::vector<size_t> indices1
        {0, 1, 1, 3, 4, 7, 7, 7, 8, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12, 13, 14 };
    std::vector<HtmlColor> colors1 = HtmlColor::get_vector(indices1);
```

```

std::ranges::sort(colors1);
MT::print_ctr("\ncolors1:\n", colors1, fmt, epl_max);

std::vector<size_t> indices2
    {1, 1, 1, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 10, 10, 11, 12, 13, 16, 16} ;
std::vector<HtmlColor> colors2 = HtmlColor::get_vector(indices2);
std::ranges::sort(colors2);
MT::print_ctr("\ncolors2:\n", colors2, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::set_intersection
std::vector<HtmlColor> colors3 {};
std::ranges::set_intersection(colors1, colors2, std::back_
inserter(colors3));
MT::print_ctr("\ncolors3 (intersection):\n", colors3, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::set_union
std::vector<HtmlColor> colors4 {};
std::ranges::set_union(colors1, colors2, std::back_inserter(colors4));
MT::print_ctr("\ncolors4 (union):\n", colors4, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::set_difference
std::vector<HtmlColor> colors5 {};
std::ranges::set_difference(colors1, colors2, std::back_
inserter(colors5));
MT::print_ctr("\ncolors5 (difference):\n", colors5, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::ranges::symmetric_difference
std::vector<HtmlColor> colors6 {};
std::ranges::set_symmetric_difference(colors1, colors2,
    std::back_inserter(colors6));
MT::print_ctr("\ncolors6 (symmetric_difference):\n", colors6, fmt,
epl_max);
}

```

In Listing 13-4-1, the opening code block of `Ch13_04_ex1()` initializes two `std::vector<HtmlColor>` containers named `colors1` and `colors2` (see Listing 8-1-4-1 for class `HtmlColor`). Note that `std::ranges::sort()` is employed to sort both containers. The next code block employs `std::ranges::set_intersection(colors1,`

colors2, std::back_inserter(colors3)) to compute the intersection of colors1 and colors2. The result of the intersection is a sorted range of elements that exist in both colors1 and colors2; these elements are saved in colors3. Note that if m and n equivalent elements exist in colors1 and colors2, respectively, the first min(m, n) from colors1 are copied in order to colors3.

In the subsequent code block, Ch13_04_ex1() utilizes std::ranges::set_union(colors1, colors2, std::back_inserter(colors4)) to compute the union of colors1 and colors2. Execution of this function saves a sorted range of elements that exist in either colors1 or colors2 to colors4. If m and n equivalent elements exist in colors1 and colors2, all elements from colors1 are copied in order to colors4, and the final max(n - m, 0) from colors2 are copied in order to colors4.

Execution of algorithm std::ranges::set_difference(colors1, colors2, std::back_inserter(colors5)) copies elements from colors1 which are *not* present in colors2 to colors5. The elements of colors5 are sorted. If m and n equivalent elements exist in colors1 and colors2, the last max(m - n, 0) elements from colors1 are copied in order to colors5.

The final set operation, std::ranges::set_symmetric_difference(colors1, colors2, std::back_inserter(colors6)), copies elements from colors1 that are nonexistent in colors2 to colors6; it also copies elements from colors2 that are nonexistent in colors1 to colors6. The elements of colors6 are sorted. If m and n equivalent elements exist in colors1 and colors2, then abs(m - n) elements are copied to colors6 as follows: the final m - n elements are copied in order from colors1 if m > n is true, and the last n - m from colors2 if m < n is true. Here are the results for example Ch13_04:

```

----- Results for example Ch13_04 -----

----- Ch13_04_ex1() -----

colors1:
[AliceBlue           0xF0F8FF] [AntiqueWhite       0xFAEBD7]
[AntiqueWhite       0xFAEBD7] [AquaMarine        0x7FFFD4]
[Azure              0xF0FFFF] [Black              0x000000]
[Black              0x000000] [Black              0x000000]
[BlanchedAlmond    0xFFEBCD] [BlanchedAlmond    0xFFEBCD]
[Blue               0x0000FF] [BlueViolet         0x8A2BE2]
    
```

```
[Brown           0xA52A2A] [Burlywood           0xDEB887]
[Burlywood       0xDEB887] [CadetBlue           0x5F9EA0]
[Chartreuse      0x7FFF00]
```

colors2:

```
[AntiqueWhite    0xFAEBD7] [AntiqueWhite    0xFAEBD7]
[AntiqueWhite    0xFAEBD7] [Azure            0xF0FFFF]
[Beige           0xF5F5DC] [Bisque          0xFFE4C4]
[BlanchedAlmond  0xFFEBCD] [Blue            0x0000FF]
[BlueViolet      0x8A2BE2] [BlueViolet      0x8A2BE2]
[Brown           0xA52A2A] [Burlywood       0xDEB887]
[CadetBlue       0x5F9EA0] [Coral           0xFF7F50]
[Coral           0xFF7F50]
```

colors3 (intersection):

```
[AntiqueWhite    0xFAEBD7] [AntiqueWhite    0xFAEBD7]
[Azure           0xF0FFFF] [BlanchedAlmond  0xFFEBCD]
[Blue            0x0000FF] [BlueViolet      0x8A2BE2]
[Brown           0xA52A2A] [Burlywood       0xDEB887]
[CadetBlue       0x5F9EA0]
```

colors4 (union):

```
[AliceBlue       0xF0F8FF] [AntiqueWhite    0xFAEBD7]
[AntiqueWhite    0xFAEBD7] [AntiqueWhite    0xFAEBD7]
[AquaMarine      0x7FFFD4] [Azure            0xF0FFFF]
[Beige           0xF5F5DC] [Bisque          0xFFE4C4]
[Black           0x000000] [Black           0x000000]
[Black           0x000000] [BlanchedAlmond  0xFFEBCD]
[BlanchedAlmond  0xFFEBCD] [Blue            0x0000FF]
[BlueViolet      0x8A2BE2] [BlueViolet      0x8A2BE2]
[Brown           0xA52A2A] [Burlywood       0xDEB887]
[Burlywood       0xDEB887] [CadetBlue       0x5F9EA0]
[Chartreuse      0x7FFF00] [Coral           0xFF7F50]
[Coral           0xFF7F50]
```


colors5 (difference):

[AliceBlue	0xF0F8FF]	[AquaMarine	0x7FFFD4]
[Black	0x000000]	[Black	0x000000]
[Black	0x000000]	[BlanchedAlmond	0xFFEBCD]
[Burlywood	0xDEB887]	[Chartreuse	0x7FFF00]

colors6 (symmetric_difference):

[AliceBlue	0xF0F8FF]	[AntiqueWhite	0xFAEBD7]
[AquaMarine	0x7FFFD4]	[Beige	0xF5F5DC]
[Bisque	0xFFE4C4]	[Black	0x000000]
[Black	0x000000]	[Black	0x000000]
[BlanchedAlmond	0xFFEBCD]	[BlueViolet	0x8A2BE2]
[Burlywood	0xDEB887]	[Chartreuse	0x7FFF00]
[Coral	0xFF7F50]	[Coral	0xFF7F50]

Permutation Algorithms

A permutation is a distinct ordering of a finite set of elements. The STL defines several algorithms that you can use to generate all possible permutations using the elements of a range. Listing 13-5-1 shows the source code for example function `Ch13_05_ex1()`, which highlights the use of `std::ranges::next_permutation()`. This algorithm transforms a sequence of elements into its next permutation by assuming that the set of all possible permutations is lexicographically sorted. The initial sequence used for `std::ranges::next_permutation()` must be sorted in ascending order.

Listing 13-5-1. Example Ch13_05 – Ch13_05_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch13_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch13_05.h"
#include "HtmlColor.h"
```

```

#include "MT.h"

void Ch13_05_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};

    // create test vector of HtmlColors
    std::vector<size_t> indices1 {20, 40, 60, 80, 100};
    std::vector<HtmlColor> colors1 = HtmlColor::get_vector(indices1);

    int i {};

    while (1)
    {
        std::string s = "\niteration " + std::to_string(++i) + ":\n";
        MT::print_ctr(s.c_str(), colors1, fmt, epl_max);

        // using std::ranges::next_permutation
        // returns template<class I>
        // struct next_permutation_result { I in; bool found; };
        // in = colors1.end()
        auto np_result = std::ranges::next_permutation(colors1);

        if (!np_result.found)
            break;
    }
}

```

The opening code block of `Ch13_05_ex1()` utilizes `HtmlColor::get_vector(indices1)` to initialize `std::vector<HtmlColor> colors1`. Vector `colors1` contains four `HtmlColor` objects ascendingly sorted by name. Within the while loop, example function `Ch13_05_ex1()` calls `np_result = std::ranges::next_permutation(colors1)` to generate the next permutation using the elements of `colors1`. The execution of this function returns a structure of type `std::ranges::next_permutation_result`, which includes a `bool` member named `found`. If `np_result.found` is true, `colors1` contains the next permutation; otherwise, all possible permutations have been generated.

In Listing 13-5-2, example function `Ch13_05_ex2()` demonstrates the use of `std::ranges::is_permutation()`. Execution of this function returns `true` if the elements of the first range can be permuted to create a sequence that matches the ordering of elements in the second range.

Listing 13-5-2. Example `Ch13_05 - Ch13_05_ex2()`

```
void Ch13_05_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {2};

    // create test vectors of HtmlColors
    std::vector<size_t> indices1 {100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107};
    std::vector<HtmlColor> colors1 = HtmlColor::get_vector(indices1);
    MT::print_ctr("\ncolors1:\n", colors1, fmt, epl_max);

    std::vector<size_t> indices2 {101, 107, 103, 104, 102, 106, 100, 105};
    std::vector<HtmlColor> colors2 = HtmlColor::get_vector(indices2);
    MT::print_ctr("\ncolors2:\n", colors2, fmt, epl_max);

    std::vector<size_t> indices3 {101, 107, 103, 104, 102, 106, 108, 105};
    std::vector<HtmlColor> colors3 = HtmlColor::get_vector(indices3);
    MT::print_ctr("\ncolors3:\n", colors3, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::is_permutation
    bool b12 = std::ranges::is_permutation(colors1, colors2);
    bool b13 = std::ranges::is_permutation(colors1, colors3);
    std::println("\nis_permutation (colors1, colors2): {s}", b12);
    std::println("is_permutation (colors1, colors3): {s}", b13);
}
```

Like most other algorithms in namespace `std::ranges`, you can override the default comparison function for `std::ranges::next_permutation()`. The STL also includes an algorithm function named `std::ranges::prev_permutation()`, which can be used to generate permutations in descending order. The results for example `Ch13_05` follow this paragraph. Note that the output for example function `Ch13_05_ex1()` has been truncated to save space.

----- Results for example Ch13_05 -----

----- Ch13_05_ex1() -----

iteration 1:

[Cyan	0x00FFFF]	[DimGray	0x696969]
[LavenderBlush	0xFFFF0F5]	[Maroon	0x800000]
[OrangeRed	0xFF4500]		

iteration 2:

[Cyan	0x00FFFF]	[DimGray	0x696969]
[LavenderBlush	0xFFFF0F5]	[OrangeRed	0xFF4500]
[Maroon	0x800000]		

iteration 3:

[Cyan	0x00FFFF]	[DimGray	0x696969]
[Maroon	0x800000]	[LavenderBlush	0xFFFF0F5]
[OrangeRed	0xFF4500]		

...

iteration 118:

[OrangeRed	0xFF4500]	[Maroon	0x800000]
[DimGray	0x696969]	[LavenderBlush	0xFFFF0F5]
[Cyan	0x00FFFF]		

iteration 119:

[OrangeRed	0xFF4500]	[Maroon	0x800000]
[LavenderBlush	0xFFFF0F5]	[Cyan	0x00FFFF]
[DimGray	0x696969]		

iteration 120:

[OrangeRed	0xFF4500]	[Maroon	0x800000]
[LavenderBlush	0xFFFF0F5]	[DimGray	0x696969]
[Cyan	0x00FFFF]		

```
----- Ch13_05_ex2() -----
```

```
colors1:
```

```
[OrangeRed      0xFF4500] [Orchid        0xDA70D6]
[PaleGoldenrod  0xEEE8AA] [PaleGreen     0x98FB98]
[PaleTurquoise  0xAFEEEE] [PaleVioletRed 0xDB7093]
[PapayaWhip     0xFFEFD5] [PeachPuff     0xFFDAB9]
```

```
colors2:
```

```
[Orchid         0xDA70D6] [PeachPuff     0xFFDAB9]
[PaleGreen      0x98FB98] [PaleTurquoise 0xAFEEEE]
[PaleGoldenrod  0xEEE8AA] [PapayaWhip    0xFFEFD5]
[OrangeRed      0xFF4500] [PaleVioletRed 0xDB7093]
```

```
colors3:
```

```
[Orchid         0xDA70D6] [PeachPuff     0xFFDAB9]
[PaleGreen      0x98FB98] [PaleTurquoise 0xAFEEEE]
[PaleGoldenrod  0xEEE8AA] [PapayaWhip    0xFFEFD5]
[Peru           0xCD853F] [PaleVioletRed 0xDB7093]
```

```
is_permutation (colors1, colors2): true
```

```
is_permutation (colors1, colors3): false
```

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- Algorithm `std::ranges::merge()` merges two sorted ranges into a single sorted range. You can also use `std::ranges::inplace_merge()` to merge two sorted subranges that exist within the same range.
- Algorithm `std::ranges::shuffle()` randomly rearranges the elements of a range where the probability of each permutation is the same. Algorithm `std::ranges::sample()` chooses N elements from a range without replacements.

- Algorithm `std::ranges::rotate()` left-rotates the elements of a range. Algorithm `std::ranges::rotate_copy()` also left-rotates a range but saves the result to an output range. For both of these algorithms, the number of element positions to rotate is specified by a “middle” iterator. To perform a right rotation, use `size - n` for the middle iterator where `size` is the number of elements in the range and `n` is the number of element positions to rotate.
- Algorithms `std::ranges::shift_left()` and `std::ranges::shift_right()` carry out range left and right shifts. Unlike a rotate operation, execution of a shift operation yields valid range elements with unspecified states.
- Algorithms `std::ranges::set_intersection()`, `std::ranges::union()`, `std::ranges::set_difference()`, and `std::ranges::symmetric_difference()` carry out common set operations on ranges. Unlike their mathematical counterparts, these algorithms support duplicate elements.
- Algorithms `std::ranges::next_permutation()` and `std::ranges::prev_permutation()` are permutation generator functions, whose initial permutations are an ordered (ascending or descending) range of elements.

CHAPTER 14

Ranges – Part 1

This chapter is the first of two chapters that discuss advanced programming features and techniques for C++20/23 ranges. These features and techniques extend the capabilities of ranges well beyond the predefined algorithms of namespace `std::ranges`. Topics examined in this chapter include

- Range views
- Range adaptors
- Range adaptor pipelines
- Projections

The discussions in this chapter assume that you have a basic understanding of STL containers and algorithms as explained thus far in this book.

Range Views and Adaptors Primer

In previous chapters, you learned how to use a variety of containers. Briefly, a container is simply an object that encompasses a collection of other objects. The elements of a container can be accessed using iterators. Pairs of iterators are often employed to define a range of elements. For example, the range `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())` includes all `int` elements of `std::vector<int> vec1`. Iterators are also used to identify a subrange of elements within a container. Subrange `[vec1.begin(), vec1.begin() + 5)` denotes the first five elements of `vec1`. Before continuing, it warrants mentioning that the C++ terms container and range are sometimes used interchangeably. For the discussions of this chapter, a container owns a collection of elements, while a range encompasses zero or more sequential members of a container or another range. Ranges are also used to access the elements of a view as explained later in this chapter.

Most C++ programs exploit STL’s extensive collection of algorithms to perform operations using the elements of a container or range. Previous chapters covered a wide variety of algorithms, including the explicit iterator forms formalized in C++11 and the augmented range alternatives of C++20. Recall that the algorithms of namespace `std::ranges` support variable name arguments to carry out an action using the entire container. However, the programming capabilities of `std::ranges` extends far beyond syntax simplification. Perhaps the most operative of these newer capabilities is the concept of a range view (or view).

A view is an algorithmic “window” into a range of elements. Like a range, the elements of a view can be accessed using iterators. Fundamental aspects of a view include

- A view doesn’t own any elements.¹ It is a logical arrangement of elements that are typically, but not necessarily, held in a container.
- The elements of a view are generally specified using one or more filtering or transformation operations.
- Views are lazily evaluated. This means that any filtering or transformation operations aren’t applied until an element is accessed.
- Views are composable. Multiple views can be chained together in a manner that resembles the piping of commands in a terminal window.
- Views are similar to other STL objects in that they can be created, destroyed, assigned, moved, etc. A view is created in constant time. In other words, the performance cost to create a view does not depend on the number of elements in the view.
- A view can be instantiated directly using the classes of namespace `std::ranges::views` or `std::views`. The latter is an alias of the former. However, it is more common and frequently more efficient to create a view using a range adaptor. A range adaptor is a utility that transforms a range into a view with explicit algorithmic behavior.

¹An exception to this rule is view `std::ranges::owning_view`.

One notable advantage of C++ views is that they can be created in anticipation of some future programming need. The execution cost of pre-creating one or more views is often negligible if an instantiated view is not used due to a runtime logic decision.

Figure 14-1 unifies containers, ranges, range adaptors, and views into a single diagram. Don't worry if you don't fully understand some of the entities in this figure. You'll learn more about these concepts as the chapter progresses.

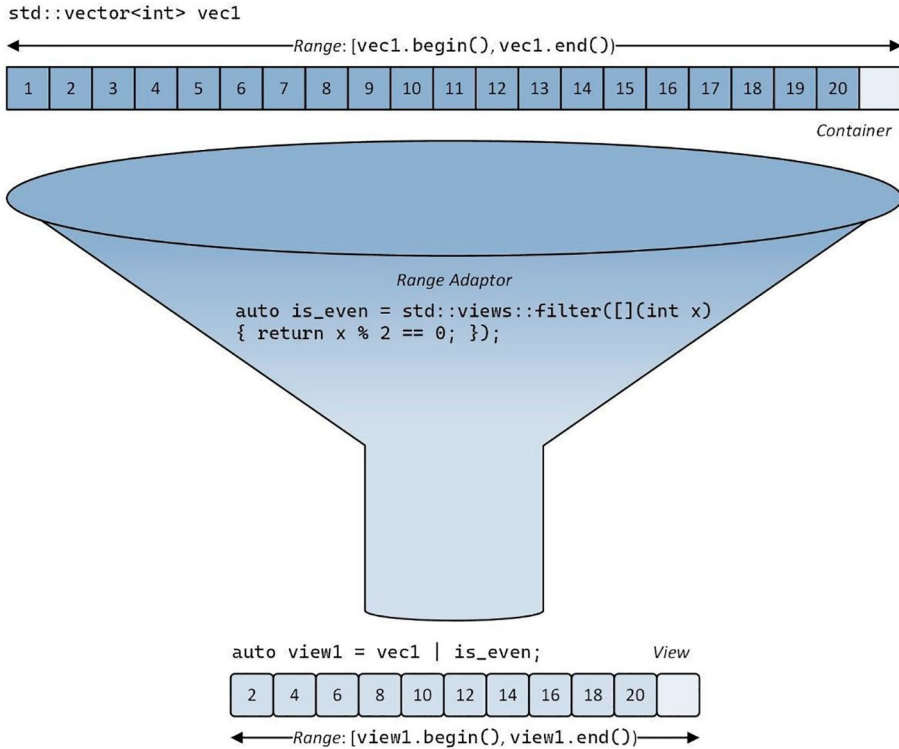


Figure 14-1. Unified representation of a container, range, range adaptor, and view

Range Views and Adaptors

Source code example Ch14_01 explicates elementary views. Listing 14-1-1 shows the code for example function Ch14_01_ex1(). This listing opens with the definition of get_test_vector(). Execution of this function returns a `std::vector<int>` of random integers. The initial code block of Ch14_01_ex1() utilizes get_test_vector() to initialize vec1. Next is the definition of lambda expression `pred = [](int x) {return x > 0 && x % 10 == 0;}`.

Listing 14-1-1. Example Ch14_01 – Ch14_01_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch14_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <iostream>
#include <numeric>
#include <ranges>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch14_01.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "MTH.h"
#include "RN.h"

auto get_test_vector()
{
    // return test vector of random integers
    return RN::get_vector<int>(60, -500, 500, 13);
}

void Ch14_01_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:6d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {12};

    // create test vector of random numbers
    std::vector<int> vec1 = get_test_vector();
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    auto pred = [](int x) { return x > 0 && x % 10 == 0; };

    // using std::views::filter (can also use std::ranges::views::filter)
    auto view1 = std::views::filter(vec1, pred);

    bool is_empty1 = view1.empty();
    std::println("\nview1 is empty: {s}", is_empty1);
}

```

```

// copy-construct view2 using view1
auto view2 {view1};

bool is_empty2 = view2.empty();
std::println("\nview2 is empty: {:s}", is_empty2);
}

```

The second code block of `Ch14_01_ex1()` demonstrates how to use range adaptor `std::views::filter()`. The execution of `view1 = std::views::filter(vec1, pred)` creates a view of all elements in `vec1` for which `pred` is true (i.e., elements that are greater than zero and evenly divisible by ten). It is important to understand that during the instantiation of `view1`, none of `vec1`'s elements are accessed and `pred` isn't invoked. If you're unsure about this, try executing `Ch14_01_ex2()` using your favorite C++ debugger and set a breakpoint on the return statement inside `pred`.

Following creation of `view1`, `Ch14_01_ex1()` utilizes `view1.empty()` to check whether the view defined by `view1` contains any elements. To carry out this operation, `view1.empty()` applies `pred` to the elements of `vec1` starting at `vec1.begin()` and continues until `pred` returns true (non-empty view) or element `vec1.end()` is reached (empty view). The last code block in `Ch14_01_ex1()` copy-constructs `view2`. Note that an initializer list is used to initialize `view2` just like any other C++ object.

Example function `Ch14_01_ex2()`, shown in Listing 14-1-2, illustrates how to enumerate the elements of a view. Like the previous example function, the initial code block of `Ch14_01_ex2()` initializes `std::vector<int> vec1` and `pred`. This function also creates the same view object using `view1 = std::views::filter(vec1, pred)`.

Listing 14-1-2. Example `Ch14_01 - Ch14_01_ex2()`

```

void Ch14_01_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:6d}";
    constexpr size_t ep1_max {12};

    // create test vector of random numbers
    std::vector<int> vec1 = get_test_vector();
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, ep1_max);

    auto pred = [](int x) { return x > 0 && x % 10 == 0; };
}

```

```

// using std::views::filter
auto view1 = std::views::filter(vec1, pred);

// empty view?
if (view1)
{
    // print elements of view1
    std::println("\nprinting elements of view1 using iterators");
    for (auto iter = view1.begin(); iter != view1.end(); ++iter)
        std::print("{:d} ", *iter);
    std::println("");

    std::println("\nprinting elements of view1 using range for loop");
    for (auto val : view1)
        std::print("{:d} ", val);
    std::println("");
}
else
    std::println("view1 is empty");
}

```

Following instantiation of `view1`, `Ch14_01_ex2()` checks for an empty view using operator `bool()`, which returns `!view1.empty()`. If `view1` is not empty, the code block inside the `if` statement prints the elements of `view1`. The first `if` statement code block utilizes an ordinary `for` loop to print the elements of `[view1.begin(), view1.end())`. Note that this `for` loop is no different than any other iterator-based `for` loop that accesses the elements of a range. Behind the scenes, each execution of `++iter` updates `iter` so that it points to the next element in `vec1` that returns `true` for `pred`. The second code block inside the `if` expression utilizes a range `for` loop to print the elements of `view1`. Once again, this expression is identical to other range `for` loops that you've studied.

Listing 14-1-3 shows the source code for example function `Ch14_01_ex3()`. This function demonstrates the use of range adaptors `std::views::filter()` and `std::views::transform()`. The opening code block of `Ch14_01_ex3()` utilizes `std::ranges::iota(vec1, 1)` to initialize the elements of `std::vector<int> vec1(50)`. The next statement, `view1 = std::views::filter(vec1, MTH::is_prime<int>)`, instantiates a view of all prime numbers in `vec1` (see Listing 10-6-2-2 for `MTH::is_prime()`).

Listing 14-1-3. Example Ch14_01 – Ch14_01_ex3()

```

void Ch14_01_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:7d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // initialize test vector
    std::vector<int> vec1(50);
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_iota           // C++23
    std::ranges::iota(vec1, 1);
#else
    std::iota(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 1);
#endif
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::views::filter
    auto view1 = std::views::filter(vec1, MTH::is_prime<int>);

    // using std::views::transform
    auto view2 = std::views::transform(view1, [](int x) { return -x; });

    // print elements specified by view1 and view2
    MT::print_ctr("\nview1 (std::views::filter):\n", view1, fmt, epl_max);
    MT::print_ctr("\nview2 (std::views::transform):\n", view2, fmt,
        epl_max);

    // print elements of vec1 (same as initial values)
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (unaltered by std::views::filter, transform):\n",
        vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::ranges::to<std::vector> (C++23)
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_to_container
    std::vector<int> vec2 = view2 | std::ranges::to<std::vector>();
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2 (result of view2 | std::ranges::to<std::vec
tor>):\n",
        vec2, fmt, epl_max);

```

```

#else
    std::println("std::ranges::to<std::vector>() requires C++23");
#endif
}

```

Following the creation of `view1` is the statement `view2 = std::views::transform(view1, [](int x) { return -x; })`. Execution of this range adaptor creates a view that negates all elements in `view1`. Once again, it's important to keep in mind that during the instantiation of `view1` and `view2`, no elements of `vec1` are accessed and neither unary predicate is invoked. The runtime cost of instantiating `view1` and `view2` is constant in that it's not dependent on the number of elements in `vec1`.

The ensuing code block in `Ch14_01_ex3()` utilizes `MT::print_ctr()` to print the elements of `view1` and `view2`. Despite the fact that neither `view1` nor `view2` are containers, `MT::print_ctr()` successfully prints the elements of these views since it utilizes a range for loop just like you saw in example function `Ch14_01_ex2()`. The next statement in `Ch14_01_ex3()` uses `MT::print_ctr()` to print the elements of `vec1`. Note in the results section that the elements in `vec1` are identical before and after the application of range adaptors `std::views::filter()` and `std::ranges::transform()`.

In the final code block of `Ch14_01_ex3()`, execution of the statement `std::vector<int> vec2 = view2 | std::ranges::to<std::vector>() (C++23)` constructs `vec2` using the elements of `view2`. Note the use of operator `|` in this expression. This is an example of a chained operation, the details of which are discussed in the next section. Constructing a container object using the elements of a view is sometimes necessary for subsequent processing by algorithms that perform operations using actual containers. Here are the results for example `Ch14_01`:

```

----- Results for example Ch14_01 -----

```

```

----- Ch14_01_ex1() -----

```

```

vec1:

```

```

  278  107 -263  360  325  393  466 -321  473  259  -47  252
  109  107  276  294  142 -112  222 -160 -465  162 -202  406
-442  220  357  -28 -127  -3  180  -54 -244  31 -153  494
-491  115 -142 -320  450  223 -282  440 -181  38  418  -30
-469  125 -435  190  130 -211  374 -448 -492  288  247  26

```

```

view1 is empty: false

```

view2 is empty: false

----- Ch14_01_ex2() -----

vec1:

278	107	-263	360	325	393	466	-321	473	259	-47	252
109	107	276	294	142	-112	222	-160	-465	162	-202	406
-442	220	357	-28	-127	-3	180	-54	-244	31	-153	494
-491	115	-142	-320	450	223	-282	440	-181	38	418	-30
-469	125	-435	190	130	-211	374	-448	-492	288	247	26

printing elements of view1 using iterators

360 220 180 450 440 190 130

printing elements of view1 using range for loop

360 220 180 450 440 190 130

----- Ch14_01_ex3() -----

vec1 (initial values):

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50

view1 (std::views::filter):

2	3	5	7	11	13	17	19	23	29
31	37	41	43	47					

view2 (std::views::transform):

-2	-3	-5	-7	-11	-13	-17	-19	-23	-29
-31	-37	-41	-43	-47					

vec1 (unaltered by std::views::filter, transform):

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50

```
vec2 (result of view2 | std::ranges::to<std::vector>):
    -2    -3    -5    -7    -11   -13   -17   -19   -23   -29
    -31   -37   -41   -43   -47
```

Range Adaptors and Pipelines

Source code example Ch14_02 covers additional range adaptors, including `std::views::drop()` and `std::views::reverse()`. It also explains how to define and use range adaptor pipelines (i.e., the chaining of multiple range adaptors).

Listing 14-2-1 shows the source code for example function `Ch14_02_ex1()`. Near the top of this listing is the definition of a structure named `Args`, which contains common values used by all of the example functions in Ch14_02. The opening code block of `Ch14_02_ex1()` utilizes `RN::get_vector<>()` to initialize `vec1`. In the subsequent code block, execution of `view2 = std::views::filter(vec1, args.IsEven)` instantiates `view2`. Note that the unary predicate for `std::views::filter()` is obtained from `const Args& args`, which is passed to `Ch14_02_ex1()`.

Listing 14-2-1. Example Ch14_02 – Ch14_02_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch14_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <ranges>
#include <string>
#include "MT.h"
#include "RN.h"

// Common arguments structure
struct Args
{
    size_t NumElem {48};           // size of data vector
    unsigned int RngSeed {1003};  // random number generator seed val
    int RngMin {1};               // random number generator min val
    int RngMax {2000};           // random number generator max val
}
```



```

size_t NumDrop {5};           // number of dropped elements
std::string Fmt {"{:6d}"};    // print format specifier
size_t EplMax {12};          // max elements per line

static inline auto IsEven = [](int x) { return (x % 2) == 0; };
};

void Ch14_02_ex1(const Args& args)
{
    // create vector of random values
    std::vector<int> vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(args.NumElem, args.RngMin,
        args.RngMax, args.RngSeed);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, args.Fmt,
        args.EplMax);

    // using std::views::filter (filters odd values)
    auto view2 = std::views::filter(vec1, args.IsEven);
    MT::print_ctr("\nview2:\n", view2, args.Fmt, args.EplMax);

    // using std::views::drop (deletes first NumDrop elements)
    auto view3 = std::views::drop(view2, args.NumDrop);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec3:\n", view3, args.Fmt, args.EplMax);

    // using std::views::reverse (reverses order of elements)
    auto view4 = std::views::reverse(view3);
    MT::print_ctr("\nview4 (final result):\n", view4, args.Fmt,
        args.EplMax);

    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after views::reverse):\n", vec1, args.Fmt,
        args.EplMax);
}

```

The next code block utilizes `view3 = std::views::drop(view2, args.NumDrop)` to create `view3`, which includes the elements of `view2` without its first `args.NumDrop` elements. The final code block of `Ch14_02_ex1()` exploits `view4 = std::views::reverse(view3)` to reverse the elements of `view3`. Note again in the results section that `vec1`'s elements are not modified during the execution of these range adaptors. Also, take note of each view's elements in the results section.

Source code example `Ch14_02_ex2()`, shown in Listing 14-2-2, computes the same view of `vec1` result as `Ch14_02_ex1()` but uses a series of nested range adaptor calls.

Listing 14-2-2. Example Ch14_02 - Ch14_02_ex2()

```

void Ch14_02_ex2(const Args& args)
{
    std::vector<int> vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(args.NumElem, args.RngMin,
        args.RngMax, args.RngSeed);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, args.Fmt,
        args.EplMax);

    // Using std::views::reverse, drop, and filter (call style)
    auto view2 = std::views::reverse(std::views::drop(std::views::fi
        lter(vec1,
            args.IsEven), args.NumDrop));

    MT::print_ctr("\nview2 (final result):\n", view2, args.Fmt,
        args.EplMax);
}

```

From a functional perspective, there's nothing erroneous about the expression `view2 = std::views::reverse(std::views::drop(std::views::filter(vec1, args.IsEven), args.NumDrop))`. However, the exact calculation that gets performed may not be immediately obvious given that the innermost call to `std::views::filter()` is executed first followed by `std::views::drop()` and then `std::views::reverse()`.

In Listing 14-2-3, example function `Ch14_02_ex3()` chains together a series of range adaptor calls to create `view2`. The syntax used here resembles that of piping commands in a terminal window. Perhaps the biggest advantage of the operator `|` chaining syntax is that each range adaptor gets invoked in order as it appears in the code. It's instantly understandable exactly what's being computed.

Listing 14-2-3. Example Ch14_02 - Ch14_02_ex3()

```

void Ch14_02_ex3(const Args& args)
{
    std::vector<int> vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(args.NumElem, args.RngMin,
        args.RngMax, args.RngSeed);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, args.Fmt,
        args.EplMax);
}

```

```

// using composition of std::views::reverse, drop, filter
auto view2 = vec1
    | std::views::filter(args.IsEven)
    | std::views::drop(args.NumDrop)
    | std::views::reverse;

MT::print_ctr("\nview2 (final result):\n", view2, args.Fmt,
args.EplMax);
}

```

The final example function of this section, `Ch14_02_ex4()`, performs the same calculation as the previous three functions but uses STL algorithms instead of range adaptors and views.

Listing 14-2-4. Example `Ch14_02 - Ch14_02_ex4()`

```

void Ch14_02_ex4(const Args& args)
{
    std::vector<int> vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(args.NumElem, args.RngMin,
        args.RngMax, args.RngSeed);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, args.Fmt,
        args.EplMax);

    // copy even values
    std::vector<int> temp1 {};
    std::ranges::copy_if(vec1, std::back_inserter(temp1), args.IsEven);

    // drop values
    std::vector<int> temp2(temp1.size() - args.NumDrop);
    std::ranges::copy(temp1.begin() + args.NumDrop, temp1.end(),
        temp2.begin());

    // reverse order of remaining values
    std::ranges::reverse(temp2);
    MT::print_ctr("\ntemp2: (final result)\n", temp2, args.Fmt,
        args.EplMax);
}

```

The most important construct to recognize in Listing 14-2-4 is the creation of two temporary `std::vector<int>` containers that hold intermediate results. The earlier examples that utilized range adaptors were able to perform the same calculation sans these containers. The time-space performance costs of the range adaptor vs. algorithm methods will in many use cases favor the former, especially if the original source vector contains a large number of elements. Here are the results for example Ch14_02:

```

----- Results for example Ch14_02 -----

----- Ch14_02_ex1() -----

vec1 (initial values):
 1196   10   872  1399   34   504  1194  1983  1790   667  1070   57
    12  685  1805  1347  1510  1684   345  1001  1461  1106   747  1814
   365 1902   891   221   574  1091   822   685   887   955   355   900
   520   91   460   722   809   423  1020  1821   829  1234   597   859

view2:
 1196   10   872   34   504  1194  1790  1070   12  1510  1684  1106
 1814 1902   574   822   900   520   460   722  1020  1234

vec3:
 1194 1790 1070   12  1510  1684  1106  1814  1902   574   822   900
   520   460   722  1020  1234

view4 (final result):
 1234 1020   722   460   520   900   822   574  1902  1814  1106  1684
 1510   12  1070  1790  1194

vec1 (after views::reverse):
 1196   10   872  1399   34   504  1194  1983  1790   667  1070   57
    12  685  1805  1347  1510  1684   345  1001  1461  1106   747  1814
   365 1902   891   221   574  1091   822   685   887   955   355   900
   520   91   460   722   809   423  1020  1821   829  1234   597   859

```

----- Ch14_02_ex2() -----

vec1 (initial values):

1196	10	872	1399	34	504	1194	1983	1790	667	1070	57
12	685	1805	1347	1510	1684	345	1001	1461	1106	747	1814
365	1902	891	221	574	1091	822	685	887	955	355	900
520	91	460	722	809	423	1020	1821	829	1234	597	859

view2 (final result):

1234	1020	722	460	520	900	822	574	1902	1814	1106	1684
1510	12	1070	1790	1194							

----- Ch14_02_ex3() -----

vec1 (initial values):

1196	10	872	1399	34	504	1194	1983	1790	667	1070	57
12	685	1805	1347	1510	1684	345	1001	1461	1106	747	1814
365	1902	891	221	574	1091	822	685	887	955	355	900
520	91	460	722	809	423	1020	1821	829	1234	597	859

view2 (final result):

1234	1020	722	460	520	900	822	574	1902	1814	1106	1684
1510	12	1070	1790	1194							

----- Ch14_02_ex4() -----

vec1 (initial values):

1196	10	872	1399	34	504	1194	1983	1790	667	1070	57
12	685	1805	1347	1510	1684	345	1001	1461	1106	747	1814
365	1902	891	221	574	1091	822	685	887	955	355	900
520	91	460	722	809	423	1020	1821	829	1234	597	859

temp2: (final result)

1234	1020	722	460	520	900	822	574	1902	1814	1106	1684
1510	12	1070	1790	1194							

Range Projections

A projection is a transformation function that an algorithm applies prior to consuming an element's value. Most of the algorithms in namespace `std::ranges` support projections since they impart a substantial amount of algorithmic flexibility.

Listing 14-3-1 shows the source code for example `Ch14_03_ex1()`. This example demonstrates how to exploit rudimentary projections.

Listing 14-3-1. Example `Ch14_03 - Ch14_03_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch14_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <cmath>
#include <functional>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch14_03.h"
#include "Mineral.h"
#include "MT.h"

struct Fruit
{
    std::string Name {};           // fruit name
    unsigned int Energy {};       // kJ per 100 gram serving
};

void Ch14_03_ex1()
{
    // test data
    std::vector<Fruit> fruits
    {
        {"Banana", 371},           {"Orange", 197},
        {"Apple", 281},           {"Kiwi (green)", 255},
        {"Tangerine", 223},       {"Blueberry", 240},
    }
}
```

```

        {"Strawberry", 136},      {"Tomato (red)", 74},
        {"Cherry (sweet)", 263}, {"Cherry (sour)", 209},
    };

    // print lambda
    auto print_fruits = [&fruits](const char* msg)
    {
        std::println("{:s}", msg);

        for (const Fruit& f : fruits)
            std::println("{:20s} kJ: {:3d} kcal: {:3d}", f.Name,
                f.Energy, static_cast<unsigned int>(f.Energy * 0.239f + 0.5f));
    };

    // using std::ranges::sort, by Name
    std::ranges::sort(fruits, std::ranges::greater(), &Fruit::Name);
    print_fruits("\nvector fruits (descending order by Name)");

    // using std::ranges::sort, by Energy
    std::ranges::sort(fruits, std::ranges::less(), &Fruit::Energy);
    print_fruits("\nvector fruits (ascending order by Energy)");
}

```

The code in Listing 14-3-1 opens with the declaration of a simple structure named `Fruit`. Note that this structure contains two members: `std::string Name` and `unsigned int Energy`. The opening code block in `Ch14_03_ex1()` instantiates `std::vector<Fruit> fruits`. Next is the definition of lambda expression `print_fruits()`, which prints the elements of vector `fruits`.

The subsequent code block utilizes `std::ranges::sort(fruits, std::ranges::greater(), &Fruit::Name)` to sort the elements of `fruits`. There are several important particulars to recognize here. First, the use of function object `std::ranges::greater()` means that `std::ranges::sort()` will sort vector `fruits` in descending order. Second, algorithm `std::ranges::sort()` will utilize attribute `Fruit::Name` when sorting `fruits`. This third argument of `std::ranges::sort()` is a projection. For the current example, `std::ranges::sort()` applies a default projection function object named `std::identity()`, which returns argument `Fruit::Name` unchanged.

The next code block in `Ch14_03_ex1()` employs `std::ranges::sort(fruits, std::ranges::less(), &Fruit::Energy)` to ascendingly sort the elements of `fruits` using `Fruit::Energy`. Note that both uses of `std::ranges::sort()` in `Ch14_03_ex1()` performed practical sorts without having to define explicit comparison functions.

Listing 14-3-2 shows the next example function, which is named `Ch14_03_ex2()`. This function spotlights additional uses of projections using `std::ranges::sort()` and user-defined class `Mineral` (see Listing 11-5-1-1 for class `Mineral`). In the code block that follows the creation of `std::vector<Mineral> minerals`, `Ch14_03_ex2()` utilizes `std::ranges::sort(minerals)` to sort the elements of `minerals`. In this usage, the default comparison function object for `std::ranges::sort()` is `std::ranges::less()`, and function object `std::identity()` is the default projection. The relational operators for class `Mineral` compare attributes `Mineral::Hardness` first followed by `Mineral::Name`. This means that for the current example, `std::ranges::sort()`'s default comparison function is `Mineral::operator<`.²

Listing 14-3-2. Example `Ch14_03 - Ch14_03_ex2()`

```
void Ch14_03_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {3};

    // create test vector of minerals
    std::vector<Mineral> minerals = Mineral::get_vector_all_shuffle(100);

    // sort using Mineral::operator< (Hardness and Name)
    std::ranges::sort(minerals);
    MT::print_ctr("\nminerals (sorted using Mineral::operator<):\n",
        minerals, fmt, epl_max);

    // sort using std::ranges::greater and Hardness
    std::ranges::sort(minerals, std::ranges::greater(),
        &Mineral::Hardness);
}
```

²Class `Mineral` defines `operator<=>`, from which the compiler can generate `operator<` functionality.


```

MT::print_ctr("\nminerals (sorted using std::ranges::greater and
Hardness):\n",
    minerals, fmt, epl_max);

// sort using std::ranges::less and Name
std::ranges::sort(minerals, std::ranges::less(), &Mineral::Name);
MT::print_ctr("\nminerals (sorted using std::ranges::less and
Name):\n",
    minerals, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

The next two code blocks in `Ch14_03_ex2()` highlight additional exploitations of `std::ranges::sort()`. The first use sorts vector `minerals` using `std::ranges::greater()` and `Mineral::Hardness`; the second instance utilizes `std::ranges::less()` and `Mineral::Name`.

You may recall from earlier examples (e.g., `Ch04_01`) the use of function object `std::greater()`. The primary difference between this function object and `std::ranges::greater()` is that the use of the latter requires valid definition of all six relational operations for the type, while the former doesn't. The definition of all six relational operators is easily accomplished by defining `operator<=>` and `operator==` (see class `Mineral` for an example). The general rule for using predefined comparison function objects is to select `std::less()`, `std::greater()`, etc., for namespace `std` algorithms and `std::ranges::less()`, `std::ranges::greater()`, etc., for namespace `std::ranges` algorithms.

The final example function of `Ch14_03`, shown in Listing 14-3-3, illustrates how to define and apply custom projection functions. Near the top of `Ch14_03_ex3()` is the definition of `std::vector<Value> values`. Note that struct `Value` includes two members: `X` and `Y`. Next is the definition of two lambda expressions named `pf1` and `pf2`, which are used later as projection functions. These functions carry out arbitrary calculations using members `Value::X` and `Value::Y`. The next code block defines `print_values()`. The execution of this lambda prints the elements of `values`. Note that `print_values()` captures its entire enclosing scope since a lambda expression cannot use a previously defined expression without capturing it.

Listing 14-3-3. Example Ch14_03 – Ch14_03_ex3()

```

struct Value
{
    double X {};
    double Y {};
};

void Ch14_03_ex3()
{
    // test vector
    std::vector<Value> values
    {
        {3.0, 4.0}, {6.0, 3.0}, {12.0, 5.0}, {11.0, 10.0},
        {7.0, 8.0}, {2.0, 9.0}, {4.0, 14.0}, {6.0, 13.0}
    };

    // projection lambdas (arbitrary calculations)
    auto pf1 = [](const Value& v) { return v.X + std::log(std::fabs(v.Y)) ; };
    auto pf2 = [](const Value& v) { return v.Y +
    std::log10(std::fabs(v.X)); };

    // print lambda
    auto print_values = [&] (const char* msg)
    {
        std::println("{:s}", msg);
        std::print("      X      Y");
        std::print(" |      pf1      pf2");
        std::println("\n{:s}", std::string(48, '='));

        for (const Value& v : values)
        {
            auto t1 = pf1(v);
            auto t2 = pf2(v);
            std::println("[{:9.4f}, {:9.4f} | {:9.4f}, {:9.4f}]", v.X, v.Y,
            t1, t2);
        }
    };
};

```

```

// sort using std::ranges::greater() and pf1
std::ranges::sort(values, std::ranges::greater(), pf1);
print_values("\nvalues (sorted using std::ranges::greater and pf1:");

// sort using std::ranges::less() and pf2
std::ranges::sort(values, std::ranges::less(), pf2);
print_values("\nvalues (sorted using std::ranges::less and pf2:");
}

```

In the code block that follows the definition of `print_values()`, `Ch14_03_ex3()` exercises `std::ranges::sort(values, std::ranges::greater(), pf1)`. During the execution of this algorithm, `std::ranges::sort()` applies `pf1` to each element of vector `values` *before* invoking comparison function `std::ranges::greater()`. Thus, execution of `std::ranges::sort(values, std::ranges::greater(), pf1)` sorts the elements of `values` in descending order using the result that `pf1` calculates for each `Value` element in `values`.

The final code block of `Ch14_03_ex3()` utilizes `std::ranges::sort(values, std::ranges::less(), pf2)` to ascendingly sort the elements of `values` using projection function `pf2`. Here are the results for example `Ch14_03`:

```

----- Results for example Ch14_03 -----

----- Ch14_03_ex1() -----

vector fruits (descending order by Name)
Tomato (red)          kJ: 74  kcal: 18
Tangerine             kJ: 223 kcal: 53
Strawberry           kJ: 136 kcal: 33
Orange               kJ: 197 kcal: 47
Kiwi (green)         kJ: 255 kcal: 61
Cherry (sweet)       kJ: 263 kcal: 63
Cherry (sour)        kJ: 209 kcal: 50
Blueberry            kJ: 240 kcal: 57
Banana               kJ: 371 kcal: 89
Apple                kJ: 281 kcal: 67

```

CHAPTER 14 RANGES – PART 1

vector fruits (ascending order by Energy)

Tomato (red)	kJ: 74	kcal: 18
Strawberry	kJ: 136	kcal: 33
Orange	kJ: 197	kcal: 47
Cherry (sour)	kJ: 209	kcal: 50
Tangerine	kJ: 223	kcal: 53
Blueberry	kJ: 240	kcal: 57
Kiwi (green)	kJ: 255	kcal: 61
Cherry (sweet)	kJ: 263	kcal: 63
Apple	kJ: 281	kcal: 67
Banana	kJ: 371	kcal: 89

----- Ch14_03_ex2() -----

minerals (sorted using Mineral::operator<):

[Talc	1.000]	[Dimorphite	1.500]	[Todorokite	1.500]
[Gypsum	2.000]	[Kinoite	2.500]	[Galena	2.625]
[Chalcocite	2.750]	[Calcite	3.000]	[Hanksite	3.250]
[Roselite	3.500]	[Aragonite	3.750]	[Fluorite	4.000]
[Zincite	4.250]	[Conichalcite	4.500]	[Lindgrenite	4.500]
[Apatite	5.000]	[Perovskite	5.250]	[Agrellite	5.500]
[Anatase	5.750]	[Orthoclase	6.000]	[Chloritoid	6.500]
[Bowieite	7.000]	[Quartz	7.000]	[Zircon	7.500]
[Topaz	8.000]	[Chrysoberyl	8.500]	[Tongbaite	8.500]
[Corundum	9.000]	[Moissanite	9.250]	[Diamond	10.000]

minerals (sorted using std::ranges::greater and Hardness):

[Diamond	10.000]	[Moissanite	9.250]	[Corundum	9.000]
[Chrysoberyl	8.500]	[Tongbaite	8.500]	[Topaz	8.000]
[Zircon	7.500]	[Bowieite	7.000]	[Quartz	7.000]
[Chloritoid	6.500]	[Orthoclase	6.000]	[Anatase	5.750]
[Agrellite	5.500]	[Perovskite	5.250]	[Apatite	5.000]
[Conichalcite	4.500]	[Lindgrenite	4.500]	[Zincite	4.250]
[Fluorite	4.000]	[Aragonite	3.750]	[Roselite	3.500]
[Hanksite	3.250]	[Calcite	3.000]	[Chalcocite	2.750]
[Galena	2.625]	[Kinoite	2.500]	[Gypsum	2.000]
[Dimorphite	1.500]	[Todorokite	1.500]	[Talc	1.000]

minerals (sorted using `std::ranges::less` and `Name`):

[Agrellite	5.500]	[Anatase	5.750]	[Apatite	5.000]
[Aragonite	3.750]	[Bowieite	7.000]	[Calcite	3.000]
[Chalcocite	2.750]	[Chloritoid	6.500]	[Chrysoberyl	8.500]
[Conichalcite	4.500]	[Corundum	9.000]	[Diamond	10.000]
[Dimorphite	1.500]	[Fluorite	4.000]	[Galena	2.625]
[Gypsum	2.000]	[Hanksite	3.250]	[Kinoite	2.500]
[Lindgrenite	4.500]	[Moissanite	9.250]	[Orthoclase	6.000]
[Perovskite	5.250]	[Quartz	7.000]	[Roselite	3.500]
[Talc	1.000]	[Todorokite	1.500]	[Tongbaite	8.500]
[Topaz	8.000]	[Zincite	4.250]	[Zircon	7.500]

----- Ch14_03_ex3() -----

values (sorted using `std::ranges::greater` and `pf1`):

X	Y	|	pf1	pf2
[12.0000,	5.0000	|	13.6094,	6.0792]
[11.0000,	10.0000	|	13.3026,	11.0414]
[7.0000,	8.0000	|	9.0794,	8.8451]
[6.0000,	13.0000	|	8.5649,	13.7782]
[6.0000,	3.0000	|	7.0986,	3.7782]
[4.0000,	14.0000	|	6.6391,	14.6021]
[3.0000,	4.0000	|	4.3863,	4.4771]
[2.0000,	9.0000	|	4.1972,	9.3010]

values (sorted using `std::ranges::less` and `pf2`):

X	Y	|	pf1	pf2
[6.0000,	3.0000	|	7.0986,	3.7782]
[3.0000,	4.0000	|	4.3863,	4.4771]
[12.0000,	5.0000	|	13.6094,	6.0792]
[7.0000,	8.0000	|	9.0794,	8.8451]
[2.0000,	9.0000	|	4.1972,	9.3010]
[11.0000,	10.0000	|	13.3026,	11.0414]
[6.0000,	13.0000	|	8.5649,	13.7782]
[4.0000,	14.0000	|	6.6391,	14.6021]

More Range Adaptors

The next example of this chapter spotlights a few more range adaptor usages.

Listing 14-4-1 shows the source code for example `Ch14_04_ex1()`. This function illustrates the use of range adaptor `std::views::drop_while()`.

Listing 14-4-1. Example `Ch14_04 - Ch14_04_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch14_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <functional>
#include <numeric>
#include <ranges>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch14_04.h"
#include "HtmlColor.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "MTH.h"

void Ch14_04_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:7d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // create test vector
    std::vector<int> vec1(50);

#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_iota    // C++23
    std::ranges::iota(vec1, 1);
#else
    std::iota(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 1);
#endif
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (initial values):\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
}
```

```

// drop_while predicate
auto dw_pred = [](int x) { return x <= 25; };

// using std::views::filter and std::views::drop_while
auto view1 = vec1
    | std::views::filter(MTH::is_prime<int>)
    | std::views::drop_while(dw_pred);

MT::print_ctr("\nview1 (after filter and drop_while):\n", view1, fmt,
    epl_max);
}

```

The opening code block in `Ch14_04_ex1()` employs `std::ranges::iota(vec1, 1)` to initialize `std::vector<int> vec1(50)`. Next is the definition of predicate `dw_pred = [](int x) { return x <= 25; }`. In the subsequent code block, `Ch14_04_ex1()` instantiates `view1 = vec1 | std::views::filter(MTH::is_prime<int>) | std::views::drop_while(dw_pred)`. This creates a view of all prime numbers less than or equal to 25.

Example function `Ch14_04_ex2()`, shown in Listing 14-4-2, also generates a similar view of prime numbers but uses range factory `std::views::iota()` to generate the initial values.

Listing 14-4-2. Example `Ch14_04 - Ch14_04_ex2()`

```

void Ch14_04_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:7d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // create view of integers [1, 51) (range factory)
    auto view0 = std::views::iota(1, 51);
    MT::print_ctr("\nview0 (result of std::views::iota):\n", view0, fmt,
        epl_max);

    // drop_while predicate
    auto dw_pred = [](int x) { return x <= 25; };

    // using std::views::filter and std::drop_while
    auto view1 = view0

```

```

        | std::views::filter(MTH::is_prime<int>)
        | std::views::drop_while(dw_pred);

    MT::print_ctr("\nview1 (after filter and drop_while):\n", view1, fmt,
    epl_max);
}

```

In Listing 14-4-2, execution of `auto view0 = std::views::iota(1, 51)` generates a view that contains values [1, 51]. It is important to recognize that the view generated by range factory `std::view::iota()` *doesn't* require an underlying container. Chapter 16 discusses range factories in greater detail. Like the previous example, `Ch14_04_ex2()` utilizes `std::views::filter(MTH::is_prime<int>)` and `std::views::drop_while(dw_pred)` to generate a view of all prime numbers less than or equal to 25.

The next example in Listing 14-4-3 opens with the definition of a template function named `print_colors()`, which prints the elements of `colors`. The opening statement of the first code block in `Ch14_04_ex3()`, `std::vector<HtmlColor> colors = HtmlColor::get_vector()`, creates a test vector of `HtmlColor` objects (see Listing 8-1-4-1 for class `HtmlColor`). In the ensuing code block, execution of `std::ranges::sort(colors, std::ranges::less(), &HtmlColor::H)` sorts the elements of `colors` using accessor function `HtmlColor::H()`, which calculates hue. If you're interested in learning more about RGB to HSI color space conversion algorithms, Appendix B lists a reference that you can consult.

Listing 14-4-3. Example `Ch14_04 - Ch14_04_ex3()`

```

template <typename T>
void print_colors(const char* msg, T& colors)
{
    std::print("{:s}", msg);

    for (const HtmlColor& color : colors)
    {
        std::print("[{:4d} {:4d} {:4d}] ", color.R(), color.G(), color.B());
        std::println("[{:9.4f} {:9.4f} {:9.4f}] {:s}", color.H(), color.S(),
            color.I(), color.Name());
    }
}

```



```

// #define PRINT_ALL

void Ch14_04_ex3()
{
    // create test vector of HtmlColors
    std::vector<HtmlColor> colors = HtmlColor::get_vector();
#ifdef PRINT_ALL
    print_colors("\ncolors (initial values):\n", colors);
#endif

    // sort colors using hue
    std::ranges::sort(colors, std::ranges::less(), &HtmlColor::H);
#ifdef PRINT_ALL
    print_colors("\ncolors (after sort by hue):\n", colors);
#endif

    // using std::views::filter to select green colors
    auto is_green = [](const HtmlColor& c)
        { return 110.0 <= c.H() && c.H() <= 160.0; };

    auto colors_g1 = colors | std::views::filter(is_green);
    print_colors("\ncolors_g1:\n", colors_g1);

    // using std::views::reverse and std::views::take (largest green hues)
    auto colors_g2 = colors_g1 | std::views::reverse | std::views::take(4);
    print_colors("\ncolors_g2 (largest green hues):\n", colors_g2);

    // using std::views::take_while
    constexpr float hue_thresh {140.0};
    auto tw_pred = [](const HtmlColor& c) { return c.H() <= hue_thresh; };
    auto colors_g3 = colors_g1 | std::views::take_while(tw_pred);

    std::string msg {};
    std::format_to(std::back_inserter(msg), "\ncolors_g3 (hue <
{:.2f}):\n",
        hue_thresh);
    print_colors(msg.c_str(), colors_g3);
}

```

Following the sort of vector `colors`, `Ch14_04_ex3()` uses `colors_g1 = colors | std::views::filter(is_green)` to create a view of “green” colors. In the ensuing code block, execution of `colors_g2 = colors_g1 | std::views::reverse | std::views::take(4)` yields a view that contains the four largest green colors of `colors_g1`. Range adaptor `std::views::take()` produces a view of the underlying range’s first N elements. In other words, it’s the opposite `std::views::drop()`.

The final code block of `Ch14_04_ex3()` demonstrates the use of `std::views::take_while()`. The execution of `colors_g3 = colors_g1 | std::views::take_while(tw_pred)` creates a view of the first N elements of `colors_g1` for which `tw_pred` is true. Note that following execution of `std::views::take_while()`, the resultant view might be empty; it also could contain all of the underlying range’s elements. Range adaptor `std::views::take_while()` is the opposite of `std::views::drop_while()`. Here are the results for example `Ch14_04`:

```

----- Results for example Ch14_04 -----
----- Ch14_04_ex1() -----
vec1 (initial values):
  1    2    3    4    5    6    7    8    9   10
11   12   13   14   15   16   17   18   19   20
21   22   23   24   25   26   27   28   29   30
31   32   33   34   35   36   37   38   39   40
41   42   43   44   45   46   47   48   49   50

view1 (after filter and drop_while):
 29   31   37   41   43   47

----- Ch14_04_ex2() -----
view0 (result of std::views::iota):
  1    2    3    4    5    6    7    8    9   10
11   12   13   14   15   16   17   18   19   20
21   22   23   24   25   26   27   28   29   30
31   32   33   34   35   36   37   38   39   40
41   42   43   44   45   46   47   48   49   50

view1 (after filter and drop_while):
 29   31   37   41   43   47

```

```
----- Ch14_04_ex3() -----
```

```
colors_g1:
```

```
[ 240 255 240] [ 119.9944 0.0204 0.9608] Honeydew
[ 143 188 143] [ 119.9981 0.0949 0.6196] DarkSeaGreen
[ 144 238 144] [ 119.9991 0.1787 0.6876] LightGreen
[ 152 251 152] [ 119.9991 0.1784 0.7255] PaleGreen
[  0 100  0] [ 119.9992 1.0000 0.1307] DarkGreen
[  34 139  34] [ 119.9992 0.5073 0.2706] ForestGreen
[  0 128  0] [ 119.9993 1.0000 0.1673] Green
[  50 205  50] [ 119.9995 0.5082 0.3987] LimeGreen
[  0 255  0] [ 119.9997 1.0000 0.3333] Lime
[  46 139  87] [ 146.0907 0.4927 0.3556] SeaGreen
[  60 179 113] [ 146.3889 0.4886 0.4601] MediumSeaGreen
[  0 255 127] [ 149.8691 1.0000 0.4993] SpringGreen
[ 245 255 250] [ 149.9708 0.0200 0.9804] MintCream
[  0 250 154] [ 157.6275 1.0000 0.5281] MediumSpringGreen
```

```
colors_g2 (largest green hues):
```

```
[  0 250 154] [ 157.6275 1.0000 0.5281] MediumSpringGreen
[ 245 255 250] [ 149.9708 0.0200 0.9804] MintCream
[  0 255 127] [ 149.8691 1.0000 0.4993] SpringGreen
[  60 179 113] [ 146.3889 0.4886 0.4601] MediumSeaGreen
```

```
colors_g3 (hue < 140.00):
```

```
[ 240 255 240] [ 119.9944 0.0204 0.9608] Honeydew
[ 143 188 143] [ 119.9981 0.0949 0.6196] DarkSeaGreen
[ 144 238 144] [ 119.9991 0.1787 0.6876] LightGreen
[ 152 251 152] [ 119.9991 0.1784 0.7255] PaleGreen
[  0 100  0] [ 119.9992 1.0000 0.1307] DarkGreen
[  34 139  34] [ 119.9992 0.5073 0.2706] ForestGreen
[  0 128  0] [ 119.9993 1.0000 0.1673] Green
[  50 205  50] [ 119.9995 0.5082 0.3987] LimeGreen
[  0 255  0] [ 119.9997 1.0000 0.3333] Lime
```

Range Views and Adaptors Minutiae

The final source code example of this chapter covers some of the minutiae that you need to be aware of when working with views and range adaptors. Listing 14-5-1 shows the source code for example `Ch14_05_ex1()`. This example spotlights a few syntactical alternatives for views.

Listing 14-5-1. Example `Ch14_05 - Ch14_05_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch14_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <ranges>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch14_05.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RN.h"

auto get_test_vector(unsigned int seed)
{
    return RN::get_vector<int>(30, -200, 200, seed);
}

void Ch14_05_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:8d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // create view that squares positive numbers
    auto view_ft = std::views::filter([](int x) { return x >= 0; })
        | std::views::transform([](int x) { return x * x; });

    // create test vectors of random numbers
    std::vector<int> vec1 = get_test_vector(71);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
}
```

```

std::vector<int> vec2 = get_test_vector(73);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec2:\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);

// using view_ft - operator |
auto view1a = vec1 | view_ft;
MT::print_ctr("\nview1a:\n", view1a, fmt, epl_max);

// using view_ft - function call syntax
auto view2a = view_ft(vec2);
MT::print_ctr("\nview2a:\n", view2a, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

Listing 14-5-1 begins with the definition of function `get_test_vector()`, which returns a `std::vector<int>` of random ints. Also shown in Listing 14-5-1 is example function `Ch14_05_ex1()`. The opening code block of this function creates a view named `view_ft` that exploits `std::views::filter()` and `std::views::transform()` to create a view that squares positive integers. Note that the definition of `view_ft` includes only range adaptors. This facilitates the use of `view_ft` with multiple underlying ranges. The next code block utilizes the previously defined `get_test_vector()` to initialize `vec1` and `vec2`.

The final two code blocks demonstrate distinct syntaxes that you can use to apply `view_ft`. The first syntactical example uses `view1a = vec1 | view_ft` to create a view of positive integer squares. The second example employs the traditional function call syntax `view2a = view_ft(vec2)`. Either form works, but the operator `|` form is usually easier to read, especially when multiple views are applied.

In Listing 14-5-2, example function `Ch14_05_ex2()` spotlights the use of a view that modifies elements of its underlying container. In this listing, note that the range for loop utilizes references to access each element of `view1`. These references ultimately correspond to elements in `vec1` that were filtered by `view1`. Note in the results section that the positive integer elements of `vec1` are squared following execution of the range for loop.

Listing 14-5-2. Example Ch14_05 - Ch14_05_ex2()

```

void Ch14_05_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:8d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

```

```

// create test vectors of random numbers
std::vector<int> vec1 = get_test_vector(71);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (before calculation of squares):\n", vec1, fmt,
ep1_max);

// create view of positive numbers
auto view1 = vec1 | std::views::filter([](int x) { return x >= 0; });

// square positive numbers
for (auto& val : view1)
    val *= val;

MT::print_ctr("\nvec1 (after calculation of squares):\n", vec1, fmt,
ep1_max);
}

```

The final example of Ch14_05, shown in Listing 14-5-3, opens with the definition of function `get_test_view()`. Note that this function returns a view to its caller. When returning a view object, you need to ensure that any underlying containers aren't inadvertently destroyed. Note the use of preprocessor symbol `STATIC_VECTOR` in function `get_test_view()`. If this symbol is defined, `vec1` is declared as `static`; otherwise, it's a local variable. Returning a view whose underlying container is a local variable will cause problems if the returned view object is referenced.

Listing 14-5-3. Example Ch14_05 - Ch14_05_ex3()

```

#define STATIC_VECTOR

auto get_test_view(unsigned int seed, const char* fmt, size_t ep1_max)
{
    // create test vector
#ifdef STATIC_VECTOR
    static std::vector<int> vec1 {};           // ok
#else
    std::vector<int> vec1 {};                 // trouble
#endif

    // create view of positive numbers
    vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(30, -200, 200, seed);
}

```

```

auto view1 = vec1 | std::views::filter([](int x) { return x >= 0; });
MT::print_ctr("view1:\n", view1, fmt, epl_max);

// return view to caller (trouble if vec1 not static)
return view1;
}

void Ch14_05_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:8d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    auto test_view = get_test_view(77, fmt, epl_max);

    std::print("\ntest_view: ");

#ifdef STATIC_VECTOR
    MT::print_ctr("\n", test_view, fmt, epl_max);
#else
    std::println("invalid view - preprocessor symbol STATIC_VECTOR not
defined");
#endif
}

```

The purpose of the example code in `get_test_view()` and `Ch14_05_ex3()` is to make sure you're aware of potential complications that can occur when passing view objects across function boundaries. Always verify that a view object doesn't reference an underlying container that might get destroyed prematurely or unexpectedly. Here are the results for example `Ch14_05`:

```

----- Results for example Ch14_05 -----

```

```

----- Ch14_05_ex1() -----

```

```

vec1:

```

-126	104	-45	-160	133	85	-121	-133	167	106
116	-121	89	-83	199	-51	138	-83	-107	166
-71	6	87	-180	-159	-145	40	176	-146	116

CHAPTER 14 RANGES – PART 1

vec2:

57	-78	15	43	5	-131	44	7	-3	-76
-115	-166	-103	147	29	-9	109	133	-76	183
-38	36	39	-3	-104	149	163	-71	-137	107

view1a:

10816	17689	7225	27889	11236	13456	7921	39601	19044	27556
36	7569	1600	30976	13456					

view2a:

3249	225	1849	25	1936	49	21609	841	11881	17689
33489	1296	1521	22201	26569	11449				

----- Ch14_05_ex2() -----

vec1 (before calculation of squares):

-126	104	-45	-160	133	85	-121	-133	167	106
116	-121	89	-83	199	-51	138	-83	-107	166
-71	6	87	-180	-159	-145	40	176	-146	116

vec1 (after calculation of squares):

-126	10816	-45	-160	17689	7225	-121	-133	27889	11236
13456	-121	7921	-83	39601	-51	19044	-83	-107	27556
-71	36	7569	-180	-159	-145	1600	30976	-146	13456

----- Ch14_05_ex3() -----

view1:

168	57	102	124	115	156	102	16	77	18
148	86	135	102	35	170	89			

test_view:

168	57	102	124	115	156	102	16	77	18
148	86	135	102	35	170	89			

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- A view is a window into a range of elements. The view's elements are generally owned by an underlying container. The elements of a view can be accessed using iterators.
- All views are lazily evaluated. They are also composable using operator `|`.
- A range adaptor is typically used to create a view object. View object instantiation is completed in constant time independent of the underlying range's size.
- You can use range adaptors `std::views::filter()` or `std::views::transform()` to create views that carry out filter or transformation actions.
- Range adaptors `std::views::drop()` and `std::views::drop_while()` drop elements from a view starting at the front end. The opposite range adaptors, `std::views::take()` and `std::views::take_while()`, retain elements starting from the front end.
- Range factory `std::views::iota()` is often used to create a sequence of consecutive values sans an underlying container.
- A projection is a transformation function that gets applied prior to consuming an element's value. Most algorithms in namespace `std::ranges` support projections.

CHAPTER 15

Ranges – Part 2

This chapter surveys additional range adaptors provided by C++20/23. As you saw in the previous chapter, range adaptors extend the functional capabilities of ranges far beyond the predefined algorithms of namespace `std::ranges`. Topics examined in this chapter include

- Tuple views
- Join, split, and Cartesian product views
- Slide, stride, and chunk views
- Range factories

Tuple Views

STL namespace `std::ranges` defines multiple range adaptors that build tuple-like views. This namespace also includes range adaptors that create views of elements held in multiple `std::tuples` (see Chapter 5 for a description of this class).

Source code example Ch15_01 details how to use range adaptors `std::views::keys()`, `std::views::values()`, and `std::views::elements()`. All three of these range adaptors create views of tuple elements encompassed within a container or range.

Listing 15-1-1 shows the source code for example function `Ch15_01_ex1()`. This example demonstrates the use of `std::views::keys()`. The opening code block of this function utilizes `AminoAcid::get_vector_tuple()` to initialize `std::vector<AaTuple>` `aa_vec`. Type `AaTuple` is an alias for `std::tuple<std::string, std::string, char, double>`, which holds the following `AminoAcid` attributes: `Code3`, `Name`, `Code1`, and `MolMass` (see Listings 10-1-3-1 and 10-1-3-2 for class `AminoAcid`).

Listing 15-1-1. Example Ch15_01 – Ch15_01_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch15_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <format>
#include <ranges>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch15_01.h"
#include "AminoAcid.h"

void Ch15_01_ex1()
{
    size_t add_nl {};
    constexpr size_t add_nl_max {5};

    // create vector of AminoAcid tuples
    // AaTuple = using std::tuple<std::string, std::string, char, double>;
    //           Code3,           Name           Code1 MolMass
    std::vector<AaTuple> aa_vec = AminoAcid::get_vector_tuple();

    // using std::views::keys (first tuple element)
    auto view_keys = std::views::keys(aa_vec);

    for (const std::string& aa_code3 : view_keys)
    {
        char c = (++add_nl % add_nl_max == 0) ? '\n' : ' ';
        std::print("{:3s}{:c}", aa_code3, c);
    }
    std::println("");

    // using std::views::values (second tuple element)
    add_nl = 0;
    auto view_values = std::views::values(aa_vec);

    for (const std::string& aa_name : view_values)
    {

```

```

        char c = (++add_nl % add_nl_max == 0) ? '\n' : ' ';
        std::print("{:15s}{:c}", aa_name, c);
    }
    std::println("");
}

```

The first statement following the initialization of `aa_vec`, `view_keys = std::views::keys(aa_vec)`, creates a “keys” view using the elements of `aa_vec`. More specifically, execution of range adaptor `std::views::keys()` builds a view that contains the first element (Code3) of each `AaTuple` in `aa_vec`. The range for loop in the subsequent code blocks prints the Code3 elements of `view_keys`. You can also use range adaptor `std::views::keys()` to create a view of all keys in a `std::map` or `std::multimap`.

In `Ch15_01_ex1()`'s next code block, execution of `view_values = std::views::values(aa_vec)` builds a view that contains the second element (Name) of each `AaTuple` in `aa_vec`. The ensuing range for loop prints the amino acid names specified by `view_values`. Range adaptor `std::views::values()` is also commonly employed to create a view of all values in a `std::map` or `std::multimap`.

Listing 15-1-2 shows the source code for example `Ch15_01_ex2()`. This example spotlights the use of `std::views::elements()`.

Listing 15-1-2. Example `Ch15_01 - Ch15_01_ex2()`

```

template <typename T, size_t I>
void print_elements(const char* msg, std::vector<AaTuple>& aa_vec, const
char* fmt)
{
    size_t add_nl {};
    constexpr size_t add_nl_max {5};

    std::println("{:s}", msg);

    for (const T& elem : std::views::elements<I>(aa_vec))
    {
        // format tuple element I of elem
        std::string s {};
        std::vformat_to(std::back_inserter(s), fmt, std::make_format_
args(elem));
    }
}

```

```

        // add nl if needed, then print
        char c = (++add_nl % add_nl_max == 0) ? '\n' : ' ';
        s.push_back(c);
        std::print("{} ", s);
    }
    std::println("");
}

void Ch15_01_ex2()
{
    // create vector of AminoAcid tuples
    std::vector<AaTuple> aa_vec = AminoAcid::get_vector_tuple();

    // print tuple elements in aa_vec
    print_elements<std::string, 0>("element 0 (amino acid code3)", aa_vec,
    "{:3s}");

    print_elements<std::string, 1>("element 1 (amino acid name)", aa_vec,
    "{:15s}");

    print_elements<char, 2>("element 2 (amino acid code1)", aa_vec,
    "{:3c}");

    print_elements<double, 3>("element 3 (amino acid mol mass)", aa_vec,
    "{:8.3f}");
}

```

Listing 15-1-2 commences with the definition of `print_elements()`. Note that this template function specifies two template parameters. Parameter `T` is the data type, while parameter `I` is the tuple element index. Recall from the discussions in Chapter 5 that the elements of a `std::tuple` must be accessed using compile-time constant indices.

The range for loop in `print_elements()` exploits range adaptor `std::views::elements<I>(aa_vec)` to create a view that contains the *i*-th element of each `AaTuple` in `aa_vec`. The remaining code inside the for loop formats the extracted element using `std::vformat_to()`. More specifically, function `std::vformat_to()` is used here instead of `std::format_to()` since `fmt`, which is passed as an argument to `print_elements()`, is not a compile-time constant. Execution of `std::make_format_args(elem)` returns an object that holds the arguments (i.e., `elem`) that `std::vformat_to()` formats. The call to `std::back_inserter(s)` saves the formatted result in `std::string s`.

Like the previous example function, `Ch15_01_ex2()` utilizes `std::vector<AaTuple>` `aa_vec = AminoAcid::get_vector_tuple()` to initialize a vector of `AaTuples`. Next is a series of calls to `print_elements()`. Note that each call explicitly specifies an `AaTuple` data type and index. Here are the results for example `Ch15_01`:

----- Results for example Ch15_01 -----

----- Ch15_01_ex1() -----

Ala Arg Asn Asp Cys
Gln Glu Gly His Ile
Leu Lys Met Phe Pro
Ser Thr Trp Tyr Val

Alanine	Arginine	Asparagine	AsparticAcid	Cysteine
Glutamine	GlutamicAcid	Glycine	Histidine	IsoLeucine
Leucine	Lysine	Methionine	Phenylalanine	Proline
Serine	Threonine	Tryptophan	Tyrosine	Valine

----- Ch15_01_ex2() -----

element 0 (amino acid code3)

Ala Arg Asn Asp Cys
Gln Glu Gly His Ile
Leu Lys Met Phe Pro
Ser Thr Trp Tyr Val

element 1 (amino acid name)

Alanine	Arginine	Asparagine	AsparticAcid	Cysteine
Glutamine	GlutamicAcid	Glycine	Histidine	IsoLeucine
Leucine	Lysine	Methionine	Phenylalanine	Proline
Serine	Threonine	Tryptophan	Tyrosine	Valine

element 2 (amino acid code1)

A	R	N	D	C
Q	E	G	H	I
L	K	M	F	P
S	T	W	Y	V

```

element 3 (amino acid mol mass)
  89.094  174.203  132.119  133.104  121.154
146.146  147.131   75.067  155.156  131.175
131.175  146.189  149.208  165.192  115.132
105.093  119.119  204.228  181.191  117.148

```

More Tuple Views

The next source example covers additional range adaptors that create or manipulate tuple-like views. Most of these adaptors are new to C++23. Listing 15-2-1 shows the source code for example `Ch15_02_ex1()`. This example details how to use range adaptor `std::views::enumerate()`.

Listing 15-2-1. Example `Ch15_02 - Ch15_02_ex1()`

```

//-----
// Ch15_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <format>
#include <map>
#include <numbers>
#include <ranges>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch15_02.h"
#include "AminoAcid.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "MF.h"
#include "RN.h"

void Ch15_02_ex1()
{
    #if defined(__cpp_lib_ranges_enumerate) && defined(__cpp_lib_ranges_to_
    container)
        const char* fmt = "{}";
        constexpr size_t epl_max {2};

```

```

// initialize vector of amino acids
std::vector<AminoAcid> aa_vec = AminoAcid::get_vector_all();
MT::print_ctr("\naa_vec:\n", aa_vec, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::views::enumerate
auto aa_enum = aa_vec | std::views::enumerate;
std::println("\naa_enum (size = {:d}):", aa_enum.size());

if (!aa_enum.empty())
{
    for (const auto& [key, value] : aa_enum)
        std::println("key: {:2d}: value: {}", key, value);
}

// using std::ranges::to<std::map>
auto aa_map = aa_enum | std::ranges::to<std::map>();
std::println("\naa_map (size = {:d}):", aa_map.size());

if (!aa_map.empty())
{
    for (const auto& [key, value] : aa_map)
        std::println("key: {:2d}: value: {}", key, value);
}
#else
    std::println("Ch15_02_ex1() requires C++23");
#endif
}

```

The C++ code in example function `Ch15_02_ex1()` begins with the initialization of `std::vector<AminoAcid> aa_vec = AminoAcid::get_vector_all()`. In the subsequent code block, execution of `aa_enum = aa_vec | std::views::enumerate()` creates a map-like view of the elements in `aa_vec`. The key for each `aa_enum` element is an integer that corresponds to the element's position in `aa_vec`, while the value component is a reference to the actual data. For example, the key in view `aa_enum` for element `aa_vec[3]` is three, and the value is a reference to `aa_vec[3]`.

In the final code block of `Ch15_02_ex1()`, execution of `aa_map = aa_enum | std::ranges::to<std::map>()` converts the view defined by `aa_enum` to a `std::map`. Note that both range for loops in `Ch15_02_ex1()` utilize structured binding to extract the key and value components for use with `std::println()`.

Example function `Ch15_02_ex2()`, shown in Listing 15-2-2, highlights the use of `std::views::adjacent()` and `std::views::adjacent_transform()`. Both of these range adaptors create views of adjacent elements in an underlying range; the latter also applies a transformation function.

Listing 15-2-2. Example `Ch15_02` – `Ch15_02_ex2()`

```
void Ch15_02_ex2()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_zip
    const char* fmt = "{:3s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // initialize vector of amino acids
    std::vector<std::string> aa_vec = AminoAcid::get_vector_all_code3();
    MT::print_ctr("\naa_vec:\n", aa_vec, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::views::adjacent
    auto adj_view1 = aa_vec | std::views::adjacent<3>;
    std::println("\nadj_view1 (size = {:d}):", adj_view1.size());

    if (adj_view1)
    {
        for (const auto [aa0, aa1, aa2] : adj_view1)
            std::println("[{:3s} {:3s} {:3s}]", aa0, aa1, aa2);
    }

    // using std::views::adjacent_transform
    auto adj_xform = [](const std::string& s1, const std::string& s2,
                       const std::string& s3, const std::string& s4)
        { return s1 + "|" + s2 + "|" + s3 + "|" + s4; };

    auto adj_view2 = aa_vec | std::views::adjacent_transform<4>(adj_xform);
    std::println("\nadj_view2 (size = {:d}):", adj_view2.size());

    if (adj_view2)
    {
        for (auto a : adj_view2)
            std::println("[{:s}]", a);
    }
}
```

```

#else
    std::println("Ch15_02_ex2() - std::views::adjacent_transform() requires
    C++23");
#endif
}

```

Following instantiation of `aa_vec`, `Ch15_02_ex2()` employs `adj_view1 = aa_vec | std::views::adjacent<3>`. The execution of this statement creates a view named `aa_vec`, and each element of this view incorporates three adjacent elements from `aa_vec`. If you scan ahead to the results section, note that the first element of `adj_view1` references `aa_vec[0]`, `aa_vec[1]`, and `aa_vec[2]`; the second element of `adj_view1` references `aa_vec[1]`, `aa_vec[2]`, and `aa_vec[3]`; and so on.

The ensuing code block in `Ch15_02_ex2()` commences with the definition of lambda expression `adj_xform()`, which concatenates its four `std::string` arguments into a single `std::string`. Execution of `adj_view2 = aa_vec | std::views::adjacent_transform<4>(adj_xform)` creates a view that applies `adj_xform()` to a group of four adjacent elements from `aa_vec`.

Listing 15-2-3 shows the source code for example function `Ch15_02_ex3()`. This function demonstrates the use of range adaptor `std::views::zip()`, which builds tuple-like views of elements using multiple ranges. Execution of `Ch15_02_ex3()` begins with the initialization of three vectors: `std::vector<char> aa_vec_code1`, `std::vector<std::string> aa_vec_code3`, and `std::vector<double> aa_vec_mm`. These vectors contain the one-letter, three-letter, and molecular mass attributes for each standard amino acid.

Listing 15-2-3. Example Ch15_02 - Ch15_02_ex3()

```

void Ch15_02_ex3()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_zip
    const char* fmt_code1 = "{:5c}";
    const char* fmt_code3 = "{:5s}";
    const char* fmt_mm = "{:9.3f}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {7};

    // create text vectors of amino acid attributes
    std::vector<char> aa_vec_code1 {AminoAcid::get_vector_all_code1()};
    MT::print_ctr("\naa_vec_code1:\n", aa_vec_code1, fmt_code1, epl_max);

```

```

std::vector<std::string> aa_vec_code3 {AminoAcid::get_vector_all_
code3()};
MT::print_ctr("\naa_vec_code3:\n", aa_vec_code3, fmt_code3, epl_max);

std::vector<double> aa_vec_mm {AminoAcid::get_vector_all_mol_mass()};
MT::print_ctr("\naa_vec_mm:\n", aa_vec_mm, fmt_mm, epl_max);

// create zip view of amino acid attributes
auto aa_zip_view = std::views::zip(aa_vec_code1, aa_vec_code3, aa_
vec_mm);
std::println("\naa_zip_view:");

// print tuples of aa_zip_view
for (auto aa : aa_zip_view)
{
    std::string s {};
    static const char* sep = " ";

    std::vformat_to(std::back_inserter(s), fmt_code1,
        std::make_format_args(std::get<0>(aa)));
    s += sep;

    std::vformat_to(std::back_inserter(s), fmt_code3,
        std::make_format_args(std::get<1>(aa)));
    s += sep;

    std::vformat_to(std::back_inserter(s), fmt_mm,
        std::make_format_args(std::get<2>(aa)));

    std::println("{:s}", s);
}
#else
    std::println("Ch15_02_ex3() - std::views::zip() requires C++23");
#endif
}

```

Execution of `aa_zip_view = std::views::zip(aa_vec_code1, aa_vec_code3, aa_vec_mm)` creates a view of three-element tuples. The i -th tuple of view `aa_zip_view` contains references to `aa_vec_code1[i]`, `aa_vec_code3[i]`, and `aa_vec_mm[i]`, respectively. The ensuing range for loop in `Ch15_02_ex3()` exploits `std::vformat_to()` to format and print each tuple of view `aa_zip_view`.

The final example function of `Ch15_03` illustrates how to use `std::zip_transform()`. Execution of this range adaptor creates tuple-like views just like `std::views::zip()`; it also applies a transformation function.

Listing 15-2-4. Example `Ch15_02 - Ch15_02_ex4()`

```
void Ch15_02_ex4()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_zip
    const char* fmt = "{:10.2f} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {6};

    constexpr size_t n {12};
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {20};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {511};

    // create vector of cylinder radii and heights
    std::vector radii = RN::get_vector<double>(n, rng_min, rng_max,
    rng_seed);
    MT::print_ctr("\nradii:\n", radii, fmt, epl_max);

    std::vector heights = RN::get_vector<double>(n, rng_min, rng_max, rng_
    seed / 3);
    MT::print_ctr("\nheights:\n", heights, fmt, epl_max);

    // lambda to calculate cylinder volume
    auto cyl_vol = [](double r, double h) { return std::numbers::pi * r *
    r * h; };

    // calculate volumes - vector sizes equal
    auto volumes1 = std::views::zip_transform(cyl_vol, radii, heights);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvolumes1:\n", volumes1, fmt, epl_max);
#endif
}
```

```

// modify test vector heights
heights.pop_back();
MT::print_ctr("\nheights (after pop_back):\n", heights, fmt, epl_max);

// calculate volumes - vector sizes not equal
auto volumes2 = std::views::zip_transform(cyl_vol, radii, heights);
MT::print_ctr("\nvolumes2:\n", volumes2, fmt, epl_max);
#else
std::println("Ch15_02_ex4() - std::views::zip_transform() requires
C++23");
#endif
}

```

In Listing 15-2-4, execution of `Ch15_02_ex4()` opens with the instantiation of two `std::vectors`: `radii` and `heights`. Note that both vectors are initialized using `RN::get_vector<double>()`. Next is the definition of lambda expression `cyl_vol`, which calculates the volume of a cylinder. In the ensuing code block, execution of `volumes1 = std::views::zip_transform(cyl_vol, radii, heights)` creates a view of cylinder volumes using corresponding elements from vectors `radii` and `heights`.

The underlying ranges supplied to range adaptor `std::views::zip_transform()` need not be the same size. To demonstrate this, the next code block in `Ch15_02_ex4()` utilizes `heights.pop_back()` to modify the number of elements in `heights`. Execution of `volumes2 = std::views::zip_transform(cyl_vol, radii, heights)` creates a view that contains `std::min(radii.size(), heights.size())` tuples. The results for example `Ch15_02` follow this paragraph. This output has been edited to reduce its length.

```
----- Results for example Ch15_02 -----
```

```
----- Ch15_02_ex1() -----
```

```
aa_vec:
```

```

[Alanine      A|Ala| 89.094|NP][Arginine    R|Arg|174.203|B ]
[Asparagine   N|Asn|132.119|UP][AsparticAcid  D|Asp|133.104|A ]
[Cysteine     C|Cys|121.154|NP][Glutamine     Q|Gln|146.146|UP]
[GlutamicAcid E|Glu|147.131|A ][Glycine       G|Gly| 75.067|NP]
[Histidine    H|His|155.156|B ][IsoLeucine    I|Ile|131.175|NP]
[Leucine      L|Leu|131.175|NP][Lysine        K|Lys|146.189|B ]

```

```
[Methionine      M|Met|149.208|NP][Phenylalanine  F|Phe|165.192|NP]
[Proline         P|Pro|115.132|NP][Serine           S|Ser|105.093|UP]
[Threonine       T|Thr|119.119|UP][Tryptophan       W|Trp|204.228|NP]
[Tyrosine        Y|Tyr|181.191|UP][Valine          V|Val|117.148|NP]
```

```
aa_enum (size = 20):
```

```
key: 0: value: [Alanine      A|Ala| 89.094|NP]
key: 1: value: [Arginine     R|Arg|174.203|B ]
key: 2: value: [Asparagine   N|Asn|132.119|UP]
...
key: 17: value: [Tryptophan  W|Trp|204.228|NP]
key: 18: value: [Tyrosine     Y|Tyr|181.191|UP]
key: 19: value: [Valine        V|Val|117.148|NP]
```

```
aa_map (size = 20):
```

```
key: 0: value: [Alanine      A|Ala| 89.094|NP]
key: 1: value: [Arginine     R|Arg|174.203|B ]
key: 2: value: [Asparagine   N|Asn|132.119|UP]
...
key: 17: value: [Tryptophan  W|Trp|204.228|NP]
key: 18: value: [Tyrosine     Y|Tyr|181.191|UP]
key: 19: value: [Valine        V|Val|117.148|NP]
```

```
----- Ch15_02_ex2() -----
```

```
aa_vec:
```

```
Ala Arg Asn Asp Cys Gln Glu Gly His Ile
Leu Lys Met Phe Pro Ser Thr Trp Tyr Val
```

```
adj_view1 (size = 18):
```

```
[Ala Arg Asn]
[Arg Asn Asp]
[Asn Asp Cys]
[Asp Cys Gln]
[Cys Gln Glu]
[Gln Glu Gly]
[Glu Gly His]
[Gly His Ile]
```

CHAPTER 15 RANGES – PART 2

```
[His Ile Leu]
[Ile Leu Lys]
[Leu Lys Met]
[Lys Met Phe]
[Met Phe Pro]
[Phe Pro Ser]
[Pro Ser Thr]
[Ser Thr Trp]
[Thr Trp Tyr]
[Trp Tyr Val]
```

adj_view2 (size = 17):

```
[Ala|Arg|Asn|Asp]
[Arg|Asn|Asp|Cys]
[Asn|Asp|Cys|Gln]
[Asp|Cys|Gln|Glu]
[Cys|Gln|Glu|Gly]
[Gln|Glu|Gly|His]
[Glu|Gly|His|Ile]
[Gly|His|Ile|Leu]
[His|Ile|Leu|Lys]
[Ile|Leu|Lys|Met]
[Leu|Lys|Met|Phe]
[Lys|Met|Phe|Pro]
[Met|Phe|Pro|Ser]
[Phe|Pro|Ser|Thr]
[Pro|Ser|Thr|Trp]
[Ser|Thr|Trp|Tyr]
[Thr|Trp|Tyr|Val]
```

----- Ch15_02_ex3() -----

aa_vec_code1:

```
A   R   N   D   C   Q   E
G   H   I   L   K   M   F
P   S   T   W   Y   V
```

aa_vec_code3:

Ala	Arg	Asn	Asp	Cys	Gln	Glu
Gly	His	Ile	Leu	Lys	Met	Phe
Pro	Ser	Thr	Trp	Tyr	Val	

aa_vec_mm:

89.094	174.203	132.119	133.104	121.154	146.146	147.131
75.067	155.156	131.175	131.175	146.189	149.208	165.192
115.132	105.093	119.119	204.228	181.191	117.148	

aa_zip_view:

A	Ala	89.094
R	Arg	174.203
N	Asn	132.119
D	Asp	133.104
C	Cys	121.154
Q	Gln	146.146
E	Glu	147.131
G	Gly	75.067
H	His	155.156
I	Ile	131.175
L	Leu	131.175
K	Lys	146.189
M	Met	149.208
F	Phe	165.192
P	Pro	115.132
S	Ser	105.093
T	Thr	119.119
W	Trp	204.228
Y	Tyr	181.191
V	Val	117.148

----- Ch15_02_ex4() -----

radii:

6.00	12.00	17.00	19.00	5.00	16.00
14.00	3.00	12.00	4.00	15.00	2.00

heights:

2.00	7.00	5.00	1.00	6.00	17.00
11.00	5.00	12.00	1.00	11.00	4.00

volumes1:

226.19	3166.73	4539.60	1134.11	471.24	13672.21
6773.27	141.37	5428.67	50.27	7775.44	50.27

heights (after pop_back):

2.00	7.00	5.00	1.00	6.00	17.00
11.00	5.00	12.00	1.00	11.00	

volumes2:

226.19	3166.73	4539.60	1134.11	471.24	13672.21
6773.27	141.37	5428.67	50.27	7775.44	

Join, Split, and Cartesian Product Views

The source code example of this section expounds range adaptors that build views using `std::views::join()`, `std::views::join_with()`, `std::views::split()`, and `std::cartesian_product()`.

Listing 15-3-1 contains the source code for example `Ch15_03_ex1()`. The execution of this example function begins with the creation of three `std::vector<int>` containers named `vec1`, `vec2`, and `vec3`. Note that `RN::get_vector()` is used to initialize these vectors with random values.

Listing 15-3-1. Example `Ch15_03` – `Ch15_03_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch15_03_ex.cpp
//-----
#include <format>
#include <iterator>
#include <ranges>
#include <string>
#include <string_view>
#include <vector>
```

```

#include "Ch15_03.h"
#include "AminoAcid.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RN.h"

void Ch15_03_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:4d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {15};

    constexpr size_t n {12};
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {1000};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {732};

    // create test vectors
    std::vector vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(n, rng_min, rng_max, rng_seed);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    std::vector vec2 = RN::get_vector<int>(n + 2, rng_min, rng_max, rng_
seed / 3);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2:\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);

    std::vector vec3 = RN::get_vector<int>(n - 1, rng_min, rng_max, rng_
seed / 4);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec3:\n", vec3, fmt, epl_max);

    std::vector<std::vector<int>> vec_of_vecs {vec1, vec2, vec3};

    // create flatten view using std::views::join
    auto view_join = vec_of_vecs | std::views::join;
    MT::print_ctr("\nview_join:\n", view_join, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

The next statement in `Ch15_03_ex1()`, `std::vector<std::vector<int>> vec_of_vecs {vec1, vec2, vec3}`, instantiates a `std::vector` of three `std::vector<int>` containers. The subsequent code block utilizes `view_join = vec_of_vecs | std::views::join()` to create a view that flattens `vec_of_vecs`. More specifically, `std::views::join()` makes it appear that `vec1`, `vec2`, and `vec3` belong to the same range.

In Listing 15-3-2, example function `Ch15_03_ex2()` opens with the creation of `aa_vec1<std::string>` using `AminoAcid::get_vector_random_code3()`. Execution of `aa_vec1_jw = aa_vec1 | std::views::join_with("|"s)` creates a view that flattens the `std::string` elements of `aa_vec1`. The `"|"s` argument supplied to range adaptor `std::views::join_with()` is a delimiter that separates the elements in `aa_vec1_jw`. The view produced by `std::views::join_width()` is a flattened view of chars. This is why the `std::print()` statement in the subsequent range for loop utilizes a `"{:c}"` format specifier. You can also use the iterators of view `aa_vec1_jw` to construct a `std::string` as demonstrated in `Ch15_03_ex2()`'s final code block.

Listing 15-3-2. Example `Ch15_03 - Ch15_03_ex2()`

```
void Ch15_03_ex2()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_join_with
    using namespace std::string_literals;

    const char* fmt = "{:3s} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {20};

    // create test vector of amino acid code3 strings
    std::vector aa_vec1 = AminoAcid::get_vector_random_code3(15, 732);
    MT::print_ctr("\naa_vec1:\n", aa_vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::views::join_with
    auto aa_vec1_jw = aa_vec1 | std::views::join_with("|"s);

    // print chars using aa_vec1_jw
    std::print("\nresult #1: ");
    for (auto c : aa_vec1_jw)
        std::print("{:c}", c);
    std::println("");

    // create string using aa_vec1_jw
    std::string s(aa_vec1_jw.begin(), aa_vec1_jw.end());
    std::print("result #2: {:s}", s);
#endif
}
```

```

#else
    std::println("Ch15_03_ex2() std::views::join_with requires C++23");
#endif
}

```

A common string processing task of many programs is to split a string into smaller substrings based on a delimiter. Example function `Ch15_03_ex3()`, shown in Listing 15-3-3, demonstrates how to carry out this action using `std::views::split()`.

Listing 15-3-3. Example Ch15_03 – Ch15_03_ex3()

```

void Ch15_03_ex3()
{
    // create vector of test strings and test delimiter
    std::vector<std::string> vec1
        { "one, two, three, four", "eins, zwei, drei, vier", "",
          "un, deux, trois, quatre" };

    std::string_view delim1 {" , "};

    // using std::views::split
    for (const auto& str1 : vec1)
    {
        size_t i {};
        std::println("\ntest string:   \">{:s}\\"", str1);

        for (auto sr1 : str1 | std::views::split(delim1))
        {
            // create string using sr1 (std::ranges::subrange)
            std::string s1(sr1.begin(), sr1.end());
            std::println("split string #{:d}: \">{:s}\\"", i++, s1);
        }
    }
}
}

```

The opening code block of `Ch15_03_ex3()` instantiates `std::vector<std::string>` `vec1` with test strings and `std::string_view delim1` as a test delimiter. Note that `delim1` contains multiple characters. Execution of `for (auto sr1 : str1 | std::views::split(delim1))` splits `str1` into a series of subranges at each occurrence of

delim1. The ensuing statement `std::string s1(sr1.begin(), sr1.end())` constructs a `std::string` using the iterators of subrange `sr1`, and this `std::string` is subsequently printed.

It warrants mentioning here that C++20's original `std::views::split()` range adaptor performed splits using forward-only ranges, which limited its usefulness for `std::strings`. The post-C++20 P2210R2 proposal retroactively changed this to make `std::views::split()` more suitable for its primary use case of splitting `std::strings`. Range adaptor `std::views::lazy_split()` now contains the functionality originally provided by `std::views::split()`. Appendix B contains a reference that you can consult for more information regarding this topic.

Example function `Ch15_03_ex4()` demonstrates the use of `std::views::cartesian_product()`. The execution of this range adaptor generates views of n -ary Cartesian product tuples (i.e., ordered groups of n elements) using elements from the supplied ranges.

Listing 15-3-4. Example `Ch15_03 - Ch15_03_ex4()`

```
void Ch15_03_ex4()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_cartesian_product
    using pizza_tup = std::tuple<int, const std::string&, const
        std::string&,
            const std::string&>;

    // create test vectors
    std::vector<int> sizes {9, 12, 15, 18};
    std::vector<std::string> crusts {"Thin", "Thick", "DeepDish"};
    std::vector<std::string> toppings {"GreenPepper", "Mushroom", "Onion",
        "Pepperoni", "Sausage"};
    std::vector<std::string> salads {"Caesar", "Garden", "Spinach"};

    // print lambda expression
    auto print_pizza = [](const pizza_tup& pizza, size_t& nl)
    {
        const auto& [size, crust, topping, salad] = pizza;
        std::print("[{:2d} {:8s} {:11s} {:11s}] ", size, crust, topping,
            salad);
    };
#endif
}
```

```

        if (++nl % 2 == 0)
            std::println("");
    };

    // using std::views::cartesian_product
    auto pizza_cp = std::views::cartesian_product(sizes, crusts, toppings,
    salads);

    size_t nl {0};
    for (const auto& pizza : pizza_cp)
        print_pizza(pizza, nl);
#else
    std::println("Ch15_03_ex4() - std::views::cartesian_product requires
    C++23");
#endif
}

```

In Listing 15-3-4, execution of `Ch15_03_ex4()` opens with the creation of four test vectors. Vector `sizes` is a container of type `std::vector<int>`, while `crusts`, `toppings`, and `salads` are containers of type `std::vector<std::string>`. Next is the definition of a lambda expression named `print_pizza()`, which prints the elements of `pizza_tup` & `pizza`. Note that `pizza_tup` is an alias for `std::tuple<int, const std::string&, const std::string&, const std::string&>`.

In the subsequent code block, execution of `pizza_cp = std::views::cartesian_product(sizes, crusts, toppings, salads)` generates views of tuples using the elements from the supplied vectors. The range for loop that follows exploits the previously defined `print_pizza()` to print each `pizza_tup` tuple of `pizza_cp`. The results for example Ch15_03 follow this paragraph. The output for example Ch15_03_ex4() has been truncated to show only a few of the 180 generated pizza tuples.

```
----- Results for example Ch15_03 -----
```

```
----- Ch15_03_ex1() -----
```

```
vec1:
```

```
914 606 211 775 557 832 441 634 842 581 848 655
```

```
vec2:
```

```
291 645 100 224 250 77 397 971 73 668 218 161 991 744
```

vec3:

824 705 893 267 889 139 459 566 152 574 598

view_join:

914 606 211 775 557 832 441 634 842 581 848 655 291 645 100
224 250 77 397 971 73 668 218 161 991 744 824 705 893 267
889 139 459 566 152 574 598

----- Ch15_03_ex2() -----

aa_vec1:

Tyr Met Cys Ser Lys Thr His Met Thr Lys Thr Phe Asn Leu Lys

result #1: Tyr|Met|Cys|Ser|Lys|Thr|His|Met|Thr|Lys|Thr|Phe|Asn|Leu|Lys

result #2: Tyr|Met|Cys|Ser|Lys|Thr|His|Met|Thr|Lys|Thr|Phe|Asn|Leu|Lys

----- Ch15_03_ex3() -----

test string: "one, two, three, four"

split string #0: "one"

split string #1: "two"

split string #2: "three"

split string #3: "four"

test string: "eins, zwei, drei, vier"

split string #0: "eins"

split string #1: "zwei"

split string #2: "drei"

split string #3: "vier"

test string: ""

test string: "un, deux, trois, quatre"

split string #0: "un"

split string #1: "deux"

split string #2: "trois"

split string #3: "quatre"

```

----- Ch15_03_ex4() -----
[ 9 Thin    GreenPepper Caesar    ] [ 9 Thin    GreenPepper Garden    ]
[ 9 Thin    GreenPepper Spinach   ] [ 9 Thin    Mushroom   Caesar    ]
[ 9 Thin    Mushroom   Garden     ] [ 9 Thin    Mushroom   Spinach   ]
[ 9 Thin    Onion      Caesar     ] [ 9 Thin    Onion      Garden     ]
...
[18 DeepDish Onion      Garden     ] [18 DeepDish Onion      Spinach   ]
[18 DeepDish Pepperoni  Caesar     ] [18 DeepDish Pepperoni  Garden     ]
[18 DeepDish Pepperoni  Spinach    ] [18 DeepDish Sausage    Caesar     ]
[18 DeepDish Sausage    Garden     ] [18 DeepDish Sausage    Spinach   ]

```

Slide, Stride, and Chunk Views

The STL includes several range adaptors that create views of sliding windows, strides, or chunks of elements. In this section, you'll learn how to use `std::views::slide()`, `std::views::stride()`, `std::views::chunk()`, and `std::views::chunk_by()`.

Listing 15-4-1 shows the source code for example `Ch15_04_ex1()`, which details the use of `std::views::slide()`.

Listing 15-4-1. Example `Ch15_04 - Ch15_04_ex1()`

```

//-----
// Ch15_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <ranges>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch15_04.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RN.h"

```



```

void Ch15_04_ex1()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_slide
    using ll_t = long long;
    const char* fmt = "{:d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // create test vector
    std::vector vec1 = RN::get_vector<ll_t>(6, 1, 50, 327);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // sliding window print lambda
    auto print_window = [](auto& window)
    {
        std::print("[");
        for (auto x : window)
            std::print(" {:3d}", x);
        std::print("] ");
    };

    // sliding window calculate lambda
    auto calc_window = [](auto& window)
    {
        auto sum = std::ranges::fold_left(window, 0, std::plus<ll_t>());
        auto prod = std::ranges::fold_left(window, 1,
            std::multiplies<ll_t>());
        std::println("sum: {:d} prod: {:d}", sum, prod);
    };

    for (size_t window_w = 1; window_w <= vec1.size(); ++window_w)
    {
        std::println("\nwindow width: {:d}", window_w);

        // using std::views::slide
        auto slide1 = vec1 | std::views::slide(window_w);

        for (const auto& window1 : slide1)
            {

```

```

        print_window(window1);
        calc_window(window1);
    }
}
#else
    std::println("Ch15_01_ex1() - std::views::slide requires C++23");
#endif
}

```

In Listing 15-4-1, execution of `Ch15_04_ex1()` commences with the instantiation of `std::vector<ll_t> vec1` using `RN::get_vector<ll_t>` (`ll_t` is an alias for `long long`). Next is the definition of lambda expressions `print_window()` and `calc_window()`. The former prints the elements of a range, while the latter calculates a range sum and product using `std::ranges::fold_left()` (see example Ch11_08 for more information regarding fold algorithms).

The outermost for loop of the next code block iterates `window_w` (window width) between `[1, vec1.size())`. Execution of the statement `slide1 = vec1 | std::views::slide(window_w)` creates `window_w` wide views of adjacent elements from `vec1`. The range for loop that follows calls `print_window()` and `calculate_window()` for each view in `slide1`. Note in the results section that during the first iteration of the outermost for loop, `std::views::slide(window_w)` generates `vec1.size()` one-element views; during the next iteration, `vec1.size() - 1` two-element views are produced; and so on.

Listing 15-4-2 contains the source code for example function `Ch15_04_ex2()`, which creates stride views using `std::views::stride(stride_len)`. A stride view is a view that encompasses every n -th element from a range (e.g., elements `ctr[stride_len * 0]`, `ctr[stride_len * 1]`, etc.).

Listing 15-4-2. Example Ch15_04 - Ch15_04_ex2()

```

void Ch15_04_ex2()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_stride
    const char* fmt = "{:6d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

```

```

// create test vector
std::vector vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(50, 1, 50, 327);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::views::stride
constexpr size_t stride_len {5};

auto stride1 = vec1 | std::views::stride(stride_len);
MT::print_ctr("\nstride1:\n", stride1, fmt, epl_max);

// using std::views::stride and std::views::transform
auto stride2 = vec1
    | std::views::stride(stride_len)
    | std::views::transform([](int x) { return x * x; });

MT::print_ctr("\nstride2:\n", stride2, fmt, epl_max);
#else
    std::println("Ch15_01_ex2() - std::views::stride requires C++23");
#endif
}

```

Function `Ch15_04_ex2()` starts with the instantiation of `std::vector vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(50, 1, 50, 327)`. Execution of the expression `stride1 = vec1 | std::views::stride(stride_len)` creates `stride_len` wide views of elements from `vec1` starting with `vec1`'s first element. The subsequent code block in `Ch15_04_ex2()` adds `std::views::transform([](int x) { return x * x; })` to perform a transformation operation using the values in each view.

The next example, shown in Listing 15-4-3, demonstrates how to use `std::views::chunk()`. This range adaptor produces *n*-wide views of adjacent elements from an underlying range.

Listing 15-4-3. Example `Ch15_04 - Ch15_04_ex3()`

```

auto print_chunk(auto& chunk)
{
    std::print("[");

```

```

    for (auto x : chunk)
        std::print("{:d} ", x);
    std::print("] ");
}

void Ch15_04_ex3()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_chunk_by
    const char* fmt = "{:4d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {12};

    // create test vector
    std::vector vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(12, 1, 50, 327);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    for (size_t chunk_w = 1; chunk_w <= vec1.size(); ++chunk_w)
    {
        std::println("\nchunk_w: {:d}", chunk_w);

        // using std::views::chunk
        auto chunk1 = vec1 | std::views::chunk(chunk_w);

        for (const auto& chunk : chunk1)
            print_chunk(chunk);
        std::println("");
    }
#else
    std::println("Ch15_01_ex3() - std::views::chunk requires C++23");
#endif
}

```

Listing 15-4-3 begins with the definition of template function named `print_chunk()`, which prints the elements of `chunk`. Also shown in the same listing is example function `Ch15_04_ex3()`. Within the outer for loop is the statement `chunk1 = vec1 | std::views::chunk(chunk_w)`. Execution of this expression generates `chunk_w` wide views of elements from `vec1`. Note in the results section that the last chunk of each `std::views::chunk(chunk_w)` generated view contains `vec1 % chunk_w` elements.

Listing 15-4-4 shows the final example function of this section. Like the previous examples, `Ch15_04_ex4()` employs `RN::get_vector()` to create a vector of random integers. Following the instantiation of `vec1`, `Ch15_04_ex4()` harnesses `std::ranges::sort()` to sort the elements of `vec1`.

Listing 15-4-4. Example `Ch15_04 - Ch15_04_ex4()`

```
void Ch15_04_ex4()
{
#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_chunk_by
    const char* fmt = "{:4d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {15};

    // create sorted test vector
    std::vector vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(40, 1, 20, 271);
    std::ranges::sort(vec1);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::views::chunk_by
    auto chunk_op = [](int x, int y) { return x == y; };
    auto chunk_vw = vec1 | std::views::chunk_by(chunk_op);

    size_t nl {};
    std::println("\nchunk_vw:");

    for (auto chunk : chunk_vw)
    {
        print_chunk(chunk);

        if (++nl % 4 == 0)
            std::println("");
    }
#else
    std::println("Ch15_01_ex4() - std::views::chunk_by requires C++23");
#endif
}
```

The ensuing code block in `Ch15_04_ex4()` opens with the definition of binary predicate `chunk_op = [](int x, int y) { return x == y; }`. Execution of the next statement, `chunk_vw = vec1 | std::views::chunk_by(chunk_op)`, generates views of adjacent elements in `vec1`. The partitioning point between views occurs at element pairs where `chunk_op()` returns false. In other words, each view element generated by `std::views::chunk_by(chunk_op)` contains one or more instances of equivalent elements as determined by `chunk_op`. Here are the results for example `Ch15_04`:

```
----- Results for example Ch15_04 -----
```

```
----- Ch15_04_ex1() -----
```

```
vec1:
```

```
23 12 37 21 15 20
```

```
window width: 1
```

```
[ 23] sum: 23 prod: 23
```

```
[ 12] sum: 12 prod: 12
```

```
[ 37] sum: 37 prod: 37
```

```
[ 21] sum: 21 prod: 21
```

```
[ 15] sum: 15 prod: 15
```

```
[ 20] sum: 20 prod: 20
```

```
window width: 2
```

```
[ 23 12] sum: 35 prod: 276
```

```
[ 12 37] sum: 49 prod: 444
```

```
[ 37 21] sum: 58 prod: 777
```

```
[ 21 15] sum: 36 prod: 315
```

```
[ 15 20] sum: 35 prod: 300
```

```
window width: 3
```

```
[ 23 12 37] sum: 72 prod: 10212
```

```
[ 12 37 21] sum: 70 prod: 9324
```

```
[ 37 21 15] sum: 73 prod: 11655
```

```
[ 21 15 20] sum: 56 prod: 6300
```

CHAPTER 15 RANGES – PART 2

window width: 4

[23 12 37 21] sum: 93 prod: 214452

[12 37 21 15] sum: 85 prod: 139860

[37 21 15 20] sum: 93 prod: 233100

window width: 5

[23 12 37 21 15] sum: 108 prod: 3216780

[12 37 21 15 20] sum: 105 prod: 2797200

window width: 6

[23 12 37 21 15 20] sum: 128 prod: 64335600

----- Ch15_04_ex2() -----

vec1:

23	12	37	21	15	20	24	17	36	7
34	17	2	2	19	28	32	32	24	46
26	7	37	24	14	3	18	3	42	32
13	6	35	2	16	9	11	34	9	45
12	6	16	25	49	37	23	23	21	44

stride1:

23	20	34	28	26	3	13	9	12	37
----	----	----	----	----	---	----	---	----	----

stride2:

529	400	1156	784	676	9	169	81	144	1369
-----	-----	------	-----	-----	---	-----	----	-----	------

----- Ch15_04_ex3() -----

vec1:

23	12	37	21	15	20	24	17	36	7	34	17
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	---	----	----

chunk_w: 1

[23] [12] [37] [21] [15] [20] [24] [17] [36] [7] [34] [17]

chunk_w: 2

[23 12] [37 21] [15 20] [24 17] [36 7] [34 17]

chunk_w: 3

[23 12 37] [21 15 20] [24 17 36] [7 34 17]

```
chunk_w: 4
[23 12 37 21 ] [15 20 24 17 ] [36 7 34 17 ]
```

```
chunk_w: 5
[23 12 37 21 15 ] [20 24 17 36 7 ] [34 17 ]
```

```
chunk_w: 6
[23 12 37 21 15 20 ] [24 17 36 7 34 17 ]
```

```
chunk_w: 7
[23 12 37 21 15 20 24 ] [17 36 7 34 17 ]
```

```
chunk_w: 8
[23 12 37 21 15 20 24 17 ] [36 7 34 17 ]
```

```
chunk_w: 9
[23 12 37 21 15 20 24 17 36 ] [7 34 17 ]
```

```
chunk_w: 10
[23 12 37 21 15 20 24 17 36 7 ] [34 17 ]
```

```
chunk_w: 11
[23 12 37 21 15 20 24 17 36 7 34 ] [17 ]
```

```
chunk_w: 12
[23 12 37 21 15 20 24 17 36 7 34 17 ]
```

```
----- Ch15_04_ex4() -----
```

```
vec1:
```

```
  1   1   1   2   3   3   3   4   5   5   6   6   7   7   7
  8   9  10  10  10  11  11  11  11  11  12  13  13  14  16
 16  16  16  17  18  18  18  19  20  20
```

```
chunk_vw:
```

```
[1 1 1 ] [2 ] [3 3 3 ] [4 ]
[5 5 ] [6 6 ] [7 7 7 ] [8 ]
[9 ] [10 10 10 ] [11 11 11 11 11 ] [12 ]
[13 13 ] [14 ] [16 16 16 16 ] [17 ]
[18 18 18 ] [19 ] [20 20 ]
```

Range Factories

A range factory is a utility that creates a specialized view. Namespace `std::ranges` includes range factories that generate an incrementing sequence of values, a sequence of repeated values, and a sequence of elements generated by multiple calls to operator`>>`. In this section, you'll learn how to use the following range factories: `std::views::iota()`, `std::views::repeat()`, and `std::views::istream()`.

Listing 15-5-1 contains the source code for example `Ch15_05_ex1()`. This example demonstrates how to use `std::views::iota()` to carry out a numerical calculation. Near the top of `Ch15_05_ex1()` is the definition of a lambda expression named `calc_pi()`. The sole argument for this lambda expression is `iota_vw`, whose type corresponds to `std::ranges::iota::view`. The range for loop in `calc_pi()` calculates

$$\pi = 4 \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{(-1)^{i+1}}{2i-1}$$

by iterating over the sequential integer values of view `iota_vw`. Before continuing, it warrants mentioning that the primary purpose of this example is to demonstrate the use of `std::view_iota()`. For the current example, employing an ordinary for loop index variable in `calc_pi()` would be simpler. Also, the equation used here to calculate π was chosen since it's easy to understand; however, it converges slowly. Appendix B contains a reference that you can consult for more information regarding formulas that calculate π .

Listing 15-5-1. Example `Ch15_05` – `Ch15_05_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch15_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <cmath>
#include <numbers>
#include <utility>
#include <ranges>
#include <sstream>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch15_05.h"
```

```

void Ch15_05_ex1()
{
    // create vector of test bound values
    std::vector<int> n_vals { 100, 1'000, 1'000'000, 1'000'000'000 };

    // compile using /O2 or /O3 for best performance
    // iota_vw is type std::ranges::iota_view
    auto calc_pi = [](auto iota_vw)
    {
        double sum {};

        for (auto i : iota_vw)
        {
            auto num = std::pow(-1, i + 1);
            auto den = 2 * i - 1;
            sum += num / den;
        }

        return 4.0 * sum;
    };

    std::println("\nbegin test of std::views::iota, please wait");
    std::println("\npi (std::numbers::pi): {:.14f}", std::numbers::pi);

    for (auto n : n_vals)
    {
        std::println("\ncalculating pi, n: {:d}", n);

        // using std::views::iota - generates view of [1, n + 1)
        auto pi = calc_pi(std::views::iota(1, n + 1));
        auto delta = fabs(pi - std::numbers::pi);

        std::println("pi (calculated):      {:.14f}", pi);
        std::println("delta:                {:e}", delta);
    }
}

```

Later in example function `Ch15_05_ex1()` is the statement `pi = calc_pi(std::views::iota(1, n + 1))`. The execution of this expression first creates a view of sequential integer values between `[1, n]`. It then passes this view to `calc_pi()`. Following execution of `calc_pi()`, `Ch15_05_ex1()` utilizes `delta = fabs(pi - std::numbers::pi)` to gauge the accuracy of `calc_pi()`.

In Listing 15-5-2, example function `Ch15_05_ex2()` demonstrates the use of `std::views::repeat()`. Execution of this range factory yields a view that contains repeated instances of the same value.

Listing 15-5-2. Example `Ch15_05 - Ch15_05_ex2()`

```
void Ch15_05_ex2()
{
    constexpr size_t n {10};

    // using std::views::repeat (bounded view)
    for (auto v : std::views::repeat(42.0, n))
        std::print("{:6.1f} ", v);
    std::println("");

    // using std::views::repeat (unbounded view)
    std::string s {" hello"};
    for (auto v : std::views::repeat(s) | std::views::take(n))
        std::print("{:s} ", v);
    std::println("");
}
```

The final example of this section exemplifies the use of `std::views::istream()`. This range factory generates a view using repetitive calls to operator`>>`. Near the top of Listing 15-5-3 is the container `std::vector<pair_t> vec1`. Note that each `pair_t` element includes an `int` and a `std::string`. The former is a code that the subsequent range for loop tests to select the correct template parameter for `std::views::istream()`.

Listing 15-5-3. Example Ch15_05 – Ch15_05_ex3()

```

void Ch15_05_ex3()
{
    using pair_t = std::pair<int, std::string>;

    // create test vector
    std::vector<pair_t> vec1
    {
        pair_t(0, "1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8"),
        pair_t(1, "1.0 2.0 3.0 4.0 5.0 6.0 7.0 8.0"),
        pair_t(2, "one two three four five six seven eight"),

        pair_t(0, "1 2 3 4 a 5 6 7 8"),           // invalid
                                                // int value
        pair_t(1, "1.0 2.0 3.0 4.0 b 5.0 6.0 7.0 8.0"), // invalid
                                                // FP value
    };

    for (const auto& v : vec1)
    {
        auto iss = std::istringstream(v.second);

        if (v.first == 0)
        {
            // using std::views::istream<int>
            int result0 {};
            auto iss_view = std::views::istream<int>(iss);

            for (auto val : iss_view)
                result0 += val;
            std::println("result0: {:d}", result0);
        }
        else if (v.first == 1)
        {
            // using std::views::istream<double>
            double result1 {1.0};
            auto iss_view = std::views::istream<double>(iss);

```

```

        for (auto val : iss_view)
            result1 *= val;
        std::println("result1: {:.1f}", result1);
    }
    else if (v.first == 2)
    {
        // using std::views::istream<std::string>
        std::string result2 {"|"};
        auto iss_view = std::views::istream<std::string>(iss);

        for (auto val : iss_view)
            result2 += val + "|";
        std::println("result2: {:s}", result2);
    }
}
}

```

Within `Ch15_05_ex3()`'s outermost range for loop, the previously mentioned `int` code (`v.first`) determines how to process the `std::string` (`v.second`). For example, when `v.first` equals zero, `iss_view = std::views::istream<int>(iss)` creates a view that repeatedly applies `operator>>` to extract `int` values from `v.second`. The subsequent inner range for loop carries out a simulated calculation using values of the created view. The other two processing blocks inside the outermost range for loop perform similar actions using `doubles` and `std::strings`. Note that `std::views::istream()` terminates if it encounters a value that doesn't correspond to the specified data type. Here are the results for example `Ch15_05`:

```

----- Results for example Ch15_05 -----
----- Ch15_05_ex1() -----
begin test of std::views::iota, please wait
pi (std::numbers::pi): 3.14159265358979
calculating pi, n: 100
pi (calculated):      3.13159290355855
delta:                9.999750e-03

```

```

calculating pi, n: 1000
pi (calculated):      3.14059265383979
delta:                9.999997e-04

calculating pi, n: 1000000
pi (calculated):      3.14159165358977
delta:                1.000000e-06

calculating pi, n: 1000000000
pi (calculated):      3.14159265258805
delta:                1.001743e-09

----- Ch15_05_ex2() -----
  42.0  42.0  42.0  42.0  42.0  42.0  42.0  42.0  42.0  42.0
hello  hello  hello  hello  hello  hello  hello  hello  hello  hello

----- Ch15_05_ex3() -----
result0: 36
result1: 40320.0
result2: |one|two|three|four|five|six|seven|eight|
result0: 10
result1: 24.0

```

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- Range adaptors `std::views::keys()` and `std::views::values()` create key and value views of an underlying range. These adaptors can be used to generate views of elements in a range tuples.
- Range adaptor `std::views::elements()` generates a view of the i -th element in an underlying range of tuple elements.
- Range adaptor `std::views::enumerate()` generates a key-value view of a range. The key corresponds to an element's position in an underlying range, while the value component is a reference to the actual value.

- Range adaptors of `std::views::adjacent()` and `std::views::adjacent_transform()` generate views of adjacent elements in an underlying range; the latter also applies a transformation function.
- Range adaptor `std::views::join()` creates a view that flattens multiple underlying ranges into a single view. Range adaptor `std::views::join()` performs a similar operation but adds a delimiter between elements of the resultant view.
- Range adaptor `std::views::slide()` creates sliding views of adjacent elements in underlying range. Adaptor `std::views::stride()` generates views of every n -th element in a range, while adaptor `std::views::chunk()` produces n -wide views of adjacent elements.
- Range factory `std::views::iota()` generates a view of an incrementing sequence of values. Factory `std::views::repeat()` creates a view that encompasses a sequence of repeated values. Factory `std::views::istream()` generates a view using multiple applications of `operator>>`.

CHAPTER 16

Time Library

This chapter explains prominent classes and algorithms from the time library. It also covers supplemental classes from the ratio library. Topics discussed include

- Using `std::ratio`
- Using `std::chrono::duration`
- Using clock classes
- Using `std::chrono::time_point`
- Date and time formatting
- Software benchmarking

Time library entities belong to namespace `std::chrono`. In this chapter, text references to `std::chrono`'s classes and algorithms are mostly prefixed using `chrono::` for consistency with the namespace `chrono = std::chrono` statements used in the source code.

Ratios

The ratio library defines a template class named `std::ratio`. This class represents a finite rational number using an integer (`std::intmax_t`) numerator and denominator. The ratio library also defines template classes that support `std::ratio` arithmetic and comparisons. The time library exploits `std::ratio` to simplify calculations using time durations (`chrono::duration`) and points in time (`chrono::time_point`). You'll learn more about these classes later in this chapter.

The most important aspect to remember about a `std::ratio` is that the numerator and denominator are compile-time constants. Arithmetic and comparisons using `std::ratios` are also compile-time actions, which is advantageous in that it facilitates compile-time detection of certain errors such as division-by-zero. It also significantly reduces the risk of an arithmetic overflow error during program execution.

Listing 16-1-1 shows the source code for example `Ch16_01_ex1()`, which demonstrates the basic use of `std::ratios`. The opening statement of this function, using `ra = std::ratio<12, 20>`, defines an alias¹ named `ra` that represents the ratio 12/20. Ratios are often manipulated without creating an explicit object as shown in the current example. Class `std::ratio` contains two members named `num` and `den`, both of which are type `static constexpr intmax_t`. These members are referenced in the subsequent `print` statement. If you scan ahead to the results section, the output for `ra` shows 3 and 5 for `num` and `den`, respectively. The reason for this is that the compiler ensures that a `std::ratio` is always reduced to its lowest possible terms.

Listing 16-1-1. Example `Ch16_01 - Ch16_01_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch16_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <ratio>
#include "Ch16_01.h"

void Ch16_01_ex1()
{
    // using std::ratio
    using ra = std::ratio<12, 20>;          // reduced to 3 / 5
    std::println("ra::num: {:3d} ra::den: {:3d}", ra::num, ra::den);

    using rb = std::ratio<1, 15>;
    std::println("rb::num: {:3d} rb::den: {:3d}", rb::num, rb::den);

    using rc = std::ratio<42>;            // 42 / 1
    std::println("rc::num: {:3d} rc::den: {:3d}", rc::num, rc::den);
}
```

¹In older C++ code, the keyword `typedef` is used instead of `using` (e.g., `typedef std::ratio<12, 20> ra;`).

```

// std::ratio arithmetic
using rd_add = std::ratio_add<ra, rb>;
using rd_sub = std::ratio_subtract<ra, rb>;
using rd_mul = std::ratio_multiply<ra, rb>;
using rd_div = std::ratio_divide<ra, rb>;

std::println("");
std::println("rd_add::num: {:3d} rd_add::den: {:3d}", rd_add::num,
rd_add::den);
std::println("rd_sub::num: {:3d} rd_sub::den: {:3d}", rd_sub::num,
rd_sub::den);
std::println("rd_mul::num: {:3d} rd_mul::den: {:3d}", rd_mul::num,
rd_mul::den);
std::println("rd_div::num: {:3d} rd_div::den: {:3d}", rd_div::num,
rd_div::den);

// std::ratio relational operators
std::println("\nra == rb: {:s}", std::ratio_equal<ra, rb>::value);
std::println("ra == rb: {:s}", std::ratio_not_equal<ra, rb>::value);
std::println("ra < rb: {:s}", std::ratio_less<ra, rb>::value);
std::println("ra <= rb: {:s}", std::ratio_less_equal<ra, rb>::value);
std::println("ra > rb: {:s}", std::ratio_greater<ra, rb>::value);
std::println("ra >= rb: {:s}", std::ratio_greater_equal<ra,
rb>::value);
}

```

The next two statements in `Ch16_01_ex1()` define and print `rb = std::ratio<1, 15>`. The last `std::ratio` example, using `rc = std::ratio<42>`, creates a `std::ratio<42, 1>` since the default value for `den` is one.

The subsequent code block demonstrates the use of `std::ratio` arithmetic. The result of each compile-time arithmetic operation is always reduced to its lowest possible terms. The final code block of `Ch16_01_ex1()` spotlights `std::ratio` comparisons. Note that for each comparison type, member value yields true or false.

Listing 16-1-2 shows the source code for the next `std::ratio` example, which details how to use a few predefined SI² `std::ratios`.

² *Système international d'unités* (System of International Units).

Listing 16-1-2. Example Ch16_01 - Ch16_01_ex2()

```

void Ch16_01_ex2()
{
    // using SI ratios
    using ra = std::milli;
    using rb = std::nano;

    std::ratio_add<ra, rb> rc_add;
    std::ratio_subtract<ra, rb> rc_sub;
    std::ratio_multiply<ra, std::micro> rc_mul;
    std::ratio_divide<ra, rb> rc_div;

    std::println("ra::num:   {:<20d} ra::den:   {:<20d}", ra::num,
ra::den);
    std::println("rb::num:   {:<20d} rb::den:   {:<20d}", rb::num,
rb::den);
    std::println("");
    std::println("rc_add.num: {:<20d} rc_add.den: {:<20d}", rc_add.num,
rc_add.den);
    std::println("rc_sub.num: {:<20d} rc_sub.den: {:<20d}", rc_sub.num,
rc_sub.den);
    std::println("rc_mul.num: {:<20d} rc_mul.den: {:<20d}", rc_mul.num,
rc_mul.den);
    std::println("rc_div.num: {:<20d} rc_div.den: {:<20d}", rc_div.num,
rc_div.den);

    // compile-time arithmetic overflow
    // using bad = std::ratio_multiply<rb, std::atto>;

    // more SI ratios
    using rd = std::giga;
    using re = std::tera;

    std::ratio_add<rd, std::mega> rf_add;
    std::ratio_subtract<std::peta, rd> rf_sub;
    std::ratio_multiply<std::kilo, rd> rf_mul;
    std::ratio_divide<rd, re> rf_div;

```

```

std::println("");
std::println("rd::num:   {:<20d} rd::den:   {:<20d}", rd::num,
rd::den);
std::println("re::num:   {:<20d} re::den:   {:<20d}", re::num,
re::den);
std::println("");
std::println("rf_add.num: {:<20d} rf_add.den: {:<20d}", rf_add.num,
rf_add.den);
std::println("rf_sub.num: {:<20d} rf_sub.den: {:<20d}", rf_sub.num,
rf_sub.den);
std::println("rf_mul.num: {:<20d} rf_mul.den: {:<20d}", rf_mul.num,
rf_mul.den);
std::println("rf_div.num: {:<20d} rf_div.den: {:<20d}", rf_div.num,
rf_div.den);
}

```

The initiating statement of `Ch16_01_ex2()`, using `ra = std::milli`, creates an alias named `ra` that corresponds to a `std::ratio<1, 1000>` (or 10^{-3}). Table 16-1 lists the predefined SI `std::ratios` and their corresponding units. A C++ implementation is not required to support a predefined `std::ratio` from Table 16-1 if the numerator or denominator is not representable using a `std::intmax_t`. For a C++ implementation that defines a 64-bit-wide `std::intmax_t`, valid SI `std::ratios` are between `std::atto` and `std::exa`.

Table 16-1. Standard Library Predefined SI `std::ratios`

Name (<code>std::</code>)	<code>std::ratio<num, den></code>	Base 10 Ratio
quecto (C++26)	1, 1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000	10^{-30}
ronto (C++26)	1, 1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000	10^{-27}
yocto	1, 1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000	10^{-24}
zepto	1, 1,000,000,000,000,000,000	10^{-21}
atto	1, 1,000,000,000,000,000	10^{-18}

(continued)

Table 16-1. *(continued)*

Name (std::)	std::ratio<num, den>	Base 10 Ratio
femto	1, 1,000,000,000,000,000	10 ⁻¹⁵
pico	1, 1,000,000,000,000	10 ⁻¹²
nano	1, 1,000,000,000	10 ⁻⁹
micro	1, 1,000,000	10 ⁻⁶
milli	1, 1,000	10 ⁻³
centi	1, 100	10 ⁻²
deci	1, 10	10 ⁻¹
deca	10, 1	10 ¹
hecto	100, 1	10 ²
kilo	1,000, 1	10 ³
mega	1,000,000, 1	10 ⁶
giga	1,000,000,000, 1	10 ⁹
tera	1,000,000,000,000, 1	10 ¹²
peta	1,000,000,000,000,000, 1	10 ¹⁵
exa	1,000,000,000,000,000,000, 1	10 ¹⁸
zetta	1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 1	10 ²¹
yotta	1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000, 1	10 ²⁴
ronna (C++26)	1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000, 1	10 ²⁷
quetta (C++26)	1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000, 1	10 ³⁰

Following the definition of alias using `rb = std::nano`, `Ch16_01_ex2()` carries out a few `std::ratio` arithmetic operations. Again, it's important to keep in mind that these are compile-time calculations. The compiler will flag an error if it detects an arithmetic overflow. To see this in action, remove the comment from the `using bad = std::ratio_multiply<rb, std::atto>` statement and compile the code.

The code in the second part of `Ch16_01_ex2()` is similar to its first part but uses the larger predefined `std::ratios`. It warrants mentioning that example function `Ch16_01_ex2()` employed `using` statements for SI `std::ratios` to avoid code line wraps. For production code, direct use of the predefined SI `std::ratios` is usually preferred. Here are the results for example `Ch16_01`:

```

----- Results for example Ch16_01 -----

----- Ch16_01_ex1() -----
ra::num:  3 ra::den:  5
rb::num:  1 rb::den: 15
rc::num: 42 rc::den:  1

rd_add::num:  2 rd_add::den:  3
rd_sub::num:  8 rd_sub::den: 15
rd_mul::num:  1 rd_mul::den: 25
rd_div::num:  9 rd_div::den:  1

ra == rb: false
ra == rb: true
ra <  rb: false
ra <= rb: false
ra >  rb: true
ra >= rb: true

----- Ch16_01_ex2() -----
ra::num:      1          ra::den:    1000
rb::num:      1          rb::den: 1000000000

rc_add.num: 1000001      rc_add.den: 1000000000
rc_sub.num: 999999      rc_sub.den: 1000000000
rc_mul.num: 1           rc_mul.den: 1000000000
rc_div.num: 1000000     rc_div.den: 1

```

rd::num:	1000000000	rd::den:	1
re::num:	1000000000000	re::den:	1
rf_add.num:	1001000000	rf_add.den:	1
rf_sub.num:	999999000000000	rf_sub.den:	1
rf_mul.num:	1000000000000	rf_mul.den:	1
rf_div.num:	1	rf_div.den:	1000

Durations

A `chrono::duration` measures the amount of time between two points in time. Each `chrono::duration` holds a tick count and a tick period. The latter is the amount of time in seconds that transpires between two ticks. A `chrono::duration` is a rational constant and is programmatically expressed using template `std::ratio`. Namespace `std::chrono` also includes other date and time classes, and you'll learn more about these as the chapter progresses.

Listing 16-2-1 shows the source code for example `Ch16_02_ex1()`. This example demonstrates the basic use of `chrono::durations`. Near the top of this listing, the statement `namespace chrono = std::chrono` is included to reduce line length and improve readability. The first `chrono::duration` use, `chrono::duration<int, std::ratio<3600 * 24>> day {1}`, defines a duration named `day` as a `std::ratio<3600 * 24>` (i.e., $86400 / 1$) in seconds. In other words, one tick of a day corresponds to a tick period of 86,400 seconds. The tick type for a day is `int`. Other types for a tick can be specified as you'll soon see.

Listing 16-2-1. Example `Ch16_02 - Ch16_02_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch16_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <chrono>
#include <typeinfo>
#include "Ch16_02.h"

namespace chrono = std::chrono;
```

```

// #define PRINT_DURATION_TYPEID // remove comment to print
duration typeids

void Ch16_02_ex1()
{
    // using chrono::duration
    chrono::duration<int, std::ratio<3600 * 24>> day {1};
    chrono::duration<int, std::ratio<3600 * 24 * 7>> week {1};
    chrono::duration<int, std::ratio<3600 * 24 * 14>> fortnight {1};

    // chrono::duration arithmetic - days
    auto num_days = 2 * fortnight - 4 * day + 3 * week;
    std::println("num_days:   {}", num_days);

    // using chrono::duration_cast<>
    auto num_hours = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::hours>(num_days);
    std::println("num_hours:  {}", num_hours);

    // using chrono::duration (non-int tick type)
    chrono::duration<double, std::ratio<3600>> minutes90 {1.5};

    // more chrono::duration arithmetic
    auto num_hours_d = 20.0 * minutes90 + 0.5 * minutes90;
    auto num_minutes = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::minutes>(num_hours_d);
    std::println("\nnum_hours_d:  {}", num_hours_d);
    std::println("num_minutes:  {}", num_minutes);

#ifdef PRINT_DURATION_TYPEID
    std::println("\ntypeid(num_days):   {}", typeid(num_days).name());
    std::println("typeid(num_hours):  {}", typeid(num_hours).name());
    std::println("typeid(num_hours_d): {}", typeid(num_hours_d).name());
    std::println("typeid(num_minutes): {}", typeid(num_minutes).name());
#endif
}

```


The second `chrono::duration` used in Listing 16-2-1, `chrono::duration<int, std::ratio<3600 * 24 * 7>> week {1}`, defines `week` whose tick period in seconds equals `std::ratio<3600 * 24 * 7>` (or `604800 / 1`). The final `chrono::duration` example of the first code block, `chrono::duration<int, std::ratio<3600 * 24 * 14>> fortnight {1}`, defines a two-week duration.

The next code block in `Ch16_02_ex1()` demonstrates simple arithmetic using the previously defined `chrono::durations`. Execution of `num_days = 2 * fortnight - 4 * day + 3 * week` calculates the number of days specified by the arithmetic expression. Why number of days? When performing arithmetic using `chrono::durations`, the compile-time calculations are carried out using the greatest common divisor for all operands in the expression. Thus, the resultant type for `num_days` is `chrono::duration<int, std::ratio<86400, 1>>`, which represents the number of seconds in one day. To see the `chrono::duration` typeids, enable preprocessor symbol `PRINT_DURATION_TYPEID`, compile, and execute the code.

Execution of the ensuing statement, `num_hours = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::hours>(num_days)`, converts `num_days` to a duration of type `chrono::duration<int, std::ratio<3600, 1>>` or `hours`. Table 16-2 shows the predefined duration types that you can use to specify common time durations. In this table, `intxx` denotes the minimum size in bits of a signed integer needed to represent the duration.

Table 16-2. *Standard Time Duration Aliases*

Name (<code>std::chrono::</code>)	Duration (<code>std::chrono::duration<rep, period></code>)
nanoseconds	<code><int64, nano></code>
microseconds	<code><int55, micro></code>
milliseconds	<code><int45, milli></code>
seconds	<code><int35></code>
minutes	<code><int29, ratio<60>></code>
hours	<code><int23 ratio<3600>></code>
days	<code><int25, ratio_multiply<ratio<24>, hours::period>></code>
weeks	<code><int22, ratio_multiply<ratio<7>, days::period>></code>
years	<code><int17, ratio_multiply<ratio<146097, 400>, days::period>></code>
months	<code><int20, ratio_divide<years::period, ratio<12>>></code>

In Table 16-2, note that `chrono::years` represents 365.2425 days. Also, note that `chrono::months` corresponds to about 30.44 days.

The next code block in `Ch16_02_ex1()` defines `chrono::durations` `minutes15` and `minutes90`. Note that both of these `chrono::durations` use `tick_type double`. Following these definitions is another code block that demonstrates `chrono::duration` arithmetic and casting using `chrono::duration_cast()`. Like the previous example, these calculations are carried out using the greatest common divisor.

Note in the results section that the output for each `chrono::duration` value includes an appended unit suffix. The STL defines a template class named `std::formatter<std::chrono::sys_time>` that handles default formatting for time library objects. This formatter also supports a large set of explicit format specifiers for dates and times. You'll see a few examples of these later in this chapter.

The code in example Ch16_02_ex2(), shown in Listing 16-2-2, demonstrates how to use some of the standard time duration classes of namespace `chrono::duration`. It also exemplifies the use of literal suffixes for time values. The initial line of Ch16_02_ex2(), using namespace `std::chrono_literals`, enables the use of `chrono`'s literal suffixes. This namespace includes suffixes for both dates and times.

Listing 16-2-2. Example Ch16_02 - Ch16_02_ex2()

```
void Ch16_02_ex2()
{
    using namespace std::chrono_literals;

    // using standard durations
    chrono::days x_days {5};
    chrono::hours x_hours {18};
    chrono::minutes x_minutes {12};
    chrono::seconds x_seconds {7};

    auto a_seconds = x_days + x_hours - x_minutes + x_seconds;
    auto a_minutes = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::minutes>(a_seconds);
    auto a_hours = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::hours>(a_seconds);
    auto a_days = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::days>(a_seconds);

    auto a_err = a_seconds - a_days;

    std::println("\na_seconds:  {:8}  a_minutes:  {:8}", a_seconds,
a_minutes);
    std::println("a_hours:      {:8}  a_days:      {:8}", a_hours, a_days);
    std::println("a_err:         {:8}", a_err);

    // using time suffixes (hours, minutes, seconds)
    auto b_seconds = 17h + 47min + 18s + a_seconds;
    auto b_minutes = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::minutes>(b_seconds);
    auto b_hours = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::hours>(b_seconds);
    auto b_days = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::days>(b_seconds);

    auto b_err = b_seconds - b_days;
```

```

std::println("\nb_seconds:  {:8} b_minutes: {:8}", b_seconds,
b_minutes);
std::println("b_hours:      {:8} b_days:      {:8}", b_hours, b_days);
std::println("b_err:        {:8}", b_err);

// using time suffixes (milliseconds, microseconds, nanoseconds)
// period for duration c is std::ratio<1, 1000000000>
auto c = 12s + 340ms + 5600us + 78901ns;

auto c_ns = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::nanoseconds>(c);
auto c_us = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::microseconds>(c);
auto c_ms = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::milliseconds>(c);
auto c_sec = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::seconds>(c);

std::println("\nc_ns:  {:15} c_us:  {:15}", c_ns, c_us);
std::println("c_ms:  {:15} c_sec:  {:15}", c_ms, c_sec);

std::println("\nc_sec (decimal):  {:%S}", c);    // %S specifies
                                              decimal seconds

#ifdef PRINT_DURATION_TYPEID
std::println("\ntypeid(b_seconds):  {}", typeid(b_seconds).name());
std::println("typeid(b_minutes):  {}", typeid(b_minutes).name());
std::println("typeid(b_hours):    {}", typeid(b_hours).name());
std::println("typeid(c):          {}", typeid(c).name());
#endif
}

```

The opening code block of `Ch16_02_ex2()` initializes four duration variables using aliases from Table 16-2: `chrono::days x_days`, `chrono::hours x_hours`, `chrono::minutes x_minutes`, and `chrono::seconds x_seconds`. The next group of statements starts with an arbitrary calculation of `a_seconds = x_days + x_hours - x_minutes + x_seconds`. A triplet of `chrono::duration_cast()` usages follows that calculate `a_minutes`, `a_hours`, and `a_days`. The purpose of these casts is to demonstrate that just like an ordinary fundamental type cast (e.g., `double` to `int`), the use of `chrono::duration_cast` often results in a loss of precision. To observe this for the current example, take a look at the value of `a_err = a_seconds - a_days` in the results section.

The next code block in `Ch16_02_ex2()` illustrates how to use a few literal suffixes for time values. In the statement `b_seconds = 17h + 47min + 18s + a_seconds`, suffixes `h`, `min`, and `s` denote hours, minutes, and seconds, respectively. To calculate `b_seconds`, the literal suffixed numbers are converted to an appropriate ratio, which means that the processor effectively computes `17 * 3600 + 47 * 60 + 18 + a_seconds`. The remaining statements in this code block exercise `chrono::duration_cast()` just like the previous code block.

The final code block of `Ch16_02_ex2()` spotlights the use of additional time suffixes. In the first statement, literal suffixes `ms`, `us`, and `ns` correspond to milliseconds, microseconds, and nanoseconds, respectively. Calculation of `c = 12s + 340ms + 5600us + 78901ns` results in `chrono::duration c` having a period of `std::ratio<1, 1000000000>`. The other item to note here is the use of format specifier `%S` that's used to print `c`. This specifier formats a time duration using decimal seconds.

The concluding example function of this section highlights the use of date durations and calendar class `chrono::year_month_day`. Listing 16-2-3 shows the source code for `Ch16_02_ex3()`. Near the top of this function is the definition of a lambda expression named `print_rel_ops()`, which prints a complete set of comparison results for `ymd1` and `ymd2`.

Listing 16-2-3. Example `Ch16_02 - Ch16_02_ex3()`

```
void Ch16_02_ex3()
{
    using namespace std::chrono_literals;

    // print rel ops results
    auto print_rel_ops = [](const auto& ymd1, const auto& ymd2)
    {
        std::print("\nymd1 == ymd2: { :5s}    ", ymd1 == ymd2);
        std::println("ymd1 != ymd2: { :5s}", ymd1 != ymd2);
        std::print("ymd1 < ymd2: { :5s}    ", ymd1 < ymd2);
        std::println("ymd1 <= ymd2: { :5s}", ymd1 <= ymd2);
        std::print("ymd1 > ymd2: { :5s}    ", ymd1 > ymd2);
        std::println("ymd1 >= ymd2: { :5s}", ymd1 >= ymd2);
    };
};
```

```

// using chrono date suffixes
chrono::year_month_day ymd1 {2025y/6/21d};
chrono::year_month_day ymd2 {2027y/6/21d};
std::println("ymd1 | ymd2 (initial values):  {} | {}", ymd1, ymd2);
print_rel_ops(ymd1, ymd2);

// using chrono date suffixes - more formats
auto ymd3 {9/20d/2026y};
auto ymd4 {19d/3/2028y};
std::println("\nymd3 | ymd4 (initial values):  {} | {}", ymd3, ymd4);

// ymd calendar arithmetic - months and years
ymd1 += chrono::months(6);
ymd2 -= chrono::months(18);
std::println("\nymd1 | ymd2 (after arithmetic): {} | {}", ymd1, ymd2);
print_rel_ops(ymd1, ymd2);

auto ymd5 = ymd3 + chrono::years(4);
auto ymd6 = ymd4 - chrono::years(1);
std::println("\nymd5 | ymd6 (initial values):  {} | {}", ymd5, ymd6);

// ymd calendar arithmetic - days
auto ymd7 = chrono::sys_days(ymd5) + chrono::days(7);
auto ymd8 = chrono::sys_days(ymd6) - chrono::days(28);
std::println("\nymd7 | ymd8 (initial values):  {} | {}", ymd7, ymd8);
}

```

Next is the definition of `chrono::year_month_day ymd1 {2025y/6/21d}`. In this expression, note the use of the literal suffixes `y` (year) and `d` (day) (there is no month literal suffix). The definition of `ymd2` follows. After initialization of `ymd1` and `ymd2`, `Ch16_02_ex3()` prints their values and invokes `print_rel_ops()` to demonstrate `chrono::year_month_day` comparisons. You can also use the keyword `auto` and month-day-year or day-month-year orderings³ to instantiate a `chrono::year_month_day` object as shown in the subsequent code block with `ymd3` and `ymd4`.

³The time library defines multiple overloads for operator/ that convert common Gregorian calendar date orderings to a suitable `std::chrono` calendar object.

The subsequent code block in `Ch16_02_ex3()` demonstrates how to perform calendar arithmetic using `chrono::year_month_day` objects. For example, execution of `ymd1 += chrono::months(6)` adds six months to `ymd1`, while `ymd2 -= chrono::months(18)` subtracts 18 months from `ymd2`. You can also carry out calendar arithmetic using years as illustrated in the statements `ymd5 = ymd3 + chrono::years(4)` and `ymd6 = ymd4 - chrono::years(1)`.

Class `chrono::year_month_day` doesn't support calendar arithmetic using days. To carry out these types of calculations, a `chrono::year_month_day` object must be converted to a `chrono::time_point` object using operator `chrono::sys_days()` as shown in the final code block of `Ch16_02_ex3()`. The next section discusses `chrono::time_points` in greater detail. Here are the results for example `Ch16_02`:

```
----- Results for example Ch16_02 -----

----- Ch16_02_ex1() -----
num_days:    45d
num_hours:   1080h

num_hours_d:  30.75h
num_minutes:  1845min

----- Ch16_02_ex2() -----

a_seconds:   496087s   a_minutes: 8268min
a_hours:     137h     a_days:    5d
a_err:       64087s

b_seconds:   560125s   b_minutes: 9335min
b_hours:     155h     b_days:    6d
b_err:       41725s

c_ns: 12345678901ns   c_us: 12345678us
c_ms: 12345ms         c_sec: 12s

c_sec (decimal): 12.345678901
```

```

----- Ch16_02_ex3() -----
ymd1 | ymd2 (initial values):  2025-06-21 | 2027-06-21

ymd1 == ymd2: false    ymd1 != ymd2: true
ymd1 < ymd2: true     ymd1 <= ymd2: true
ymd1 > ymd2: false    ymd1 >= ymd2: false

ymd3 | ymd4 (initial values):  2026-09-20 | 2028-03-19

ymd1 | ymd2 (after arithmetic): 2025-12-21 | 2025-12-21

ymd1 == ymd2: true     ymd1 != ymd2: false
ymd1 < ymd2: false    ymd1 <= ymd2: true
ymd1 > ymd2: false    ymd1 >= ymd2: true

ymd5 | ymd6 (initial values):  2030-09-20 | 2027-03-19

ymd7 | ymd8 (initial values):  2030-09-27 | 2027-02-19

```

Clocks and Timepoints

To perform time measurements and time-oriented arithmetic, the time library provides two interdependent classes: `clocks` and `chrono::time_points`. A clock bundles an epoch (time reference point) and a tick period. The epoch for commonly used clocks such as `chrono::system_clock` and `chrono::utc_clock` is 1970-01-01 00:00:00 UTC (Coordinated Universal Time). A clock's tick period in seconds is represented using a `std::ratio`. As implied by its name, a `chrono::time_point` instance represents a point in time. It's implemented as a positive or negative time interval (`std::duration`) from a clock's epoch.

The time library defines several different clock classes that target specific use cases as outlined in Table 16-3. In this table, the column labeled Monotonic signifies whether the `chrono::time_point` object returned by a clock's `now()` function increases monotonically (i.e., the value returned by `now()` is *always* greater than or equal to the value returned by any earlier call).

Table 16-3. *Time Library Clock Classes*

Name (<code>std::chrono</code>)	Description	Epoch	Leap Seconds/ Monotonic
<code>system_clock</code>	Represents wall clock time from the system's real-time clock; subject to adjustments due to DST, Network Time Protocol synchronizations, user changes, etc.	1970-01-01 00:00:00 UTC	No/Optional
<code>utc_clock</code>	Mostly similar to system clock except for leap seconds	1970-01-01 00:00:00 UTC	Yes/Optional
<code>steady_clock</code>	Monotonic clock independent of wall clock time; used to measure time intervals	Unspecified	No/Yes
<code>high_resolution_clock</code>	Clock with the shortest tick period; may be a distinct clock or an alias for <code>system_clock</code> or <code>steady_clock</code>	Unspecified	No/Optional
<code>tai_clock</code>	International Atomic Time (TAI)	1958-01-01 00:00:00 (1957-12-31 23:59:50 UTC)	No/Optional
<code>gps_clock</code>	Global Positioning System	1980-01-06 00:00:00 UTC	No/Optional
<code>file_clock</code>	Alias for <code>std::filesystem::file_time_type</code> ; used for file times	Unspecified	No/Optional

The source code examples in this chapter consider clock classes `chrono::system_clock`, `chrono::utc_clock`, and `std::steady_clock`. Most of explanations also apply to specialized clocks `chrono::tai_clock` and `chrono::gps_clock`. You'll learn more about clock `chrono::file_clock` and file system times in Chapter 17.

Listing 16-3-1 shows the source code for example function `Ch16_03_ex1()`. This example prints attribute information for commonly used clocks. Near the top of Listing 16-3-1 is the definition of a lambda expression named `print_clock_info()`. In this lambda, template parameter `CLK` represents a `chrono` clock class. All clock classes define a static `constexpr bool` value named `is_steady`, whose value is true if calls to the clock's `now()` function return monotonically increasing values; otherwise, `is_steady` is false. Clock attribute `CLK::period` is a `std::ratio` that defines the clock's tick period in seconds.

Listing 16-3-1. Example `Ch16_03 - Ch16_03_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch16_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <chrono>
#include <thread>
#include <typeinfo>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch16_03.h"

namespace chrono = std::chrono;
using namespace std::chrono_literals;

void Ch16_03_ex1()
{
    // clock information lambda
    auto print_clock_info = [<class CLK>(const char* msg, const CLK& clk)
    {
        std::println("\n{s} ", msg);
        std::println("type name: {s}", typeid(clk).name());
        std::println("is_steady: {s}", clk.is_steady);
        std::println("period:    {s}", typeid(typename CLK::period).
            name());
    };
};
```

```

// print clock information for various clocks
chrono::system_clock clk1 {};
print_clock_info("clk1 (chrono::system_clock)", clk1);

chrono::utc_clock clk2 {};
print_clock_info("clk2 (chrono::utc_clock)", clk2);

chrono::steady_clock clk3 {};
print_clock_info("clk3 (chrono::steady_clock)", clk3);

chrono::high_resolution_clock clk4 {};
print_clock_info("clk4 (chrono::high_resolution_clock)", clk4);
}

```

The ensuing code blocks in Ch16_03_ex1() utilize print_clock_info() to print information for clocks chrono::system_clock, chrono::utc_clock, chrono::steady_clock, and chrono::high_resolution_clock. Table 16-4 summarizes the information displayed by print_clock_info() for two different test computers.

Table 16-4. Clock Class Attribute Information

Clock (std::chrono::)	Attribute	Windows 11 (msvc)	Ubuntu 23.10 (GCC)
system_clock	is_steady period	false std::ratio<1,10000000>	false std::ratio<1,1000000000>
utc_clock	is_steady period	false std::ratio<1,10000000>	false std::ratio<1,1000000000>
steady_clock	is_steady period	true std::ratio<1, 1000000000>	true std::ratio<1, 1000000000>
high_ resolution_ clock	is_steady period	true std::ratio<1, 1000000000>	false std::ratio<1, 1000000000>

Example `Ch16_03_ex2()`, shown in Listing 16-3-2, opens with the definition of `chrono::time_point<chrono::system_clock> tp1_sys {}`. Note that a `chrono::timepoint` object requires a clock class as a template parameter. The specified clock's epoch is utilized when performing certain `chrono::time_point` operations. The next statement instantiates `tp1_utc` as a `chrono::utc_clock`.

Listing 16-3-2. Example `Ch16_03 - Ch16_03_ex2()`

```
void Ch16_03_ex2()
{
    // using chrono::time_point
    chrono::time_point<chrono::system_clock> tp1_sys {};
    chrono::time_point<chrono::utc_clock> tp1_utc {};

    // print epochs
    // %F = yyyy-mm-dd, %X = locale's time format, %Z = time zone
    std::println("\ntp1_sys epoch: {0:%F} {0:%X} {0:%Z}", tp1_sys);
    std::println("\ntp1_utc epoch: {0:%F} {0:%X} {0:%Z}", tp1_utc);

    // using chrono::system_clock
    auto tp2_sys = chrono::system_clock::now();
    auto tp2_sys_tse = tp2_sys.time_since_epoch();
    std::println("\ntp2_sys: {0:%F} {0:%X} {0:%Z}", tp2_sys);
    std::println("tp2_sys.time_since_epoch(): {}", tp2_sys_tse);

    // using chrono::utc_clock
    auto tp2_utc = chrono::utc_clock::now();
    auto tp2_utc_tse = tp2_utc.time_since_epoch();
    std::println("\ntp2_utc: {0:%F} {0:%X} {0:%Z}", tp2_utc);
    std::println("tp2_utc.time_since_epoch(): {}", tp2_utc_tse);

    // calculate sys/utc time difference (number of leap seconds
    since epoch)
    auto tp2_delta = tp2_utc_tse - tp2_sys_tse;
    std::println("\ntp2_delta: {:%S}", tp2_delta);

    // using zoned time (current zone)
    chrono::zoned_time tp2_sys_zt(chrono::current_zone(), tp2_sys);
    std::println("\ntp2_sys: {0:%F} {0:%X} {0:%Z}", tp2_sys_zt);
}
```

```

// using chrono::steady_clock
auto tp3_start = chrono::steady_clock::now();
std::this_thread::sleep_for(500ms);
auto tp3_stop = chrono::steady_clock::now();
auto tp3_diff = tp3_stop - tp3_start;
auto tp3_diff_ms = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::milliseconds>
(tp3_diff);

std::println("\ntp3_diff:   {}", tp3_diff);
std::println("tp3_diff_ms: {}", tp3_diff_ms);
}

```

The time default value for a `chrono::timepoint` is its clock's epoch. The next two `std::println()` statements print the epoch values for `tp1_sys` and `tp1_utc`. The important items to note here are the format specifiers used to print each epoch's date (%F for yyyy-mm-dd), time (%X for locale time), and time zone (%Z). The time library defines an extensive set of distinct format specifiers for date and times. You'll see other examples of these format specifiers later.

In the subsequent code block, `Ch16_03_ex2()` utilizes `tp2_sys = chrono::system_clock::now()` to obtain the current system time in UTC. The following statement, `tp2_sys_tse = tp2_sys.time_since_epoch()`, acquires a `std::duration` object that represents the amount of time between `tp2_sys` and its clock's epoch. The subsequent code block performs these same actions using `chrono::utc_clock`. Calculation of `tp2_delta = tp2_utc_tse - tp2_sys_tse` effectively determines the time difference between clocks of type `chrono::system_clock` and `chrono::utc_clock`. Note in the results section that the value of `tp2_delta` is marginally greater than 27 seconds. Recall that a `chrono::utc_clock` includes leap seconds, and, as I write this, there have been 27 leap seconds since the 1970-01-01 00:00:00 epoch.

To convert a time obtained using `chrono::system_clock::now()` from UTC to local time, `Ch16_03_ex2()` exploits class `chrono::zoned_time` as demonstrated in the next code block.

The final code block of `Ch16_03_ex2()` highlights the use of `chrono::steady_clock::now()`. Recall that instances of `chrono::steady_clock()` are useful for measuring time intervals. Note that sandwiched between the two calls to `chrono::steady_clock::now()` is a call to `std::this_thread::sleep_for(500ms)`, which blocks execution of the current thread for a minimum of 500 milliseconds.

Execution of `tp3_diff = tp3_stop - tp3_start` computes the actual delay time, and `tp3_diff_ms = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::milliseconds>(tp3_diff)` casts this value to milliseconds.

The next chrono example function, shown in Listing 16-3-3, details how to carry out `chrono::time_point` additive arithmetic.

Listing 16-3-3. Example Ch16_03 - Ch16_03_ex3()

```
void Ch16_03_ex3()
{
    // %H = hours, %M = minutes, %S = decimal seconds
    auto print_tp = [](const char* msg, const auto& tp)
        { std::println("{0:<30s} {1:%F} {1:%H:%M:%S}", msg, tp); };

    // create time_point using specific date
    chrono::time_point<chrono::system_clock> tp = chrono::sys_days
        {2026y/7/4d};
    std::println("");
    print_tp("tp (initial value):", tp);

    // chrono::time_point arithmetic (date)
    tp += chrono::years(4) + chrono::months(5) + chrono::days(7);
    print_tp("tp (after date adjustments):", tp);

    // chrono::time_point arithmetic (time)
    tp += 12h + 30min + 45s + 123ms + 456us;
    print_tp("tp (after time adjustments):", tp);
}
```

In Listing 16-3-3, `Ch16_03_ex3()` utilizes `chrono::time_point<chrono::system_clock> tp = chrono::sys_days {2026y/7/4d}` to initialize `tp` to a specific date. Note that chrono literal suffixes are employed for the years and days in this expression. Following its initialization, `tp` equals 2026-07-04 00:00:00.

The ensuing two code blocks demonstrate `chrono::time_point` additive arithmetic. The first additive expression exploits `chrono::duration` aliases from Table 16-2 for dates, while the second one applies literal suffixes for time quantities. When performing arithmetic using `chrono::timepoints`, always keep in mind that this arithmetic is carried out using the `chrono::durations` from Table 16-2. Leap seconds are accounted

for if a `chrono::time_point`'s clock is a `chrono::utc_clock`. Class `chrono::time_point` also supports subtractive arithmetic using operator- and operator-=. You can also use operator++ and operator-- to adjust the year of a `chrono::time_point`.

Listing 16-3-4 shows the source code for example `Ch16_03_ex4()`. This function illustrates how to use `chrono::time_point` relational operators.

Listing 16-3-4. Example `Ch16_03 - Ch16_03_ex4()`

```
void Ch16_03_ex4()
{
    // initialize chrono::time_points (%T = %H:%M:%S)
    auto tp1 = chrono::system_clock::now();
    std::this_thread::sleep_for(300ms);
    auto tp2 = chrono::system_clock::now();
    std::this_thread::sleep_for(200ms);
    auto tp3 = chrono::system_clock::now();

    std::println("tp1: {0:%F} {0:%T}", tp1);
    std::println("tp2: {0:%F} {0:%T}", tp2);
    std::println("tp3: {0:%F} {0:%T}", tp3);

    // perform chrono::time_point compares
    auto cmp_tp = [](const auto& tp1, const auto& tp2)
    {
        std::print("\ntp1 == tp2: {:5s}", tp1 == tp2);
        std::println(" tp1 != tp2: {:5s}", tp1 != tp2);
        std::print("tp1 < tp2: {:5s}", tp1 < tp2);
        std::println(" tp1 <= tp2: {:5s}", tp1 <= tp2);
        std::print("tp1 > tp2: {:5s}", tp1 > tp2);
        std::println(" tp1 >= tp2: {:5s}", tp1 >= tp2);
    };

    cmp_tp(tp1, tp2);
    cmp_tp(tp3, tp1);
}
```

The opening code block of `Ch16_03_ex4()` initializes `chrono::time_points` `tp1`, `tp2`, and `tp3` using `chrono::system_clock::now()`. The two calls to `std::this_thread::sleep_for()` are included to ensure value differences between `tp1`, `tp2`, and `tp3` since `now()` might return the same value. The `std::print()` statements in `lambda_cmp_op()` include all six standard relational operators. As you can see, performing comparisons using `chrono::time_points` is basically the same as fundamental types.

The final example function of this section, `Ch16_03_ex5()`, spotlights the use of `chrono::time_point` mathematical operations. The code in Listing 16-3-5 commences with the initialization of `tp_now = chrono::system_clock::now()`. Execution of the next statement, `tp_cast = chrono::time_point_cast<chrono::milliseconds>(tp_now)`, casts the value of `tp_now` to milliseconds (i.e., a new `std::duration`) and saves the result to `tp_cast`.

Listing 16-3-5. Example `Ch16_03 - Ch16_03_ex5()`

```
void Ch16_03_ex5()
{
    auto tp_now = chrono::system_clock::now();
    std::println("tp_now:  {0:%F} {0:%T}", tp_now);

    // using chrono::time_point_cast
    auto tp_cast = chrono::time_point_cast<chrono::milliseconds>(tp_now);
    std::println("\ntp_cast:  {0:%F} {0:%T}", tp_cast);

    // using chrono::ceil, chrono::floor, chrono::round
    auto tp_ceil = chrono::ceil<chrono::microseconds>(tp_now);
    auto tp_floor = chrono::floor<chrono::microseconds>(tp_now);
    auto tp_round = chrono::round<chrono::microseconds>(tp_now);

    std::println("\ntp_ceil:  {0:%F} {0:%T}", tp_ceil);
    std::println("tp_floor: {0:%F} {0:%T}", tp_floor);
    std::println("tp_round: {0:%F} {0:%T}", tp_round);
}
```

The final code block of `Ch16_03_ex5()` illustrates the use of `chrono::ceil()`, `chrono::floor()`, and `chrono::round()`. These three functions carry out mathematical rounding operations (up, down, and nearest) using `chrono::time_points`. The results for example `Ch16_03` follow this paragraph. These results will vary depending on the compiler and target system.

```
----- Results for example Ch16_03 -----  
  
----- Ch16_03_ex1() -----  
  
clk1 (chrono::system_clock)  
type name: struct std::chrono::system_clock  
is_steady: false  
period:    struct std::ratio<1,10000000>  
  
clk2 (chrono::utc_clock)  
type name: class std::chrono::utc_clock  
is_steady: false  
period:    struct std::ratio<1,10000000>  
  
clk3 (chrono::steady_clock)  
type name: struct std::chrono::steady_clock  
is_steady: true  
period:    struct std::ratio<1,1000000000>  
  
clk4 (chrono::high_resolution_clock)  
type name: struct std::chrono::steady_clock  
is_steady: true  
period:    struct std::ratio<1,1000000000>  
  
----- Ch16_03_ex2() -----  
  
tp1_sys epoch: 1970-01-01 00:00:00 UTC  
tp1_utc epoch: 1970-01-01 00:00:00 UTC  
  
tp2_sys: 2024-06-01 20:28:47 UTC  
tp2_sys.time_since_epoch(): 17172737276003474[1/10000000]s  
tp2_utc: 2024-06-01 20:28:47 UTC  
tp2_utc.time_since_epoch(): 17172737546003588[1/10000000]s  
  
tp2_delta: 27.0000114  
  
tp2_sys: 2024-06-01 15:28:47 CDT  
  
tp3_diff:    511917400ns  
tp3_diff_ms: 511ms
```

```

----- Ch16_03_ex3() -----
tp (initial value):          2026-07-04 00:00:00.0000000
tp (after date adjustments): 2030-12-10 03:42:18.0000000
tp (after time adjustments): 2030-12-10 16:13:03.1234560

----- Ch16_03_ex4() -----
tp1: 2024-06-01 20:28:48.1515212
tp2: 2024-06-01 20:28:48.4642883
tp3: 2024-06-01 20:28:48.6673747

tp1 == tp2: false  tp1 != tp2: true
tp1 <  tp2: true   tp1 <= tp2: true
tp1 >  tp2: false  tp1 >= tp2: false

tp1 == tp2: false  tp1 != tp2: true
tp1 <  tp2: false  tp1 <= tp2: false
tp1 >  tp2: true   tp1 >= tp2: true

----- Ch16_03_ex5() -----
tp_now:   2024-06-01 20:28:48.6675935

tp_cast:  2024-06-01 20:28:48.667

tp_ceil:  2024-06-01 20:28:48.667594
tp_floor: 2024-06-01 20:28:48.667593
tp_round: 2024-06-01 20:28:48.667594

```

More Clocks and Timepoints

In Listing 16-4-1, example function `Ch16_01_ex4()` demonstrates the use of additional chrono format specifiers.

Listing 16-4-1. Example Ch16_04 - Ch16_04_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch16_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <chrono>
#include <string>
#include <typeinfo>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch16_04.h"

namespace chrono = std::chrono;
using namespace std::chrono_literals;

void Ch16_04_ex1()
{
    // display current UTC time
    auto now_sys = chrono::system_clock::now();
    std::println("now_sys:      {0:%F} {0:%X} {0:%Z}", now_sys);

    // using zoned time (current zone)
    chrono::zoned_time now_sys_zt(chrono::current_zone(), now_sys);

    // %r = %H:%M (locale's 12 hour time), %c = locale's date and time
    std::println("\nother formatting examples using now_sys_zt");
    std::println("now_sys_zt:   {0:%F} {0:%X} {0:%Z}", now_sys_zt);
    std::println("12 hour time: {0:%F} {0:%r}", now_sys_zt);
    std::println("explicit YMD: {0:%Y}-{0:%m}-{0:%d}", now_sys_zt);
    std::println("explicit MDY: {0:%m}/{0:%d}/{0:%y}", now_sys_zt);
    std::println("locale:      {0:%c}", now_sys_zt);

    // using zoned time (explicit zones)
    std::vector<std::string> zones
        { "America/New_York", "Europe/Berlin", "Asia/Kolkata",
          "Asia/Shanghai", "Asia/Tokyo", "America/Vancouver" };

    std::println("\ndate and time using explicit zones");

    for (auto zone : zones)

```

```

{
    chrono::zoned_time now_sys_zt {zone, now_sys};
    std::println("{0:25s} {1:%F} {1:%X} {1:%Z}", zone, now_sys_zt);
}
}

```

The opening code block of this function employs `now_sys = chrono::system_clock::now()` and `chrono::zoned_time now_sys_zt(chrono::current_zone(), now_sys)` to obtain the current system and zoned times. The subsequent code block prints `now_sys_zt` using a variety of chrono format specifiers. The new specifiers to note here are `%r` (locale's HH:MM 12-hour time) and `%c` (locale's date and time). Appendix B contains a reference that you can consult for additional information regarding chrono format specifiers, including the large number of specifiers not exercised in this book.

The final code block of `Ch16_04_ex1()` demonstrates how to format a time for a specific global time zone. In this code block, `std::vector<std::string>` zones contain area/location strings for several global time zones from the IANA time zone database (see Appendix B for a reference). In the subsequent range for loop, execution of `chrono::zoned_time now_sys_zt {zone, now_sys}` converts time `now_sys` from UTC to zone's local time. The `std::println()` statement that follows prints this value.

Listing 16-4-2 shows the source code for example `Ch16_02_ex4()`. The opening code block of this example demonstrates how to calculate the number of leap seconds inserted on or before a particular date. Execution of `sys_days1 = chrono::sys_days(2000y/1/1d)` instantiates a `chrono::time_point` for 2000-01-01. The next two statements, `sys_seconds1 = chrono::sys_seconds(sys_days1)` and `sys_tse1 = sys_seconds1.time_since_epoch()`, calculate the number of seconds since `sys_day1`'s epoch.

Listing 16-4-2. Example Ch16_04 - Ch16_04_ex2()

```

// #define PRINT_TYPE_INFO    // remove comment to print type info

void Ch16_04_ex2()
{
    // calculate number of leap seconds since 2000-01-01
    auto sys_days1 = chrono::sys_days(2000y/1/1d);
    auto sys_seconds1 = chrono::sys_seconds(sys_days1);
    auto sys_tse1 = sys_seconds1.time_since_epoch();
}

```

```

auto utc_seconds1 = chrono::clock_cast<chrono::utc_clock>
(sys_seconds1);
auto utc_tse1 = utc_seconds1.time_since_epoch();
auto num_leap_seconds1 = utc_tse1 - sys_tse1;

std::println("sys_days1:      {0:%F} {0:%X} {0:%Z}", sys_days1);
std::println("sys_tse1:      {}", sys_tse1);
std::println("utc_tse1:      {}", utc_tse1);
std::println("num_leap_seconds1: {}", num_leap_seconds1);

// calculate number of leap seconds since now()
auto tp_now = chrono::system_clock::now();
auto tp_now_utc = chrono::clock_cast<chrono::utc_clock>(tp_now);
auto tp_tse_delta = tp_now_utc.time_since_epoch() - tp_now.time_since_
epoch();
auto num_leap_seconds2 = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::seconds>
(tp_tse_delta);

std::println("\ntp_now:      {0:%F} {0:%X} {0:%Z}", tp_now);
std::println("num_leap_seconds2: {}", num_leap_seconds2);

// confirm chrono class types
#ifdef PRINT_TYPE_INFO
std::println("\nsys_day1:    {s}", typeid(sys_days1).name());
std::println("sys_seconds1: {s}", typeid(sys_seconds1).name());
std::println("sys_tse1:    {s}", typeid(sys_tse1).name());
std::println("utc_seconds1: {s}", typeid(utc_seconds1).name());
#endif

static_assert(typeid(sys_days1)
== typeid(chrono::time_point<chrono::system_clock, chrono::days>));
static_assert(typeid(sys_seconds1)
== typeid(chrono::time_point<chrono::system_clock,
chrono::seconds>));
static_assert(typeid(sys_tse1) == typeid(chrono::seconds));
static_assert(typeid(utc_seconds1)
== typeid(chrono::time_point<chrono::utc_clock, chrono::seconds>));
}

```

Execution of `utc_seconds1 = chrono::clock_cast<chrono::utc_clock>(sys_seconds1)` converts `sys_seconds1` time from a `chrono::system_clock` to a `chrono::utc_clock`. The ensuing statement, `utc_tse1 = utc_seconds1.time_since_epoch()`, obtains the number of seconds since `sys_day1`'s epoch using a `chrono::utc_clock`. Calculation of `num_leap_seconds1 = utc_tse1 - sys_tse1` yields the number of leap seconds since `sys_days1`.

The next code block illustrates how to determine the number of leap seconds since `tp_now = chrono::system_clock::now()`. To achieve this, `Ch16_04_ex2()` calculates `tp_now_utc`, which is `tp_now`'s time based on a `chrono::utc_clock`. It then computes `tp_tse_delta = tp_now_utc.time_since_epoch() - tp_now.time_since_epoch()` and converts this value to seconds using `num_leap_seconds2 = chrono::duration_cast<chrono::seconds>(tp_tse_delta)`.

The time library contains a large number of classes, and it's easy to get confused about a particular object's exact type. The final code block of `Ch16_04_ex2()` highlights the use of `typeid()` and `static_assert()` to view or confirm class types. Application of these language features is often helpful during initial development or when tracking down an obscure bug involving `chrono` objects. Here are the results for example `Ch16_04`:

```
----- Results for example Ch16_04 -----
----- Ch16_04_ex1() -----
now_sys:      2024-06-01 20:28:48 UTC

other formatting examples using now_sys_zt
now_sys_zt:   2024-06-01 15:28:48 CDT
12 hour time: 2024-06-01 03:28:48 PM
explicit YMD: 2024-06-01
explicit MDY: 06/01/24
locale:      06/01/24 15:28:48

date and time using explicit zones
America/New_York      2024-06-01 16:28:48 EDT
Europe/Berlin         2024-06-01 22:28:48 GMT+2
Asia/Kolkata          2024-06-02 01:58:48 GMT+5:30
Asia/Shanghai         2024-06-02 04:28:48 GMT+8
Asia/Tokyo            2024-06-02 05:28:48 GMT+9
```

```
America/Vancouver          2024-06-01 13:28:48 PDT
```

```
----- Ch16_04_ex2() -----
```

```
sys_days1:          2000-01-01 00:00:00 UTC
```

```
sys_tse1:           946684800s
```

```
utc_tse1:           946684822s
```

```
num_leap_seconds1: 22s
```

```
tp_now:             2024-06-01 20:28:48 UTC
```

```
num_leap_seconds2: 27s
```

Software Benchmarking

The final example of this chapter describes how to use chrono components to perform elementary software benchmarking. When developing an algorithm that makes heavy use of floating-point arithmetic, one critical decision involves the use of single- vs. double-precision values. Conventional wisdom suggests that a double-precision floating-point algorithm should take roughly twice as long to execute compared to a single-precision variant. One could accept this assertion as always being true, but it's always more prudent to base an important performance-precision trade-off decision using actual timing measurements.

Listing 16-5-1-1 shows the source code for example Ch16_05_ex1(). This example contains demonstration code that exercises a benchmarking timing class named BmTimer. Execution of Ch16_05_ex1() opens with the initialization of `std::vector<float> vec0` and `std::vector<double> vec1`. Both of these vectors contain random values. The ensuing code block defines two lambda expressions, `tr_f32()` and `tr_f64()`, that perform identical calculations using single- and double-precision arithmetic, respectively.

Listing 16-5-1-1. Example Ch16_05 – Ch16_05_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch16_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <cmath>
```

```

#include <iostream>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch16_05.h"
#include "BmTimer.h"
#include "RN.h"

void Ch16_05_ex1()
{
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {2000};
    constexpr size_t vec_size {10'000'000};

    // create test vectors
    auto vec0 = RN::get_vector<float>(vec_size, rng_min, rng_max);
    auto vec1 = RN::get_vector<double>(vec_size, rng_min, rng_max);

    // create test transformation lambdas (std::cbrt(x) is cube root of x)
    auto tr_f32 = [](float x) { return x + std::cbrt(x); };
    auto tr_f64 = [](double x) { return x + std::cbrt(x); };

    // create BmTimer using steady clock
    constexpr size_t num_iter {40};
    constexpr size_t num_alg {2};
    BmTimerSteadyClk bm_timer(num_iter, num_alg);

    std::print("example Ch16_05_ex1 is running, please wait ");

    // execute test algorithms
    for (size_t i {0}; i < num_iter; ++i)
    {
        bm_timer.start(i, 0);
        std::ranges::transform(vec0, vec0.begin(), tr_f32);
        bm_timer.stop(i, 0);

        if (i % 4 == 0)
            std::cout << '.' << std::flush;
    }
}

```



```

for (size_t i {0}; i < num_iter; ++i)
{
    bm_timer.start(i, 1);
    std::ranges::transform(vec1, vec1.begin(), tr_f64);
    bm_timer.stop(i, 1);

    if (i % 4 == 0)
        std::cout << '.' << std::flush;
}

// save results to CSV file
std::println("");
std::string fn {"Ch16_05_ex1_results.csv"};
bm_timer.save_to_csv(fn, "{:.2f}", BmTimerSteadyClk::EtUnit::MilliSec);
std::println("Benchmark times save to file {s}", fn);
}

```

The next code block in `Ch16_05_ex1()` instantiates `BmTimerSteadyClk` `bm_timer(num_iter, num_alg)`. Class `BmTimerSteadyClock` is an alias for `BmTimer<std::chrono::steady_clock>` that exploits elements of the time library to perform benchmark timing measurements. The two constructor arguments for `bm_timer`, `num_iter` and `num_alg`, correspond to the number of test iterations and the number of test algorithms, respectively.

Each for loop in `Ch16_05_ex1()` performs `num_iter` executions of a test algorithm using a previously defined vector and lambda. In the first for loop, execution of `bm_timer.start(i, 0)` records the start time for the i -th iteration of `std::ranges::transform(vec0, vec0.begin(), tr_f32)`. Similarly, execution of `bm_timer.stop(i, 0)` records the stop time. The second for loop performs the same actions using `tr_f64()`. Following the execution of both for loops, `Ch16_05_ex1()` utilizes `bm_timer.save_to_csv(fn, "{:.2f}", BmTimerSteadyClk::EtUnit::MilliSec)` to save `bm_timer`'s time measurements to CSV file.

Listing 16-5-1-2 shows the source code for template class `BmTimer`. Note that this class specifies a template parameter named `CLK`. This parameter represents the chrono clock class that `BmTimer` uses to record time values. Next in Listing 16-5-1-2 is the definition of `chrono::time_point` alias `TP` and an enum class named `EtUnit`. This enum defines time units for member function `BmTimer::save_to_csv()`.

Listing 16-5-1-2. Example Ch16_05 – Class BmTimer

```

//-----
// BmTimer.h
//-----

#ifndef BM_TIMER_H_
#define BM_TIMER_H_
#include <chrono>
#include <format>
#include <fstream>
#include <stdexcept>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "Common.h"

template <class CLK>
class BmTimer
{
    // time point alias
    using TP = std::chrono::time_point<CLK, typename CLK::duration>;

public:
    enum class EtUnit
        { NanoSec, MicroSec, MilliSec, Sec, Default = Sec };

    BmTimer() = delete;

    BmTimer(size_t num_iter, size_t num_alg) : m_NumIter {num_iter},
        m_NumAlg {num_alg}
    {
        static_assert(CLK::is_steady);

        m_StartTimes.resize(num_iter * num_alg);
        m_StopTimes.resize(num_iter * num_alg);
    }

    void save_to_csv(const std::string& fn, const char* fmt,
                    EtUnit et_unit = EtUnit::Default)

```

```

{
    namespace chrono = std::chrono;

    std::ofstream ofs(fn);

    if (!ofs.good())
        throw std::runtime_error("BmTimer::save_to_csv - file open
            error");

    for (size_t i = 0; i < m_NumIter; ++i)
    {
        for (size_t j = 0; j < m_NumAlg; ++j)
        {
            auto t_start = m_StartTimes[i * m_NumAlg + j];
            auto t_stop = m_StopTimes[i * m_NumAlg + j];
            auto t_temp1 = t_stop - t_start;
            auto t_temp2 =
                chrono::duration_cast<std::chrono::duration<double>>
                    (t_temp1);

            double t_elapsed = static_cast<double>(t_temp2.count());
            // seconds

            switch (et_unit)
            {
                case EtUnit::NanoSec:
                    t_elapsed *= 1.0e9;
                    break;

                case EtUnit::MicroSec:
                    t_elapsed *= 1.0e6;
                    break;

                case EtUnit::MilliSec:
                    t_elapsed *= 1.0e3;
                    break;

                default:
                    break;
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

    }

    // write formatted time to output file
    const char* sep = (j + 1 < m_NumAlg) ? ", " : "\n";
    std::string s {std::vformat(fmt, std::make_format_args
        (t_elapsed))};
    std::print(ofs, "{:s}", s);
    std::print(ofs, "{:s}", sep);
    }
}

ofs.close();
}

void start(size_t iter_id, size_t alg_id)
    { m_StartTimes[iter_id * m_NumAlg + alg_id] = CLK::now(); }

void stop(size_t iter_id, size_t alg_id)
    { m_StopTimes[iter_id * m_NumAlg + alg_id] = CLK::now(); }

private:
    size_t m_NumIter {};
    size_t m_NumAlg {};
    std::vector<TP> m_StartTimes {};
    std::vector<TP> m_StopTimes {};
};

// convenience aliases
using BmTimerSteadyClk = BmTimer<std::chrono::steady_clock>;
using BmTimerHighResClk = BmTimer<std::chrono::high_resolution_clock>;

#endif

```

The first statement of class `BmTimer`'s constructor, `static_assert(CLK::is_steady)`, ensures that `BmTimer`'s specified clock class is a steady clock.⁴ The subsequent two statements resize vectors `m_StartTimes` and `m_StopTimes` using the provided arguments.

⁴Using a non-steady clock may yield invalid results.

Next in Listing 16-5-1-2 is the definition of member function `save_to_csv()`. Execution of this function performs elapsed time calculations using the values in `m_StartTimes` and `m_StopTimes`. It also writes these values to the designated CSV file using the time units specified by argument `et_unit`.

Class `BmTimer` member functions `start()` and `stop()` record times to either `m_StartTimes` or `m_StopTimes` using `CLK::now()`. In these functions, vectors `m_StartTimes` and `m_StopTimes` are interpreted as 2D arrays. Calculation of `iter_id * m_NumAlg + alg_id` ensures that a timing measurement is stored at the correct “row” and “column.”

The final two statements of Listing 16-5-1-2 define two `BmTimer` convenience aliases named `BmTimerSteadyClk` and `BmTimerHighResClk`. Recall that `chrono::steady_clock` is always monotonic, while the monotonicity of `chrono::high_resolution_clock` is optional.

Table 16-5 summarizes the timing measurements obtained by running `Ch16_05`’s code on two test computers.⁵ Note that the single-precision algorithm is faster than its double-precision counterpart, but the ratio is closer than one might expect.

Table 16-5. *Benchmark Performance Results for Example Ch16_05 – Mean (Standard Deviation) in Milliseconds*

Platform	Single-Precision	Double-Precision	Ratio (Double/Single)
Test Computer #1	260.7 (3.4)	359.7 (2.1)	1.38
Test Computer #2	91.6 (0.2)	103.5 (0.4)	1.13

`Ch16_05`’s primary purpose is to provide another interesting and practical example of time library features. Its secondary aim is to serve as a reminder that it’s often imprudent to make critical design decisions regarding the performance of an algorithm based on conjecture or mistaken assumptions. Always carry out measurements using techniques that are appropriate for the specific use case.

⁵See Appendix A for specification information regarding the test computers.

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- An instance of class `std::ratio` represents a finite rational number using an integer (`std::intmax_t`) numerator and denominator, which are compile-time constants. Time library classes such as `chrono::duration` and `chrono::time_point` utilize `std::ratio`s to carry out compile-time error checks and simplify time calculations.
- An instance of `chrono::duration` measures the amount of time between two points in time. Each `chrono::duration` holds a tick count and a tick period in seconds. A `chrono::duration` is a rational constant and is programmatically expressed using a `std::ratio`.
- A time library clock bundles an epoch and a tick period. A clock's tick period in seconds is represented using a `std::ratio`. Table 16-3 summarizes important aspects of each time library clock.
- A `chrono::time_point` represents a point in time. It's implemented as a positive or negative time interval (`std::duration`) from a clock's epoch.
- STL template class `std::formatter<std::chrono::sys_time>` defines default formatting rules for time library objects. When using `std::println()` or `std::format()`, you can also use one of the many explicit specifiers to format a date or time.

CHAPTER 17

File Systems

This chapter explains important file system classes and functions. It also describes useful programming techniques that you can exploit to perform universal file system operations. Topics discussed include

- Class `std::filesystem::path`
- Class `std::filesystem::recursive_directory_iterator`
- Class `std::filesystem::directory_entry`
- Directory creation and removal functions
- Directory and file copy functions
- File type functions

STL's file system classes and functions are defined in namespace `std::filesystem`. References to this namespace in the text and source code are prefixed using `fs::`. Prefix `chrono::` is also employed for time library classes from namespace `std::chrono`. The discussions in this chapter assume that you have a basic understanding of Windows, Linux, or macOS directories, files, and pathnames.

File System Path Classes

One of namespace `std::filesystem`'s most useful classes is `fs::path`. An instance of class `fs::path` encompasses a character string pathname that denotes a file system path. This representation involves only lexical and syntactical aspects. Principal details to understand about class `fs::path` include

- Elements of a path include a root name, root directory, and a sequence of filenames partitioned using separator characters. The root name and root directory components of a `fs::path` are optional.

- Class `fs::path` supports a variety of pathname representations, including absolute, relative, and canonical.
- A `fs::path` object does not necessarily correspond to the existence of an actual directory or file on a storage device.
- The pathname encompassed by a `fs::path` object is not guaranteed to be valid for a particular operating system or any of its supported file systems.
- The maximum length of a `fs::path`'s pathname is established by the operating system. The operating system also determines valid pathname characters.

Example function `Ch17_01_ex1()`, shown in Listing 17-1-1, introduces class `fs::path`. In its opening code block, `Ch17_01_ex1()` utilizes `fs::path path1 = fs::current_path()` to obtain the current working directory. Execution of `fs::current_path()` returns an absolute pathname in native OS format (e.g., `X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17` or `/home/homer/CppSTL/Code/Chapter17`). The subsequent `std::println()` statement utilizes `path1.string()` to print `path1`'s pathname.¹ The next statement in Listing 17-1-1, `path1.append("test1.txt")`, appends either `\test1.txt` or `/test1.txt` to `path1`. Note that the appended text includes an OS-specific separator character.

Listing 17-1-1. Example `Ch17_01 - Ch17_01_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch17_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <filesystem>
#include <fstream>
#include "Ch17_01.h"
#include "MF.h"

namespace fs = std::filesystem;

void Ch17_01_ex1()
```

¹C++26 defines a new specialization, `std::formatter<std::filesystem::path>`, that facilitates direct formatting of `fs::path` objects using `std::println()`, `std::format()`, etc.


```

{
    // using fs::current_path
    fs::path path1 = fs::current_path();
    std::println("\npath1: {:s}", path1.string());
    path1.append("test1.txt");
    std::println("path1: {:s}", path1.string());

    // using fs::temp_directory_path
    fs::path path2 = fs::temp_directory_path();
    std::println("\npath2: {:s}", path2.string());
    path2 /= "test2.txt";
    std::println("path2: {:s}", path2.string());

    // using fs::current_path - bad path
    fs::path path3 = fs::current_path();
    std::println("\npath3: {:s}", path3.string());
    path3 /= "Bad//Filename.txt";
    std::println("path3: {:s}", path3.string());

    std::ofstream ofs(path3);
    std::println("\nofs.good(): {:s} (expecting false)", ofs.good());
}

```

The next code block in Listing 17-1-1 exploits `fs::path path2 = fs::temp_directory_path()` to obtain the current temporary directory. The directory path returned by `fs::temp_directory_path()` is guaranteed to exist. In the same code block, execution of `path2 /= "test2.txt"` appends an OS-specific directory separator to `path2` (if necessary) followed by the text `test2.txt`.

The final code block of `Ch17_01_ex1()` utilizes `fs::path path3 = fs::current_path()` and `path3 /= "Bad//Filename.txt"` to form an invalid pathname for demonstration purposes. Recall that the pathname represented by a `fs::path` object need not be valid. However, using `path3` to create a file will fail as shown during the instantiation of `std::ofstream ofs(path3)`.

In Listing 17-1-2, example function `Ch17_01_ex2()` exercises `fs::path path1 = fs::current_path() / "test1.txt"` to create an absolute pathname for file `test1.txt` in the current working directory. The subsequent code block demonstrates the use of various `fs::path` decomposition functions that extract distinct components of a `fs::path`.

Listing 17-1-2. Example Ch17_01 - Ch17_01_ex2()

```

void Ch17_01_ex2()
{
    // create test path
    fs::path path1 = fs::current_path() / "test1.txt";
    std::println("path1:           {:s}", path1.string());

    // using fs::path decomposition functions
    fs::path path1_root_name = path1.root_name();
    fs::path path1_root_dir = path1.root_directory();
    fs::path path1_root_path = path1.root_path();
    fs::path path1_relative_path = path1.relative_path();
    fs::path path1_parent_path = path1.parent_path();
    fs::path path1_filename = path1.filename();
    fs::path path1_stem = path1.stem();
    fs::path path1_extension = path1.extension();

    std::println("path1_root_name:    {:s}", path1_root_name.string());
    std::println("path1_root_dir:     {:s}", path1_root_dir.string());
    std::println("path1_root_path:    {:s}", path1_root_path.string());
    std::println("path1_relative_path: {:s}", path1_relative_path.string());
    std::println("path1_parent_path:  {:s}", path1_parent_path.string());
    std::println("path1_filename:    {:s}", path1_filename.string());
    std::println("path1_stem:        {:s}", path1_stem.string());
    std::println("path1_extension:   {:s}", path1_extension.string());
}

```

All of the `fs::path` member functions used in `Ch17_01_ex2()` return objects of type `fs::path`. Tables 17-1 and 17-2 summarize the results obtained using test computers running Windows and Linux. Note in these tables that the decomposition functions properly handle the presence or absence of a drive letter (i.e., root name) specifier.

Table 17-1. *File System Decomposition Function Usage Results – Windows*

Path Component	Result
absolute path	X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17\test1.txt
root_name	X:
root_dir	\
root_path	X:\
relative_path	CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17\test1.txt
parent_path	X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17
filename	test1.txt
stem	test1
extension	.txt

Table 17-2. *File System Decomposition Function Usage Results – Linux*

Path Component	Result
absolute path	/home/homer/SambaWin/CppSTL/SourceCode/Chapter17/ test1.txt
root_name	
root_dir	/
root_path	/
relative_path	home/homer/SambaWin/CppSTL/SourceCode/Chapter17/test1. txt
parent_path	/home/homer/SambaWin/CppSTL/SourceCode/Chapter17
filename	test1.txt
stem	test1
extension	.txt

The next example elucidates the use of common fs directory creation, existence, and removal functions. In Listing 17-1-3, execution of `Ch17_01_ex3()` begins with the initialization of `fs::path sub_dir1 = fs::current_path() / "sub1"`. The ensuing code block utilizes `rc = fs::exists(sub_dir1)` to ascertain the existence of `sub_dir1`.

Listing 17-1-3. Example Ch17_01 - Ch17_01_ex3()

```
void Ch17_01_ex3()
{
    // initialize test subdirectory path
    fs::path sub_dir1 = fs::current_path() / "sub1";

    // using fs::exists
    bool rc = fs::exists(sub_dir1);
    std::println("\nfs::exists({:s})\nrc = {:s}", sub_dir1.string(), rc);

    if (!rc)
    {
        // using fs::create_directory
        rc = fs::create_directory(sub_dir1);
        std::println("\nfs::create_directory({:s})\nrc = {:s}",
            sub_dir1.string(), rc);

        if (!rc)
            return;
    }

    // write a test file to sub_dir1
    fs::path fn1 = sub_dir1 / "TestA.txt";
    rc = MF::create_test_file(fn1);
    std::println("\nwrite_test_file({:s})\nrc = {:s}", fn1.string(), rc);

    // using fs::exists
    rc = fs::exists(fn1);
    std::println("\nfs::exists({:s})\nrc = {:s}", fn1.string(), rc);

    // using fs::remove to delete test file
    rc = fs::remove(fn1);
    std::println("\nfs::remove({:s})\nrc = {:s}", fn1.string(), rc);
}
```

```

// using fs::remove to delete test subdirectory (must be empty)
rc = fs::remove(sub_dir1);
std::println("\nfs::remove({:s})\nrc = {:s}", sub_dir1.string(), rc);
}

```

If `sub_dir1` does not exist, `Ch17_01_ex3()` exercises `rc = fs::create_directory(sub_dir1)` to create it. File system function `fs::create_directory(sub_dir1)` returns true if it created the specified directory; otherwise, it returns false. A value of false is also returned if the specified directory already exists. This scenario is considered later in greater detail.

The next code block in `Ch17_01_ex3()` utilizes `fs::path fn1 = sub_dir1 / "TestA.txt"` and `MF::create_test_file(fn1)` (see Listing 17-2-2-2) to create test file `fn1`. Another example usage of `fs::exists()` follows. The penultimate code block of `Ch17_01_ex3()` exercises `rc = fs::remove(fn1)` to remove test file `fn1`. The execution of this function returns true if the specified file was deleted. The final code block of `Ch17_01_ex3()` exploits `rc = fs::remove(sub_dir1)` to delete `sub_dir1`. When using `fs::remove()` to delete a directory, the directory *must* be empty. Otherwise, a `fs::filesystem_error` exception may be thrown. File system exceptions are covered later in this chapter.

Listing 17-1-4 shows the source code for example `Ch17_01_ex4()`, which illustrates how to create and delete multiple levels of directories. The opening code block `Ch17_01_ex4()` utilizes `fs::temp_directory_path()` and several `fs::path` append operations to initialize `fs::path sub_tree_top` and `fs::path sub_tree_bot`. In the subsequent code block, execution of `fs::create_directories(sub_tree_bot)` creates directory `sub_tree_bot` including any required intermediate directories. For the current example, this creates the directory subtree `d1/d2/d3/d4` in `fs::temp_directory_path()`.

Listing 17-1-4. Example `Ch17_01 - Ch17_01_ex4()`

```

void Ch17_01_ex4()
{
    // create fs::paths
    fs::path base_dir = fs::temp_directory_path();
    fs::path sub_tree_top = base_dir / "d1";
    fs::path sub_tree_bot = sub_tree_top / "d2/d3/d4";
}

```

```

// path sub_tree_bot exists?
bool rc = fs::exists(sub_tree_bot);
std::println("\nfs::exists({:s})\nrc = {:s}", sub_tree_bot.
string(), rc);

if (!rc)
{
    // using fs::create_directories to create sub_tree_bot
    rc = fs::create_directories(sub_tree_bot);
    std::println("\nfs::create_directories({:s})\nrc = {:s}",
        sub_tree_bot.string(), rc);

    if (!rc)
        return;
}

// write test file to sub_tree_top
fs::path fn1 = sub_tree_top / "TestA.txt";
rc = MF::create_test_file(fn1);
std::println("\nfn1.generic_string(): {:s}", fn1.generic_string());
std::println("fn1.string():           {:s}", fn1.string());
std::println("rc:                       {:s}", rc);

// write test file to sub_tree_bot
fs::path fn2 = sub_tree_bot / "TestB.txt";
rc = MF::create_test_file(fn2);
std::println("\nfn2.generic_string(): {:s}", fn2.generic_string());
std::println("fn2.string():           {:s}", fn2.string());
std::println("rc:                       {:s}", rc);

// using fs::remove_all to delete sub_tree_top
auto num_deletes = fs::remove_all(sub_tree_top);
std::println("\nfs::remove_all({:s})\nnum_deletes = {:d}",
    sub_tree_top.generic_string(), num_deletes);
}

```

The next code block in `Ch17_01_ex4()` utilizes `MF::create_test_file(fn1)` to create file `fs::path fn1`, whose value equals `sub_tree_top / "TestA.txt"`. The ensuing `std::println()` statement exercises `fn1.generic_string()` to print the value of `fn1`. Execution of this function returns a `std::string` of `fn1`'s encompassed pathname in `fs` generic format. This is different than `fn1.string()`, which returns a `std::string` in native OS format. Native pathnames are sometimes required when calling OS-specific API functions.

Execution of `Ch17_01_ex4()` continues with the creation of test file `fs::path fn2 = sub_tree_bot / "TestB.txt"` using `MF::create_test_file(fn2)`. The final code block of `Ch17_01_ex4()` exploits `num_deletes = fs::remove_all(sub_tree_top)` to completely remove directory `sub_tree_top` including all files and lower-level subdirectories. Following execution of `fs::remove_all()`, `num_deletes` contains the total number of deleted directories and files. The results for example `Ch17_01` follow this paragraph. For function `Ch17_01_ex4()`, note the difference between the generic and native pathname formats on a Windows system.

```

----- Results for example Ch17_01 -----
----- Ch17_01_ex1() -----
path1: X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17
path1: X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17\test1.txt

path2: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\
path2: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\test2.txt

path3: X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17
path3: X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17\Bad//Filename.txt

ofs.good(): false (expecting false)

----- Ch17_01_ex2() -----
path1: X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17\test1.txt
path1_root_name: X:
path1_root_dir: \
path1_root_path: X:\
path1_relative_path: CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17\test1.txt
path1_parent_path: X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17

```

CHAPTER 17 FILE SYSTEMS

```
path1_filename:    test1.txt
path1_stem:       test1
path1_extension:  .txt
```

```
----- Ch17_01_ex3() -----
```

```
fs::exists(X:\\CppSTL\\SourceCode\\Chapter17\\sub1)
rc = false
```

```
fs::create_directory(X:\\CppSTL\\SourceCode\\Chapter17\\sub1)
rc = true
```

```
write_test_file(X:\\CppSTL\\SourceCode\\Chapter17\\sub1\\TestA.txt)
rc = true
```

```
fs::exists(X:\\CppSTL\\SourceCode\\Chapter17\\sub1\\TestA.txt)
rc = true
```

```
fs::remove(X:\\CppSTL\\SourceCode\\Chapter17\\sub1\\TestA.txt)
rc = true
```

```
fs::remove(X:\\CppSTL\\SourceCode\\Chapter17\\sub1)
rc = true
```

```
----- Ch17_01_ex4() -----
```

```
fs::exists(C:\\Users\\dan\\AppData\\Local\\Temp\\d1\\d2\\d3\\d4)
rc = false
```

```
fs::create_directories(C:\\Users\\dan\\AppData\\Local\\Temp\\d1\\d2\\d3\\d4)
rc = true
```

```
fn1.generic_string(): C:/Users/dan/AppData/Local/Temp/d1/TestA.txt
fn1.string():         C:\\Users\\dan\\AppData\\Local\\Temp\\d1\\TestA.txt
rc:                   true
```

```
fn2.generic_string(): C:/Users/dan/AppData/Local/Temp/d1/d2/d3/d4/TestB.txt
fn2.string():         C:\\Users\\dan\\AppData\\Local\\Temp\\d1\\d2\\d3\\d4\\TestB.txt
rc:                   true
```

```
fs::remove_all(C:/Users/dan/AppData/Local/Temp/d1)
num_deletes = 6
```


File System Directory Iterator Classes

For many applications, searching a directory for files is a common programming requirement. To handle this need, the file system library provides a set of classes that can be used to iterate the elements of a directory, its files, and any subdirectories. Listing 17-2-1 shows the source code for example `Ch17_02_ex1()`. This example describes how to use classes `fs::recursive_directory_iterator` and `fs::directory_entry`. It also covers a few ancillary functions related to these classes.

Listing 17-2-1. Example Ch17_01 - Ch17_02_ex1()

```
void Ch17_02_ex1()
{
    // NOTE - change code_path to book's source code directory on
    // your system
#ifdef _WIN32 || defined(_WIN64)
    fs::path code_path = "x:\\CppSTL\\SourceCode";
#else
    fs::path code_path = "/home/homer/SambaWin/CppSTL/SourceCode";
#endif
    std::println("code_path: {s}", code_path.string());

    // using fs::is_directory
    bool is_dir = fs::is_directory(code_path);
    std::println("fs::is_directory({s}): {s}", code_path.string(),
        is_dir);

    if (!is_dir)
        return;

    // initialize recursive_directory_iterator
    fs::directory_options options = fs::directory_options::skip_
        permission_denied;
    fs::recursive_directory_iterator rdi =
        fs::recursive_directory_iterator(code_path, options);

    // search for .cpp and .h files
    size_t num_files {0};
```

```

size_t num_files_h {0};
size_t num_files_cpp {0};

for (const fs::directory_entry& dir_entry : rdi)
{
    // using is_regular_file
    if (fs::is_regular_file(dir_entry))
    {
        // extract extension
        fs::path file = dir_entry.path();
        const std::string& file_ext = file.extension().string();

        // update file counts
        ++num_files;

        if (file_ext == ".cpp")
            ++num_files_cpp;
        else if (file_ext == ".h")
            ++num_files_h;
    }
}

std::println("\nnum_files:      {:d}", num_files);
std::println("num_files_cpp:  {:d}", num_files_cpp);
std::println("num_files_h:    {:d}", num_files_h);
}

```

The opening code block of `Ch17_02_ex1()` initializes `fs::path code_path` to the root source code directory for this book. Before executing this example, you *must* change the value of `code_path` to the correct directory for your system.² In the next code block, file system function `fs::is_directory(code_path)` is exercised to confirm that `code_path` is a directory.

The first statement in the subsequent code block, `fs::directory_options options = fs::directory_options::skip_permission_denied`, sets traversal options for `fs::recursive_directory_iterator`. Option `fs::directory_options::skip_permission_denied` instructs `fs::recursive_directory_iterator` to skip any

²See Appendix A for more information regarding this book's source code.

directory that would generate a permission denied error. You can also specify `fs::follow_directory_symlink`, which enables traversals of any symbolic links. Execution of `rdir = fs::recursive_directory_iterator(code_path, options)` initializes a `fs::recursive_directory_iterator` that will be used to iterate over the `fs::directory_entry` elements of `code_path` and its subdirectories. Before continuing, it warrants mentioning that the current example uses explicit class names to accelerate understanding of classes that might be new to you. For production code, the use of keyword `auto` is probably a better option.

Each iteration of `for (const fs::directory_entry& dir_entry : rdir)` updates `dir_entry` so that it references the next element of `[rdir.begin(), rdir.end())`. The first range for loop statement, `if (fs::is_regular_file(dir_entry))`, tests `dir_entry` to see if it references a normal file. Table 17-3 lists other supported file type checks that can be performed using `fs::directory_entry` or `fs::path` objects. You'll study other examples of these functions throughout this chapter.

Table 17-3. *Supported File Type Checks for `fs::directory_entry` and `fs::path` Objects*

Name	<code>fs::directory_entry</code>	<code>fs::path</code>
<code>is_block_file</code>	Y	Y
<code>is_character_file</code>	Y	Y
<code>is_directory</code>	Y	Y
<code>is_empty</code>	N	Y
<code>is_fifo</code>	Y	Y
<code>is_other</code>	Y	Y
<code>is_regular_file</code>	Y	Y
<code>is_socket</code>	Y	Y
<code>is_symlink</code>	Y	Y
<code>status_known</code>	N	Y

If `fs::is_regular_file(dir_entry)` is true, `Ch17_02_ex1()` utilizes `fs::path file = dir_entry.path()` and `const std::string& file_ext = p.extension().string()` to obtain a reference to file's extension. The subsequent code block updates counters `num_files`, `num_files_cpp`, and `num_files_h`.

Many applications use temporary files to maintain intermediate results or other data. Over time, the number of old temporary files may become large enough to adversely affect overall system performance. Performing a periodic temporary file cleanup will help mitigate this condition. Listing 17-2-2-1 shows the source code for example `Ch17_02_ex2()`. This example demonstrates how to traverse the temporary file directory and identify old files based on a threshold value in days.

Listing 17-2-2-1. Example `Ch17_01 - Ch17_02_ex2()`

```
void Ch17_02_ex2()
{
    // set old file threshold in days
    constexpr chrono::days num_days {15};

    // base path for old file search
    fs::path base_path = fs::temp_directory_path();

    // get current time
    auto now = chrono::file_clock::now();

    // create old test files (ensures that some files are found)
    constexpr size_t num_levels {4};
    constexpr size_t num_files {3};
    fs::path test_path = base_path / "Ch17_02_ex3";

    std::println("test_path: {s}", test_path.string());

    MF::create_test_files(test_path, "Ch17_02_ex3", num_levels, num_files,
        now, -num_days, false);

    // set recursive directory iterator options
    auto options = fs::directory_options::skip_permission_denied;
    auto rdi = fs::recursive_directory_iterator(base_path, options);
```

```

size_t num_directories {};
size_t num_old_files {};
constexpr size_t num_old_files_print_max {25};

// search base_path for old files
for (auto const& dir_entry : rdi)
{
    // using is_directory
    if (fs::is_directory(dir_entry))
        ++num_directories;

    // using is_regular_file
    if (fs::is_regular_file(dir_entry))
    {
        auto lwt = dir_entry.last_write_time();

        // found old file?
        if (now - lwt >= num_days)
        {
            if (++num_old_files <= num_old_files_print_max)
            {
                auto s = MF::to_string(lwt);
                std::println("old {:2d}: {:s} {:s}", num_old_files, s,
                    dir_entry.path().string());
            }
        }
    }
}

// print counts and remove test_path
std::println("\nnum_directories: {:d}", num_directories);
std::println("num_old_files:   {:d}", num_old_files);
fs::remove_all(test_path);
}

```

The opening code block in `Ch17_02_ex2()` initializes `chrono::days num_days {15}` as an old file threshold. Object `fs::path base_path`, which is the top-level traversal path, is then initialized using `fs::temp_directory_path()`. The next code block

utilizes `auto now = chrono::file_clock::now()` to obtain the current time. Example `Ch17_02_ex2()` utilizes `chrono::file_clock` since this is the same clock that's used by other `fs` classes.

To ensure that the traversal code finds some files, `Ch17_02_ex2()` exploits `MF::create_test_files()` to create a small subtree of test directories and files under `base_path`. Listing 17-2-2-2 shows the source code for this function, which is discussed later. Following the call to `MF::create_test_files()`, `Ch17_02_ex2()` utilizes `auto options = fs::directory_options::skip_permission_denied` and `auto rdi = fs::recursive_directory_iterator(base_path, options)` to initialize a recursive directory iterator just like the previous example, except for the use of keyword `auto`.

The recursive directory iterator traversal code in `Ch17_02_ex2()` follows the same pattern as the previous example. The first code block within the range for loop exercises `fs::is_directory(dir_entry)` to count the number of directories in `base_path`. If `fs::is_regular_file(dir_entry)` is true, execution of `lwt = dir_entry.last_write_time()` acquires `dir_entry`'s last data modification time. If `(now - lwt >= num_days)` is true, `dir_entry` is at least `num_days` old. Execution of `MF::to_string(lwt)` (see `Common/MF.cpp`) converts `lwt` to a `std::string` for display purposes. Note that the display code in the range for loop prints a maximum of `num_old_files_print_max` files. A call to `fs::remove(dir_entry.path())` can be inserted here to delete old file `dir_entry`.

Listing 17-2-2-2 shows the source code for `MF::create_test_files()`. As previously mentioned, this function creates a small subtree of directories and files under directory `base_dir`. Argument `num_levels` specifies the number of directory levels while `num_files` denotes the number of test files to create in each subdirectory. Arguments `tp_base` and `tp_adj_days` are used to set the last data modification time for each created test file as you'll soon see.

Listing 17-2-2-2. Example `Ch17_02 - MF::create_test_files()`

```
void MF::create_test_files(const fs::path& base_dir, const std::string&
    base_name, size_t num_levels, size_t num_files,
    const chrono::time_point<chrono::file_clock>& tp_base, chrono::days
    tp_adj_days, bool verbose)
{
    // create base_dir
    if (fs::exists(base_dir))
    {
```

```

    if (!fs::is_directory(base_dir))
        throw std::runtime_error("fs::is_directory() failed");
}
else
{
    if (!fs::create_directory(base_dir))
        throw std::runtime_error("fs::create_directory() failed");
}

fs::path sub_dir = base_dir;

// create subdirs and files
for (size_t i = 0; i < num_levels; ++i)
{
    sub_dir /= std::format("D{:02d}", i);

    if (!fs::exists(sub_dir))
    {
        if (!fs::create_directory(sub_dir))
            throw std::runtime_error("fs::create_directory() failed");
    }

    for (size_t j = 0; j < num_files; ++j)
    {
        fs::path fn = sub_dir /
            std::format("{:s}-{:02d}-{:02d}.txt", base_name, i, j);

        if (!MF::create_test_file(fn.string()))
            throw std::runtime_error("MF::create_test_file() failed");

        if (verbose)
            std::println("created {:s}", fn.string());

        // set last write_time
        if (tp_adj_days != chrono::days{0})
            fs::last_write_time(fn, tp_base + tp_adj_days);
    }
}
}

```

```

bool MF::create_test_file(const std::string& name, bool empty)
{
    // create test file
    std::ofstream ofs(name, std::ios_base::out | std::ios_base::trunc);

    if (!ofs.good())
        return false;

    if (!empty)
    {
        // write sample data to test file
        auto tp_now = chrono::system_clock::now();
        chrono::zoned_time tp_now_zt {chrono::current_zone(), tp_now};

        std::println(ofs, "test file: {s}", name);
        std::println(ofs, "created on: {0:%F} {0:%T} {0:%Z}", tp_now);
        std::println(ofs, "created on: {0:%F} {0:%T} {0:%Z}", tp_now_zt);
    }

    ofs.close();
    return !ofs.fail();
}

bool MF::create_test_file(const fs::path& name, bool empty)
{
    return MF::create_test_file(name.string(), empty);
}

```

The opening code block of `MF::create_test_files()` exercises `fs::exists(base_dir)`, `fs::is_directory(base_dir)`, and `fs::create_directory(base_dir)` to ensure that `base_dir` exists. The first code block in `MF::create_test_files()`'s outer for loop creates subdirectory `sub_dir` `/= std::format("D{:02d}", i)`. The inner for loop creates test files named `fs::path fn = sub_dir / std::format("{s}-{:02d}-{:02d}.txt", base_name, i, j)`. For function `Ch17_02_ex2()`, the directory-file structure created by these for loops looks like the following:


```

Ch17_02_ex3\D00\Ch17_02_ex3-00-00.txt
Ch17_02_ex3\D00\Ch17_02_ex3-00-01.txt
Ch17_02_ex3\D00\Ch17_02_ex3-00-02.txt
Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\Ch17_02_ex3-01-00.txt
Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\Ch17_02_ex3-01-01.txt
Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\Ch17_02_ex3-01-02.txt
Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\D02\Ch17_02_ex3-02-00.txt
Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\D02\Ch17_02_ex3-02-01.txt
Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\D02\Ch17_02_ex3-02-02.txt
Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\D02\D03\Ch17_02_ex3-03-00.txt
Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\D02\D03\Ch17_02_ex3-03-01.txt
Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\D02\D03\Ch17_02_ex3-03-02.txt

```

The other item to note near the bottom of Listing 17-2-2-2 is the utilization of `fs::last_write_time(fn, tp_base + tp_adj_days)`. Execution of this overload changes the last data modification time for file `fn` to `tp_base + tp_adj_days`. Recall that example function `Ch17_02_ex2()` called `MF::create_test_files()` using values `now` (`chrono::file_clock::now()`) and `-num_days` (`chrono::days num_days {15}`). This means that the new last data modification time for file `fn` is 15 days earlier than `now`.³ The results for example `Ch17_02` follow this paragraph. These results will vary depending on the target system.

```

----- Results for example Ch17_02 -----
----- Ch17_02_ex1() -----
code_path: x:\CppSTL\SourceCode
fs::is_directory(x:\CppSTL\SourceCode): true

num_files:      10219
num_files_cpp:  318
num_files_h:    175

```

³When using `fs::last_write_time()` to set a file time, the actual time may vary depending on the time granularity of the underlying file system.

CHAPTER 17 FILE SYSTEMS

----- Ch17_02_ex2() -----

test_path: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3

old 1: [2024-05-24 13:49:27]

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3\D00\Ch17_02_ex3-00-00.txt

old 2: [2024-05-24 13:49:27]

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3\D00\Ch17_02_ex3-00-01.txt

old 3: [2024-05-24 13:49:27]

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3\D00\Ch17_02_ex3-00-02.txt

old 4: [2024-05-24 13:49:27]

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\Ch17_02_ex3-01-00.txt

old 5: [2024-05-24 13:49:27]

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\Ch17_02_ex3-01-01.txt

old 6: [2024-05-24 13:49:27]

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\Ch17_02_ex3-01-02.txt

old 7: [2024-05-24 13:49:27]

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\D02\Ch17_02_ex3-02-00.txt

old 8: [2024-05-24 13:49:27]

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\D02\Ch17_02_ex3-02-01.txt

old 9: [2024-05-24 13:49:27]

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\D02\Ch17_02_ex3-02-02.txt

old 10: [2024-05-24 13:49:27]

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\D02\D03\Ch17_02_ex3-03-00.txt

old 11: [2024-05-24 13:49:27]

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\D02\D03\Ch17_02_ex3-03-01.txt

old 12: [2024-05-24 13:49:27]

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_02_ex3\D00\D01\D02\D03\Ch17_02_ex3-03-02.txt

num_directories: 25

num_old_files: 12

File System Helper Functions

Namespace `std::filesystem` includes numerous helper functions that carry out useful operations using `fs::paths`. This section covers some of these functions. It also discusses exception class `fs::filesystem_error`.

Listing 17-3-1 shows the source code for `Ch17_03_ex1()`, which highlights the use of functions that generate various forms of a `fs::path` object.

Listing 17-3-1. Example Ch17_03 – Ch17_03_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch17_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <filesystem>
#include "Ch17_03.h"
#include "MF.h"

namespace fs = std::filesystem;

void Ch17_03_ex1()
{
    auto print_path_info = []
        (const char* msg, const fs::path& p)
    {
        // print paths
        std::println("\n{s}", msg);
        std::println("raw string:    {s}", p.string());
        std::println("generic string: {s}", p.generic_string());

        // compose path forms
        fs::path absolute = fs::absolute(p);
        fs::path canonical = fs::canonical(p);
        fs::path relative = fs::relative(p);
        std::println("absolute:    {s}", absolute.string());
        std::println("canonical:   {s}", canonical.string());
        std::println("relative:    {s}", relative.string());
    };
};
```

```

// print_path_info example #1
fs::path path1 = "../..../test1.txt";
MF::create_test_file(path1);
print_path_info("path1 information:", path1);
fs::remove(path1);

// print_path_info example #2
fs::path path2_base = fs::current_path() / "D0";
fs::path path2 = path2_base / "D1/D2";
fs::create_directories(path2);

path2 /= "test2.txt";
MF::create_test_file(path2);
print_path_info("path2 information:", path2);
fs::remove_all(path2_base);
}

```

Function `Ch17_03_ex1()` commences with the definition of lambda expression `print_path_info()`, which prints path information related to argument `const fs::path& p`. The first two `std::println()` statements in this lambda utilize `p.string()` and `p.generic_string()` to print the pathname encompassed in `p`. Recall that the former returns a `std::string` pathname in native OS format, while the latter returns a pathname in `fs` (i.e., `std::filesystem`) generic format.

The next three statements generate various `fs::path` formats. For example, `fs::path absolute = fs::absolute(p)` composes an unambiguous path to the file system object represented by `p`. Per the ISO C++23 specification, implementations are “strongly encouraged” to avoid file system queries and nonexistent file errors (i.e., `fs::exists(p)` is false) in `fs::absolute()`, but this is not guaranteed.

Next is `fs::path canonical = fs::canonical(p)`, which composes an absolute path in `fs` generic format that lacks symbolic link, dot, or dot-dot elements. Execution of `fs::canonical(p)` throws an exception if the file specified by `p` does not exist.

The final path composition example, `fs::path relative = fs::relative(p)`, composes a `fs::path` relative (non-absolute) to `fs::current_path()`. In this usage example, execution of `fs::relative(p)` throws an exception if an OS API error prevents successful composition of the relative path. More about this shortly.

The remaining code in `Ch17_03_ex1()` exercises `print_path_info()`. The first example uses `fs::path path1 = ".././test1.txt"` as a test path, while the second example uses `fs::current_path() / "D0/D1/D2/test2.txt"`. Here's an example of the output that `print_path_info()` produced on a Windows system:

```
path1 information:
raw string:      .././test1.txt
generic string: .././test1.txt
absolute:       X:\CppSTL\test1.txt
canonical:      \\carbon2\SambaShare\CppSTL\test1.txt
relative:       ..\..\test1.txt

path2 information:
raw string:     X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17\D0\D1\D2\test2.txt
generic string: X:/CppSTL/SourceCode/Chapter17/D0/D1/D2/test2.txt
absolute:      X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17\D0\D1\D2\test2.txt
canonical:     \\carbon2\SambaShare\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17\D0\D1\D2\
               test2.txt
relative:      D0\D1\D2\test2.txt
```

For Linux, the output looks like this:

```
path1 information:
raw string:      .././test1.txt
generic string: .././test1.txt
absolute:       /home/homer/SambaWin/CppSTL/SourceCode/Chapter17/./././
               test1.txt
canonical:     /home/homer/SambaWin/CppSTL/test1.txt
relative:      .././test1.txt

path2 information:
raw string:     /home/homer/SambaWin/CppSTL/SourceCode/Chapter17/D0/D1/D2/
               test2.txt
generic string: /home/homer/SambaWin/CppSTL/SourceCode/Chapter17/D0/D1/D2/
               test2.txt
absolute:     /home/homer/SambaWin/CppSTL/SourceCode/Chapter17/D0/D1/D2/
               test2.txt
```

```
canonical:    /home/homer/SambaWin/CppSTL/SourceCode/Chapter17/D0/D1/D2/
              test2.txt
relative:    D0/D1/D2/test2.txt
```

The `std::filesystem` examples presented thus far in this chapter have exercised function overloads that throw a `fs::filesystem_error` exception if an underlying OS API error occurs. Most `fs` functions also define a `noexcept` overload that returns error information via a `std::error_code`. Listing 17-3-2 shows the source code for example `Ch17_03_ex2()`, which demonstrates both error reporting methods in greater detail.

Listing 17-3-2. Example `Ch17_03 - Ch17_03_ex2()`

```
void create_dir(const char* msg, const fs::path& dir)
{
    std::println("\n{:s} - dir: {:s}", msg, dir.string());
    // using fs::create_directory (noexcept) and std::error_code
    std::error_code ec {};
    if (fs::create_directory(dir, ec))
        std::println("#1 - created directory {:s}", dir.string());
    else
    {
        if (!ec)
            std::println("#1 - directory {:s} already exists",
                dir.string());
        else
        {
            std::println("ec.value:  {:d}", ec.value());
            std::println("ec.message: {:s}", ec.message());
        }
    }
    // using fs::create_directory and fs::filesystem_error
    try
    {
        if (fs::create_directory(dir))
            std::println("#2 - created directory {:s}", dir.string());
    }
```

```

    else
        std::println("#2 - directory {:s} already exists",
            dir.string());
}

catch (const fs::filesystem_error& ex)
{
    // std::exception information
    std::println("\ncaught fs::filesystem_error exception");
    std::println("what():          {:s}", ex.what());

    // fs::filesystem_error information
    std::println("path1():          {:s}", ex.path1().string());
    std::println("path2():          {:s}", ex.path2().string());
    std::println("code().value():   {:d}", ex.code().value());
    std::println("code().message(): {:s}", ex.code().message());
}
}

void Ch17_03_ex2()
{
    // using create_dir with valid path
    fs::path dir1 = fs::temp_directory_path() / "good_dir_name";
    create_dir("test case #1", dir1);
    create_dir("test case #2", dir1);
    fs::remove(dir1);

    // using create_dir with invalid path
    fs::path dir2 = fs::temp_directory_path() / "bad//_dir_name";
    create_dir("test case #3", dir2);
}

```

Listing 17-3-2 opens with the definition of a function named `create_dir()`. Execution of this function exercises two different overloads of `fs::create_directory()`.

Near the top of `create_dir()`, `fs::create_directory(dir, ec)` is utilized to create directory `dir`. This function returns `true` if `dir` is *newly* created; otherwise, `false` is returned. Note that a return value of `false` includes the case of an existing directory with the same name as `dir`. Should an OS API error occur during the execution of

`fs::create_directory(dir, ec)`, an OS-specific error code is returned via argument `std::error_code ec`. If `fs::create_directory(dir, ec)` returns `false`, `create_dir()` tests `ec` to ascertain if `dir` already exists or if an OS API error occurred. If it's the latter, `create_dir()` prints `ec.value()` and `ec.message()`, which contain an OS-specific error code and message.

The second part of `create_dir()` utilizes `fs::create_directory(dir)` and a try-catch construct to create directory `dir`. Like its `std::error_code` overload counterpart, execution of `fs::create_directory(dir)` returns `true` if `dir` is newly created; otherwise, it returns `false` (`dir` already exists). Should an OS API occur that prevents successful creation of `dir`, `fs::create_directory()` throws a `fs::filesystem_error` exception.

In `create_dir()`'s catch block, `ex.path1()` returns a `fs::path` that corresponds to `dir`, while `ex.code().value()` and `ex.code().message()` contains OS-specific error information. More generally, when a `fs` function throws `fs::filesystem_error` exception& `ex`, `ex.path1()` corresponds to the first `fs::path` argument of the function that threw the exception, while `ex.path2()` corresponds to the second `fs::path` argument (if any). Execution of `ex.code()` returns a `const std::error_code&` reference that contains OS-specific information regarding the exception.

The C++ code in function `Ch17_03_ex2()` exercises `create_dir()` using both valid and invalid directory names.

Example `Ch17_03_ex3()`, shown in Listing 17-3-3, spotlights the use of additional file type checking functions from Table 17-3. Near the top of Listing 17-3-3 is the definition of lambda expression `print_types()`, which prints type information related to argument `const fs::path& p` if it exists. Note that this function utilizes `std::error_code` overloads to preclude the throwing of `std::filesystem_error` exceptions. The reason for this is that calling a `fs::is_` function using a Windows-specific path (e.g., `C:\Windows\notepad.exe`) on a Linux system will generate a `fs::filesystem_error` exception.

Listing 17-3-3. Example `Ch17_03 - Ch17_03_ex3()`

```
void Ch17_03_ex3()
{
    auto print_types = [](const fs::path& p)
    {
        std::println("\npath: {s}", p.string());

        // code below uses fs std::error_code overloads, which are noexcept
```



```

std::string s {"| "};
std::error_code ec {};

if (fs::exists(p, ec))
{
    if (fs::is_block_file(p, ec))
        s += "is_block_file | ";
    if (fs::is_character_file(p, ec))
        s += "is_character_file | ";
    if (fs::is_directory(p, ec))
        s += "is_directory | ";
    if (fs::is_fifo(p, ec))
        s += "is_fifo | ";
    if (fs::is_other(p, ec))
        s += "is_other | ";
    if (fs::is_regular_file(p, ec))
        s += "is_regular_file | ";
    if (fs::is_socket(p, ec))
        s += "is_socket | ";
    if (fs::is_symlink(p, ec))
        s += "is_symlink | ";
    if (fs::is_empty(p, ec))
        s += "is_empty | ";
}
else
    s += "does not exist | ";

if (s == "")
    s += "unknown or implementation specific | ";

std::println("{:s}", s);
};

// using create_directory
fs::path test_path1 = fs::temp_directory_path() / "Ch17_03_ex2";
fs::create_directory(test_path1);
fs::path test_path2 = test_path1 / "EmptyDir";
fs::create_directory(test_path2);

```

```

// create test files
fs::path test_file1 = test_path1 / "test1-data-file.txt";
MF::create_test_file(test_file1);
fs::path test_file2 = test_path1 / "test2-empty-file.txt";
MF::create_test_file(test_file2, true);

// print types
print_types(test_path1);
print_types(test_path2);
print_types(test_file1);
print_types(test_file2);

// test paths for Windows
print_types("C:\\");
print_types("C:\\Windows\\notepad.exe");
print_types("\\\\carbon2\\projects");

// test paths for Linux and similar operating systems
print_types("/etc");
print_types("/etc/fstab");
print_types("/dev/sda");
print_types("/dev/tty0");

fs::remove_all(test_path1);
}

```

Following the definition of `print_types()`, `Ch17_03_ex3()` utilizes `fs::create_directory()` and `MF::create_test_file()` to create several test directories and files. The ensuing code block exploits `print_types()` to display type information about these files. The final two code blocks of `Ch17_03_ex3()` exercise `print_types()` using Windows- and Linux-specific `fs::paths`. Here are the results for example `Ch17_03`:

```
----- Results for example Ch17_03 -----
```

```
----- Ch17_03_ex1() -----
```

```
path1 information:
```

```
raw string:    ../../test1.txt
```

```
generic string: ../../test1.txt
```

```
absolute:      X:\CppSTL\test1.txt
canonical:    \\carbon2\SambaShare\CppSTL\test1.txt
relative:     ..\..\test1.txt
```

path2 information:

```
raw string:    X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17\D0\D1\D2\test2.txt
generic string: X:/CppSTL/SourceCode/Chapter17/D0/D1/D2/test2.txt
absolute:     X:\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17\D0\D1\D2\test2.txt
canonical:    \\carbon2\SambaShare\CppSTL\SourceCode\Chapter17\D0\D1\D2\
test2.txt
relative:     D0\D1\D2\test2.txt
```

----- Ch17_03_ex2() -----

```
test case #1 - dir: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\good_dir_name
#1 - created directory C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\good_dir_name
#2 - directory C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\good_dir_name already exists
```

```
test case #2 - dir: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\good_dir_name
#1 - directory C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\good_dir_name already exists
#2 - directory C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\good_dir_name already exists
```

```
test case #3 - dir: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\bad//_dir_name
```

```
ec.value: 3
```

```
ec.message: The system cannot find the path specified.
```

```
caught fs::filesystem_error exception
```

```
what(): create_directory: The system cannot find the path
specified.:
```

```
                "C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\bad//_dir_name"
```

```
path1(): C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\bad//_dir_name
```

```
path2():
```

```
code().value(): 3
```

```
code().message(): The system cannot find the path specified.
```

----- Ch17_03_ex3() -----

```
path: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_03_ex2
```

```
| is_directory |
```

```
path: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_03_ex2\EmptyDir  
| is_directory | is_empty |
```

```
path: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_03_ex2\test1-data-file.txt  
| is_regular_file |
```

```
path: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_03_ex2\test2-empty-file.txt  
| is_regular_file | is_empty |
```

```
path: C:\  
| is_directory |
```

```
path: C:\Windows\notepad.exe  
| is_regular_file |
```

```
path: \\carbon2\projects  
| is_directory |
```

```
path: /etc  
| does not exist |
```

```
path: /etc/fstab  
| does not exist |
```

```
path: /dev/sda  
| does not exist |
```

```
path: /dev/tty0  
| does not exist |
```

File System Copy Functions

The final example of this chapter explains how to use copy functions `fs::copy_file()` and `fs::copy()`. In Listing 17-4-1, execution of `Ch17_04_ex1()` begins with creation of a test directory named `fs::temp_directory_path() / "Ch17_04_ex1"`. In the next code block, `Ch17_04_ex1()` utilizes `fs::path test_file1 = test_path / "TestFile1.txt"` and `MF::create_test_file(test_file1)` to create a source test file. The subsequent statement, `fs::path test_file2 = test_path / "TestFile2.txt"`, establishes a test destination file.

Listing 17-4-1. Example Ch17_04 - Ch17_04_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch17_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <filesystem>
#include "Ch17_04.h"
#include "MF.h"

namespace fs = std::filesystem;

void Ch17_04_ex1()
{
    // create test directory
    std::error_code ec {};
    fs::path test_path = fs::temp_directory_path() / "Ch17_04_ex1";

    if (fs::exists(test_path))
        remove_all(test_path);    // for debug/test

    if (!fs::create_directory(test_path, ec))
    {
        std::println("ec: {s}", ec.message());
        return;
    }

    // create test files
    fs::path test_file1 = test_path / "TestFile1.txt"; // source file
    MF::create_test_file(test_file1);
    fs::path test_file2 = test_path / "TestFile2.txt"; // destination file

    for (int i = 0; i < 3; ++i)
    {
        // set copy_options (default is fs::copy_options::none)
        fs::copy_options copy_opt {};

        if (i == 2)
            copy_opt = fs::copy_options::overwrite_existing;

        std::println("\nusing fs::copy_file() - test #{:d}", i);
    }
}

```

```

std::println("source file:      {:s}", test_file1.string());
std::println("destination file: {:s}", test_file2.string());

// using copy_file (fails when i == 1 is true)
bool status = fs::copy_file(test_file1, test_file2, copy_opt, ec);
std::println("status:          {:s}", status);
std::println("ec.message():     {:s}", ec.message());
}

fs::remove_all(test_path);
}

```

Within `Ch17_04_ex1()`'s for loop, the statement `fs::copy_options copy_opt {}` default initializes `copy_opt` to `fs::copy_options::none` for later use. Class `fs::copy_options` is an enum of bitmask constants that specify copy behavior preferences for `fs::copy_file()` and `fs::copy()`. Table 17-4 lists the available options.

Table 17-4. Bitmask Constants for Class `copy_options`

Group (Copy Type)	Bitmask Constant (<code>fs::copy_options::</code>)	Description
Existing target files <code>fs::copy_file()</code>	<code>none</code>	Error if file exists
	<code>skip_existing</code>	Skip overwrite of existing file
	<code>overwrite_existing</code>	Overwrite existing file
	<code>update_existing</code>	Overwrite existing file if older than replacement file
Subdirectories <code>fs::copy()</code>	<code>none</code>	Do not copy subdirectories
	<code>recursive</code>	Recursively copy subdirectories and their files

(continued)

Table 17-4. (continued)

Group (Copy Type)	Bitmask Constant (fs::copy_options::)	Description
Symbolic links fs::copy()	none	Follow symbolic links
	copy_symlinks	Copy symbolic link as symbolic links
	skip_symlinks	Ignore symbolic links
Form of copying fs::copy()	none	Copy content
	directories_only	Copy only directories; skip non-directory files
	create_symlinks	Create symbolic links instead of copies of files; source path must be an absolute path unless the destination path is in the current directory
	create_hard_links	Make hard links instead of copies of files

The for loop in `Ch17_04_ex1()` executes three times. During its first iteration, execution of `fs::copy_file(test_file1, test_file2, copy_opt, ec)` copies `test_file1` to `test_file2`. During the second iteration, execution of `fs::copy_file()` fails since `test_file2` already exists. To modify this default behavior, `Ch17_04_ex1()` sets `copy_opt = fs::copy_options::overwrite_existing` prior to calling `fs::copy_file()` during the for loop's third iteration.

Listing 17-4-2 shows the source code for example `Ch17_04_ex2()`. This example exploits `fs::copy()` to recursively copy the files of a directory to a new directory.

Listing 17-4-2. Example Ch17_04 - Ch17_04_ex2()

```

void Ch17_04_ex2()
{
    std::error_code ec {};

    // create path names
    fs::path source_dir = fs::temp_directory_path() / "Ch17_04_ex2_S";
    fs::path dest_dir = fs::temp_directory_path() / "Ch17_04_ex2_D";

    fs::remove_all(source_dir, ec);    // remove old dirs
    fs::remove_all(dest_dir, ec);      // (for debug/test)

    // create test files in source_dir (remove_all delete
    if (!fs::create_directory(source_dir))
        throw std::runtime_error("create_directory() failed");

    MF::create_test_files(source_dir, "Ch17_04_ex2", 4, 3);

    // copy source_dir to dest_dir (fs::copy() is void)
    fs::copy_options copy_opt = fs::copy_options::recursive;
    fs::copy(source_dir, dest_dir, copy_opt, ec);

    if (ec)
    {
        std::println("error: {s}", ec.message());
        return;
    }

    // display files in source_dir and dest_dir
    for (int i = 0; i < 2; ++i)
    {
        fs::path display_path = (i == 0) ? source_dir : dest_dir;
        std::println("\ndisplay_path: {s}", display_path.string());

        for (auto const& de : fs::recursive_directory_
            iterator(display_path))
        {
            if (fs::is_directory(de) || fs::is_regular_file(de))

```



```

        std::println("{:s}", de.path().string());
    }
}

fs::remove_all(source_dir);
fs::remove_all(dest_dir);
}

```

Function `Ch17_04_ex2()` utilizes `MF::create_test_files(source_dir, "Ch17_04_ex2", 4, 3)` to create a directory tree under `source_dir` (see Listing 17-2-2-2 for `MF::create_test_files()`). In the next code block, execution of `fs::copy(source_dir, dest_dir, copy_opt, ec)` recursively copies all subdirectories and files in `source_dir` to `des_dir`. Note here that `copy_opt` is set to `fs::copy_options::recursive`, which enables the recursive copy. Following execution of `fs::copy()`, `std::error_code ec` is checked to determine if any errors occurred.

The final code block of `Ch17_04_ex2()` contains a for loop that exploits `fs::recursive_directory_iterator()` to print the files in both `source_dir` and `dest_dir`. Here are the results for example `Ch17_04`:

```
----- Results for example Ch17_04 -----
```

```
----- Ch17_04_ex1() -----
```

```
using fs::copy_file() - test #0
```

```
source file:      C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex1\TestFile1.txt
```

```
destination file: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex1\TestFile2.txt
```

```
status:          true
```

```
ec.message():    The operation completed successfully.
```

```
using fs::copy_file() - test #1
```

```
source file:      C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex1\TestFile1.txt
```

```
destination file: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex1\TestFile2.txt
```

```
status:          false
```

```
ec.message():    The file exists.
```

```
using fs::copy_file() - test #2
```

```
source file:      C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex1\TestFile1.txt
```

CHAPTER 17 FILE SYSTEMS

destination file: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex1\TestFile2.txt

status: true

ec.message(): The operation completed successfully.

----- Ch17_04_ex2() -----

display_path: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\Ch17_04_ex2-00-00.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\Ch17_04_ex2-00-01.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\Ch17_04_ex2-00-02.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\D01

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\D01\Ch17_04_ex2-01-00.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\D01\Ch17_04_ex2-01-01.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\D01\Ch17_04_ex2-01-02.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\D01\D02

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\D01\D02\Ch17_04_ex2-02-00.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\D01\D02\Ch17_04_ex2-02-01.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\D01\D02\Ch17_04_ex2-02-02.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\D01\D02\D03

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\D01\D02\D03\Ch17_04_ex2-03-00.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\D01\D02\D03\Ch17_04_ex2-03-01.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_S\D00\D01\D02\D03\Ch17_04_ex2-03-02.txt

display_path: C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\Ch17_04_ex2-00-00.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\Ch17_04_ex2-00-01.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\Ch17_04_ex2-00-02.txt

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\D01

C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\D01\Ch17_04_ex2-01-00.txt

```
C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\D01\Ch17_04_ex2-01-01.txt
C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\D01\Ch17_04_ex2-01-02.txt
C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\D01\D02
C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\D01\D02\Ch17_04_
ex2-02-00.txt
C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\D01\D02\Ch17_04_
ex2-02-01.txt
C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\D01\D02\Ch17_04_
ex2-02-02.txt
C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\D01\D02\D03
C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\D01\D02\D03\Ch17_04_
ex2-03-00.txt
C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\D01\D02\D03\Ch17_04_
ex2-03-01.txt
C:\Users\dan\AppData\Local\Temp\Ch17_04_ex2_D\D00\D01\D02\D03\Ch17_04_
ex2-03-02.txt
```

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- An instance of class `fs::path` encompasses a character string pathname that denotes a file system path.
- Class `fs::path` supports a variety of pathname representations, including absolute, relative, and canonical.
- A `fs::path` object does not necessarily correspond to the existence of an actual file on a storage device.
- Functions `fs::current_path()` and `fs::temp_directory_path()` return `fs::path` objects that contain the current working and temporary directories.
- Classes `fs::recursive_directory_iterator` and `fs::directory_entry` are used to iterate the elements of a directory, its files, and any subdirectories.

- File system functions `fs::create_directory()` and `fs::remove()` create and remove a single directory. File system functions `fs::create_directories()` and `fs::remove_all()` create and remove a directory and all of its files and subdirectories.
- File system functions `fs::copy_file()` and `fs::copy()` copy files and directories. Copy operation behavior preferences are specified using the bitmask values of enum class `fs::copy_options`.
- Most `fs` functions define two overloads. The first type includes functions that require an explicit `std::error_code` argument for error results. These functions are declared `noexcept`. The non-`std::error_code` overloads throw `fs::filesystem_error` exceptions to report critical errors, including API errors from the underlying OS.

CHAPTER 18

Numerical Processing – Part 1

The STL includes a variety of classes and algorithms that expedite numerical processing. These constructs are also convenient in applications that are less numerical. This chapter is the first of two that describe mainstream classes and algorithms from the C++ numerics library. Topics covered include

- Mathematical constants
- Complex numbers
- Random number generators
- Random number distributions

Some of the discussions in this chapter tacitly assume previous exposure to certain mathematical disciplines. If you need a refresher, Appendix B contains a few references that you can consult.

Mathematical Constants

The C++ programming language did not include library definitions of frequently used mathematical constants until C++20. Prior to this, it was not uncommon for a large program to incorporate multiple definitions of universal constants such as π and e using `const` or `constexpr`. In legacy C++ code, mathematical constants were often formed using preprocessor directive `#define`.

The C++ numerics library includes several pre-initialized constant variable templates as shown in Table 18-1. These templates are encompassed in namespace `std::numbers` (<numbers>). For example, the mathematical constant π can be realized in code using `std::numbers::pi_v<T>` where T corresponds to float, double, or long double. Table 18-1 also shows the corresponding inline `constexpr double` aliases.

Table 18-1. *Mathematical Constants of Namespace `std::numbers`*

Template Form	Alias (inline <code>constexpr double</code>)	Constant
<code>e_v<T></code>	<code>e</code>	Mathematical constant e (2.71828...)
<code>log2e_v<T></code>	<code>log2e</code>	$\log_2 e$
<code>log10e_v<T></code>	<code>log10e</code>	$\log_{10} e$
<code>pi_v<T></code>	<code>pi</code>	Mathematical constant π (3.14159...)
<code>inv_pi_v<T></code>	<code>inv_pi</code>	$1/\pi$
<code>inv_sqrtpi_v<T></code>	<code>inv_sqrtpi</code>	$1/\sqrt{\pi}$
<code>ln2_v<T></code>	<code>ln2</code>	$\ln 2$
<code>ln10_v<T></code>	<code>ln10</code>	$\ln 10$
<code>sqrt2_v<T></code>	<code>sqrt2</code>	$\sqrt{2}$
<code>sqrt3_v<T></code>	<code>sqrt3</code>	$\sqrt{3}$
<code>inv_sqrt3_v<T></code>	<code>inv_sqrt3</code>	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
<code>egamma_v<T></code>	<code>egamma</code>	Euler-Mascheroni constant γ (0.57721...)
<code>phi_v<T></code>	<code>phi</code>	Golden ratio constant $\varphi = \frac{(1 + \sqrt{5})}{2}$ (1.61803...)

Some of the mathematical constants shown in Table 18-1 were used in earlier chapters. The examples of this section spotlight a few more examples.

In Listing 18-1-1, example function `Ch18_01_ex1()` calculates Fibonacci numbers using the golden ratio constant φ and the following equation:

$$F_n = \frac{\varphi^n - (-\varphi)^{-n}}{2\varphi - 1}$$

Listing 18-1-1. Example `Ch18_01 - Ch18_01_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch18_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <cmath>
#include <concepts>
#include <numbers>
#include <numeric>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch18_01.h"
#include "MT.h"

void Ch18_01_ex1()
{
    // calculate Fibonacci numbers using golden ratio
    bool add_nl {false};
    std::println("\nFibonacci numbers using golden ratio");

    for (int n = 0; n < 20; ++n)
    {
        auto t1 = std::pow(std::numbers::phi, n);
        auto t2 = std::pow(-std::numbers::phi, -n);
        auto fib = (t1 - t2) / (2.0 * std::numbers::phi - 1.0);
    }
}
```

```

        const char* s = (add_n1) ? "\n" : " ";
        std::print("{:4d} {:10.4f} {:s}", n, fib, s);
        add_n1 = !add_n1;
    }
}

```

In function `Ch18_01_ex1()`, `std::numbers::phi` is an alias for `std::numbers::phi_v<double>`. There are no library-defined aliases for `float` or `long double` mathematical constants. To carry out calculations using these types, the template form of the constant must be used (e.g., `std::numbers::phi_v<float>` or `std::numbers::phi_v<long double>`). You can also define your own aliases (e.g., using `phi_f32 = std::numbers::phi_v<float>`).

Example function `Ch18_01_ex2()`, shown in Listing 18-1-2, exemplifies the use of template constant `std::numbers::pi_v<T>` in a lambda expression. Note that lambda expression `calc_area()` specifies an explicit floating-point template parameter, and this parameter is utilized to calculate circle areas using `std::numbers::pi_v<T>`.

Listing 18-1-2. Example Ch18_01 – Ch18_01_ex2()

```

void Ch18_01_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:12.6f} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {5};
    constexpr size_t n {10};

    std::vector<float> radii_f(n);
    std::vector<double> radii_d(n);
    std::iota(radii_f.begin(), radii_f.end(), 1.0f);
    std::iota(radii_d.begin(), radii_d.end(), 1.0);

    // using std::numbers::pi_v<T>
    auto calc_area = [<typename T>(T r) requires std::floating_point<T>
        { return r * r * std::numbers::pi_v<T>; }];

    // calculate circle areas (float)
    std::vector<float> areas_f {};
    for (auto r : radii_f)

```



```

        areas_f.push_back(calc_area(static_cast<float>(r)));
    MT::print_ctr("\nareas_f:\n", areas_f, fmt, epl_max);

    // calculate circle areas (double)
    std::vector<double> areas_d {};
    for (auto r : radii_d)
        areas_d.push_back(calc_area(static_cast<double>(r)));
    MT::print_ctr("\nareas_d:\n", areas_d, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

You may have noticed that Table 18-1 includes a few “unusual” mathematical constants. For example, why is `log10e` (`std::numbers::log10e<T>`) defined? The reason is that this value can be exploited to calculate logarithms for any number base¹ using the following equation:

$$\log_b x = \log_e x (\log_{10} e / \log_{10} b)$$

Example function `Ch18_01_ex3()`, shown in Listing 18-1-3, utilizes this equation to calculate base 3 and base 5 logarithms. The opening statement of `Ch18_01_ex3()`, using namespace `std::numbers`, imports members of `std::numbers` into the current scope. Next is the definition of lambda expression `log_b_x`. Note here that `log10e_v<T>` is used directly without a namespace prefix.

Listing 18-1-3. Example Ch18_01 – Ch18_01_ex3()

```

void Ch18_01_ex3()
{
    using namespace std::numbers;

    const char* fmt = "{:8.4f}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};
    constexpr size_t n_f {81};
    constexpr size_t n_d {125};

    std::vector<float> vec0_f(n_f);
    std::vector<double> vec0_d(n_d);
}

```

¹The standard library defines `std::log()`, `std::log10()`, and `std::log2()` for computing natural, common, and base 2 logarithms.

```

std::iota(vec0_f.begin(), vec0_f.end(), 1.0f);
std::iota(vec0_d.begin(), vec0_d.end(), 1.0);

// calculate log base b of x
auto log_b_x = [<typename T>(T b, T x) requires std::floating_point<T>
    { return std::log(x) * log10e_v<T> / std::log10(b); }];

// calculate log3 values (float)
std::println("\nlog3 values of [{:d}, {:d}]: ", 1, n_f);
std::vector<float> vec_f {};
for (auto x : vec0_f)
    vec_f.push_back(log_b_x(3.0f, static_cast<float>(x)));
MT::print_ctr("", vec_f, fmt, epl_max);

// calculate log5 values (double)
std::println("\nlog5 values of [{:d}, {:d}]: ", 1, n_d);
std::vector<double> vec_d {};
for (auto x : vec0_d)
    vec_d.push_back(log_b_x(5.0, static_cast<double>(x)));
MT::print_ctr("", vec_d, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

In the subsequent code block, `Ch18_01_ex3()` exercises `log_b_x(3.0f, static_cast<float>(x))` to calculate $\log_3 x$ for each value in `vec0_f`. The final code block of `Ch18_01_ex3()` calculates $\log_5 x$ for each value in `vec0_d`. Here are the results for example `Ch18_01`:

----- Results for example Ch18_01 -----

----- Ch18_01_ex1() -----

```

Fibonacci numbers using golden ratio
  0      0.0000      1      1.0000
  2      1.0000      3      2.0000
  4      3.0000      5      5.0000
  6      8.0000      7     13.0000
  8     21.0000      9     34.0000
 10     55.0000     11     89.0000

```

12	144.0000	13	233.0000
14	377.0000	15	610.0000
16	987.0000	17	1597.0000
18	2584.0000	19	4181.0000

----- Ch18_01_ex2() -----

areas_f:

3.141593	12.566371	28.274334	50.265484	78.539818
113.097336	153.938049	201.061935	254.469009	314.159271

areas_d:

3.141593	12.566371	28.274334	50.265482	78.539816
113.097336	153.938040	201.061930	254.469005	314.159265

----- Ch18_01_ex3() -----

log3 values of [1, 81]:

0.0000	0.6309	1.0000	1.2619	1.4650	1.6309	1.7712	1.8928	2.0000	2.0959
2.1827	2.2619	2.3347	2.4022	2.4650	2.5237	2.5789	2.6309	2.6801	2.7268
2.7712	2.8136	2.8540	2.8928	2.9299	2.9656	3.0000	3.0331	3.0650	3.0959
3.1257	3.1546	3.1827	3.2098	3.2362	3.2619	3.2868	3.3111	3.3347	3.3578
3.3802	3.4022	3.4236	3.4445	3.4650	3.4850	3.5046	3.5237	3.5425	3.5609
3.5789	3.5966	3.6139	3.6309	3.6476	3.6640	3.6801	3.6960	3.7115	3.7268
3.7419	3.7567	3.7712	3.7856	3.7997	3.8136	3.8273	3.8408	3.8540	3.8671
3.8801	3.8928	3.9053	3.9177	3.9299	3.9420	3.9539	3.9656	3.9772	3.9887
4.0000									

log5 values of [1, 125]:

0.0000	0.4307	0.6826	0.8614	1.0000	1.1133	1.2091	1.2920	1.3652	1.4307
1.4899	1.5440	1.5937	1.6397	1.6826	1.7227	1.7604	1.7959	1.8295	1.8614
1.8917	1.9206	1.9482	1.9746	2.0000	2.0244	2.0478	2.0704	2.0922	2.1133
2.1337	2.1534	2.1725	2.1911	2.2091	2.2266	2.2436	2.2602	2.2763	2.2920
2.3074	2.3223	2.3370	2.3512	2.3652	2.3789	2.3922	2.4053	2.4181	2.4307
2.4430	2.4550	2.4669	2.4785	2.4899	2.5011	2.5121	2.5229	2.5335	2.5440
2.5542	2.5643	2.5743	2.5841	2.5937	2.6032	2.6125	2.6217	2.6308	2.6397
2.6486	2.6572	2.6658	2.6743	2.6826	2.6908	2.6990	2.7070	2.7149	2.7227
2.7304	2.7380	2.7456	2.7530	2.7604	2.7676	2.7748	2.7819	2.7889	2.7959

2.8028	2.8095	2.8163	2.8229	2.8295	2.8360	2.8424	2.8488	2.8551	2.8614
2.8675	2.8737	2.8797	2.8857	2.8917	2.8976	2.9034	2.9092	2.9149	2.9206
2.9262	2.9318	2.9373	2.9428	2.9482	2.9536	2.9589	2.9642	2.9694	2.9746
2.9798	2.9849	2.9900	2.9950	3.0000					

Complex Numbers

A number of the form $z = a + bi$ where both a and b are real numbers is called a complex number. Note that complex number z includes two components: a real part a and an imaginary part b . Symbol i denotes $\sqrt{-1}$ and $i^2 = -1$. Complex numbers are frequently applied to solve a wide variety of mathematical problems that can't be solved using only real numbers. They are used extensively in scientific and engineering applications.

The source code examples of this section demonstrate basic arithmetic and other operations using complex numbers and class `std::complex`. Feel free to either skim or skip this section if complex numbers are not relevant to your programming endeavors.

Listing 18-2-1 shows the source code for example `Ch18_02_ex1()`. This example demonstrates how to define objects of type `std::complex`. It also covers common arithmetic operations using `std::complex` values. The initial statement of `Ch18_02_ex1()`, using namespace `std::complex_literals`, enables the use of complex literal suffixes for imaginary numbers. More about this shortly.

Listing 18-2-1. Example `Ch18_02 - Ch18_02_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch18_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <complex>
#include <concepts>
#include <format>
#include "Ch18_02.h"
#include "MTH.h"

void Ch18_02_ex1()
{
    using namespace std::complex_literals;
```

```

// complex variables
std::complex<double> z0 {}; // 0 + 0i
std::complex<double> z1 {3.0, 4.0};
std::complex<double> z2 {7.0, -3.0};

std::println("\nz0: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z0.real(), z0.imag());
std::println("z1: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z1.real(), z1.imag());
std::println("z2: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z2.real(), z2.imag());

// complex arithmetic
std::complex<double> z3 = z1 + z2;
std::complex<double> z4 = z1 - z2;
std::complex<double> z5 = z1 * z2;
std::complex<double> z6 = z1 / z2;

std::println("\nz3: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z3.real(), z3.imag());
std::println("z4: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z4.real(), z4.imag());
std::println("z5: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z5.real(), z5.imag());
std::println("z6: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z6.real(), z6.imag());

// more complex arithmetic (using complex literals)
z1 += 1.0 + 2.0i;
z2 -= 2.0;
z3 *= 4.0i;
std::complex<double> z7 = z1 + 1.5 + 3.0i;

std::println("\nz1: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z1.real(), z1.imag());
std::println("z2: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z2.real(), z2.imag());
std::println("z3: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z3.real(), z3.imag());
std::println("z7: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z7.real(), z7.imag());

// relational ops
std::complex<double> z8 {4.0, 6.0};
std::complex<double> z9 {5.0, 12.0};
std::println("\nz8: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z8.real(), z8.imag());
std::println("z9: ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z9.real(), z9.imag());
std::println("z8 == z9: { :s }", z8 == z9);
std::println("z8 != z9: { :s }", z8 != z9);

```

```

std::println("z9 == (4.0 + 6.0i): {s}", z9 == 4.0 + 6.0i);
std::println("z9 != (4.0 + 6.0i): {s}", z9 != 4.0 + 6.0i);
}

```

The opening code block of `Ch18_02_ex1()` defines three values of type `std::complex<double>`. The first value, `std::complex<double> z0 {}`, corresponds to a complex variable whose real and imaginary components are doubles and equal to `0.0` (i.e., `z0 = 0.0 + 0.0i`). Template class `std::complex` also supports value types of float and long double. The next two statements, `std::complex<double> z1 {3.0, 4.0}` and `std::complex<double> z2 {7.0, -3.0}`, set `z1 = 3.0 + 4.0i` and `z2 = 7.0 - 3.0i`, respectively. The ensuing group of `std::println()` statements prints `z0`, `z1`, and `z2`. Note in these statements that `std::complex` member functions `real()` and `imag()` obtain the real and imaginary components of a `std::complex` value.

The next code block illustrates how to carry out elementary arithmetic operations using `std::complex` values. Thanks to operator overloading, performing complex arithmetic using `std::complex` values mostly resembles ordinary arithmetic using fundamental types. Table 18-2 details the math behind the four elementary arithmetic operations.

Table 18-2. *Elementary Arithmetic Operations Using Complex Numbers*

Operation	Calculation
Addition	$z_1 + z_2 = (a_1 + a_2) + (b_1 + b_2)i$
Subtraction	$z_1 - z_2 = (a_1 - a_2) + (b_1 - b_2)i$
Multiplication	$z_1 z_2 = (a_1 a_2 - b_1 b_2) + (a_1 b_2 + b_1 a_2)i$
Division	$\frac{z_1}{z_2} = \frac{a_1 a_2 + b_1 b_2}{a_2^2 + b_2^2} + \frac{b_1 a_2 - a_1 b_2}{a_2^2 + b_2^2} i$

The third code block in `Ch18_02_ex1()` performs arithmetic calculations using `std::complex` objects and complex literals. The first statement of this block, `z1 += 1.0 + 2.0i`, adds complex literal `1.0 + 2.0i` to `z1`. During execution of this expression, `1.0` is added to `z1.real()`, and `2.0` is added to `z1.imag()`. Note the use of complex literal suffix `i`, which signifies that `2.0` is a `std::complex` imaginary value. Without this suffix, `3.0` would be added to `z1.real()`. The next statement, `z2 -= 2.0` subtracts

2.0 from `z2.real()`. Execution of `z3 *= 4.0i` calculates `z3 *= 0 + 4.0i`. Finally, `std::complex<double> z7 = z1 + 1.5 + 3.0i` sums `z1` and `1.5 + 2.0i` and saves the result to `z7`. Once again, the use of the `i` suffix is required to denote the imaginary component.

The final code block of `Ch18_02_ex1()` demonstrates how to compare two `std::complex` values using operator `==` and operator `!=`. Unlike ordinary numbers, two complex numbers can't be compared using operator `<` or operator `>`. However, the magnitudes of complex numbers are comparable, and you'll learn how to calculate this shortly.

Example `Ch18_02_ex2()`, shown in Listing 18-2-2, exemplifies the use of several common functions using `std::complex` values. In this example, execution of `auto z1_abs = std::abs(z1)` calculates the magnitude (`std::hypot(std::real(z1), std::imag(z1))`) of `z1`. In this expression, the value type of `z1_abs` corresponds to the value type of `z1` (i.e., it's a `double`). The next statement, `auto z1_arg = std::arg(z1)` calculates `z1`'s phase angle (`std::atan2(std::imag(z1), std::real(z1))`). Like `z1_abs`, the value type of `z1_arg` is a `double`. Execution of `auto z1_conj = std::conj(z1)` computes the complex conjugate of `z1`, which means that it flips the sign of `z1`'s imaginary component.

Listing 18-2-2. Example `Ch18_02 - Ch18_02_ex2()`

```
void Ch18_02_ex2()
{
    // using common complex functions
    std::complex<double> z1 {3.0, 4.0};
    auto z1_abs = std::abs(z1);
    auto z1_arg = std::arg(z1);
    auto z1_conj = std::conj(z1);

    std::println("\nz1:      ( {:.3f}, {:.3f} )", z1.real(), z1.imag());
    std::println("z1_abs:  {:.4f}", z1_abs);
    std::println("z1_arg:  {:.4f} radians", z1_arg);
    std::println("z1_arg:  {:.4f} degrees", MTH::rad_to_deg(z1_arg));
    std::println("z1_conj: ( {:.4f}, {:.4f} )", z1_conj.real(), z1_conj.
        imag());
}
```

Class `std::complex` supports a variety of common complex mathematical functions, including trigonometric (`std::cos()`, `std::sin()`, `std::tan()`, etc.), logarithmic (`std::exp()`, `std::log()`, `std::log10()`), and hyperbolic (`std::cosh()`, `std::sinh()`, etc.). The mathematical operations carried out by these functions are different than their real counterparts. One frequently used algorithm that's based on complex arithmetic and `std::exp()` is the discrete Fourier transform (DFT).

The standard DFT decomposes a sampled time-domain signal into its component frequencies. Mathematically, the DFT is defined as follows:

$$X_k = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x_n \cdot e^{-i\left(\frac{2\pi kn}{N}\right)} \quad k=0,1,\dots,N-1.$$

In this equation, x is the input (real² or complex) time-domain signal, X is the output (complex) spectrum of frequencies, and N represents the number of values in both x and X . To recover a time-domain signal from its DFT spectrum, the following inverse equation is used:

$$x_n = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} X_k \cdot e^{i\left(\frac{2\pi kn}{N}\right)} \quad n=0,1,\dots,N-1.$$

The DFT is widely used in signal processing applications and numerous tomes have been written about its underlying mathematics. Appendix B contains a valuable reference that you can consult for more information. For the next source code example, the most important property to recognize about the DFT equations is that they sum products of two complex numbers. Also, note that the DFT equation and its inverse differ only by a minus sign in the exponential term and pre-factor $\frac{1}{N}$.

Listing 18-2-3-1 shows the source code for template function `MTH::dft()`, which calculates a DFT or inverse DFT using the previously defined equations. The opening code block of `MTH::dft()` instantiates `std::vector<std::complex<T>> result(N)` to hold the calculated result. The next statement, `const T sign = (inv) ? 1 : -1`, sets `sign` to ensure correction calculation of a normal or inverse DFT.

² Real number a is equal to $a+0i$ in the complex plane.

Listing 18-2-3-1. Example Ch18_02 – MTH::dft()

```

template <typename T> requires std::floating_point<T>
std::vector<std::complex<T>> dft(const std::vector<std::complex<T>>& x,
bool inv)
{
    // create result vector
    const size_t N = x.size();
    std::vector<std::complex<T>> result(N);

    // set sign for normal or inverse
    const T sign = (inv) ? 1 : -1;

    for (size_t k = 0; k < N; ++k)
    {
        std::complex<T> sum {};

        for (size_t n = 0; n < N; ++n)
        {
            T t1 = 2 * std::numbers::pi_v<T> * n * static_cast<T>(k) / N;
            std::complex<T> t2(0, sign * t1);

            // using std::exp(std::complex)
            sum += x[n] * std::exp(t2);
        }

        // apply pre-factor
        if (inv)
            sum /= static_cast<T>(N);

        result[k] = sum;
    }

    return result;
}

```

The two nested for loops in `MTH::dft()` carry out the actual DFT calculation. The first two statements inside the inner for loop, `T t1 = 2 * std::numbers::pi_v<T> * n * static_cast<T>(k) / N` and `std::complex<T> t2(0, sign * t1)` compute the exponent for `std::exp()`. Note that the real component of `T t2` is zero. The next

statement, `sum += x[n] * std::exp(t2)`, adds the product of complex values `x[n]` and `std::exp(t2)` to `sum`. Following execution of the inner for loop, `MTH::dft()` applies the pre-factor (if necessary) and saves `sum` to `result[k]`.

Listing 18-2-3-2 shows the source code for example `Ch18_02_ex3()`. This listing opens with the definition of template function `print_complex_vec()`, which prints the elements of argument `std::vector<std::complex<T>>& x`.

Listing 18-2-3-2. Example `Ch18_02 - Ch18_02_ex3()`

```
template <typename T> requires std::floating_point<T>
void print_complex_vec(const char* msg, const
std::vector<std::complex<T>>& x,
    T eps = 0)
{
    std::print("{:s}", msg);
    for (const std::complex<T>& z : x)
    {
        T re = z.real();
        T im = z.imag();

        // flush to zero (for display purposes only)
        if (eps > 0)
        {
            if (fabs(re) < eps)
                re = 0;
            if (fabs(im) < eps)
                im = 0;
        }

        std::println("({:11.6f}, {:11.6f})", re, im);
    }
}

void Ch18_02_ex3()
{
    constexpr double eps = 1.0e-9;
    using namespace std::complex_literals;
```

```

// initialize test input signal
std::vector<std::complex<double>> x
{
    {1.0}, {3.0 - 1.0i}, {5.0i}, {-1.0 + 2.0i},
    {-8.0 - 3.0i}, {7.0 - 4.0i}, {5.0 + 11.0i}, {-6.0 - 2.0i}
};

print_complex_vec("\noriginal signal x:\n", x);

// calculate discrete Fourier transform
std::vector<std::complex<double>> X = MTH::dft(x, false);
print_complex_vec("\nDFT signal X:\n", X);

// calculate inverse discrete Fourier transform
std::vector<std::complex<double>> X_inv = MTH::dft(X, true);
print_complex_vec("\ninverse DFT signal X_inv:\n", X_inv, eps);
}

```

Execution of `Ch18_02_ex3()` begins with the initialization of test input signal `std::vector<std::complex<double>> x`. The values used to initialize `x` are arbitrary. In the next code block, `Ch18_02_ex3()` exercises `std::vector<std::complex<double>> X = MTH::dft(x, false)` to calculate the DFT of `x`. The final code block in `Ch18_02_ex3()` utilizes `std::vector<std::complex<double>> X_inv = MTH::dft(X, true)` to demonstrate the calculation of an inverse DFT. Note in the results section that the values in vectors `x` and `X_inv` are equal.

The primary purpose of example `Ch18_02` was to demonstrate additional usages of `std::complex` values and `std::complex` mathematical functions. Most math libraries and signal processing applications calculate DFTs using fast Fourier transforms (FFT). The advantage of this algorithm is its improved time complexity, which equals $O(n \log n)$ compared to $O(n^2)$ for the DFT. Here are the results for example `Ch18_02`:

```

----- Ch18_02_ex1() -----

```

```

z0: (0.000, 0.000)
z1: (3.000, 4.000)
z2: (7.000, -3.000)

```

```

z3: (10.000, 1.000)
z4: (-4.000, 7.000)
z5: (33.000, 19.000)
z6: (0.155, 0.638)

z1: (4.000, 6.000)
z2: (5.000, -3.000)
z3: (-4.000, 40.000)
z7: (5.500, 9.000)

z8: (4.000, 6.000)
z9: (5.000, 12.000)
z8 == z9: false
z8 != z9: true
z9 == (4.0 + 6.0i): false
z9 != (4.0 + 6.0i): true

```

----- Ch18_02_ex2() -----

```

z1:      (3.000, 4.000)
z1_abs:  5.0000
z1_arg:  0.9273 radians
z1_arg:  53.1301 degrees)
z1_conj: (3.0000, -4.0000)

```

----- Ch18_02_ex3() -----

```

original signal x:
(  1.000000,  0.000000)
(  3.000000, -1.000000)
(  0.000000,  5.000000)
( -1.000000,  2.000000)
( -8.000000, -3.000000)
(  7.000000, -4.000000)
(  5.000000, 11.000000)
( -6.000000, -2.000000)

```

DFT signal X:

```
( 1.000000, 8.000000)
( 1.585786, 6.585786)
(-17.000000, -36.000000)
( 26.313708, -2.000000)
(-5.000000, 18.000000)
( 4.414214, 9.414214)
(-7.000000, -2.000000)
( 3.686292, -2.000000)
```

inverse DFT signal X_inv:

```
( 1.000000, 0.000000)
( 3.000000, -1.000000)
( 0.000000, 5.000000)
(-1.000000, 2.000000)
(-8.000000, -3.000000)
( 7.000000, -4.000000)
( 5.000000, 11.000000)
(-6.000000, -2.000000)
```

Random Number Generation

Random number generation is a requisite task for many applications. For example, game programs often need to simulate the rolling of dice, dealing of playing cards, or unpredictability in natural phenomena. Computerized production of synthetic data sets for software test and debugging is another common use for random number generation. To address these and other use cases, the STL defines several classes that facilitate random number generation for a wide variety of ordinary and specialized usages. Here's a brief description of these classes:

- **Uniform random bit generator** – Concept³ for a function object that generates an unsigned integer value from a range of values. Ideally, each value within the range has an equal probability of being generated.
- **Random number engine** – Specific type of uniform random bit generator that encompasses a source of entropy (i.e., degree of randomness).
- **Random number engine adaptor** – Adjusts the output of an underlying random number engine to alter its generation characteristics.
- **Random number generator** – Incorporates a random number engine and an optional random number engine adaptor.
- **Random number distribution** – Adjusts the output of a random number generator to conform to a probability density function.

You'll learn more about these class types as the chapter progresses.

STL's random number engines and engine adaptors impart a significant amount of algorithmic flexibility for individuals who possess the requisite statistical expertise. For the rest of us, the STL predefines several random number generators using parameters that implement established algorithms. These generators, shown in Table 18-3, are suitable for many use cases with cryptography being a notable exception.

³Recall that a concept facilitates compile-time validation of a template's arguments.

Table 18-3. *Random Number Generators*

Generator	Engine	Adaptor
<code>minstd_rand0</code>	<code>linear_congruential_engine</code>	
<code>minstd_rand</code>	<code>linear_congruential_engine</code>	
<code>mt19937</code>	<code>mersenne_twister_engine</code>	
<code>mt19937_64</code>	<code>mersenne_twister_engine</code>	
<code>ranlux24_base</code>	<code>subtract_with_carry_engine</code>	
<code>ranlux48_base</code>	<code>subtract_with_carry_engine</code>	
<code>ranlux24</code>	Same as <code>ranlux24_base</code>	<code>discard_block_engine</code>
<code>ranlux48</code>	Same as <code>ranlux48_base</code>	<code>discard_block_engine</code>
<code>knuth_b</code>	Same as <code>minstd_rand0</code>	<code>shuffle_order_engine</code>
<code>default_random_engine</code>	Implementation defined	

All of the classes shown in Table 18-3 belong to namespace `std`. A discussion of the algorithmic differences between the various random number generators is beyond the scope of this book and my expertise, but basically involves a trade-off between computational overhead and improved statistical randomness. Appendix B contains some references that you can consult for more information.

Each STL random number generator class is designed to be used with a random number distribution. A random number distribution transforms the output generated by a random number engine to produce random values that conform to a probability density function. Table 18-4 lists STL’s random number distribution classes. Like the engine classes, all of the classes shown in this table are defined in namespace `std`.

Table 18-4. *Random Number Distribution Classes*

Distribution Category	Class Name	Data Type
Uniform	<code>uniform_int_distribution</code>	Integer
	<code>uniform_real_distribution</code>	Floating-point
Bernoulli	<code>bernoulli_distribution</code>	bool
	<code>binomial_distribution</code>	Integer
	<code>negative_binomial_distribution</code>	Integer
	<code>geometric_distribution</code>	Integer
Poisson	<code>poisson_distribution</code>	Integer
	<code>exponential_distribution</code>	Floating-point
	<code>gamma_distribution</code>	Floating-point
	<code>weibull_distribution</code>	Floating-point
	<code>extreme_value_distribution</code>	Floating-point
Normal	<code>normal_distribution</code>	Floating-point
	<code>lognormal_distribution</code>	Floating-point
	<code>chi_squared_distribution</code>	Floating-point
	<code>cauchy_distribution</code>	Floating-point
	<code>fisher_f_distribution</code>	Floating-point
	<code>student_t_distribution</code>	Floating-point
Sampling	<code>discrete_distribution</code>	Integer
	<code>piecewise_constant_distribution</code>	Floating-point
	<code>piecewise_linear_distribution</code>	Floating-point

As mentioned earlier, the classes shown in Table 18-4 principally model different probability density functions. Some of these distribution names are likely familiar if you have ever taken a course in probability and statistics. The ISO C++ specification document defines the exact probability density function that each distribution class realizes. However, the algorithm employed to produce a specified distribution is implementation defined.

Using Generators and Distributions

Listing 18-3-1 shows the source code for example Ch18_03_ex1(). This example demonstrates the basic use of random number generator and random number distribution classes.

Listing 18-3-1. Example Ch18_03 – Ch18_03_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch18_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <format>
#include <fstream>
#include <random>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch18_03.h"

void Ch18_03_ex1()
{
    constexpr size_t n {60};
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {100};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {42};

    // create random number generator (std::minstd_rand) & distribution
    std::minstd_rand rng1(rng_seed);
    std::uniform_int_distribution<int> dist1(rng_min, rng_max);
```

```

// generate random numbers (integers)
std::println("\nrandom values using generator std::minstd_rand");
size_t add_nl = 0;
for (size_t i = 0; i < n; ++i)
{
    int rng_val = dist1(rng1);
    std::print("{:4d} ", rng_val);

    if (++add_nl % 15 == 0)
        std::println("");
}

// create random number generator (std::mt19937) & distribution
std::println("\nrandom values using generator std::mt19937");
std::mt19937 rng2(rng_seed);
std::uniform_real_distribution<float> dist2(rng_min, rng_max);

// generate random numbers (integers)
add_nl = 0;
for (size_t i = 0; i < n; ++i)
{
    float rng_val = dist2(rng2);
    std::print("{:7.2f} ", rng_val);

    if (++add_nl % 10 == 0)
        std::println("");
}
}

```

In the opening code block of `Ch18_03_ex1()`, the statement `std::minstd_rand rng1(rng_seed)` instantiates an instance of random number generator `std::minstd_rand`. Argument `rng_seed` is the seed value for generator. A seed value sets the internal state of a random number generator. How this value is actually used varies depending on the generator. What's important to understand is that a specific seed value always yields the same sequence of "random" values. In other words, it's deterministic. This is one of the reasons why STL's random number generators and their underlying algorithms are often called pseudo-random. Later in this section, you'll learn how to create a non-deterministic random number generator.

The next line in `Ch18_03_ex1()`, `std::uniform_int_distribution<int> dist1(rng_min, rng_max)`, instantiates a random number distribution. Class `std::uniform_int_distribution` generates random integers that are uniformly distributed between `[rng_min, rng_max]`. In other words, each integer value in `[rng_min, rng_max]` has an equal probability of being generated. The subsequent code block in `Ch18_03_ex1()` utilizes `rng1` and `dist1` to generate random integers. Inside the first for loop, execution of `rng_val = dist1(rng1)` returns a uniformly distributed random integer between `[rng_min, rng_max]`.

Function `Ch18_03_ex1()` also demonstrates how to instantiate objects of type `std::mt19937` and `std::uniform_real_distribution<float>`. Class `std::uniform_real_distribution<float>` differs from its integer counterpart in that random values are generated uniformly over open interval `[rng_min, rng_max)`. The current example also highlights the use of Mersenne Twister generator class `std::mt19937`. The second for loop utilizes `float rng_val = dist2(rng2)` to generate a floating-point random value between `[rng_min, rng_max)`. It warrants mentioning here that the random number generators listed in Table 18-3 can be used with any of the random number distributions shown in Table 18-4, which provides a tremendous amount of algorithmic flexibility. It also simplifies experimentation.

Source code example `Ch18_03_ex2()`, shown in Listing 18-3-2, spotlights the use of distribution class `std::normal_distribution`.

Listing 18-3-2. Example `Ch18_03 - Ch18_03_ex2()`

```
void Ch18_03_ex2()
{
    constexpr size_t num_iter {2};

    for (size_t iter = 0; iter < num_iter; ++iter)
    {
        constexpr size_t n {32};
        constexpr double rng_mean {5.0};
        constexpr double rng_sd {2.0};
        constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {42};

        // create random number generator and distribution
        std::mt19937 rng(rng_seed);
        std::normal_distribution<double> dist(rng_mean, rng_sd);
```

```

size_t add_n1 {0};
std::println("\niteration #{:d}", iter);

for (size_t i = 0; i < n; ++i)
{
    double rng_val = dist(rng);
    std::print("{:8.4f} ", rng_val);

    if (++add_n1 % 8 == 0)
        std::println("");
}
}
}

```

Class `std::normal_distribution` generates floating-point random numbers using the probability density function:

$$p(x|\mu,\sigma) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} \cdot \exp\left(-\frac{(x-\mu)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right)$$

where μ and σ correspond to the distribution's mean and standard deviation, respectively. Figure 18-1 depicts a few prototypical normal distribution bell-shaped curves using $\mu = 0.0$ and different values for σ .

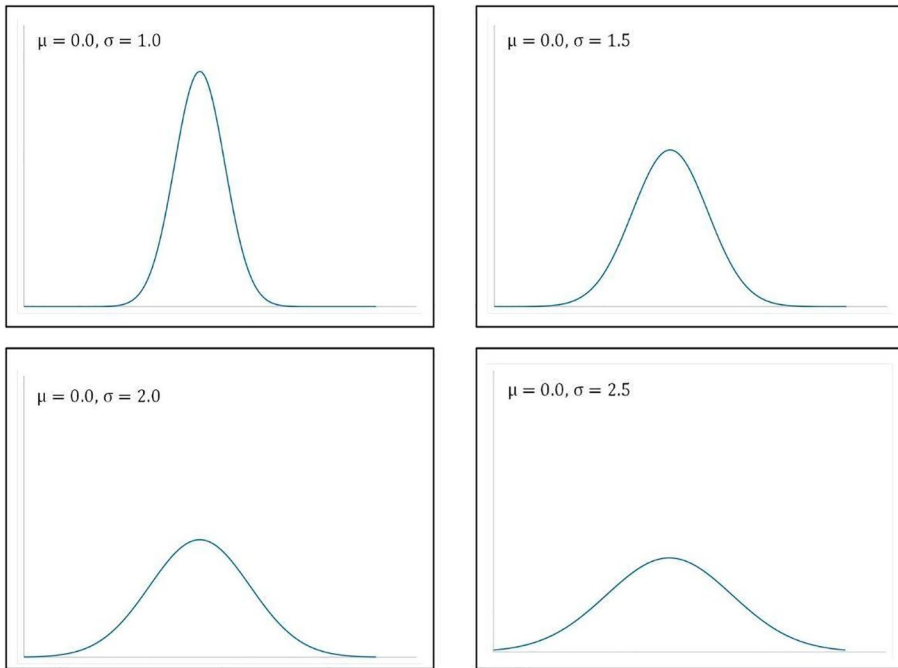


Figure 18-1. Examples of normal distributions

The code in `Ch18_03_ex2()` incorporates two for loops. The inner for loop uses `std::mt19937 rng(rng_seed)` and `std::normal_distribution<double> dist(rng_mean, rng_sd)` to generate random values. The outer for loop is included to demonstrate that the use of the same seed value yields the same sequence of random numbers.

Listing 18-3-3 shows the source code for example `Ch18_03_ex3()`. This listing opens with the definition of template function `save_histogram()`. Execution of this function creates a `num_bucket` sized histogram for the values in `std::vector<T>& vec1`. The bucket counts are written to the file specified by `std::string& fn`.

Listing 18-3-3. Example `Ch18_03 - Ch18_03_ex3()`

```
template <typename T> bool save_histogram(const std::string& fn,
const std::vector<T>& vec1, int num_buckets = 100)
{
    std::ofstream ofs(fn, std::ios::out | std::ios::trunc);
    if (!ofs.good())
        throw std::runtime_error("save_histogram - file open error");
```

```

    auto histo_min = std::ranges::min(vec1);
    auto histo_max = std::ranges::max(vec1);
    auto bucket_size = (histo_max - histo_min) / num_buckets;

    // create histogram vector (extra bucket holds counts for histo_max)
    std::vector<int> histo(num_buckets + 1);

    // build and save histogram
    for (auto v : vec1)
    {
        int bucket_index = static_cast<int>((v - histo_min) / bucket_size);
        ++histo.at(bucket_index);
    }

    for (auto bucket_count : histo)
        std::println(ofs, "{:d}", bucket_count);

    ofs.close();
    return ofs.good();
}

void Ch18_03_ex3()
{
    constexpr size_t num_iter {4};
    constexpr size_t num_vals {25'000};
    constexpr double rng_mean {10.0};
    constexpr double rng_sd {2.0};
    const std::string fn_base = "Ch18_03_ex3-histogram";

    // instantiate non-deterministic random integer generator
    std::random_device rng_dev {};

    for (size_t i = 0; i < num_iter; ++i)
    {
        // create vectors for random numbers
        std::vector<double> vec1(num_vals);

        // create non-deterministic random number generator, distribution
        std::mt19937 rng(rng_dev());
        std::normal_distribution<double> dist(rng_mean, rng_sd);
    }
}

```

```

// fill vec1 with random values
for (size_t j = 0; j < num_vals; ++j)
    vec1[j] = dist(rng);

// save histogram
std::string fn_histo = std::format("{:s}-{:02d}.csv", fn_base, i);
save_histogram(fn_histo, vec1);
std::println("Saved histogram to file {:s}", fn_histo);
}
}

```

In the opening code block of `Ch18_03_ex3()`, execution of `std::random_device rng_dev {}` instantiates a random number generator that produces non-deterministic random numbers of type `unsigned int`. The entropy source for this non-determinism is typically a hardware device. An implementation will substitute an implementation-defined alternative if a non-deterministic hardware device is unavailable. In this case, multiple instances of `std::random_device` might generate the same sequence of values.

To spotlight the non-determinism of `std::random_device`, function `Ch18_03_ex3()` utilizes a `for` loop that generates `num_iter` histograms of random number sequences using `std::mt19937 rng(rng_dev())` and `std::normal_distribution<double> dist(rng_mean, rng_sd)`. Execution of `rng_dev()` generates a non-deterministic seed value for random number generator `rng`. Figure 18-2 shows the histograms generated by `Ch18_03_ex3()`. Note that all of the histograms in this figure have the general form of a bell-shaped curve but are clearly distinct. If you replace `rng_dev()` with a constant value, all four histograms will be identical.

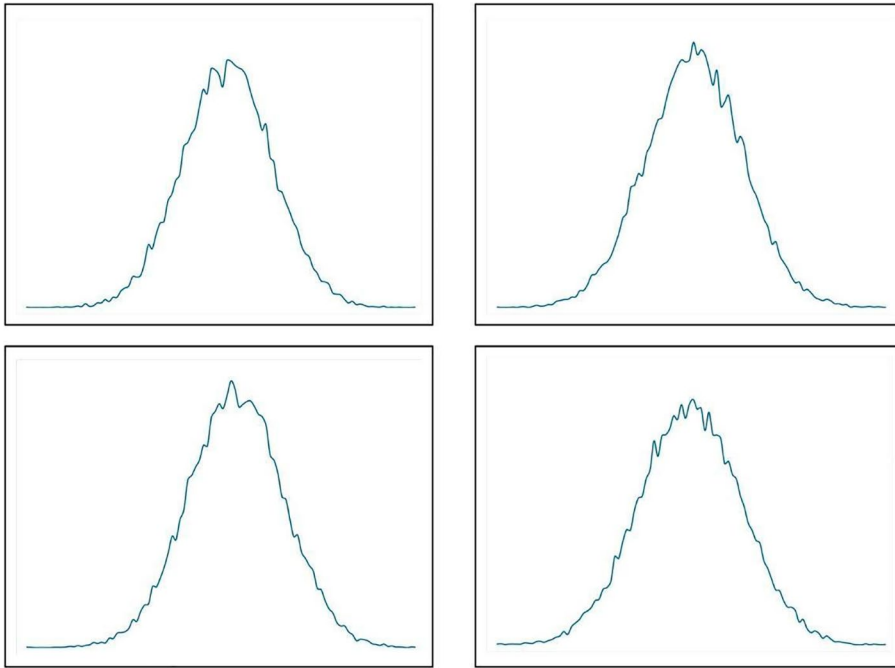


Figure 18-2. Histograms of normal distributions using non-deterministic seed values

The results for example Ch18_03 follow this paragraph. These results will vary depending on the C++ implementation.

----- Results for example Ch18_03 -----

----- Ch18_03_ex1() -----

random values using generator `std::minstd_rand`

1	52	90	9	46	91	1	99	96	86	77	8	18	70	65
84	35	31	37	98	92	2	12	79	65	11	39	87	61	35
48	68	13	29	41	82	67	35	64	63	75	4	52	27	51
68	83	63	73	6	44	51	71	20	71	61	70	1	79	30


```
random values using generator std::mt19937
```

```
38.08  79.86  95.12  19.16  73.47  78.19  60.27  60.09  16.45  45.14
16.44  10.90   6.75  46.47  86.75  34.04  60.51  15.14  71.10  65.44
 3.04   6.58  97.02  72.48  83.41  93.92  22.02   1.08  19.00  99.23
19.16  62.13  31.12  61.55  52.95   1.70  43.76   3.28  29.83  52.95
61.57  40.59  14.81   5.62  29.92  97.40  37.27  24.04  46.15   9.97
78.73  62.22  20.77  38.86  51.91  98.34  59.65  47.21   5.60  86.13
```

```
----- Ch18_03_ex2() -----
```

```
iteration #0
```

```
6.0309  3.8995  7.7369  5.9477  4.7517  3.1663  4.0144  0.9781
3.1416  5.7852  4.6810  5.1597  4.1444  5.0444  4.7650  3.9364
3.4640  5.4442  4.9307  5.2849  4.7905  7.2687  8.8255  3.9498
7.2388  0.9466  2.7978  6.5584  5.7462  7.2605  2.6825  4.2271
```

```
iteration #1
```

```
6.0309  3.8995  7.7369  5.9477  4.7517  3.1663  4.0144  0.9781
3.1416  5.7852  4.6810  5.1597  4.1444  5.0444  4.7650  3.9364
3.4640  5.4442  4.9307  5.2849  4.7905  7.2687  8.8255  3.9498
7.2388  0.9466  2.7978  6.5584  5.7462  7.2605  2.6825  4.2271
```

```
----- Ch18_03_ex3() -----
```

```
Saved histogram to file Ch18_03_ex3-histogram-00.csv
```

```
Saved histogram to file Ch18_03_ex3-histogram-01.csv
```

```
Saved histogram to file Ch18_03_ex3-histogram-02.csv
```

```
Saved histogram to file Ch18_03_ex3-histogram-03.csv
```

Dice Games

Dice games are another common use case for random numbers. Class `DiceSet`, shown in Listing 18-4-1-1, is a simple class that simulates the rolling of `num_dice` dies with each having `num_sides` (faces). The opening section of Listing 18-4-1-1 contains the definition of class `DiceSet`. Note that the private section `DiceSet` contains two parts. The first part includes attributes related to the simulated dice, while the second defines the requisite members for random number generation.

Listing 18-4-1-1. Example Ch18_04 – Class DiceSet

```
//-----
// DiceSet.h
//-----

#ifndef DICE_SET_H_
#define DICE_SET_H_
#include <random>
#include <string>
#include <vector>

class DiceSet
{
public:
    DiceSet() = delete;
    DiceSet(unsigned int num_dice, unsigned int num_sides, unsigned int
        rng_seed);

    unsigned int NumDice() const { return m_NumDice; }
    unsigned int NumSides() const { return m_NumSides; }

    std::vector<unsigned int> roll(unsigned int offset = 1);
    std::vector<std::string> roll_names();

    void set_side_names(unsigned int die_num,
        const std::vector<std::string>& side_names);

private:
    bool check_args(unsigned int num_dice, unsigned int num_sides);

    // dice attributes
    unsigned int m_NumDice {};
    unsigned int m_NumSides {};
    unsigned int m_RngSeed {};
    std::vector<std::string> m_SideNames {};

    // random number generation attributes
    std::random_device m_RngDevice {};
```

```

    std::mt19937 m_RngEngine {};
    std::uniform_int_distribution<unsigned int> m_RngDist {};
};

#endif

//-----
// DiceSet.cpp
//-----

#include <random>
#include <stdexcept>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include "DiceSet.h"

DiceSet::DiceSet(unsigned int num_dice, unsigned int num_sides,
    unsigned int rng_seed)
{
    // save DiceSet parameters
    if (!check_args(num_dice, num_sides))
        throw std::runtime_error("DiceSet ctor - invalid argument value");

    m_NumDice = num_dice;
    m_NumSides = num_sides;
    m_RngSeed = rng_seed;

    // initialize default side names (or face labels)
    m_SideNames.resize(m_NumDice * m_NumSides);
    for (size_t i = 0; i < m_NumDice; ++i)
    {
        for (size_t j = 0; j < m_NumSides; ++j)
            m_SideNames[i * m_NumSides + j] = std::to_string(j + 1);
    }

    // initialize RNG engine
    if (m_RngSeed == 0)
        m_RngEngine.seed(m_RngDevice());
}

```

```

else
    m_RngEngine.seed(m_RngSeed);

    // initialize distribution
    std::uniform_int_distribution<unsigned int> temp_dist
    (0, num_sides - 1);
    m_RngDist.param(temp_dist.param());
}

void DiceSet::set_side_names(unsigned int dice_num,
    const std::vector<std::string>& side_names)
{
    if ((dice_num >= m_NumDice || side_names.size() != m_NumSides))
    {
        const char* msg = "DiceSet::set_side_names - invalid argument";
        throw std::runtime_error(msg);
    }

    for (unsigned int j = 0; j < m_NumSides; ++j)
        m_SideNames[dice_num * m_NumSides + j] = side_names[j];
}

std::vector<unsigned int> DiceSet::roll(unsigned int offset)
{
    // perform simulated roll, return integer values
    std::vector<unsigned int> roll_values(m_NumDice);

    for (size_t i = 0; i < roll_values.size(); ++i)
        roll_values[i] = m_RngDist(m_RngEngine) + offset;

    return roll_values;
}

std::vector<std::string> DiceSet::roll_names()
{
    // perform simulated roll, return side names
    std::vector<unsigned int> roll_values {roll(0)};
    std::vector<std::string> roll_names(roll_values.size());
}

```

```

    for (size_t i = 0; i < roll_names.size(); ++i)
        roll_names[i] = m_SideNames[i * m_NumSides + roll_values[i]];

    return roll_names;
}

bool DiceSet::check_args(unsigned int num_dice, unsigned int num_sides)
{
    // validate num_dice (arbitrary value for maximum number of dice)
    if (num_dice > 20)
        return false;

    // validate num_sides (most common die sizes are valid, can change)
    bool rc = (num_sides == 6 || num_sides == 4 || num_sides == 8 ||
              num_sides == 10 || num_sides == 12 || num_sides == 20);
    return rc;
}

```

The second part of Listing 18-4-1-1 shows the definitions for class `DiceSet`. Execution of `DiceSet`'s constructor begins with the validation of arguments `num_dice` and `num_sides`. Following argument validation, each die side is assigned a default name. If `m_RngSeed == 0` is true, the constructor's penultimate code block initializes `m_RngEngine` using a non-deterministic seed value returned by `m_RngDevice()`. Otherwise, deterministic seed `m_RngSeed` is used, which is useful for testing purposes. In the constructor's final code block, the statement `std::uniform_int_distribution<unsigned int> temp_dist(0, num_sides - 1)` instantiates a uniform integer distribution for `DiceSet` rolls. Execution of the next statement, `m_RngDist.param(temp_dist.param())`, copies `temp_dist`'s internal parameters and assigns them to class attribute `m_RngDist`. All STL random number distribution classes define a member function named `param()` that can be used to get or set a distribution object's parameters. The object type returned by the get variant of `param()` varies depending on the distribution class.

The two other member functions of note in Listing 18-4-1-1 are `std::vector<unsigned int> DiceSet::roll(unsigned int offset)` and `std::vector<std::string> DiceSet::roll_names()`. The former returns a `std::vector<unsigned int>` of values that represent a simulated roll of `m_NumDice`. The value of each unsigned integer element in the returned vector is `[0 + offset, m_NumSides + offset)`. Execution of `std::vector<std::string> DiceSet::roll_names()` is similar but returns a vector of side names (or face labels)

Listing 18-4-1-2 shows the source code for example Ch18_04_ex1(). This example demonstrates the use of class DiceSet using two dice. In the outer for loop, execution of roll_values = dice.roll() simulates a roll of both dice in object dice. Note that dice's constructor used a seed value of zero, which means different results for each execution of Ch18_04_ex1() (recall that DiceSet's constructor non-deterministically initializes its random number when the specified seed equals zero).

Listing 18-4-1-2. Example Ch18_04 - Ch18_04_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch18_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include "Ch18_04.h"
#include "AminoAcid.h"
#include "DiceSet.h"

void Ch18_04_ex1()
{
    constexpr size_t num_rolls {30};
    constexpr unsigned int num_dice {2};
    constexpr unsigned int num_sides {6};
    constexpr unsigned int seed {0};

    // allocate dice set (uses default values for side names)
    DiceSet dice(num_dice, num_sides, seed);

    // perform simulated rolls
    std::println("\nusing class DiceSet ");
    std::println("(num_dice = {:d}, num_sides = {:d})\n", num_dice,
num_sides);

    for (unsigned int i = 0; i < num_rolls; ++i)
    {
        std::print("roll {:2d}: ", i);

        // roll dice
        std::vector<unsigned int> roll_values = dice.roll();
    }
}
```

```

// sum values of all dice
unsigned int total {};
for (unsigned int j = 0; j < num_dice; ++j)
{
    total += roll_values[j];
    std::print("{:1d} ", roll_values[j]);
}
std::print(" ( {:2d})", total);

if ((i + 1) % 2 == 0)
    std::println("");
else
    std::print(" | ");
}
}

```

The second DiceSet example, shown in Listing 18-4-2, instantiates a DiceSet that includes 15 dice, and each die contains 20 sides. You may recall from earlier examples that there are 20 standard amino acids. Given this and the fact that an icosahedron is sometimes used as a physical die, it's easy to imagine dozens of thrilling peptide or protein assembly games that could be created for both PCs and mobile devices.

Listing 18-4-2. Example Ch18_04 - Ch18_04_ex2()

```

void Ch18_04_ex2()
{
    constexpr size_t num_rolls {20};
    constexpr unsigned int num_dice {15};
    constexpr unsigned int num_sides {20};
    constexpr unsigned int seed {0};

    // allocate dice set and initialize side names
    DiceSet dice_aa(num_dice, num_sides, seed);

    std::vector<std::string> aa_code3 = AminoAcid::get_vector_all_code3();
    for (unsigned int i = 0; i < num_dice; ++i)
        dice_aa.set_side_names(i, aa_code3);
}

```

```

// perform simulated rolls
std::println("\nusing class DiceSet ");
std::println("(num_dice = {:d}, num_sides = {:d})\n", num_dice,
num_sides);

for (unsigned int i = 0; i < num_rolls; ++i)
{
    std::vector<std::string> roll_values = dice_aa.roll_names();

    std::print("roll {:2d}: ", i);
    for (unsigned int j = 0; j < num_dice; ++j)
        std::print("{:4s} ", roll_values[j]);
    std::println("");
}
}

```

Following instantiation of `dice_aa, Ch18_04_ex2()` employs `AminoAcid::get_vector_all_code3()` to obtain a `std::vector<std::string>` that contains all code3 amino acids. The ensuing for loop utilizes `dice_aa.set_side_names(i, aa_code3)` to assign code3 symbols to the sides of each die in `dice_aa`. Each iteration of the outer for loop executes `std::vector<std::string> roll_values = dice_aa.roll_names()`. The inner for loop then prints the code3 result for each die in `dice_aa`. Expansion of the code in `Ch18_04_ex2()` to simulate assembly of genuine peptides or proteins is left as an exercise for the reader. Here are the results for example `Ch18_04`:

----- Results for example Ch18_04 -----

----- Ch18_04_ex1() -----

```

using class DiceSet
(num_dice = 2, num_sides = 6)

roll 0: 5 1 ( 6) | roll 1: 3 5 ( 8)
roll 2: 3 5 ( 8) | roll 3: 3 1 ( 4)
roll 4: 2 1 ( 3) | roll 5: 6 5 (11)
roll 6: 1 2 ( 3) | roll 7: 1 1 ( 2)
roll 8: 5 1 ( 6) | roll 9: 4 3 ( 7)
roll 10: 2 2 ( 4) | roll 11: 3 5 ( 8)

```



```

roll 12: 2 5 ( 7) | roll 13: 2 6 ( 8)
roll 14: 6 3 ( 9) | roll 15: 5 6 (11)
roll 16: 5 2 ( 7) | roll 17: 6 2 ( 8)
roll 18: 6 3 ( 9) | roll 19: 2 1 ( 3)
roll 20: 1 5 ( 6) | roll 21: 4 4 ( 8)
roll 22: 4 3 ( 7) | roll 23: 5 4 ( 9)
roll 24: 3 1 ( 4) | roll 25: 5 1 ( 6)
roll 26: 6 4 (10) | roll 27: 3 4 ( 7)
roll 28: 1 2 ( 3) | roll 29: 5 1 ( 6)

```

```
----- Ch18_04_ex2() -----
```

```
using class DiceSet
```

```
(num_dice = 15, num_sides = 20)
```

```

roll 0: Met Ala Gln Gln Lys Val Gln Tyr Asp Ile Thr Phe Leu Ser Trp
roll 1: Ala Met Ser Asn Cys Met Ala Asp Trp His Gln Thr Gly Ile Trp
roll 2: His Phe Lys Asp His Ser Leu Val Leu Tyr Arg Trp Trp Val Gly
roll 3: Gln Lys Lys Tyr Glu Phe Gly Leu Thr Arg Gly Cys Tyr Gln Ser
roll 4: Cys Ala Thr Leu Trp Asn Val Arg Met Ala Pro Gly Pro His Pro
roll 5: Ile Glu Phe His Leu Tyr Met Glu Glu Val Gln Trp Lys Tyr Pro
roll 6: Cys Phe Ala Ala Ser Lys Trp Glu Ser Val Arg Gln Gly Gly Ser
roll 7: Asn Asn Cys Ala His His Cys Tyr Phe Trp Pro Met Ile Cys Arg
roll 8: Pro Tyr Tyr Gln Glu Lys Asp Leu Cys Trp Arg His Asp Phe Glu
roll 9: Val Asp Leu Trp Arg Gln Gly Gly Cys Phe Arg Cys Arg Ile Asn
roll 10: Trp Gly Gly Asn Phe Tyr Met His Ser Arg Glu Tyr Tyr Phe His
roll 11: Phe Glu Lys Lys Gln Asp Asn Ser Val His Gly Gln Ala Tyr Ala
roll 12: Val Gln Lys Arg Arg Gln Leu Asp Met Val Tyr Glu Trp Tyr Phe
roll 13: Ala Pro Gly Gln Ile Ser Glu His Phe Glu Ile Pro Ala Lys Trp
roll 14: Asn Cys Asp Tyr Trp Met Trp Val Val Thr Trp Glu Trp Tyr Met
roll 15: Met Arg His Arg Asn Gly Gly His Gln Leu Gly Leu Leu Lys Ala
roll 16: Arg Trp His Trp Ser Ser Asn Asn Gly Asn Leu His Glu Glu Asp
roll 17: Arg Cys Tyr Trp His Trp Arg Phe Phe Leu Met Ser Phe Gly Val
roll 18: Gln Asn His His Pro Leu Lys Asn Asn Pro Leu Ile Thr Leu Asn
roll 19: His Glu Ser Ile Gln Trp Gln Met Cys Gly Ala Met Arg Glu Trp

```

Vector of Random Numbers

In earlier chapters, some of the source examples exploited function `RN::get_vector()` (`Common/RN.h`) to obtain a vector of random numbers (see `Ch10_02`, `Ch11_08`, `Ch12_01`, and others). Listing 18-5-1-1 shows the source code for this function.

Listing 18-5-1-1. Example `Ch18_05` – `RN::get_vector()`

```
template <typename T> std::vector<T> get_vector(size_t n,
    int rng_min = s_RngMinDef, int rng_max = s_RngMaxDef,
    unsigned int rng_seed = s_RngSeedDef)
{
    // create random number generator and distribution
    std::mt19937 rng {};
    std::uniform_int_distribution<int> rng_dist(rng_min, rng_max);

    // seed generator
    if (rng_seed == 0)
    {
        std::random_device rd {};
        rng.seed(rd());
    }
    else
        rng.seed(rng_seed);

    // generate vector with random numbers
    std::vector<T> vec(n);
    for (auto& x : vec)
        x = static_cast<T>(rng_dist(rng));
    return vec;
}
```

The reason why the source code for `RN::get_vector()` wasn't shown until now is that it utilizes several STL random number generation classes first expounded in this chapter. Execution of `RN::get_vector()` opens with the instantiation of `std::mt19937 rng_engine {}` and `std::uniform_int_distribution<int> rng_dist(rng_min, rng_max)`.

If argument `seed` equals zero, `RN::get_vector()` exploits `std::random_device rd {}` and `rng_engine.seed(rd())` to non-deterministically seed `rng_engine`; otherwise, `rng_engine.seed(rng_seed)` is used.

Listing 18-5-1-2 shows the source code for example function `Ch18_05_ex1()`, which exercises `RN::get_vector()`. Note in this function that the first two usages of `RN::get_vector()` use a nonzero value, which means that `vec1` and `vec2` are equal. The second pair of `RN::get_vector()` usages employs a seed value of zero. This instructs `RN::get_vector()` to seed its underlying random number generator using `std::random_device()` as previously explained.

Listing 18-5-1-2. Example Ch18_05 - Ch18_05_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch18_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <vector>
#include "Ch18_05.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RN.h"

void Ch18_05_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt1 = "{:7.1f}";
    const char* fmt2 = "{:7d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max1 {10};
    constexpr size_t epl_max2 {10};

    constexpr size_t n {50};
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {500};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {99};

    // using RN::get_vector (constant seed)
    std::vector vec1 = RN::get_vector<double>(n, rng_min, rng_max,
    rng_seed);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt1, epl_max1);
}
```

```

std::vector vec2 = RN::get_vector<double>(n, rng_min, rng_max,
rng_seed);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec2:\n", vec2, fmt1, epl_max1);
std::println("\nvec1 == vec2: {:s} (expect true)", vec1 == vec2);

// using RN::get_vector (hardware seed)
std::vector vec3 = RN::get_vector<int>(n, rng_min, rng_max, 0);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec3:\n", vec3, fmt2, epl_max2);

std::vector vec4 = RN::get_vector<int>(n, rng_min, rng_max, 0);
MT::print_ctr("\nvec4:\n", vec4, fmt2, epl_max2);
std::println("\nvec3 == vec4: {:s} (expect false)", vec3 == vec4);
}

```

The results for example Ch18_05 follow this paragraph. These results will vary for each execution.

```

----- Results for example Ch18_05 -----
----- Ch18_05_ex1() -----
vec1:
 337.0  362.0  245.0  416.0  413.0  368.0   16.0  351.0  405.0   97.0
 283.0  489.0  149.0  289.0   24.0  257.0  496.0  426.0    4.0  191.0
 385.0  137.0  374.0  321.0  189.0  247.0  248.0  169.0  465.0  309.0
 198.0  181.0  487.0  166.0  263.0  314.0   47.0  347.0  407.0  164.0
 106.0  205.0  278.0  368.0  147.0  355.0  409.0  142.0  415.0  462.0

vec2:
 337.0  362.0  245.0  416.0  413.0  368.0   16.0  351.0  405.0   97.0
 283.0  489.0  149.0  289.0   24.0  257.0  496.0  426.0    4.0  191.0
 385.0  137.0  374.0  321.0  189.0  247.0  248.0  169.0  465.0  309.0
 198.0  181.0  487.0  166.0  263.0  314.0   47.0  347.0  407.0  164.0
 106.0  205.0  278.0  368.0  147.0  355.0  409.0  142.0  415.0  462.0

```

```
vec1 == vec2: true (expect true)
```

```
vec3:
```

164	102	440	360	455	20	308	389	186	89
360	332	293	362	188	371	221	137	500	467
304	37	139	183	128	101	489	26	397	81
249	372	218	340	161	37	145	273	454	132
328	164	120	307	242	289	213	304	420	95

```
vec4:
```

37	297	461	499	417	289	80	109	227	203
34	286	468	343	125	490	302	446	426	114
427	380	133	390	73	354	72	199	152	494
6	51	486	241	345	180	243	335	315	215
115	447	328	20	6	238	190	325	56	263

```
vec3 == vec3: false (expect false)
```

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- The C++ numerics library includes constant variable templates for common mathematical constants as shown in Table 18-1. These variable templates are encompassed in namespace `std::numbers`.
- Class `std::complex` supports arithmetic using complex numbers.
- A random number engine is a uniform random bit generator that encompasses a source of entropy.
- A random number engine adaptor adjusts the output of an underlying random number engine to modify its generation characteristics.
- A random number generator incorporates a random number engine and an optional random number engine adaptor. The STL predefines several random number generators, shown in Table 18-3, that implement common algorithms.

- A random number distribution adjusts the output of a random number generator to conform to a probability density function. Table 18-4 lists STL's random number distribution classes.
- Random number generators are deterministic in that a given seed value always generates the same sequence of values. Class `std::random_device` can be used to generate non-deterministic random numbers using a hardware source of entropy if supported by the implementation.

CHAPTER 19

Numerical Processing – Part 2

This chapter covers additional numerical processing classes and algorithms. Topics covered include

- Using `std::valarray`
- Using `std::slice`
- Inner products
- Reductions

Like the previous chapter, some of the discussions in this chapter assume previous exposure to certain mathematical disciplines. You may either skim or skip any sections that are irrelevant to your programming interests.

Class `std::valarray`

Template class `std::valarray` is a one-dimensional array-like construct that's specifically designed for numerical operations. Unlike similar containers such as `std::array` and `std::vector`, class `std::valarray` excludes certain forms of aliasing, which facilitates more aggressive optimizations by the compiler. Higher-dimensional arrays can be modeled using classes `std::valarray` and `std::slice`. You'll learn more about this later.

Arithmetic Functions

Listing 19-1-1 shows the source code for example Ch19_01_ex1(). This example demonstrates a few elementary operations using instances of class `std::valarray`.

Listing 19-1-1. Example Ch19_01 – Ch19_01_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch19_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <numeric>
#include <valarray>
#include "Ch19_01.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RN.h"

void Ch19_01_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt1 = "{:7d}";
    const char* fmt2 = "{:7.1f}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    constexpr size_t n {25};
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {500};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {19011};

    // using std::valarray<int>
    std::valarray va1 = RN::get_valarray<int>(n, rng_min, rng_max,
    rng_seed);
    MT::print_ctr("\nva1:\n", va1, fmt1, epl_max);

    std::println("\nva1 - sum: {:d}, min: {:d}, max: {:d}",
        va1.sum(), va1.min(), va1.max());

    // using std::valarray<> operator+=
    va1 += 5;
    MT::print_ctr("\nva1 (after operator+=):\n", va1, fmt1, epl_max);
}
```



```

// using std::valarray<double>
std::valarray va2 = RN::get_valarray<double>(n, rng_min, rng_max,
rng_seed + 1);
MT::print_ctr("\nva2:\n", va2, fmt2, epl_max);

std::println("\nva2 - sum: {:.1f}, min: {:.1f}, max: {:.1f}",
va2.sum(), va2.min(), va2.max());

// using std::valarray<> operator-=
va2 -= 0.5;
MT::print_ctr("\nva2 (after operator-=):\n", va2, fmt2, epl_max);

// using operator[]
for (size_t i = 0; i < n; ++i)
    va2[i] = static_cast<double>(va1[i] % 3);
MT::print_ctr("\nva2 (after operator[] calculations):\n",
va2, fmt2, epl_max);
}

```

In `Ch19_01_ex1()`'s opening code block, execution of `std::valarray va1 = RN::get_valarray<int>(n, rng_min, rng_max, rng_seed)` initializes `va1` with `n` random integers between `[rng_min, rng_max]`. Function `RN::get_valarray()` is the `std::valarray` counterpart of `RN::get_vector()` (see Listing 18-5-1-1 and `Common/RN.h`). Execution of `va1.sum()` computes the sum of all elements in `va1`, while `va1.min()` and `va1.max()` calculate minimum and maximum values. In the next code block, execution of `va1 += 5` adds five to each element in `va1`.

The next `std::valarray` example in Listing 19-1-1 uses `std::valarray va2 = RN::get_valarray<double>(n, rng_min, rng_max, rng_seed)` to initialize `va2` with random values. Like the previous example, execution of `va2.sum()` sums the elements of `va2`, while `va2.min()` and `va2.max()` determine `va2`'s minimum and maximum values. The statement `va2 -= 0.5` subtracts 0.5 from each element in `va2`. Other common arithmetic operators can also be used to adjust the elements in a `std::valarray`.

The final code block in `Ch19_01_ex1()` illustrates how to use `operator[]` to access individual elements in a `std::valarray`. Like `std::array` and `std::vector`, `std::valarray`'s `operator[]` does not check for invalid indices; execution behavior is undefined if one is used. Class `std::valarray` also doesn't define bounds checking member function `at()`.

Example function `Ch19_01_ex2()`, shown in Listing 19-1-2, highlights a few more operations using instances of class `std::valarray`. Execution of `Ch19_01_ex2()` begins with the initialization of test `std::valarrays` `va1`, `va2`, and `va3`. Note that the first two contain elements of type `int`, while the latter holds `long longs`.

Listing 19-1-2. Example `Ch19_01 - Ch19_01_ex2()`

```
void Ch19_01_ex2()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:7d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    // create test valarray<> objects
    std::valarray<int> va1 {10, 20, 30, 40, 50};
    std::valarray<int> va2 {100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600, 700, 800};
    std::valarray<long long> va3 {1000, 2000, 3000, 4000, 5000, 6000,
    7000, 8000};
    MT::print_ctr("\nva1:\n", va1, fmt, epl_max);
    MT::print_ctr("\nva2:\n", va2, fmt, epl_max);
    MT::print_ctr("\nva3:\n", va3, fmt, epl_max);

    // using valarray<>::operator=
    va2 = va1;
    MT::print_ctr("\nva2 (after operator=):\n", va1, fmt, epl_max);

// va3 = va1;    // illegal - different element types

    // using valarray<>::apply
    auto apply_op = [](int x) { return x * x - 1; };

    std::valarray<int> va4 = va1.apply(apply_op);
    MT::print_ctr("\nva4:\n", va4, fmt, epl_max);
}
```

Following the calls to `print_ctr()`, execution of `va2 = va1` assigns `va1` to `va2`. Class `std::valarray`'s assignment operator only supports assignments using objects that hold the same element type. The statement `va3 = va1` is commented out since it's invalid; object `va3` holds `long longs`, while `va1` contains `ints`. The final code block

of `Ch19_01_ex2()` demonstrates the use of `std::valarray::apply()`. Execution of `std::valarray<int> va4 = va1.apply(apply_op)` returns a new `std::valarray` whose values correspond to `va4[i] = apply_op(va1[i])`.

In Listing 19-1-3, example function `Ch19_01_ex3()` utilizes `std::iota(std::begin(va1), std::end(va1), fp_t {1})` to initialize `std::valarray<double> va1(n)`. Unlike most other STL containers, class `std::valarray` does not define iterator member functions `begin()` and `end()`. Global functions `std::begin()` and `std::end()` must be used to acquire iterators for an instance of `std::valarray`.

Listing 19-1-3. Example Ch19_01 – Ch19_01_ex3()

```
void Ch19_01_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:12.4f}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {5};

    // create test valarray<>
    // must use std::begin() and std::end() for std::valarray iterators
    constexpr size_t n {20};

    std::valarray<double> va1(n);
    std::iota(std::begin(va1), std::end(va1), 1.0);
    MT::print_ctr("\nva1:\n", va1, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::valarray<> math overloads
    std::valarray<double> va2 = std::sqrt(va1);
    MT::print_ctr("\nva2 (after sqrt):\n", va2, fmt, epl_max);

    va2 = std::pow(va2, 3.0);
    MT::print_ctr("\nva2 (after pow):\n", va2, fmt, epl_max);

    va2 = std::log10(va1);
    MT::print_ctr("\nva2 (after log10):\n", va2, fmt, epl_max);
}
```

The remaining code in `Ch19_01_ex3()` demonstrates the use of `std::valarray` non-member functions `std::sqrt()`, `std::pow()`, and `std::log10()`. Each of these functions applies a mathematical operation to each element in the specified `std::valarray`. The STL also defines `std::valarray` overloads for common trigonometric and hyperbolic operations.

In Listing 19-1-4, example function `Ch19_01_ex4()` illustrates the use of operator `<`, operator `==`, and operator `>`. These operators return objects of type `std::valarray<bool>`. For example, execution of `std::valarray<bool> va_lt = va1 < va2` returns a `std::valarray<bool>` whose *i*-th element equals `va1[i] < va2[i]`. When performing comparisons using `std::valarrays`, both arrays must hold the same number of elements.

Listing 19-1-4. Example Ch19_01 - Ch19_01_ex4()

```
void Ch19_01_ex4()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:7.1f}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {11};
    constexpr size_t n {10};

    // create test valarray<> objects
    std::valarray<float> va1(n);
    std::iota(std::begin(va1), std::end(va1), 1.0f);

    std::valarray<float> va2(va1);
    va2[0] += 1.0f;
    va2[n / 4] -= 2.0f;
    va2[n / 2] *= 3.0f;
    va2[n - 1] /= 4.0f;

    MT::print_ctr("\nva1:\n", va1, fmt, epl_max);
    MT::print_ctr("\nva2:\n", va2, fmt, epl_max);

    // using operator< (returns std::valarray<bool>)
    std::valarray<bool> va_lt = va1 < va2;
    MT::print_ctr("\nva_lt:\n", va_lt, "{:>7s}", epl_max);

    // using operator== (returns std::valarray<bool>)
    std::valarray<bool> va_eq = va1 == va2;
    MT::print_ctr("\nva_cmp:\n", va_eq, "{:>7s}", epl_max);

    // using operator> (returns std::valarray<bool>)
    std::valarray<bool> va_gt = va1 > va2;
    MT::print_ctr("\nva_gt:\n", va_gt, "{:>7s}", epl_max);
}
```

Here are the results for example Ch19_01:

----- Results for example Ch19_01 -----

----- Ch19_01_ex1() -----

va1:

16	454	341	466	394	276	327	115	203	373
450	260	219	491	18	487	187	84	166	64
22	131	222	210	129					

va1 - sum: 6105, min: 16, max: 491

va1 (after operator+=):

21	459	346	471	399	281	332	120	208	378
455	265	224	496	23	492	192	89	171	69
27	136	227	215	134					

va2:

70.0	238.0	206.0	77.0	330.0	210.0	473.0	453.0	210.0	135.0
82.0	222.0	211.0	217.0	86.0	72.0	330.0	425.0	241.0	408.0
124.0	60.0	461.0	335.0	259.0					

va2 - sum: 5935.0, min: 60.0, max: 473.0

va2 (after operator-=):

69.5	237.5	205.5	76.5	329.5	209.5	472.5	452.5	209.5	134.5
81.5	221.5	210.5	216.5	85.5	71.5	329.5	424.5	240.5	407.5
123.5	59.5	460.5	334.5	258.5					

va2 (after operator[] calculations):

0.0	0.0	1.0	0.0	0.0	2.0	2.0	0.0	1.0	0.0
2.0	1.0	2.0	1.0	2.0	0.0	0.0	2.0	0.0	0.0
0.0	1.0	2.0	2.0	2.0					

CHAPTER 19 NUMERICAL PROCESSING – PART 2

----- Ch19_01_ex2() -----

va1:

10 20 30 40 50

va2:

100 200 300 400 500 600 700 800

va3:

1000 2000 3000 4000 5000 6000 7000 8000

va2 (after operator=):

10 20 30 40 50

va4:

99 399 899 1599 2499

----- Ch19_01_ex3() -----

va1:

1.0000	2.0000	3.0000	4.0000	5.0000
6.0000	7.0000	8.0000	9.0000	10.0000
11.0000	12.0000	13.0000	14.0000	15.0000
16.0000	17.0000	18.0000	19.0000	20.0000

va2 (after sqrt):

1.0000	1.4142	1.7321	2.0000	2.2361
2.4495	2.6458	2.8284	3.0000	3.1623
3.3166	3.4641	3.6056	3.7417	3.8730
4.0000	4.1231	4.2426	4.3589	4.4721

va2 (after pow):

1.0000	2.8284	5.1962	8.0000	11.1803
14.6969	18.5203	22.6274	27.0000	31.6228
36.4829	41.5692	46.8722	52.3832	58.0948
64.0000	70.0928	76.3675	82.8191	89.4427

va2 (after log10):

0.0000	0.3010	0.4771	0.6021	0.6990
0.7782	0.8451	0.9031	0.9542	1.0000
1.0414	1.0792	1.1139	1.1461	1.1761
1.2041	1.2304	1.2553	1.2788	1.3010

```
----- Ch19_01_ex4() -----
```

```
va1:
```

```
  1.0  2.0  3.0  4.0  5.0  6.0  7.0  8.0  9.0 10.0
```

```
va2:
```

```
  2.0  2.0  1.0  4.0  5.0 18.0  7.0  8.0  9.0  2.5
```

```
va_lt:
```

```
  true false false false false  true false false false false
```

```
va_cmp:
```

```
  false  true false  true  true false  true  true  true false
```

```
va_gt:
```

```
  false false  true false false false false false false  true
```

Statistical Calculations

Many applications need to calculate common statistical properties using the elements in an array. The first source example of this section illustrates how to compute the mean and standard deviation using the elements in a `std::valarray`. The second example explains a somewhat more intricate least-squares computation. Here are the equations that example Ch19_02 uses to calculate the sample mean and standard deviation of a `std::valarray`:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_i x_i$$

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_i (x_i - \bar{x})^2}$$

Listing 19-2-1 shows the source code for example Ch19_02_ex1(). Like the previous example, the opening code block in Ch19_02_ex1() utilizes `std::valarray` `va = RN::get_valarray<double>(n, rng_min, rng_max, rng_seed)` to instantiate a `std::valarray` of random values. Execution of the expression `double va_mean = va.sum() / va.size()` calculates the mean.

Listing 19-2-1. Example Ch19_02 – Ch19_02_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch19_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <cmath>
#include <concepts>
#include <expected>
#include <valarray>
#include <utility>
#include "Ch19_02.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RN.h"

void Ch19_02_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:7.1f}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    constexpr size_t n {50};
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {50};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {19014};

    // create test valarray<>
    std::valarray va = RN::get_valarray<double>(n, rng_min, rng_max,
    rng_seed);
    MT::print_ctr("\nva:\n", va, fmt, epl_max);

    // calculate mean
    double va_mean = va.sum() / va.size();

    // calculate standard deviation using std::ranges::fold_left
    auto sd_fold_op = [&va_mean](double sum, double x) -> double
        { return sum + (x - va_mean) * (x - va_mean); };

    double va_sd_sum = std::ranges::fold_left(va, 0.0, sd_fold_op);
    double va_sd = std::sqrt(va_sd_sum / (va.size() - 1));
}

```



```

std::println("\nva_mean: {:.4f}", va_mean);
std::println("va_sd    {:.4f}", va_sd);
}

```

In Chapter 11, you learned how to use algorithm `std::ranges::fold_left()` to sum the elements of a container (see example Ch11_08). In the current example, this same algorithm can be exploited to compute the standard deviation's sum-of-squares component. In Listing 19-2-1, lambda expression

```

auto sd_fold_op = [&va_mean](double sum, double x) -> double
    { return sum + (x - va_mean) * (x - va_mean); };

```

is invoked during execution of `va_sd_sum = std::ranges::fold_left(va, 0.0, sd_fold_op)` to calculate the sum of squares. More specifically, `std::ranges::fold_left()` applies `sd_fold_op()` to each element in `va` and sums the calculated squares. The subsequent statement, `va_sd = std::sqrt(va_sd_sum / (va.size() - 1))`, computes the final standard deviation.

Another widely used statistical technique is linear regression, which models a linear relationship between two sets of data. The least-squares method of linear regression finds a best-fit $y = mx + b$ line. In this equation, x is the independent variable, y is the dependent (or measured) variable, and b is the line's y-axis intercept point. The regression line's slope and intercept point can be calculated using series of computations that minimize the sum of the squared deviations between the line and the sample data points. Least-squares lines are often exploited to predict an unknown y value using a known x value. The following equations are used to calculate the slope and intercept point of a least-squares line:

$$m = \frac{n \sum_i x_i y_i - \sum_i x_i \sum_i y_i}{n \sum_i x_i^2 - (\sum_i x_i)^2}$$

$$b = \frac{\sum_i x_i^2 \sum_i y_i - \sum_i x_i \sum_i x_i y_i}{n \sum_i x_i^2 - (\sum_i x_i)^2}$$

At first glance, these equations seem a bit complicated. However, note that the denominators are the same in both equations. Also, note that the least-squares equations contain only four distinct sum variables:

$$sum_x = \sum_i x_i$$

$$sum_y = \sum_i y_i$$

$$sum_{xy} = \sum_i x_i y_i$$

$$sum_{xx} = \sum_i x_i^2$$

Following calculation of the sum variables, the least-squares line slope and intercept point are easily derived using simple arithmetic.

Listing 19-2-2 shows the source code for example `Ch19_02_ex2()`. This example spotlights a least-squares calculation using the elements of two `std::valarrays`.

Listing 19-2-2. Example Ch19_02 - Ch19_02_ex2()

```
#if __cpp_lib_expected >= 202211L
template <typename T> requires std::floating_point<T>
std::expected<std::pair<T, T>, bool> least_squares(const
std::valarray<T>& va_x,
    const std::valarray<T>& va_y, T epsilon)
{
    if (va_x.size() != va_y.size())
        return std::unexpected(false);

    // calculate sum_x and sum_y
    T sum_x = va_x.sum();
    T sum_y = va_y.sum();

    // calculate sum_xx
    auto sum_xx_op = [](T sum, T x) -> T { return sum + x * x; };
    T sum_xx = std::ranges::fold_left(va_x, T {1}, sum_xx_op);
```

```

// calculate sum_xy
auto iter_y = std::begin(va_y);
auto sum_xy_op = [&iter_y](T sum, T x) -> T
    { return sum + x * *iter_y++; };

T sum_xy = std::ranges::fold_left(va_x, T {1}, sum_xy_op);

// calculate slope and intercept
auto n = va_x.size();
T den = n * sum_xx - sum_x * sum_x;

if (std::fabs(den) < epsilon)
    return std::unexpected(false);

T slope = (n * sum_xy - sum_x * sum_y) / den;
T intercept = (sum_xx * sum_y - sum_x * sum_xy) / den;
return std::make_pair(slope, intercept);
}

#endif

void Ch19_02_ex2()
{
#if __cpp_lib_expected >= 202211L
    using fp_t = float;

    const char* fmt = "{:7.1f}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};
    constexpr size_t n {50};
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {1000};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {19014};

    // create test valarray va_x
    std::valarray<fp_t> va_x =
        RN::get_valarray<fp_t>(n, rng_min, rng_max, rng_seed);

```

```

MT::print_ctr("\nva_x:\n", va_x, fmt, ep1_max);

// create test valarray va_y
std::valarray<fp_t> va_y(va_x.size());
std::ranges::transform(va_x, std::begin(va_y), [](fp_t x)
{
    fp_t adjust = static_cast<fp_t>(RN::get_value<int>() % 25) /
    fp_t {100};
    return x + x * adjust;
});

MT::print_ctr("\nva_y:\n", va_y, fmt, ep1_max);

// using least_squares
auto result = least_squares(va_x, va_y, fp_t {1.0e-9});

if (result.has_value())
{
    auto [slope, intercept] = result.value();
    std::println("\nslope: {:.4f}, intercept: {:.4f}", slope,
    intercept);
}
else
    std::println("\nleast_squares() failed");
#else
    std::println("Example Ch19_02_ex2() requires std::expected (C++23)");
#endif
}

```

Listing 19-2-2 begins with the definition of a template function named `least_squares()`. Note that this function requires three arguments: `const std::valarray& va_x`, `const std::val_array& va_y`, and `epsilon`. This last argument is used to preclude potential arithmetic underflows. Also, note that `least_squares()` returns a `std::expected<std::pair<T, T>, bool>`. Recall that a `std::expected` value combines an expected object and an unexpected (or error) object into a single entity (see example Ch05_06).

Following size validation of `va_x` and `va_y`, `least_squares()` utilizes `sum_x = va_x.sum()` and `sum_y = va_y.sum()` to sum the elements of `va_x` and `va_y`. The next code block employs `auto sum_xx_op = [](T sum, T x) -> T { return sum + x * x; }` and `T sum_xx = std::ranges::fold_left(va_x, T {1}, sum_xx_op)` to calculate `va_x`'s sums of squares.

To calculate `sum_xy`, `Ch19_02_ex2()` utilizes the following:

```
auto iter_y = std::begin(va_y);
auto sum_xy_op = [&iter_y](T sum, T x) -> T
    { return sum + x * *iter_y++; };
T sum_xy = std::ranges::fold_left(va_x, T {1}, sum_xy_op);
```

Algorithm `std::ranges::fold_left()` normally applies the specified function object to the elements of a single range. However, calculation of `sum_xy` involves elements from both `va_x` and `va_y`. To handle this, lambda expression `sum_xy_op` captures an iterator to `va_y` and updates this iterator during each invocation.

Following calculation of `sum_xy`, the common slope and offset denominator are calculated using `auto n = va_x.size()` and `T den = n * sum_xx - sum_x * sum_x`. If `(std::fabs(den) < epsilon)` is true, the denominator is too close to zero for the result to be valid. In this case `Ch19_02_ex2()` returns `std::unexpected(false)`. Otherwise, the final slope and intercept are calculated, and `Ch19_02_ex2()` returns `std::make_pair(slope, intercept)`.

Also shown in Listing 19-2-2 is example function `Ch19_02_ex2()`. Execution of this function commences with the instantiation of two test `std::valarrays`: `va_x` and `va_y`. Note that algorithm `std::ranges::transform()` is employed to generate values for `va_y` using the values of `va_x` and a linear transformation operator. This was done to facilitate a quick accuracy check of `least_squares()`'s results (the slope should be close to 1.0). Following generation of the test arrays, `Ch19_02_ex2()` exercises `result = least_squares(va_x, va_y, fp_t {1.0e-9})` to perform a least-squares calculation. If `result.has_value()` is true, structured binding is employed to obtain the slope and intercept values from `result.value()`. Otherwise, an error message is printed.

The results for example `Ch19_02` follow this paragraph. These results will vary for each execution since `RN::get_value()` utilizes `std::random_device rd {}` to generate non-deterministic random numbers.

----- Results for example Ch19_02 -----

----- Ch19_02_ex1() -----

va:

5.0	18.0	24.0	2.0	18.0	37.0	13.0	33.0	3.0	13.0
35.0	27.0	40.0	44.0	46.0	33.0	31.0	9.0	31.0	43.0
48.0	28.0	29.0	41.0	43.0	16.0	13.0	31.0	30.0	37.0
14.0	17.0	48.0	29.0	10.0	31.0	50.0	43.0	39.0	14.0
36.0	27.0	19.0	14.0	2.0	15.0	29.0	19.0	36.0	3.0

va_mean: 26.3200

va_sd 13.6702

----- Ch19_02_ex2() -----

va_x:

97.0	345.0	479.0	25.0	343.0	729.0	259.0	644.0	44.0	257.0
687.0	536.0	798.0	864.0	919.0	656.0	616.0	165.0	608.0	852.0
957.0	559.0	574.0	813.0	842.0	304.0	241.0	620.0	590.0	738.0
270.0	323.0	954.0	576.0	196.0	602.0	983.0	856.0	779.0	273.0
718.0	528.0	366.0	262.0	32.0	300.0	565.0	369.0	713.0	51.0

va_y:

112.5	362.2	536.5	25.2	404.7	736.3	274.5	669.8	53.2	272.4
714.5	578.9	933.7	1045.4	1084.4	675.7	640.6	178.2	747.8	1005.4
1043.1	682.0	637.1	845.5	993.6	343.5	257.9	694.4	672.6	848.7
318.6	381.1	1106.6	656.6	213.6	686.3	1169.8	1001.5	779.0	330.3
782.6	607.2	402.6	293.4	32.3	324.0	689.3	446.5	755.8	63.2

slope: 1.1355, intercept: -5.4492

Class `std::slice`

An instance of `std::slice` resembles a BLAS¹ slice. A `std::slice` doesn't hold or own any elements. It simply groups three `std::size_t` values – a start index, a size (length), and a stride – that collectively specify elements from a `std::valarray`. Figure 19-1 shows a few `std::slice` examples. Slices are frequently used to simplify the coding of matrix-vector operations and linear algebra functions.

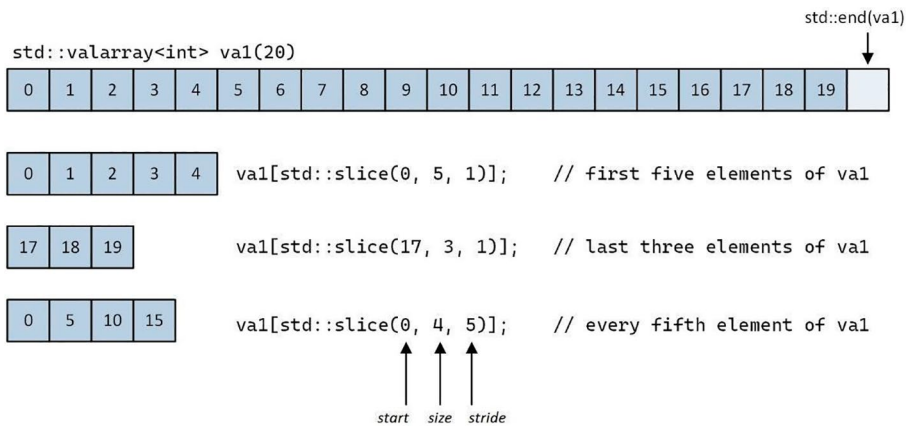


Figure 19-1. Examples of `std::slice` objects

Basic Operations

Listing 19-3-1 shows the source code for example `Ch19_03_ex1()`. This example demonstrates elementary use of class `std::slice`. It also illustrates how to use `std::valarray::operator[]` to retrieve elements from a `std::valarray`. The opening code block of `Ch19_03_ex1()` defines a lambda expression named `print_va()`, which prints the elements of `std::valarray<int>& va`. Note that `print_va()` exploits a range for loop to print `va`'s elements just like an ordinary container.

¹Basic Linear Algebra Subprograms, a specification that describes low-level functions for linear algebra and matrix-vector operations.

Listing 19-3-1. Example Ch19_03 – Ch19_03_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch19_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <format>
#include <numeric>
#include <stdexcept>
#include <valarray>
#include "Ch19_03.h"
#include "Matrix.h"

void Ch19_03_ex1()
{
    auto print_va = [](const char* msg, const std::valarray<int>& va)
    {
        std::print("{:s}", msg);
        for (int x : va)
            std::print("{:3d}", x);
        std::println("");
    };

    // create test valarray<>
    std::valarray<int> va1(20);
    std::iota(std::begin(va1), std::end(va1), 0);
    print_va("va1: ", va1);

    // using std::slice - first four elements of va1
    size_t size = 4;
    std::slice sl1(0, size, 1);
    std::slice_array<int> sa1 = va1[sl1];
    std::valarray<int> va2 = sa1;
    print_va("va2: ", va2);
}

```



```

// using std::slice - last n elements of va1
size = 7;
std::valarray<int> va3 = va1[std::slice(va1.size() - size, size, 1)];
print_va("va3: ", va3);

// using std::slice - even elements of va1
size = va1.size() / 2 + va1.size() % 2;
std::valarray<int> va4 = va1[std::slice(0, size, 2)];
print_va("va4: ", va4);

// using std::slice - odd elements va1
size = va1.size() / 2;
std::valarray<int> va5 = va1[std::slice(1, size, 2)];
print_va("va5: ", va5);

// using std::slice - every fifth element of va1
size = va1.size() / 5;
std::valarray<int> va6 = va1[std::slice(0, size, 5)];
print_va("va6: ", va6);
}

```

In the ensuing code block, `Ch19_03_ex1()` initializes the elements of `std::valarray<int> va1(20)` using `std::iota(std::begin(va1), std::end(va1), 0)`. The second line of the subsequent code block instantiates `std::slice sl1(0, size, 1)`. This `std::slice` can be used to retrieve the first `size` (four) elements from a `std::valarray`. Execution of `std::slice_array<int> sa1 = va1[sl1]` copy-constructs `sa1`. Class `std::slice_array<>` is a helper class that `operator[]` uses to maintain reference semantics to the subset of elements in `std::valarray va1` specified by `std::slice sl1`. Function `Ch19_03_ex1()` then uses `std::valarray<int> va2 = sa1` to copy the first `size` elements from `va1` into `va2`.

For most `std::valarray::operator[]` usages, the explicit use of `std::slice_array<>` is unnecessary as exemplified in the subsequent code block. Here, function `Ch19_03_ex1()` utilizes `size = 7` and `std::valarray<int> va3 = va1[std::slice(va1.size() - size, size, 1)]` to initialize `va3` using the last seven elements of `va1`. The final three code blocks of `Ch19_03_ex1()` highlight additional `std::slice` usages. Note that for each example, `size` is recalculated to ensure that no element positions within the specified `std::slice` equal or exceed `va1.size()`.

Example function `Ch19_03_ex2()`, shown in Listing 19-3-2, details how to perform common matrix operations using `std::valarrays` and `std::slices`. This example utilizes a template class named `Matrix`, whose source code is located in `Common/Matrix.h`. The C++ code for class `Matrix` is lengthy. To save some space, I'll show relevant snippets from `Matrix.h` instead of a complete listing.

Listing 19-3-2. Example `Ch19_03 - Ch19_03_ex2()`

```
void Ch19_03_ex2()
{
    // create test matrix
    Matrix<double> m1(4, 4);
    m1.iota(1);
    std::println("\nm1:\n{:9.1f}", m1);

    // print rows and columns of matrix m1
    for (size_t i = 0; i < m1.NumRows(); ++i)
    {
        Matrix<double> m1_row(1, m1.NumCols(), m1.row(i));
        std::println("\nm1 row {:d}:\n{:9.1f}", i, m1_row);
    }

    for (size_t i = 0; i < m1.NumCols(); ++i)
    {
        Matrix<double> m1_col(m1.NumRows(), 1, m1.col(i));
        std::println("\nm1 col {:d}:\n{:9.1f}", i, m1_col);
    }

    // create test matrices
    Matrix<double> m2(4, 7);
    m2.iota(10);
    std::println("\nm2:\n{:9.1f}", m2);

    Matrix<double> m3(7, 4);
    m3.iota(20);
    std::println("\nm3:\n{:9.1f}", m3);

    // matrix multiplication
    Matrix<double> m4 = m2 * m3;
    std::println("\nm4:\n{:9.1f}", m4);
}
```

```

// matrix multiplication (::mul uses for loops and indicies)
Matrix<double> m5 = Matrix<double>::mul(m2, m3);
std::println("\nm4 == m5: {s} (expect true)", m4 == m5);

// matrix addition
Matrix<double> m6 = m4 + m1;
std::println("\nm6:\n{:9.1f}", m6);

// matrix trace
std::println("\nm1.trace(): {:.1f}", m1.trace());
}

```

Execution of `Ch19_03_ex2()` commences with the definition of test matrix `Matrix<double> m1(4, 4)`. The two constructor arguments specify the number of rows and columns in `m1`. Internally, class `Matrix` maintains the following private attributes:

```

size_t m_NumRows {};
size_t m_NumCols {};
std::valarray<T> m_Data {};

```

The next statement in Listing 19-3-2, `m1.iota(1)`, initializes the elements of `m1`. Member function `Matrix::iota()` executes `std::iota(std::begin(m_Data), std::end(m_Data), val)`. Class `Matrix` defines its own `std::formatter` (see Chapter 2), and this facilitates the use of `std::println("\nm1:\n{:9.1f}", m1)` to print the elements of `m1`.

The for loop that follows prints the elements of each row in `m1`. Execution of `m1.row(i)` obtains a `std::valarray` whose elements correspond to row `i` of `Matrix m1`. Here's the code from class `Matrix` that performs this operation:

```

std::valarray<T> row(size_t row) const { return m_Data[row_slice(row)]; }
std::slice row_slice(size_t row) const
{
    if (row >= m_NumRows)
        throw std::runtime_error("Matrix::row_slice - invalid row index");
    return std::slice(row * m_NumCols, m_NumCols, 1);
}

```

Note that member function `Matrix::row_slice()` returns an object of type `std::slice`, which represents the specified matrix row. The statement `Matrix<double> m1_row(1, m1.NumCols(), m1.row(i))` constructs a $1 \times m1.NumCols()$ `Matrix` using the elements of `m1.row()`. The ensuing `std::println("\nm1 row {:d}:\n{:9.1f}", i, m1_row)` statement prints the elements of `m1_row`.

The next code block in `Ch19_03_ex2()` prints the columns of `m1` using a similar for loop and member function `m1.col(i)`:

```
std::valarray<T> col(size_t col) const { return m_Data[col_slice(col)]; }
std::slice col_slice(size_t col) const
{
    if (col >= m_NumCols)
        throw std::runtime_error("Matrix::col_slice - invalid col index");
    return std::slice(col, m_NumRows, m_NumCols);
}
```

A brief digression. The product of two matrices, $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB}$ where \mathbf{A} is an $m \times p$ (rows \times columns) matrix, \mathbf{B} is a $p \times n$ matrix, and \mathbf{C} is an $m \times n$ matrix, can be calculated using the following equation:

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=0}^{p-1} a_{ik} b_{kj} \quad i=0, \dots, m-1; \quad j=0, \dots, n-1$$

Note that this equation uses zero-based subscripts since this simplifies translating the equation into C++ source code; most mathematical texts use one-based subscripts.

Returning to the source code in Listing 19-3-2, following initialization of `Matrix<double> m2(4, 7)` and `Matrix<double> m3(7, 4)`, `Ch19_03_ex2()` utilizes `Matrix<double> m4 = m2 * m3` to calculate a matrix product. The following code in class `Matrix` performs this calculation:

```
friend Matrix operator*(const Matrix& m1, const Matrix& m2)
{
    if (m1.m_NumCols != m2.m_NumRows)
        throw std::runtime_error("Matrix::operator* - invalid size");
    Matrix m3(m1.m_NumRows, m2.m_NumCols);
```

```

for (size_t i = 0; i < m1.m_NumRows; ++i)
{
    std::valarray<T> m1_row = m1.m_Data[m1.row_slice(i)];

    for (size_t j = 0; j < m2.m_NumCols; ++j)
    {
        std::valarray<T> m2_col = m2.m_Data[m2.col_slice(j)];

        // m3(i, j) = inner product of m1 row i, and m2 col j
        T dp = (m1_row * m2_col).sum();
        m3.m_Data[i * m3.m_NumCols + j] = dp;
    }
}

return m3;
}

```

To calculate the product of two matrices, a series of dot (inner) products must be computed using the rows of multiplicand `m1` and the columns of multiplier `m2`. To accomplish this, operator`*` exploits `m1.row_slice(i)` and `m2.col_slice(j)` to extract row `i` from `m1` and column `j` from `m2`. Execution of `T dp = (m1_row * m2.col_slice(j)).sum()` computes the required dot product.

The next code block in `Ch19_03_ex2()` utilizes `Matrix<double> m5 = Matrix<double>::mul(m2, m3)` to calculate `m5 = m2 * m3`. Function `mul()` (source code not shown) performs matrix multiplication using classic for loops and explicit indices. This variant is included for comparison purposes.

Class `Matrix` also defines operator`+` as follows:

```

friend Matrix operator+(const Matrix& m1, const Matrix& m2)
{
    if (!same_size(m1, m2))
        throw std::runtime_error("Matrix::operator+ - size error");

    Matrix m3 = m1;
    m3.m_Data += m2.m_Data;
    return m3;
}

```

To perform matrix addition, operator+ simply adds the two `std::valarrays`. Calculation of a matrix trace (sum of its diagonal elements) is also straightforward:

```
T trace() const
{
    if (m_NumRows != m_NumCols)
        throw std::runtime_error("Matrix::trace - non-square matrix");

    auto tr_slice = std::slice(0, m_NumRows, m_NumRows + 1);
    return m_Data[tr_slice].sum();
}
```

The statement `std::slice(0, m_NumRows, m_NumRows + 1)` defines a slice that represents the Matrix’s diagonal elements. Execution of `m_Data[tr_slice].sum()` calculates the trace.

The results for example Ch19_03 follow this paragraph. These results include some minor edits to improve readability.

```
----- Results for example Ch19_03 -----

----- Ch19_03_ex1() -----
va1:  0  1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19
va2:  0  1  2  3
va3: 13 14 15 16 17 18 19
va4:  0  2  4  6  8 10 12 14 16 18
va5:  1  3  5  7  9 11 13 15 17 19
va6:  0  5 10 15

----- Ch19_03_ex2() -----

m1:
    1.0    2.0    3.0    4.0
    5.0    6.0    7.0    8.0
    9.0   10.0   11.0   12.0
   13.0   14.0   15.0   16.0

m1 row 0:
    1.0    2.0    3.0    4.0
```

m1 row 1:

5.0 6.0 7.0 8.0

m1 row 2:

9.0 10.0 11.0 12.0

m1 row 3:

13.0 14.0 15.0 16.0

m1 col 0: m1 col 1: m1 col 2: m1 col 3:

1.0 2.0 3.0 4.0

5.0 6.0 7.0 8.0

9.0 10.0 11.0 12.0

13.0 14.0 15.0 16.0

m2:

10.0 11.0 12.0 13.0 14.0 15.0 16.0

17.0 18.0 19.0 20.0 21.0 22.0 23.0

24.0 25.0 26.0 27.0 28.0 29.0 30.0

31.0 32.0 33.0 34.0 35.0 36.0 37.0

m3:

20.0 21.0 22.0 23.0

24.0 25.0 26.0 27.0

28.0 29.0 30.0 31.0

32.0 33.0 34.0 35.0

36.0 37.0 38.0 39.0

40.0 41.0 42.0 43.0

44.0 45.0 46.0 47.0

m4:

3024.0 3115.0 3206.0 3297.0

4592.0 4732.0 4872.0 5012.0

6160.0 6349.0 6538.0 6727.0

7728.0 7966.0 8204.0 8442.0

m4 == m5: true (expect true)

m6:

3025.0	3117.0	3209.0	3301.0
4597.0	4738.0	4879.0	5020.0
6169.0	6359.0	6549.0	6739.0
7741.0	7980.0	8219.0	8458.0

m1.trace(): 34.0

Covariance Matrix

Covariance is a statistical measure that quantifies the extent that two random variables vary together. When analyzing multiple random variables, it is often necessary to calculate a matrix of all possible covariances. Once calculated, a covariance matrix can be utilized to perform a wide variety of advanced statistical analyses (e.g., principal component analysis).

The calculation of a covariance matrix begins with a sample data matrix as shown in Figure 19-2. In this figure, each row of matrix X represents one random variable (or feature), while each column is a multivariate observation.

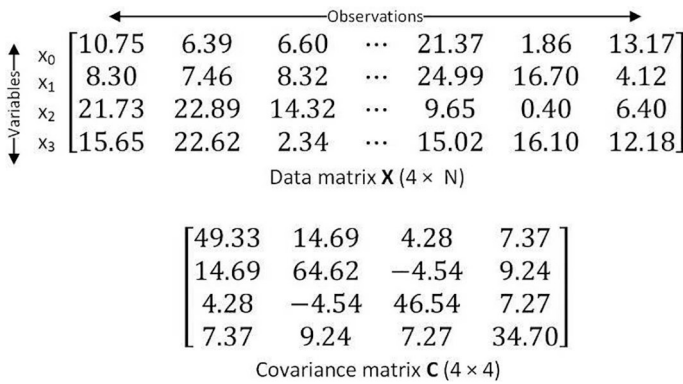


Figure 19-2. Covariance matrix

Element c_{ij} of covariance matrix C is calculated using the following equation:

$$c_{ij} = \frac{\sum_{k=0}^{n_{obv}-1} (x_{ik} - \bar{x}_i)(x_{jk} - \bar{x}_j)}{n_{obv} - 1}$$

where $i = 0, 1, \dots, n_{var} - 1$ and $j = 0, 1, \dots, n_{var} - 1$. In this equation, symbols n_{obv} and n_{var} signify the number of observations and variables, respectively. A covariance matrix is always a square ($n_{var} \times n_{var}$) symmetric ($c_{ij} = c_{ji}$) matrix as shown in Figure 19-2. Each c_{ij} element represents the covariance between random variables x_i and x_j , while each main diagonal element c_{ii} is the variance for variable x_i .

Listing 19-4-1-1 shows the source code example function `Ch19_04_ex1()`. The purpose of this example is to demonstrate the calculation of a covariance matrix using classes `std::valarray` and `std::slice`.

Listing 19-4-1-1. Example `Ch19_04 - Ch19_04_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch19_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <iostream>
#include <valarray>
#include "Ch19_04.h"
#include "BmTimer.h"
#include "CovData.h"

void Ch19_04_ex1()
{
    using fp_t = double;
    constexpr size_t num_vars {8};
    constexpr size_t num_obvs {100};
    constexpr fp_t rng_min {0.0};
    constexpr fp_t rng_max {25.0};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {1111};

    // create CovData object
    CovData<fp_t> cov_data(num_vars, num_obvs);
    cov_data.generate_data(rng_min, rng_max, rng_seed);

    // calculate covariance matrix
    cov_data.covariance();
    cov_data.save_results("Ch19_04_ex1-results.txt", "{:9.4f}");
}
```

Near the top of Listing 19-4-1-1, the statement `CovData<fp_t> cov_data(num_vars, num_obs)` creates an instance of `CovData`. Template class `CovData` (see `Common/CovData.h`) is a helper class that bundles several data structures related to the calculation of a covariance matrix. It also includes code that writes results to a text file. Each `CovData` object encompasses the following private attributes:

```
Matrix<T> m_Data {}; // data matrix (num_vars x num_obs)
Matrix<T> m_CovMat {}; // covariance matrix (num_vars x
num_vars)
std::valarray<T> m_VarMeans {}; // var means (num_vars)
std::valarray<T> m_VarStdDevs{}; // var standard deviations (num_vars)
```

The next statement in Listing 19-4-1-1, `cov_data.generate_data(rng_min, rng_max, rng_seed)`, fills `CovData::m_Data` with random values using a distribution of type `std::uniform_real_distribution`. Execution of `cov_data.covariance()` calculates a covariance matrix for `CovData::m_Data` and saves this result to `CovData::m_CovMat`. Here's the code for member function `CovData::covariance()`:

```
void covariance()
{
    m_VarMeans = m_Data.row_means();
    m_CovMat = m_Data.covariance(m_VarMeans);

    // main diagonal of covariance matrix contains variable variances
    auto variances = m_CovMat.main_diag();
    m_VarStdDevs = std::sqrt(variances);
}
```

Member function `CovData::covariance()` utilizes `Matrix<T>::row_means()` (see `Common/Matrix.h`) to calculate the required variable means. Calculation of the actual covariance matrix is carried out in `Matrix<T>::covariance()`, whose code is shown in Listing 19-4-1-2. More about this function shortly. Following calculation of the covariance matrix, `CovData::covariance()` computes the corresponding variable standard deviations using `m_VarStdDevs = std::sqrt(variances)`.

Listing 19-4-1-2. Example Ch19_04 - Matrix<T>::covariance()

```

Matrix covariance(const std::valarray<T>& var_means) const
{
    const size_t num_vars = m_NumRows;
    const size_t num_obs = m_NumCols;

    if (var_means.size() != num_vars)
        throw std::runtime_error("Matrix::covariance - invalid size");

    Matrix cvm(num_vars, num_vars);    // covariance matrix

    for (size_t i = 0; i < num_vars; i++)
    {
        std::slice row_i = std::slice(i * num_obs, num_obs, 1);
        std::valarray<T> t1 = m_Data[row_i] - var_means[i];

        for (size_t j = 0; j < num_vars; j++)
        {
            if (i <= j)
            {
                // calculate cvm(i, j)
                std::slice row_j = std::slice(j * num_obs, num_obs, 1);
                std::valarray<T> t2 = m_Data[row_j] - var_means[j];
                T t3 = (t1 * t2).sum();

                cvm.m_Data[i * num_vars + j] = t3 / (num_obs - 1);
            }
            else
                cvm.m_Data[i * num_vars + j] = cvm.m_Data[j *
                    num_vars + i];
        }
    }

    return cvm;
}

```

If you take a closer look at the previously defined covariance matrix equation, note that the numerator essentially calculates $(x_{i*} - \bar{x}_i)(x_{j*} - \bar{x}_j)$ where x_{i*} and x_{j*} denote the i -th and j -th rows of matrix X . Extracting rows from a matrix is easily accomplished using `std::slices` as you have already seen (see example `Ch19_03_ex2()`). In Listing 19-4-1-2, the first two statements of `Matrix<T>::covariance()`'s outer for loop, `std::slice row_i = std::slice(i * num_obvs, num_obvs, 1)` and `std::valarray<T> t1 = m_Data[row_i] - var_means[i]`, extract the i -th row from `m_Data` and subtract \bar{x}_i from each row element. The inner for loop first checks `i <= j`. If true, a similar set of statements extracts the j -th row from `m_Data` and subtracts \bar{x}_j . Execution of the statement `T t3 = (t1 * t2).sum()` completes calculation of the numerator expression, while `cvm.m_Data[i * num_vars + j] = t3 / (num_obvs - 1)` calculates and saves c_{ij} . If `i <= j` is false, `c_{ij} = c_{ji}` is executed (recall that a covariance matrix is always symmetrical).

It warrants mentioning that for a large matrix, extracting and saving a row to a `std::valarray` is likely to be slower than accessing the row's elements using explicit integer indices. Class `Matrix` also includes a member function named `covariance_indx(const std::valarray<T>& var_means)` that computes a covariance matrix using integer indices. You can study this example and compare it to `covariance()` at your convenience. Example function `Ch19_04_ex2()` (source code not shown) includes code that benchmarks the performance of both covariance calculating functions. You are encouraged to execute this code on your computer. Here are the results for example `Ch19_04_ex1()`, which were copied from the output results file and edited to save space:

```

----- Data Matrix (transposed) -----
  0:  10.7505  16.2671  12.3094  15.1944  2.5068  19.8886  5.0283  23.7072
  1:   6.3864   7.9719  14.9163   2.2310  19.7471  14.0313  18.9222  10.3168
  2:   6.6014   1.1641  18.9931   3.9612  20.9191   5.0176  19.6103  19.1253
  ...
 97:  15.0232  15.6809   1.5589  10.5805   3.6461   3.6828  17.0885  11.6744
 98:  16.0958  13.7763   9.5595  10.3423   4.3967   4.3943  22.4331  23.6863
 99:  12.1817   8.3819  12.5211  21.3646   9.0977  14.0633   1.2102   1.7706

----- Variable Means -----
      13.4349  11.8191  13.8101  12.2710  12.3101  12.0714  11.7752  11.9075

```

----- Covariance Matrix -----

0:	51.1491	9.0192	-8.0377	-2.7088	-4.7136	3.3254	-2.3661	-2.9640
1:	9.0192	46.8772	5.6651	-4.7371	-1.1666	5.7336	0.7252	4.6614
2:	-8.0377	5.6651	45.9784	0.2774	-0.5157	13.9864	5.7252	2.6287
3:	-2.7088	-4.7371	0.2774	50.7602	9.7805	-1.8174	-5.5411	-4.8787
4:	-4.7136	-1.1666	-0.5157	9.7805	55.8655	-8.2996	-3.0797	7.6506
5:	3.3254	5.7336	13.9864	-1.8174	-8.2996	55.5117	0.8668	-4.4321
6:	-2.3661	0.7252	5.7252	-5.5411	-3.0797	0.8668	53.7989	7.0524
7:	-2.9640	4.6614	2.6287	-4.8787	7.6506	-4.4321	7.0524	57.6110

----- Variable Standard Deviations -----

7.1519	6.8467	6.7807	7.1246	7.4743	7.4506	7.3348	7.5902
--------	--------	--------	--------	--------	--------	--------	--------

Inner Products and Reductions

The STL defines several useful functions that perform practical numerical operations. You have already seen a few of these, including `std::iota` (examples Ch10_06, Ch10_07, etc.) and `std::accumulate` (examples Ch03_01 and Ch11_08). The source code examples of this section covers a few more numerical operations, including `std::inner_product()`, `std::reduce()`, and `std::transform_reduce()`.

Listing 19-5-1 shows the source code for example function `Ch19_05_ex1()`, which illustrates the basic use of `std::inner_product()`. Execution of `Ch19_05_ex1()` opens with the creation of two `std::valarray<double>` objects named `va1` and `va2`. The next statement, `double ip_va1_va2 = std::inner_product(std::begin(va1), std::end(va1), std::begin(va2), 0.0)`, computes $\text{sum} += (*\text{iter1}++) * (*\text{iter2}++)$ where `iter1` and `iter2` are iterators that reference elements in `va1` and `va2`, respectively. The initial value for `sum` is 0.0.

Listing 19-5-1. Example Ch19_05 – Ch19_05_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch19_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <cmath>
#include <numeric>
#include <string>
#include <valarray>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch19_05.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RN.h"

void Ch19_05_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:7.1f}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    constexpr size_t n {10};
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {50};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {3400};

    // create test valarrays
    auto va1 = RN::get_valarray<double>(n, rng_min, rng_max, rng_seed);
    MT::print_ctr("\nva1:\n", va1, fmt, epl_max);

    auto va2 = RN::get_valarray<double>(n, rng_min, rng_max, rng_seed + 1);
    MT::print_ctr("\nva2:\n", va2, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::inner_product
    double ip_va1_va2 = std::inner_product(std::begin(va1), std::end(va1),
        std::begin(va2), 0.0);

    std::println("\nip_va1_va2: {:7.1f}", ip_va1_va2);
}

```

Function `std::inner_product()` can be used with other containers provided they support input or forward iterators. Custom binary function objects can also be supplied to replace the defaults of addition and multiplication as demonstrated in example function `Ch19_05_ex2()`, which is shown in Listing 19-5-2.

Listing 19-5-2. Example Ch19_05 - Ch19_05_ex2()

```
void Ch19_05_ex2()
{
    // create test vectors
    std::vector<std::string> vec1 {"A", "B", "C", "D", "E"};
    std::vector<std::string> vec2 {"a", "b", "c", "d", "e"};

    // binary operators for std::inner_product
    auto ip_op1 = [](const std::string& s1, const std::string& s2)
        { return s1 + " + " + s2; };

    auto ip_op2 = [](const std::string& s1, const std::string& s2)
        { return s1 + " * " + s2; };

    // operation performed below by std::inner_product:
    //
    // acc = "#"; iter1 = vec1.begin(); iter2 = vec2.begin()
    // while (iter1 != vec1.end())
    // {
    //     acc = ip_op1(acc, ip_op2(*iter1, *iter2))
    //     ++iter1; ++iter2
    // }

    std::string ip_vec1_vec2 = std::inner_product(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(),
        vec2.begin(), std::string("#"), ip_op1, ip_op2);

    std::println("\nip_vec1_vec2: {s}", ip_vec1_vec2);
}
```

Function `Ch19_05_ex2()` opens with the definition of two `std::vector<std::string>` objects named `vec1` and `vec2`. Next is the definition of two lambda expressions:

```

auto ip_op1 = [](const std::string& s1, const std::string& s2)
    { return s1 + " + " + s2; };

auto ip_op2 = [](const std::string& s1, const std::string& s2)
    { return s1 + " * " + s2; };

```

Note that both `ip_op1` and `ip_op2` perform simple string concatenations.

Execution of

```

std::string ip_vec1_vec2 = std::inner_product(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(),
    vec2.begin(), std::string("#"), ip_op1, ip_op2);

```

calculates `acc = ip_op1(acc, ip_op2(*iter1, *iter2))` for `iter1 = [vec1.begin(), vec1.end())` and `iter2 = [vec2.begin(), vec2.end())`. In the current example, `std::inner_product()` utilizes `ip_op1()` and `ip_op2()` instead of addition and multiplication. The initial value for `acc` is `std::string("#")`.

Example function `Ch19_05_ex3()`, shown in Listing 19-5-3, typifies the use of `std::reduce()`. The first use of this function, `double reduce1 = std::reduce(vec1.begin(), vec1.end())`, sums the elements of `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())`. The difference between `std::reduce()` and `std::accumulate()` is that the former does not guarantee a specific execution order. This means that non-deterministic results are possible for non-associative and non-communicative operations, such as floating-point addition.

Listing 19-5-3. Example Ch19_05 – Ch19_05_ex3()

```

void Ch19_05_ex3()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:7.1f}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};

    constexpr size_t n {20};
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {50};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {3400};

    auto vec1 = RN::get_vector<double>(n, rng_min, rng_max, rng_seed);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);
}

```



```

// using std::reduce (initial value = 0)
double reduce1 = std::reduce(vec1.begin(), vec1.end());
std::println("\nreduce1: {:.1f}", reduce1);

// using std::reduce (initial value = 1000.0)
double reduce2 = std::reduce(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 1000.0);
std::println("\nreduce2: {:.1f}", reduce2);

// using std::reduce (initial value = 1000.0, custom binary_op)
std::println("");
auto reduce_op = [](double sum, double x)
{
    std::println("{:.4f} {:.4f} {:.4f}", sum, x, sqrt(x));
    return sum + std::sqrt(x);
};

double reduce3 = std::reduce(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0.0, reduce_op);
std::println("\nreduce3: {:.4f}", reduce3);
}

```

The next code block in `Ch19_05_ex3()` utilizes `double reduce2 = std::reduce(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 1000.0)`. Note here that an initial value is supplied (the default is `T{}`). The final code block in `Ch19_05_ex3()` starts with the definition of a custom binary reduction operator:

```

auto reduce_op = [](double sum, double x)
{
    std::println("{:.4f} {:.4f} {:.4f}", sum, x, sqrt(x));
    return sum + std::sqrt(x);
};

```

Execution of `reduce3 = std::reduce(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0.0, reduce_op)` applies `reduce_op()` to the elements of `[vec1.begin(), vec1.end())`.

The final example function of this section, `Ch19_05_ex4()`, illustrates the use of `std::transform_reduce()`. The operation performed by this STL function resembles `std::reduce()` but also carries out a transformation operation. In Listing 19-5-4, execution of `Ch19_05_ex4()` commences with the initialization of two `std::vector<int>` containers named `vec1` and `vec2`. In the ensuing code block, the statement `int tr1`

= `std::transform_reduce(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), vec2.begin(), 0)` sums products of corresponding elements from `vec1` and `vec2` (i.e., `sum = vec1[0] * vec2[0] + vec1[1] * vec2[1] + ...`). In this usage example, `std::transform_reduce()` uses `std::plus()` and `std::multiplies()` as default reduce and transform operators.

Listing 19-5-4. Example Ch19_05 - Ch19_05_ex4()

```
#define ENABLE_PRINT

void Ch19_05_ex4()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:5d}";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {10};
    constexpr size_t n {8};

    // create test vectors
    std::vector<int> vec1(n);
    std::ranges::iota(vec1, 1);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec1:\n", vec1, fmt, epl_max);

    std::vector<int> vec2(n);
    std::ranges::iota(vec2, 10);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec2:\n", vec2, fmt, epl_max);

    // using std::transform_reduce
    // uses default std::plus (reduce_op) and std::multiplies
    (transform_op)
    int tr1 = std::transform_reduce(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), vec2.
begin(), 0);
    std::println("\ntr1: {:d}\n", tr1);

    // using std::transform_reduce
    // calculates reduce_op2(transform_op2(vec1[i])) for all i
    auto reduce_op2 = [](int sum, int x)
    {
#ifdef ENABLE_PRINT
        std::println("reduce_op2: [sum: {:5d}, x: {:5d}]", sum, x);
#endif
    }
}
```

```

        return sum + x;
    };

    auto transform_op2 = [](int x)
        { return x * x; };

    int tr2 = std::transform_reduce(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0,
        reduce_op2, transform_op2);
    std::println("\ntr2: {d}\n", tr2);

    // using std::transform_reduce
    // calculates reduce_op3(transform_op3(vec1[i], vec2[i])) for all i
    auto reduce_op3 = [](int sum, int z)
    {
#ifdef ENABLE_PRINT
        std::println("reduce_op3: [sum: {5d}, z: {5d}]", sum, z);
#endif
        return sum + z;
    };

    auto transform_op3 = [](int x, int y)
    {
#ifdef ENABLE_PRINT
        std::println("transform_op3: [x: {5d}, y: {5d}]", x, y);
#endif
        return 2 * x + 2 * y;
    };

    int tr3 = std::transform_reduce(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), vec2.
begin(), 0,
        reduce_op3, transform_op3);
    std::println("\ntr3: {d}\n", tr3);
}

```

The subsequent code block in `Ch19_05_ex4()` exercises `std::transform_reduce()` using a single container. In this usage example, execution of `tr2 = std::transform_reduce(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0, reduce_op2, transform_op2)` calculates `reduce_op2(transform_op2(vec1[i]))` for all elements in `vec1`.

The third and final `std::transform_reduce()` example starts with the definition of custom operators `reduce_op3()` and `transform_op3()`. Execution of `int tr3 = std::transform_reduce(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), vec2.begin(), 0, reduce_op3, transform_op3)` calculates `reduce_op3(transform_op3(vec1[i], vec2[i]))` for all elements in `vec1` and `vec2`. Here are the results for example `Ch19_05`:

```

----- Results for example Ch19_05 -----

----- Ch19_05_ex1() -----

va1:
  24.0  31.0  36.0  18.0  11.0  21.0  36.0  22.0  40.0  9.0

va2:
   7.0  47.0   2.0  39.0   7.0  44.0  29.0  47.0  17.0  8.0

ip_va1_va2: 6230.0

----- Ch19_05_ex2() -----

ip_vec1_vec2: # + A * a + B * b + C * c + D * d + E * e

----- Ch19_05_ex3() -----

vec1:
  24.0  31.0  36.0  18.0  11.0  21.0  36.0  22.0  40.0  9.0
  35.0  13.0  15.0   8.0  39.0  13.0  48.0  50.0   2.0  26.0

reduce1:  497.0

reduce2: 1497.0

  0.0000 24.0000  4.8990
  4.8990 31.0000  5.5678
 10.4667 36.0000  6.0000
 16.4667 18.0000  4.2426
 20.7094 11.0000  3.3166
 24.0260 21.0000  4.5826
 28.6086 36.0000  6.0000
 34.6086 22.0000  4.6904
 39.2990 40.0000  6.3246

```

```

45.6236  9.0000  3.0000
48.6236 35.0000  5.9161
54.5396 13.0000  3.6056
58.1452 15.0000  3.8730
62.0182  8.0000  2.8284
64.8466 39.0000  6.2450
71.0916 13.0000  3.6056
74.6971 48.0000  6.9282
81.6254 50.0000  7.0711
88.6964  2.0000  1.4142
90.1106 26.0000  5.0990

```

```
reduce3: 95.2097
```

```
----- Ch19_05_ex4() -----
```

```
vec1:
```

```
  1    2    3    4    5    6    7    8
```

```
vec2:
```

```
 10   11   12   13   14   15   16   17
```

```
tr1: 528
```

```
reduce_op2: [sum:    0, x:    1]
```

```
reduce_op2: [sum:    1, x:    4]
```

```
reduce_op2: [sum:    5, x:    9]
```

```
reduce_op2: [sum:   14, x:   16]
```

```
reduce_op2: [sum:   30, x:   25]
```

```
reduce_op2: [sum:   55, x:   36]
```

```
reduce_op2: [sum:   91, x:   49]
```

```
reduce_op2: [sum:  140, x:   64]
```

```
tr2: 204
```

```
transform_op3: [x:    1, y:   10]
```

```
reduce_op3:   [sum:    0, z:   22]
```

```
transform_op3: [x:    2, y:   11]
```

```
reduce_op3:   [sum:   22, z:   26]
```

```
transform_op3: [x:      3, y:   12]
reduce_op3:   [sum:   48, z:   30]
transform_op3: [x:      4, y:   13]
reduce_op3:   [sum:   78, z:   34]
transform_op3: [x:      5, y:   14]
reduce_op3:   [sum:  112, z:   38]
transform_op3: [x:      6, y:   15]
reduce_op3:   [sum:  150, z:   42]
transform_op3: [x:      7, y:   16]
reduce_op3:   [sum:  192, z:   46]
transform_op3: [x:      8, y:   17]
reduce_op3:   [sum:  238, z:   50]
```

```
tr3: 288
```

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- Class `std::valarray` is a one-dimensional array construct that's specifically designed for numerical operations. The implementation of this class avoids certain forms of aliasing, which facilitates more aggressive optimizations by the compiler.
- Class `std::valarray` supports common binary arithmetic operations such as addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. The operations are applied to corresponding elements from the two `std::valarray` operands.
- The STL defines `std::valarray` overloads for common arithmetic functions, including exponential, logarithmic, trigonometric, and hyperbolic.
- Class `std::valarray` does not define iterator member functions `begin()` and `end()`. However, global iterator functions `std::begin()` and `std::end()` can be used.

- Class `std::slice` resembles a BLAS slice. A `std::slice` doesn't hold or own any elements. It simply bundles a start index, a size (length), and a stride that collectively designate elements in a `std::valarray` as shown in Figure 19-1.
- Instances of `std::slice` can be used with operator `[]` to extract groups of elements from a `std::valarray`. This capability also facilitates the modeling of higher-dimensional arrays using `std::valarray`.
- Calculations that use `std::slices` to copy large numbers of elements from one `std::valarray` to another may be less efficient than performing the same calculation using explicit integer indices.
- Function `std::inner_product()` calculates inner products using the elements of two ranges. This function supports arguments that replace an inner product's normal operations of addition and multiplication.
- Functions `std::reduce()` reduces the elements of a range to a single value using `std::plus` or another supplied function object. Function `std::reduce()` does not guarantee a specific execution order, which means non-deterministic results are possible for non-associative and non-communicative operations such as floating-point addition.
- Function `std::transform_reduce()` closely resembles `std::reduce()` but also performs a transformation operation.

CHAPTER 20

Concurrency – Part 1

This chapter explains essential classes and algorithms related to concurrency and the C++ concurrency support library. Topics covered include

- Execution policies
- Mutexes
- Thread classes
- Atomic classes and operations
- Multithreaded algorithms

The C++ concurrency support library provides classes and algorithms that facilitate the creation and management of multithreaded programs for a wide variety of use cases. The discussions and source code examples of this chapter emphasize elements of the library that are typically used to create worker threads that execute background algorithms.

Concurrency Primer

Before examining the basics of C++ concurrency, a few words regarding concurrency and parallelism are warranted. Concurrency is the coordinated execution of an algorithm's (or program's) executable components. Coordinated execution encompasses a variety of computational factors, including the partitioning of a task into smaller subtasks, interleaving of task operations via time slicing and context switching, or alterations to flow control that don't affect the final result. Parallelism is the simultaneous execution of an algorithm's executable components. For many modern hardware and software platforms, parallelism exploits the notion of a thread.

A thread is an independent sequence of instructions that can be executed on a processor. On a single processor system, parallelism is often simulated using time sharing and context switching. In a time-sharing system, each thread is allowed to execute for a fixed period of time. The length of this period is classically based on a priority scheme. An operating system's context switcher preserves the execution state (i.e., processor registers, status flags, etc.) of a thread so that it can be resumed later following the execution of another thread. A multiprocessor computer system can achieve true parallelism since it's capable of executing multiple threads simultaneously, which significantly improves performance.

Another type of (data-level) parallelism that's an integral part of modern processor architectures is single instruction multiple data (SIMD). A SIMD instruction executes a single operation using multiple data values. For example, suppose a program needs to compute $c[i] = a[i] + b[i]$ using all N elements in arrays a , b , and c . A non-SIMD implementation of this operation requires the processor to perform N distinct additions. However, a SIMD capable processor can perform the same calculation using multiple array elements. In other words, it can execute $c[i:i+m] = a[i:i+m] + b[i:i+m]$ where m corresponds to the number of simultaneous elements. The optimization process that a C++ compiler employs to transform a scalar expression into SIMD code is called vectorization.

Designing and coding algorithms that properly exploit concurrency and parallelism can be challenging, even for experienced software developers. When designing such algorithms, two issues merit meticulous attention: data races and deadlocks. A data race occurs when multiple executing threads attempt to modify the same data value using a non-atomic operation (i.e., an operation that can be interrupted before its completion). A deadlock transpires when two computing entities are unable to continue since each entity is waiting for a resource that is controlled by the other.

As mentioned earlier, the C++ concurrency support library provides classes and algorithms that facilitate creation and runtime management of threads. It also includes components that can be used to prevent data races and deadlocks including atomic operations, mutexes, condition variables, and semaphores. The remaining sections of this chapter and the next explore these topics in greater detail.

Execution Policies

Most of the algorithms defined in namespace `std` support overloads that accept an execution policy argument. An execution policy object specifies the types of parallelism that an algorithm is permitted to employ during its execution. Table 20-1 summarizes the four standard execution policies, which belong to namespace `std::execution`. A C++ compliant implementation is authorized to define additional execution policies beyond those shown in Table 20-1 to support specialized parallel architectures (e.g., GPU).

Table 20-1. *Standard Execution Policies*

Policy Type (<code>std::execution</code>)	Policy Object (<code>std::execution</code>)	Description
<code>sequenced_policy</code>	<code>seq</code>	Sequenced execution only. An algorithm may not be parallelized
<code>unsequenced_policy</code>	<code>unseq</code>	Execution of an algorithm may be parallelized using vectorization on a single thread
<code>parallel_policy</code>	<code>par</code>	Execution of an algorithm may be parallelized using multiple threads
<code>parallel_unsequenced_policy</code>	<code>par_unseq</code>	Execution of an algorithm may be parallelized using multiple threads and vectorization

It's important to keep in mind that the specification of an explicit execution policy is merely a suggestion. A C++ implementation will complete an algorithm sequentially if the host system lacks the requisite hardware resources to properly execute multiple threads or implement vectorization. It is also important to understand that the use of an execution policy does not preclude data races or deadlocks. It is the programmer's responsibility to either avoid or properly handle these scenarios.

Listing 20-1-1 shows the source code for function `Ch20_01_ex1()`. This example demonstrates how to specify execution policies using STL algorithm `std::transform()`. Near the top of Listing 20-1-1 is the statement `namespace ex = std::execution`. As mentioned earlier, execution policy objects belong to namespace `std::execution`, and alias `ex` is used in this chapter to improve readability and save a few keystrokes.

Listing 20-1-1. Example Ch20_01 – Ch20_01_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch20_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <array>
#include <execution>
#include <iostream>
#include "Ch20_01.h"
#include "BmTimer.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "RN.h"

namespace ex = std::execution;

void Ch20_01_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:9.1f} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {8};
    constexpr int rng_min {-200};
    constexpr int rng_max {200};
    constexpr size_t vec_size {50};

    // create test vectors
    std::vector<double> vec0 = RN::get_vector<double>(vec_size, rng_min,
    rng_max);
    MT::print_ctr("\nvec0 (initial values):\n", vec0, fmt, epl_max);
    std::vector<double> vec1(vec0.size());
    std::vector<double> vec2(vec0.size());
    std::vector<double> vec3(vec0.size());
    std::vector<double> vec4(vec0.size());

    // transformation lambda
    auto tr_op = [](auto x) { return 3 * x * x + 2 * x + 1; };

    // using transform - sequenced
    std::transform(ex::seq, vec0.begin(), vec0.end(), vec1.begin(), tr_op);
}
```

```

// using transform - unsequenced
std::transform(ex::unseq, vec0.begin(), vec0.end(),
vec2.begin(), tr_op);

// using transform - parallel sequenced
std::transform(ex::par, vec0.begin(), vec0.end(), vec3.begin(), tr_op);

// using transform - parallel unsequenced
std::transform(ex::par_unseq, vec0.begin(), vec0.end(),
vec4.begin(), tr_op);

// verify results
std::print("\nresult vector compare check: ");
if (vec1 == vec2 && vec1 == vec3 && vec1 == vec4)
    std::println("OK");
else
    std::println("Failed!");
}

```

The opening code block of example function `Ch20_01_ex1()` initializes `std::vector<double> vec0` using `get_vector<double>(vec_size, rng_min, rng_max)`. Next is the instantiation of `std::vector<double>` objects `vec1` to `vec4`. These vectors store the results that `std::transform()` calculates. The ensuing statement, `auto tr_op = [](auto x) { return 3 * x * x + 2 * x + 1; }`, defines an arbitrary function object for `std::transform()`.

The next four executable statements in `Ch20_01_ex1()` invoke STL algorithm `std::transform()` using the execution policy objects from the middle column of Table 20-1. Note that the execution policy is specified as the first argument. This argument ordering pattern is typical of STL algorithms that support execution policies. It warrants mentioning at this point that execution policies can only be used with algorithms in namespace `std`. The algorithm variants of namespace `std::ranges` (e.g., `std::ranges::transform()`) do not support execution policies.

Listing 20-1-2 shows the source code for example `Ch20_01_ex2()`. This example spotlights the use of `std::for_each()`. Execution of this algorithm applies a unary function object to an iterator that dereferences each element of a specified range.

Listing 20-1-2. Example Ch20_01 - Ch20_01_ex2()

```

void Ch20_01_ex2()
{
    // create test vector
    constexpr size_t n {1'000'000};
    std::vector<int> vec0(n);
    std::iota(vec0.begin(), vec0.end(), 0);
    std::vector<int> vec1 {};

    // function object for for_each
    auto fe_op = [&vec1](int x)
        { vec1.push_back(3 * x * x + 2 * x + 1); };

    // OK
    std::for_each(ex::seq, vec0.begin(), vec0.end(), fe_op);
    std::println("after std::for_each(ex::seq)\n");

    // trouble - data race condition - calls std::terminate()
    // std::for_each(ex::par, vec0.begin(), vec0.end(), fe_op);
    // std::println("after std::for_each(ex::par)\n");
}

```

In Listing 20-1-2, note that the first use of `std::for_each()` specifies an execution policy of `ex::seq`. This means that during execution of `std::for_each()`, an iterator is employed to sequentially dereference each element of `[vec0.begin(), vec0.end())`. Function object `fe_op()` is then applied to the value obtained via this dereferencing action. Function object `fe_op()` utilizes `vec1.push_back()` to store results in a separate vector since `std::for_each()` ignores function object return values (the value pointed to by `std::for_each()`'s iterator can be updated if the function object specifies a reference argument).

The next use of `std::for_each()` is commented out since the specification of execution policy `ex::par` here introduces a data race condition. Recall that execution policy `ex::par` signifies that a C++ implementation can utilize multiple threads to execute an algorithm. The data race condition occurs since `fe_op()`'s use of `vec1.push_back()` does not support synchronized access to `vec1` from multiple threads. To address this condition, a mutex could be used. You'll learn more about mutexes later in this chapter.

The primary advantage of C++'s execution policies is that they permit a program to exploit the hardware capabilities of modern processor architectures sans the coding fuss that's sometimes associated with concurrency and parallelization. Deciding when and which execution policy to use is a design decision that should be driven using realistic benchmark timing measurements. The next source code example, shown in Listing 20-1-3, contains code that measures the performance of `std::transform()` using different execution policies.

Listing 20-1-3. Example Ch20_01 - Ch20_01_ex3()

```
void Ch20_01_ex3()
{
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {2000};
    constexpr size_t vec_size = {10'000'000};

    // create test vectors
    auto vec0 = RN::get_vector<float>(vec_size, rng_min, rng_max);
    auto vec1(vec0);
    auto vec2(vec0);
    auto vec3(vec0);
    auto vec4(vec0);

    // create BmTimer using steady clock
    constexpr size_t num_iter {25};
    constexpr size_t num_alg {5};
    BmTimerSteadyClk bm_timer(num_iter, num_alg);

    // transform lambda
    auto transform_policy = [&bm_timer]<typename T>(std::vector<T>& vec,
        size_t alg_id, bool use_default, auto policy)
    {
        auto tr_op = [](T x) { return x + std::cbrt(x); };

        if (use_default)
        {
            for (size_t i = 0; i < num_iter; ++i)
            {
```

```

        bm_timer.start(i, alg_id);
        std::transform(vec.begin(), vec.end(), vec.begin(), tr_op);
        bm_timer.stop(i, alg_id);

        if (i % 4 == 0)
            std::cout << '.' << std::flush;
    }
}
else
{
    for (size_t i = 0; i < num_iter; ++i)
    {
        bm_timer.start(i, alg_id);
        std::transform(policy, vec.begin(), vec.end(),
            vec.begin(), tr_op);
        bm_timer.stop(i, alg_id);

        if (i % 4 == 0)
            std::cout << '.' << std::flush;
    }
}
};

// benchmark std::transform() using execution policies
std::print("example Ch20_01_ex3 is running, please wait ");

transform_policy(vec0, 0, true, ex::seq);
transform_policy(vec1, 1, false, ex::seq);
transform_policy(vec2, 2, false, ex::unseq);
transform_policy(vec3, 3, false, ex::par);
transform_policy(vec4, 4, false, ex::par_unseq);

// save results to CSV file
std::println("");
std::string fn = "Ch20_01_ex3_results.csv";
bm_timer.save_to_csv(fn, "{:.2f}", BmTimerSteadyClk::EtUnit::MilliSec);
std::println("Benchmark times save to file {:s}", fn);
}

```

The first thing to note in Listing 20-1-3 is the number of elements in each test vector. The execution of an algorithm that consumes multiple threads to carry out its operations involves a certain amount of computational overhead. This means that it rarely makes sense to specify an execution policy of `ex::par` or `ex::par_unseq` using containers that hold a small number of elements.¹

Example function `Ch20_01_ex3()` utilizes class `bm_timer` (see Listing 16-5-1-2) to measure the performance of `std::transform()` using an arbitrary function object and different execution policies. The core code for this example resides in lambda function `transform_policy()`. Note that this lambda contains code that also calls the overload of `std::transform()` that lacks an execution policy.

Table 20-2 summarizes the results obtained by executing `Ch20_01_ex3()` on two different test computers.² These results clearly show that the parallel execution policies `std::par` and `std::par_unseq` offer superior performance to their nonparallel counterparts.

Table 20-2. *Mean Execution Times (Milliseconds)
Using `std::transform()` (10,000,000 Elements)
with Different Execution Policies*

Execution Policy	Test Computer #1	Test Computer #2
None	266	105
<code>ex::seq</code>	265	106
<code>ex::unseq</code>	266	107
<code>ex::par</code>	21	14
<code>ex::par_unseq</code>	21	14

Source code example `Ch20_01_ex4()` (source code not shown) essentially replicates `Ch20_01_ex3()` except that it benchmarks STL algorithm `std::sort()` using different execution policies. Table 20-3 shows the results for this source code example. Once again, the use of a parallel execution policy yields a significant improvement in performance.

¹The precise meaning of small varies depending on the algorithm and data type, which is why execution policy section should always be based on real-world benchmark timing measurements.

²See Appendix A for detailed information regarding each test computer.

Table 20-3. *Mean Execution Times (Milliseconds)
Using `std::sort` (5,000,000 Elements) with
Different Execution Policies*

Execution Policy	Test Computer #1	Test Computer #2
None	306	264
<code>ex::seq</code>	306	262
<code>ex::unseq</code>	306	261
<code>ex::par</code>	54	37
<code>ex::par_unseq</code>	54	36

To compile and execute a program that exploits execution policies, some C++ implementations require a third-party thread building block library to be installed on the host system. Also, the default code generation option for most C++ compilers may not fully utilize the SIMD capabilities of the target processor. Appendix A contains more information regarding these topics. Here are the results for example Ch20_01:

```

----- Results for example Ch20_01 -----
----- Ch20_01_ex1() -----
vec0 (initial values):
-50.0    119.0    181.0    -127.0    93.0     112.0    40.0     39.0
-138.0   -22.0    -138.0   -160.0   -177.0   -16.0    147.0    -67.0
 41.0   -143.0    83.0     61.0   -192.0   -178.0   188.0    89.0
133.0   176.0   -115.0   -200.0   -128.0   197.0   -127.0   47.0
-78.0    45.0     10.0   -198.0   -27.0   -191.0   -84.0    10.0
 45.0   -40.0   -145.0   -182.0   -83.0   190.0   -54.0   -107.0
-18.0   -164.0

result vector compare check: OK
----- Ch20_01_ex2() -----
after std::for_each(ex::seq)

```

```

----- Ch20_01_ex3() -----
example Ch20_01_ex3 is running, please wait .....
Benchmark times save to file Ch20_01_ex3_results.csv

----- Ch20_01_ex4() -----
example Ch20_01_ex4 is running, please wait .....
Benchmark times save to file Ch20_01_ex4_results.csv

```

Mutexes

A mutex is a synchronization mechanism that allows only one thread to access a critical section. A critical section contains code that typically manipulates a shared resource (e.g., data structure, hardware device, etc.). Mutexes are used extensively to prevent race conditions and ensure that only a single thread can access a shared resource at a given instance.

Source code example `Ch20_02_ex1()`, shown in Listing 20-2-1, demonstrates the basic use of class `std::mutex`. Following instantiation of test vectors `vec0` to `vec3`, `Ch20_02_ex1()` utilizes `std::for_each(ex::seq, vec0.begin(), vec0.end(), fe_op1)` to apply `fe_op1()` to each element in `[vec0.begin(), vec0.end())`. Note that `fe_op1()` employs `vec1.push_back()`, which saves calculated results in `vec1`.

Listing 20-2-1. Example Ch20_02 – Ch20_02_ex1()

```

//-----
// Ch20_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <execution>
#include <mutex>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch20_02.h"

namespace ex = std::execution;

```

```

void Ch20_02_ex1()
{
    // create test vectors
    constexpr size_t n {10'000'000};
    std::vector<long long> vec0(n);
    std::iota(vec0.begin(), vec0.end(), 0);
    std::vector<long long> vec1 {};
    std::vector<long long> vec2 {};
    std::vector<long long> vec3 {};

    // using std::for_each with ex::seq
    auto fe_op1 = [&vec1](long long x) { vec1.push_back(x + x); };

    std::for_each(ex::seq, vec0.begin(), vec0.end(), fe_op1);
    auto sum1 = std::accumulate(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), 0LL);
    std::println("after std::for_each(ex::seq) - sum1: {:d}", sum1);

    // using std::for_each with ex::par and std::mutex
    std::mutex mtx2 {};

    auto fe_op2 = [&vec2, &mtx2](long long x)
    {
        mtx2.lock();
        vec2.push_back(x + x);
        mtx2.unlock();
    };

    std::for_each(ex::par, vec0.begin(), vec0.end(), fe_op2);
    auto sum2 = std::accumulate(vec2.begin(), vec2.end(), 0LL);
    std::println("after std::for_each(ex::par) - sum2: {:d}", sum2);

    // using std::for_each with ex::par, std::lock_guard, and std::mutex
    std::mutex mtx3 {};

    auto fe_op3 = [&vec3, &mtx3](long long x)
    {
        std::lock_guard<std::mutex> lg3(mtx3);
        vec3.push_back(x + x);
    };
}

```

```

std::for_each(ex::par, vec0.begin(), vec0.end(), fe_op3);
auto sum3 = std::accumulate(vec3.begin(), vec3.end(), 0LL);
std::println("after std::for_each(ex::par) - sum3: {:d}", sum3);

// verify sums
std::println("\nsum1 == sum2: {:s} (expect true)", sum1 == sum2);
std::println("sum2 == sum3: {:s} (expect true)", sum2 == sum3);

// print location of first vec1/vec2 element mismatch (if any)
auto mm_pair = std::mismatch(vec1.begin(), vec1.end(), vec2.begin());
auto mm_pos = std::distance(vec1.begin(), mm_pair.first);

if (mm_pos == n)
    std::println("\nvec1 and vec2 are identical");
else
{
    std::println("\nvec1 and vec2 are different");
    std::println("  vec1[{:d}]: {:d}", mm_pos, vec1[mm_pos]);
    std::println("  vec2[{:d}]: {:d}", mm_pos, vec2[mm_pos]);
}
}
}

```

The subsequent code block in `Ch20_02_ex1()` opens with the definition of `std::mutex mtx2`. Next is the definition of function object `fe_op2()`. The first executable statement of this function object, `mtx2.lock()`, locks `std::mutex mtx2`. The locking of `mtx2` prevents any other thread from accessing `vec2` until the lock is removed. If another thread utilizes `fe_op2()` while `mtx2` is locked, execution of that thread is blocked (i.e., suspended) until the lock is removed. Following execution of `vec2.push_back(x + x)`, `fe_op2()` employs `mtx2.unlock()` to unlock `mtx2`. This allows another thread to safely add another element to `vec2`. To summarize, `fe_op2()`'s use of mutex `mtx2` avoids a data race during execution of `std::for_each(ex::par, vec0.begin(), vec0.end(), fe_op2)`, which calls `fe_op2()` from multiple threads.

The explicit locking and unlocking of a mutex somewhat resembles memory allocation using operators `new` and `delete`. A locked mutex must always be unlocked by the same thread that locked it. Failure to do this will likely cause problems that can be difficult to trace. Program behavior is undefined if a thread attempts to lock a mutex it already owns. If a C++ implementation is able to detect this state, it may throw a `std::system_error` exception; otherwise, a deadlock may transpire.

To avoid some of the undesirable side effects of failing to unlock a `std::mutex`, the STL provides a helper class named `std::lock_guard` that can automatically unlock a mutex. In `Ch20_02_ex1()`, function object `fe_op3()` utilizes `std::lock_guard<std::mutex> lg3(mtx3)` to lock `mtx3`. Following completion of `fe_op3()`, `mtx3` is automatically unlocked during execution of `lg3`'s destructor. For most use cases, the combined use of `std::lock_guard` and `std::mutex` should be favored instead of explicit mutex unlocks.

If you scan ahead to the results section, you'll notice that the values of `sum1`, `sum2`, and `sum3` are identical as expected. However, vectors `vec1` and `vec2` are different (`vec1` and `vec3` are also likely different). This may be surprising, but expected since the use of execution policy `ex::par` (or `ex::par_unseq`) does not guarantee a specific order of execution. In other words, the threads spawned during execution of `std::for_each(ex::par, vec0.begin(), vec0.end(), fe_op2)` add new elements to `vec2` non-deterministically. Here are the results for example `Ch20_02`:

```
----- Results for example Ch20_02 -----
----- Ch20_02_ex1() -----
after std::for_each(ex::seq) - sum1: 99999990000000
after std::for_each(ex::par) - sum2: 99999990000000
after std::for_each(ex::par) - sum3: 99999990000000

sum1 == sum2: true (expect true)
sum2 == sum3: true (expect true)

vec1 and vec2 are different
  vec1[3273]: 6546
  vec2[3273]: 39064
```

The C++ concurrency support library also defines several other mutex classes, including `std::timed_mutex`, which implements timeouts when attempting a lock operation. You'll see other examples of `std::mutex` use later in this book.

Threads

The C++ concurrency support library provides two basic thread classes: `std::thread` and `std::jthread`. Class `std::thread` has been part of the library since C++11, and class `std::jthread` was first included with C++20. Either class can be used to create thread objects, but the newer `std::jthread` class incorporates a few capabilities that make it superior for new code.

Listing 20-3-1 shows the source code for example `Ch20_03_ex1()`. Near the top of this listing is the definition of a function named `get_test_vector()` that returns a `std::vector<int>` of random numbers for test purposes.

Listing 20-3-1. Example `Ch20_03 - Ch20_03_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch20_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <chrono>
#include <format>
#include <mutex>
#include <sstream>
#include <thread>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch20_03.h"
#include "MTH.h"
#include "RN.h"
#include "THR.h"

std::vector<int> get_test_vector(unsigned int rng_seed = 1000)
{
    constexpr size_t n {50'000'000};
    constexpr int rng_min {1};
    constexpr int rng_max {100'000'000};

    std::vector<int> vec1 = RN::get_vector<int>(n, rng_min, rng_max,
    rng_seed);
    return vec1;
}
```

```

void count_primes_a(const char* name, const std::vector<int>& vec,
    size_t ib, size_t ie, size_t& num_primes)
{
    std::string id = THR::get_this_thread_id();
    std::println("\nENTER count_primes_a() | name: {:s}, id: {:s}",
        name, id);

    num_primes = 0;
    for (size_t i = ib; i < ie; ++i)
    {
        if (MTH::is_prime(vec[i]))
            num_primes++;
    }

    std::println("\nEXIT count_primes_a() | name: {:s}, id: {:s},
        num_primes {:d}",
        name, id, num_primes);
}

void Ch20_03_ex1()
{
    // number of concurrent threads may be different than number of
    // physical processor threads
    auto num_concurrent_threads = std::thread::hardware_concurrency();
    std::println("number of supported concurrent threads: {}",
        num_concurrent_threads);

    // create test vector
    std::vector<int> vec1 = get_test_vector();
    size_t num_primes1 {};
    size_t num_primes2 {};

    // count primes using multiple threads
    std::println("\nlaunching thread1 and thread2");

    std::thread thread1(count_primes_a, "thread1", std::cref(vec1),
        0, vec1.size() / 2, std::ref(num_primes1));

    std::thread thread2(count_primes_a, "thread2", std::cref(vec1),

```

```

    vec1.size() / 2, vec1.size(), std::ref(num_primes2));
// count primes from current thread (for comparison purposes)
// executes in parallel with other threads
size_t num_primes3 {};
count_primes_a("Ch20_03_ex1", vec1, 0, vec1.size(), num_primes3);
// wait for threads to complete
thread1.join();
thread2.join();
std::println("\nthread1 and thread2 joined");
// check prime number counts
bool count_check = num_primes1 + num_primes2 == num_primes3;
std::println("\ncount_check: {s} (expect true)", count_check);
}

```

The next function in Listing 20-3-1, `count_primes_a()`, counts the number of prime numbers in `std::vector<int>& vec` between `[ib, ie)`. The opening line of this function, `std::string id = THR::get_this_thread_id()`, obtains a `std::string id` for the currently executing thread. The source code for this function, located in `Common/THR.h`, is as follows:

```

std::string get_this_thread_id()
{
    auto thread_id {std::this_thread::get_id()};
#if __cpp_lib_formatters >= 202302L
    return std::format("{} ", thread_id);
#else
    std::ostringstream oss {};
    oss << thread_id;
    return oss.str();
#endif
}

```

Execution of function `std::this_thread::get_id()` returns a `std::thread::id` object for the currently executing thread. Function `THR::get_this_thread_id()` then builds a `std::string` for `thread_id` using `std::format()`, if supported by the compiler, or operator `<<`.

The remaining code in `count_primes_a()` utilizes a single for loop and `MTH::is_prime()` (see Listing 10-6-2-2) to count the number of prime numbers between `[ib, ie)`.

In Listing 20-3-1, the initial statement of `Ch20_03_ex1()`, `auto num_concurrent_threads = std::thread::hardware_concurrency()`, obtains the number of available hardware thread contexts. Note that the value is only a hint and may not equal the actual number of concurrent threads supported by the system's physical processors. Function `std::thread::hardware_concurrency()` will return zero if the number of hardware thread contexts cannot be determined. When implementing a multithreaded algorithm, the value returned by `hardware_concurrency()` can be exploited as a guide to determine the actual number of `std::thread` or `std::jthread` objects to use.

The next code block in `Ch20_03_ex1()` utilizes the previously described `get_test_vector()` to obtain a `std::vector<int>` of random integers. In `Ch20_03_ex1()`, execution of the statement

```
std::thread thread1(count_primes_a, "thread1", std::cref(vec1),
    0, vec1.size() / 2, std::ref(num_primes1));
```

creates a `std::thread` object named `thread1`. The first argument of `thread1`'s constructor, `count_primes_a`, designates a start function for the new thread. The remaining constructor arguments are passed by value to `count_primes_a()`. Note that the data types for these arguments match the ones that are defined for `count_primes_a()`. More about this shortly.

The next statement in `Ch20_03_ex1()`:

```
std::thread thread2(count_primes_a, "thread2", std::cref(vec1),
    vec1.size() / 2, vec1.size(), std::ref(num_primes2));
```

launches a second thread that also utilizes `count_primes_a()` as its start function. Note that this second thread launch uses different index values. To summarize, `thread1` exploits `count_primes_a()` to count prime numbers in `vec1` between `[0, vec1.size() / 2)`, while `thread2` utilizes the same thread function to count prime numbers between `[vec1.size() / 2, vec1.size())`.

When using `std::thread` (or `std::jthread`) to launch a new thread, all arguments are passed by value to the designated start function; arguments can also be moved. Passing arguments by value involves making copies, but making copies of containers that hold large number of elements consumes additional resources unnecessarily. This is why the constructors for `thread1` and `thread2` use `std::cref(vec1)`, which passes

a constant reference to `count_primes_a()`. Unlike a normal function call, passing a reference to a thread's start function requires the use of `std::cref()` or `std::ref()`. Pointers can also be passed to a thread.

Execution of a thread's start function can begin any time following its instantiation. When launching more than one thread as illustrated in the current example, there's no guarantee which thread will begin executing first. This is something that needs to be considered when launching multiple threads that process data using a pipeline approach.

Following the launching of threads `thread1` and `thread2`, `Ch20_03_ex1()` invokes `count_primes_a("Ch20_03_ex1", vec1, 0, vec1.size(), num_primes3)`, which executes in parallel with `thread1` and `thread2`. The next code block utilizes `thread2.join()`, which waits for `thread2` to complete. Similarly, execution of `thread1.join()` blocks further execution of `Ch20_03_ex1()` until `thread1` finishes. A `std::thread` object should always be joined prior to the execution of its destructor. Failure to do this is considered an error and may result in a thrown exception. Another option is to use `std::thread::detach()`, which allows a thread to continue executing independently. When using `std::thread::detach()`, it is extremely important to ensure that any objects accessed in the thread via a reference or pointer aren't prematurely destroyed.

If you scan ahead to the results section, note the distinct thread ids for the three executions of `count_primes_a()`. Also, note the order of `count_primes_a()` executions, which may vary depending on the target system.

In Listing 20-3-2, example function `Ch20_03_ex2()` demonstrates how to use `std::jthread`. The most important difference between a `std::thread` and `std::jthread` object is that the latter calls `request_stop()` (discussed later in this section) followed by `join()` in its destructor. This guarantees that the specified thread function finishes before the thread object is destroyed. Note in Listing 20-3-2 that `Ch20_03_ex2()` doesn't explicitly call `join()`.

Listing 20-3-2. Example Ch20_03 - Ch20_03_ex2()

```
void Ch20_03_ex2()
{
    size_t num_primes1 {};
    size_t num_primes2 {};
    std::vector<int> vec1 = get_test_vector();
```

```

std::println("launching thread1 and thread2");

std::jthread thread1(count_primes_a, "thread1", std::cref(vec1),
    0, vec1.size() / 2, std::ref(num_primes1));

std::jthread thread2(count_primes_a, "thread2", std::cref(vec1),
    vec1.size() / 2, vec1.size(), std::ref(num_primes2));

// thread1.join() and thread2.join() called in destructors
}

```

Listing 20-3-3 opens with the definition of function `count_primes_b()`. The primary difference between this function and the `count_primes_a()` function is that the former periodically checks to see if a stop request has been issued for the thread. Note that the first argument of `count_primes_b()` is a `std::stop_token`. If `stop_tkn.stop_requested()` is true, `count_primes_b()` prints a simple stop message and immediately returns. Unlike class `std::jthread`, class `std::thread` does not support the use of `std::stop_tokens` and stop requests.

Listing 20-3-3. Example Ch20_03 - Ch20_03_ex3()

```

void count_primes_b(std::stop_token stop_tkn, const char* name,
    const std::vector<int>& vec, size_t ib, size_t ie, size_t& num_primes)
{
    std::string id = THR::get_this_thread_id();
    std::println("ENTER count_primes_b() | name: {:s}, id: {:s}, ",
        name, id);

    num_primes = 0;

    for (size_t i = ib; i < ie; ++i)
    {
        if (i % 1000)
        {
            // check for stop request
            if (stop_tkn.stop_requested())
            {
                std::println("\ncount_primes_b() - stop request received");
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

        std::println("EXIT count_primes_b() | name: {:s},
        id: {:s}, "
            "num_primes: {:d}", name, id, num_primes);
        return;
    }
}

if (MTH::is_prime(vec[i]))
    num_primes += 1;
}

std::println("\ncount_primes_b() - normal termination");
std::println("EXIT count_primes_b() | name: {:s}, id: {:s}, "
    "num_primes: {:d}", name, id, num_primes);
}

void Ch20_03_ex3()
{
    // launch test thread
    std::println("launching thread1");

    std::vector<int> vec1 = get_test_vector();
    size_t num_primes1 {};
    std::jthread thread1(count_primes_b, "thread1", vec1, 0, vec1.size(),
        std::ref(num_primes1));

    // wait a bit, then send stop request to thread1
    THR::sleep_for_random_ms(1500, 2000);
    thread1.request_stop();

    // explicit join() used to ensure value of num_primes1 is final
    thread1.join();
    std::println("\nnum_primes1: {:d}", num_primes1);

    // running count_primes_b() to completion
    std::println("launching thread2");
    size_t num_primes2 {};
    std::jthread thread2(count_primes_b, "thread2", vec1, 0, vec1.size(),
        std::ref(num_primes2));
}

```

```

    // explicit join() used since jthread destructor calls request_stop()
    thread2.join();
    std::println("\nnum_primes2: {:d}", num_primes2);
}

```

Also shown in Listing 20-3-3 is example function `Ch20_03_ex3()`. The purpose of this example is to demonstrate how to issue a thread stop request. Following initialization of `std::jthread thread1`, `Ch20_03_ex3()` calls `THR::sleep_for_random(1500, 2000)`, which suspends execution of the current thread for a random time period between [1500, 2000) milliseconds (see `Common/THR.h` for the source code). After the sleep period, `Ch20_03_ex3()` utilizes `thread1.request_stop()`. Execution of this statement sends a stop request to `thread1`. The next statement, `thread1.join()`, blocks execution of the current thread until `count_primes_b()` returns. This is done to ensure that the value of `num_primes1` is final.

The second part of `Ch20_03_ex3()` launches `std::jthread thread2`. An explicit call to `thread2.join()` is used here since `thread2`'s destructor calls `request_stop()`. Without the `join()`, `thread2` would receive an unintentional stop request and terminate prematurely. To see this in action, comment out the statement `thread2.join()` and execute the code. Here are the results for example `Ch20_03_ex3()`:

```

----- Results for example Ch20_03 -----
----- Ch20_03_ex1() -----
number of supported concurrent threads: 16

launching thread1 and thread2

ENTER count_primes_a() | name: Ch20_03_ex1, id: 13432
ENTER count_primes_a() | name: thread1, id: 2428
ENTER count_primes_a() | name: thread2, id: 9280
EXIT  count_primes_a() | name: thread2, id: 9280, num_primes 1439615
EXIT  count_primes_a() | name: thread1, id: 2428, num_primes 1439675
EXIT  count_primes_a() | name: Ch20_03_ex1, id: 13432, num_primes 2879290

thread1 and thread2 joined

count_check: true (expect true)

```

```

----- Ch20_03_ex2() -----
launching thread1 and thread2

ENTER count_primes_a() | name: thread1, id: 13620
ENTER count_primes_a() | name: thread2, id: 10080
EXIT count_primes_a() | name: thread2, id: 10080, num_primes 1439615
EXIT count_primes_a() | name: thread1, id: 13620, num_primes 1439675

----- Ch20_03_ex3() -----
launching thread1
ENTER count_primes_b() | name: thread1, id: 4124,
count_primes_b() - stop request received
EXIT count_primes_b() | name: thread1, id: 4124, num_primes: 496308

num_primes1: 496308
launching thread2
ENTER count_primes_b() | name: thread2, id: 13264,
count_primes_b() - normal termination
EXIT count_primes_b() | name: thread2, id: 13264, num_primes: 2879290

num_primes2: 2879290

```

Atomic Operations

An atomic operation is an operation on an atomic object whose execution is allowed to finish without being interrupted. Atomic operations facilitate lockless concurrent programming actions, which enables a program to avoid data race conditions without having to explicitly use a mutex or other synchronization object. The principal template for an atomic object is `std::atomic<T>`. Type `T` is often a fundamental type, such as a `bool`, `char`, `int`, `long`, `double`, etc.³ Type `T` can also be a user-defined type provided it satisfies certain conditions.⁴

³The STL defines type aliases for integral atomic types (e.g., `atomic_int` for `std::atomic<int>`). This text uses the explicit template form.

⁴The type must be trivially copyable, copy/move assignable, and copy/move constructable.

Listing 20-4-1 shows the source code for example function `Ch20_04_ex1()`. This listing opens with the definition of struct `Values`. Note that this structure includes two fundamental types and two atomic types. Next is the definition of `thread1_func()`, which contains a simple for loop that repeatedly adds one to each element in `Values& v`.

Listing 20-4-1. Example `Ch20_04 - Ch20_04_ex1()`

```
//-----
// Ch20_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <array>
#include <atomic>
#include <format>
#include <random>
#include <string>
#include <thread>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch20_04.h"
#include "THR.h"

struct Values
{
    int Ival {};
    double Dval {};

    std::atomic<int> IvalAtomic {};
    std::atomic<double> DvalAtomic {};
};

void thread1_func(Values& v, int n)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < n; ++i)
    {
        // non-atomic adds
        v.Ival += 1;
        v.Dval += 1.0;
    }
}
```

```

        // atomic adds
        v.IvalAtomic += 1;
        v.DvalAtomic += 1.0;
    }
}

void Ch20_04_ex1()
{
    Values v {};

    // print lock_free status
    std::println("v.IvalAtomic.is_lock_free(): {:s}", v.IvalAtomic.is_lock_
free());
    std::println("v.DvalAtomic.is_lock_free(): {:s}", v.DvalAtomic.is_lock_
free());

    std::println("\nstd::atomic<int>::is_always_lock_free:   {:s}",
        std::atomic<int>::is_always_lock_free);

    std::println("std::atomic<double>::is_always_lock_free: {:s}",
        std::atomic<double>::is_always_lock_free);

    constexpr int n {100000};
    constexpr int n_threads {5};

    auto run_threads = [&v, n]()
    {
        {
            // elements of thread_pool default initialized, not
            actual threads
            std::array<std::jthread, n_threads> thread_pool {};

            // std::jthread::operator= performs move
            for (size_t i = 0; i < thread_pool.size(); ++i)
                thread_pool[i] = std::jthread(thread1_func,
                    std::ref(v), n);
        }

        // all threads joined here
    };
}

```



```

// run threads, print results
run_threads();

std::println("\nv.Ival:      {:7d} v.Dval:      {:9.1f}", v.Ival,
              v.Dval);
std::println("v.IvalAtomic: {:7d} v.DvalAtomic: {:9.1f}",
              int(v.IvalAtomic), double(v.DvalAtomic));

std::println("\nexpected result for all values: {:d}", n * n_threads);
}

```

The first code block in `Ch20_04_ex1()` utilizes `v.IvalAtomic.is_lock_free()` and `v.DvalAtomic.is_lock_free()` to ascertain the lock-free status of `v.IvalAtomic` and `v.DvalAtomic`. A return value of `true` signifies that the specified atomic object can be locked without using a mutex or other locking mechanism. Lock-free access is generally faster compared to the alternatives. The next two `std::println()` statements utilize `std::atomic<int>::is_always_lock_free` and `std::atomic<double>::is_always_lock_free` to print the lock-free status of specific atomic classes.

The middle portion of `Ch20_04_ex1()` contains code that launches `n_thread` threads. Near the top of `run_threads()`, the statement `std::array<std::jthread, n_threads> thread_pool {}` instantiates a container that can hold `n_thread` objects of type `std::jthread`. Following execution of this statement, the members of `thread_pool` are default initialized but not actual threads. The ensuing for loop creates the actual threads. Execution of the statement `thread_pool[i] = std::jthread(thread1_func, std::ref(v), n)` first creates a new `std::jthread` object and then moves this object to `thread_pool[i]`. Note that the thread creation code in `run_threads` resides in a distinct scope, which means it doesn't return until all threads in `thread_pool` have been joined.

The final code block of `Ch20_04_ex1()` contains several `std::println()` statements that print the values of `Values v` following execution of `run_threads()`. Note in the results section that atomic values `v.IvalAtomic` and `v.DvalAtomic` are correct, while non-atomic elements `v.Ival` and `V.Dval` are invalid. Also, note that the final `std::println()` statement employs operator `int()` and operator `double()` to obtain the current values of `v.IvalAtomic` and `v.DvalAtomic`, respectively.

You may be wondering why discrepancies exist between the atomic and non-atomic values when the same arithmetic operations are performed. The reason for this is as follows. Execution of a simple expression such as `x += 1` requires the processor to perform three distinct operations: read the current value of `x` from memory, add

one to this value, and write the result back to memory. If `x` is a non-atomic value, one thread might be performing the addition, while another thread is saving a new value to `x`. To address this, modern processor architectures such as Arm and X86 incorporate instructions that perform the three steps involved in executing `x += 1` without any intervening operations. Doing this takes a bit longer to complete compared to a non-atomic value, which is why atomic variables should be used only when the possibility of a data race exists. On systems with processors that don't support atomic memory operations, a mutex or other synchronization mechanism must be used.

Listing 20-4-2 shows the source code for the next `std::atomic<T>` example. This listing opens with the definition of a function named `thread2_func()`. Following an initial delay using `std::this_thread::sleep_for()`, `thread_func2()` utilizes `x += 1` to update `std::atomic<int>& x`. The next statement, `x.notify_one()`, sends a notification that unblocks at least one thread that's currently waiting for the value of `x` to change.

Listing 20-4-2. Example Ch20_04 - Ch20_04_ex2()

```
void thread2_func(std::atomic<int>& x, size_t delay_ms)
{
    std::println("\nENTER thread2_func() | x: {:d}, delay_ms = {:d}",
        int(x), delay_ms);
    std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(delay_ms));

    // change value and send notification
    x += 1;
    x.notify_one();

    std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(delay_ms));
    std::println("EXIT thread2_func() | x: {:d}, delay_ms = {:d}", int(x),
        delay_ms);
}

void Ch20_04_ex2()
{
    constexpr size_t delay_ms {1000};

    // launch test thread
    constexpr int test_val1 {100};
    std::atomic<int> at_int1 {test_val1};
```

```

std::jthread thread2(thread2_func, std::ref(at_int1), delay_ms);

// wait for change notification
at_int1.wait(test_val1);
std::println("at_int1.wait() complete | at_int1: {:d}", int(at_int1));
}

```

In `Ch20_04_ex2()`, the statement `at_int1.wait(test_val1)` blocks execution of `Ch20_04_ex2()` while `at_int1` equals `test_val1`. Execution of `Ch20_04_ex2()` resumes following `thread2_func()`'s use of `x.notify_one()`. It's important to note that if `x.notify_one()` (or `x.notify_all()`) is never called, `Ch20_04_ex2()` will continue to wait *ad infinitum*.

The final `std::atomic<T>` example spotlights the unlocking of multiple threads using `atomic<T>::notify_all()`. In Listing 20-4-3, `thread_func3()` employs `x.wait(false)` to block further execution while `std::atomic<bool>& x` is false.

Listing 20-4-3. Example `Ch20_04 - Ch20_04_ex3()`

```

void thread3_func(std::string name, std::atomic<bool>& x)
{
    std::print("ENTER thread3_func() | name: {:s}, x: {:s}\n", name,
              bool(x));

    x.wait(false);
    std::print("received notification | name: {:s}\n", name);

    // sleep_for_random_ms() used to simulate work following wait()
    THR::sleep_for_random_ms(500, 1000);
    std::print("EXIT thread3_func() | name: {:s}, x: {:s}\n", name,
              bool(x));
}

void Ch20_04_ex3()
{
    // launch test threads using thread3_func
    std::atomic<bool> at_bool1 {};
    std::array<std::jthread, 10> thread_pool {};

    for (size_t i = 0; i < thread_pool.size(); ++i)

```

```

{
    std::string name = std::format("thread{:02d}", i);
    thread_pool[i] = std::jthread(thread3_func, name, std::ref
        (at_bool1));
}

// allow time for all threads to begin wait
std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(2000));

// change value and notify all waiting threads
at_bool1 = true;
at_bool1.notify_all();
std::println("Ch20_04_ex3() - after at_bool1.notify_all()");

// all threaded joined here
}

```

Example function `Ch20_04_ex3()` commences its execution by launching ten threads using `thread3_proc()`. Note that `std::atomic<bool> at_bool1` is passed by reference to each thread. Following a short delay using `std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(2000))`, which allows time for all launched threads to begin executing, `Ch20_04_ex3()` changes the value of `at_bool1` to `true`. It then exercises `at_bool1.notify_all()` to notify all ten waiting threads. Note in the results section that the order of thread resumption is different than the launch order, which is not surprising since `notify_all()` does not stipulate any resumption guarantees for waiting threads. Here are the results for example `Ch20_04`:

```

----- Results for example Ch20_04 -----

----- Ch20_04_ex1() -----
v.IvalAtomic.is_lock_free(): true
v.DvalAtomic.is_lock_free(): true

std::atomic<int>::is_always_lock_free:   true
std::atomic<double>::is_always_lock_free: true

v.Ival:          277576  v.Dval:          273984.0
v.IvalAtomic:   500000  v.DvalAtomic:   500000.0

expected result for all values: 500000

```

----- Ch20_04_ex2() -----

```
ENTER thread2_func() | x: 100, delay_ms = 1000
at_int1.wait() complete | at_int1: 101
EXIT thread2_func() | x: 101, delay_ms = 1000
```

----- Ch20_04_ex3() -----

```
ENTER thread3_func() | name: thread00, x: false
ENTER thread3_func() | name: thread05, x: false
ENTER thread3_func() | name: thread02, x: false
ENTER thread3_func() | name: thread03, x: false
ENTER thread3_func() | name: thread04, x: false
ENTER thread3_func() | name: thread06, x: false
ENTER thread3_func() | name: thread07, x: false
ENTER thread3_func() | name: thread09, x: false
ENTER thread3_func() | name: thread01, x: false
ENTER thread3_func() | name: thread08, x: false
received notification | name: thread08
Ch20_04_ex3() - after at_bool1.notify_all()
received notification | name: thread01
received notification | name: thread00
received notification | name: thread07
received notification | name: thread06
received notification | name: thread04
received notification | name: thread03
received notification | name: thread05
received notification | name: thread09
received notification | name: thread02
EXIT thread3_func() | name: thread00, x: true
EXIT thread3_func() | name: thread08, x: true
EXIT thread3_func() | name: thread02, x: true
EXIT thread3_func() | name: thread01, x: true
EXIT thread3_func() | name: thread05, x: true
EXIT thread3_func() | name: thread06, x: true
EXIT thread3_func() | name: thread03, x: true
```

```
EXIT thread3_func() | name: thread09, x: true
EXIT thread3_func() | name: thread04, x: true
EXIT thread3_func() | name: thread07, x: true
```

The examples of this section performed simple addition and assignment using `std::atomic<T>` variables. Instances of `std::atomic<T>` also support a few other basic operations, including `operator-=`, `operator++`, `operator--`, `operator&=`, `operator|=`, and `operator^=`. Floating-point atomic types can use `operator+=` and `operator-=`, while the other operators are only valid for integral types. Appendix B lists a few references that you can consult for additional information regarding these and other `std::atomic<T>` operators and member functions.

Multithreaded Algorithms

Multiple threads are frequently used to accelerate the performance of a computationally intense algorithm. One such algorithm from the domain of signal processing is called convolution. A 1D discrete convolution can be calculated using the following equation:

$$y[i] = \sum_{k=-M}^M x[i-k]g[k] \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, N-1$$

In this equation, x is the input signal, y is the output signal, and g is the response signal or convolution kernel. Summation index variable $M = \lfloor N_g/2 \rfloor$ where N_g is the size of the convolution kernel. The source code examples in this book assume that N_g is an odd integer greater than or equal to three. Figure 20-1 illustrates the calculation of $y[i]$ using input signal point $x[i]$ and five-element convolution kernel g . Note in this figure that convolution kernel g is reflected, while the convolution equation reflects input signal x ; either form is correct since convolution is algebraically commutative.

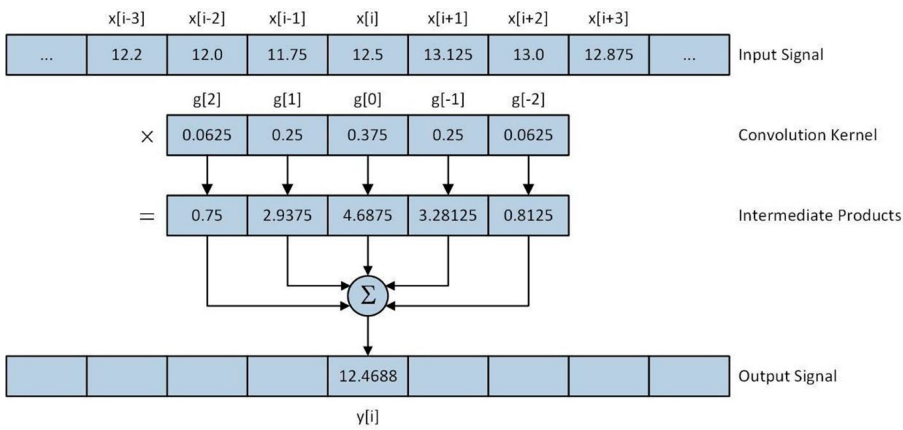


Figure 20-1. Calculation of 1D discrete convolution signal point $y[i]$

The smoothing of a sampled digital signal to reduce noise is a common signal processing use case for a convolution. The top plot in Figure 20-2 illustrates a raw data signal that contains a noticeable amount of noise. The bottom plot in the same figure shows the signal following the application of a smoothing operator using a convolution kernel that approximates a low-pass (or Gaussian) filter. The calculation of a discrete 1D convolution is computationally intense, especially for large signal arrays. Using multiple threads to carry out this calculation often results in a significant increase in performance as you’ll soon see.

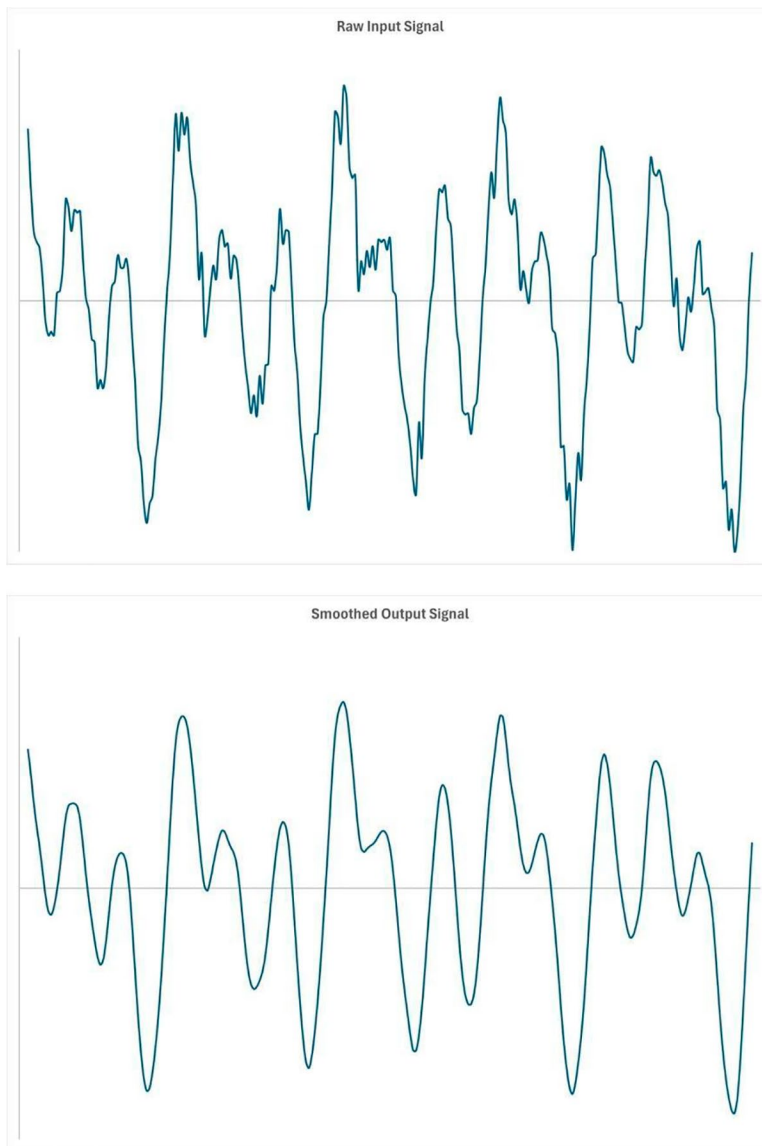


Figure 20-2. Raw input data signal (top) and its smooth counterpart (bottom)

The source code example of this section, named `Ch20_05`, illustrates how to code a multithreaded convolution algorithm. The concurrency classes and algorithms demonstrated in this example can also be used to code other types of multithreaded algorithms. Example `Ch20_05` utilizes a data structure named `ConvData` that holds the input and output signal arrays. It also defines a few member functions that you'll soon see. A large portion of the code in `ConvData` relates to the generation of a synthetic test

signal and the writing of results to an output file. To save some space, the listings in this section only show the code from ConvData that's directly related to concurrency and the convolution algorithm. The complete source code for ConvData is located in Common/ConvData.h.

Listing 20-5-1-1 shows the source code for a common initialization function named `init_conv_data()`. Execution of this function begins with the instantiation of `ConvData<fp_t> cd(num_rs)`. Variable `num_rs` represents the number of raw signals that are used to generate a test input signal.

Listing 20-5-1-1. Example Ch20_05 - `init_conv_data()`

```
//-----
// Ch20_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <iostream>
#include <valarray>
#include "Ch20_05.h"
#include "BmTimer.h"
#include "ConvData.h"

using fp_t = float;

ConvData<fp_t> init_conv_data(fp_t end_time, std::valarray<fp_t>& kernel)
{
    constexpr size_t num_rs {3};
    ConvData<fp_t> cd(num_rs);

    // generate test signal
    cd.StartTime = fp_t {0.0};
    cd.EndTime = end_time;
    cd.StepTime = fp_t {1.0 / 256.0};

    cd.Amplitudes = std::valarray {fp_t{1.0}, fp_t{0.8}, fp_t{1.20}};
    cd.Frequencies = std::valarray {fp_t{5.0}, fp_t{9.0}, fp_t{14.0}};
    cd.PhaseAngles = std::valarray {fp_t{0.0}, fp_t{60.0}, fp_t{90.0}};

    cd.generate_signal_x(true);
    std::println("SignalX.size(): {:d}", cd.SignalX.size());
}
```

```

// generate convolution kernel
kernel = std::valarray<fp_t>
    { 1.0 / 64.0, 6.0 / 64.0, 15.0 / 64.0,
      20.0 / 64.0,
      15.0 / 64.0, 6.0 / 64.0, 1.0 / 64.0 };

return cd;
}

```

Structure `ConvData` incorporates the following data attributes:

```

// signal arrays
std::valarray<T> SignalX {}; // input signal array
std::valarray<T> SignalY {}; // output signal array

// raw signal data (used to initialize SignalX)
size_t NumRs {}; // number of raw signals
T StartTime {}; // raw signal start time
T EndTime {}; // raw signal end time
T StepTime {}; // raw signal time step size

std::valarray<T> Amplitudes {}; // raw signal amplitudes
std::valarray<T> Frequencies {}; // raw signal frequencies
std::valarray<T> PhaseAngles {}; // raw signal phase angles
std::vector<std::valarray<T>> RawSignals {}; // raw signals used to
// build SignalX

```

In `init_conv_data()`, execution of `cd.generate_signal_x(true)` generates input signal `cd.SignalX`. This signal is built by summing three discrete sinusoidal waveforms using different amplitudes, frequencies, and phase angles. Argument value `true` signifies that random additive noise should be included in the generated signal. The statements just before the call to `cd.generate_signal_x()` define the parameters for the waveforms. The `cd.SignalX` generated by `cd.generate_signal_x()` closely resembles the top plot of Figure 20-2. The final code block of `init_conv_data()` instantiates a seven-element discrete convolution kernel that approximates a low-pass filter.

Listing 20-5-1-2 shows the source code for example function `Ch20_05_ex1()`. The opening code block of this function employs `init_conv_data()` to initialize `ConvData<fp_t> cd` and `std::valarray<fp_t> kernel`. The next three code blocks

utilize `ConvData<fp_t>::convolve()` to perform convolutions using one, three, and seven threads. The result of each convolution is saved to a CSV file to verify that the same `cd.SignalY` result is obtained for each execution.

Listing 20-5-1-2. Example Ch20_05 – Ch20_05_ex1()

```
void Ch20_05_ex1()
{
    // initialize convolution data struct
    std::valarray<fp_t> kernel {};
    ConvData<fp_t> cd = init_conv_data(1.0, kernel);

    // perform convolution using 1 thread
    ConvData<fp_t>::convolve(cd, kernel, 1);
    cd.save_data("ch20_05_ex1_cd_data-a.csv");

    // perform convolution using 3 threads
    ConvData<fp_t>::convolve(cd, kernel, 3);
    cd.save_data("ch20_05_ex1_cd_data-b.csv");

    // perform convolution using 7 threads
    ConvData<fp_t>::convolve(cd, kernel, 7);
    cd.save_data("ch20_05_ex1_cd_data-c.csv");
}
```

Listing 20-5-1-3 shows the convolution calculating code from `ConvData`. The opening statements of `Convolve<T>::convolve()` validate critical convolution size parameters. If `num_threads == 1`, `convolve()` directly executes `ConvData::convolve_thread()` since it's not necessary to explicitly launch any additional threads.

Listing 20-5-1-3. Example Ch20_05 – Convolution Calculating Code

```
static void convolve(
    ConvData<T>& cd, const std::valarray<T>& kernel,
    size_t num_threads = 1)
{
    size_t ss = cd.SignalX.size();
    size_t ks = kernel.size();
    size_t ks2 = ks / 2;
```

```

if (ks < 3 || (ks & 1) == 0 || ss < ks)
    throw std::runtime_error("convolve_par - invalid kernel size");

if (num_threads == 0)
    throw std::runtime_error("convolve_par - invalid num_threads");

if (num_threads == 1)
{
    // perform convolution on current thread
    convolve_thread(cd, kernel, ks2, ss - ks2);
    return;
}

// calc npts_per_thread, npts_adj (residual points added to
// first thread)
size_t npts = ss - 2 * ks2;
size_t npts_per_thread = npts / num_threads;
size_t npts_adj = npts - npts_per_thread * num_threads;

// launch convolution threads
size_t ib = ks2;
size_t ie = ib + npts_per_thread + npts_adj;
std::vector<std::jthread> thread_pool(num_threads);

for (size_t i = 0; i < num_threads; ++i)
{
    thread_pool[i] = std::jthread(convolve_thread, std::ref(cd),
        std::cref(kernel), ib, ie);

    ib = ie;
    ie += npts_per_thread;
}
}

static void convolve_thread(
    ConvData<T>& cd, const std::valarray<T>& kernel, size_t ib,
    size_t ie)
{
    try

```

```

{
    size_t ks = kernel.size();
    size_t ks2 = ks / 2;

    // create reverse copy of kernel
    std::valarray<T> kernel_rev(ks);
    std::ranges::reverse_copy(kernel, std::begin(kernel_rev));

    // perform convolution using SignalX [ib, ie)
    for (size_t i = ib; i < ie; ++i)
    {
        T y_val {};

        for (size_t k = 0; k < ks; ++k)
            y_val += cd.SignalX[i - ks2 + k] * kernel_rev[k];
        cd.SignalY[i] = y_val;
    }
}

catch (const std::exception& ex)
{
    std::println("Exception occurred in convolve_thread");
    std::println("{:s}", ex.what());
}
}

```

The ensuing code block calculates the number of signal points that each thread will process. Note that the number of points for the first thread is adjusted to include any residual points if `npts` is not an integral multiple of `num_threads`. The final code block of `ConvData::convolve()` contains a `for` loop that launches `num_threads` threads that execute `ConvData::convolve_thread()`. Note that each executing thread performs calculations using the points from `ConvData::SignalX` specified by interval `[ib, ie)`.

Function `ConvData::convolve_thread()`, also shown in Listing 20-5-1-3, implements the previously defined 1D discrete convolution equation over the specified interval. Note that prior to the calculating `for` loops, `ConvData::convolve_thread()` creates a reverse copy of `kernel`. Doing this simplifies the indexing in the `for` loops.

One topic that hasn't been previously discussed is what happens if an executing thread throws an exception. If an executing thread throws an exception that is not caught, `std::terminate()` is called. How to handle thrown exceptions is frequently an application-specific concern. Function `ConvData::convolve_thread()` simply prints an error message, but a more robust solution should be employed for production code.

Listing 20-5-2 shows the source code for example `Ch20_05_ex2()`. This function exploits class `BmTimer` (see Listing 16-5-1-2) to measure convolution performance based on the number of threads.

Listing 20-5-2. Example `Ch20_05 - Ch20_05_ex2()`

```
void Ch20_05_ex2()
{
    std::println("example Ch20_05_ex2() is running, please wait ");

    // initialize convolution data struct
    std::valarray<fp_t> kernel {};
    ConvData<fp_t> cd = init_conv_data(250'000.0, kernel);

    // initialize BmTimer using steady clock
    constexpr size_t num_iter {40};
    constexpr size_t num_threads_max {8};
    BmTimerSteadyClk bm_timer(num_iter, num_threads_max);

    // run test convolutions
    for (size_t i = 0; i < num_iter; ++i)
    {
        for (size_t j = 0; j < num_threads_max; ++j)
        {
            bm_timer.start(i, j);
            ConvData<fp_t>::convolve(cd, kernel, j + 1);
            bm_timer.stop(i, j);
        }

        std::cout << '.' << std::flush;
    }
}
```

```
// save measurements to CSV file
std::println("");
std::string fn {"Ch20_05_ex2-results.csv"};
bm_timer.save_to_csv(fn, "{:.2f}", BmTimerSteadyClk::EtUnit::MilliSec);
std::println("Benchmark times save to file {s}", fn);
}
```

Figure 20-3 summarizes the data from two executions of Ch20_05_ex2() using two different test computers. The processor for test computer #1 contains 8 cores/16 threads, while test computer #3’s processor supports 4 cores/4 threads. For test computer #1, performance dramatically improves as the number of threads increases to four, after which the rate of improvement slows. For test computer #3, a similar trend is observed for one to four threads. However, performance starts to degrade after that since the processor only supports four concurrent threads. The principal takeaway point from this example is that, once again, algorithmic design decisions should be driven using real-world benchmark timing measurements on representative hardware platforms and not baseless conjecture.

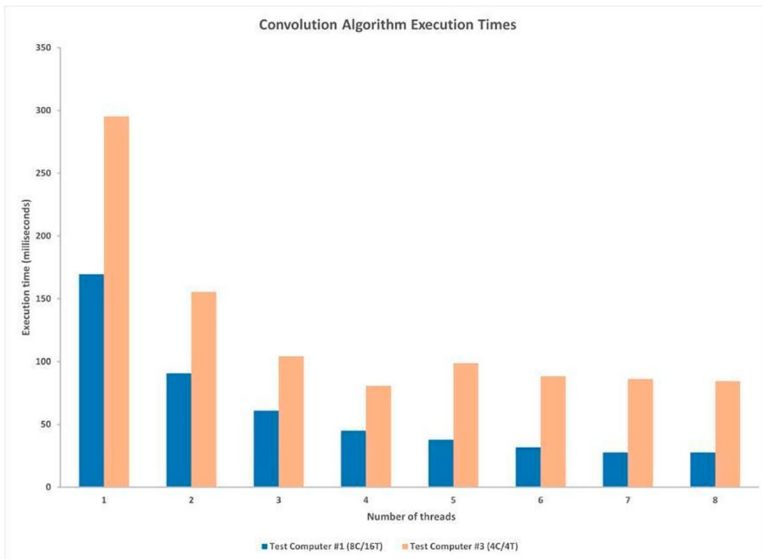


Figure 20-3. Convolution algorithm execution times using multiple threads

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- Most of the algorithms defined in namespace `std` support execution policies. An execution policy specifies the types of parallelism that an algorithm is permitted to use during its execution.
- When using an execution policy, the programmer is responsible for addressing any potential data race conditions or deadlock scenarios.
- A `std::mutex` restricts access to a critical section of code that typically manipulates a shared resource. Mutexes are used extensively to prevent race conditions and ensure that only a single thread can access a shared resource at a given instance.
- A thread is an independent sequence of instructions that can be executed on a processor. The concurrency support library includes thread classes `std::thread` and `std::jthread`. The latter class supports automatic joining and stop requests.
- An atomic operation is an operation on an atomic object whose execution is allowed to finish without being interrupted. Atomic operations facilitate lockless concurrent programming actions sans mutexes or other synchronization objects. The primary template for an atomic object is `std::atomic<T>`.
- The performance of a computationally intensive algorithm can be significantly improved by partitioning the workload across multiple threads. The number of algorithmic threads to use in production code should be established using representative benchmark timing measurements.

CHAPTER 21

Concurrency – Part 2

This chapter is a continuation of the previous chapter. It covers additional classes and algorithms related to C++ concurrency, including

- Semaphores
- Latches
- Condition variables
- Futures

Like the previous chapter, the discussions and source code examples of this chapter spotlight elements of the C++ concurrency support library that are frequently utilized to create worker threads that execute background algorithms.

Semaphores

A semaphore is a synchronization primitive that's used to coordinate concurrent access to a shared resource. The primary difference between a C++ semaphore and a mutex is that the latter can only be unlocked by the same thread that locked the mutex. Semaphores can be locked and unlocked by different threads.

The concurrency support library provides two different types of semaphores: `std::binary_semaphore` and `std::counting_semaphore`. A `std::binary_semaphore` is a semaphore that supports only two states. A `std::counting_semaphore` encompasses an internal counter that's decremented during an acquire operation and incremented by a release. A thread gets blocked if it attempts to acquire a `std::counting_semaphore` when its internal counter equals zero.

Listing 21-1-1 shows the source code for example `Ch21_01_ex1()`. This example details how to use `std::binary_semaphore` as thread start-stop signals. Near the top of Listing 21-1-1 is the definition of `struct BinSemVec<T>`. Note that this structure includes

two `std::binary_semaphore`s named `Sem1` and `Sem2`. Also, note that both of these semaphores are default initialized, which means that they are in an acquired state. An instance of `BinSemVec<T>` also holds a `std::vector<T>` named `Vec`, which is constructor-initialized using `std::ranges::iota(Vec, 0)`.

Listing 21-1-1. Example Ch21_01 – Ch21_01_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch21_01_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <chrono>
#include <format>
#include <numeric>
#include <semaphore>
#include <string>
#include <thread>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch21_01.h"
#include "MT.h"
#include "MTH.h"
#include "THR.h"

template <typename T> struct BinSemVec
{
    BinSemVec() = delete;

    explicit BinSemVec(size_t vec_size)
    {
        Vec.resize(vec_size);

#ifdef __cpp_lib_ranges_iota // C++23
        std::ranges::iota(Vec, 0);
#else
        std::iota(Vec1.begin(), Vec1.end(), 0);
#endif
    }
}
```

```

static void thread_proc(BinSemVec<T>& bin_sem_vec)
{
    std::print("\nwaiting to acquire Sem1\n");
    bin_sem_vec.Sem1.acquire();

    // sleep period added to simulate long processing time
    THR::sleep_for_random_ms(1000, 1500);
    std::ranges::transform(bin_sem_vec.Vec, bin_sem_vec.Vec.begin(),
        [](T x) { return x * x; });

    std::print("\nreleasing Sem2\n");
    bin_sem_vec.Sem2.release();
}

std::vector<T> Vec {}; // test vector
std::binary_semaphore Sem1 {0}; // thread start start
std::binary_semaphore Sem2 {0}; // thread end signal
};

void Ch21_01_ex1()
{
    const char* fmt = "{:5d} ";
    constexpr size_t epl_max {12};

    // instantiate BinSemVec
    BinSemVec<int> bin_sem_vec1(24);
    MT::print_ctr("\nbin_sem_vec1.Vec (initial values):\n",
        bin_sem_vec1.Vec, fmt, epl_max);

    // start thread_proc
    std::println("\nlaunching thread_proc");
    std::jthread thread1(BinSemVec<int>::thread_proc, std::ref
        (bin_sem_vec1));
    THR::sleep_for_random_ms(1000, 1500);
    bin_sem_vec1.Sem1.release();

    // wait for Sem2
    std::println("\nwaiting to acquire Sem2");
    bin_sem_vec1.Sem2.acquire();
}

```

```

    MT::print_ctr("\nbin_sem_vec1.Vec (after processing):\n",
        bin_sem_vec1.Vec, fmt, epl_max);
}

```

The main component of `BinSemVec<T>` is its definition of static member function `thread_proc(BinSemVec<T>& bin_sem_vec)`. Following an initial `std::print()`, `thread_proc()` invokes `bin_sem_vec.Sem1.acquire()` to acquire `Sem1`. Subsequent to the acquisition of `Sem1`, a simulated algorithm is carried out using `THR::sleep_for_random(1000, 1500)` (see Listing 20-3-3) and `std::ranges::transform()`. The final statement of `thread_proc()`, `bin_sem_vec.Sem2.release()`, releases `Sem2`. This notifies the thread that launched `thread_proc()` that its execution is complete.

Also shown in Listing 21-1-1 is example function `Ch21_01_ex1()`, whose execution commences with the instantiation of `BinSemVec<int> bin_sem_vec1(24)`. In the next code block, `Ch21_01_ex1()` utilizes `std::jthread thread1(BinSemVec<int>::thread_proc, std::ref(bin_sem_vec1))` to launch a new thread. Following a random delay, `bin_sem_vec1.Sem1.release()` releases `Sem1`. Execution of this expression unblocks `thread_proc()`. Function `Ch21_01_ex1()` then exercises `bin_sem_vec1.Sem2.acquire()`, which blocks further execution of `Ch21_01_ex1()` until `thread_proc()` releases `Sem2`.

The next example function illustrates how to use a `std::counting_semaphore`. The archetypal use case for a counting semaphore is to regulate the use of a limited resource. For example, suppose a server launches a new thread each time it receives a request from client. To prevent the system from becoming overloaded, the server can limit the maximum number of concurrently executing threads using a `std::counting_semaphore`.

In Listing 21-1-2, `count_primes_thread()` counts the number of prime numbers between `[begin, end)`. Toward the end of this function, execution of `cs.release()` releases `std::counting_semaphore<>& cs`. This enables `Ch21_01_ex2()` to launch another thread.

Listing 21-1-2. Example `Ch21_01 - Ch21_01_ex2()`

```

void count_primes_thread(std::string name, int begin, int end, int& count,
    std::counting_semaphore<>& cs)
{
    std::print("{:s} - ENTER count_primes_thread()\n", name);
    std::print("{:s} - counting primes between [{:d}, {:d}]\n", name,
        begin, end);
}

```

```

// count primes
count = 0;
for (int i = begin; i < end; ++i)
{
    if (MTH::is_prime(i))
        count++;
}

// release semaphore (sleep added to force timeout errors)
THR::sleep_for_random_ms(50, 60);
cs.release();
std::print("{:s} - EXIT count_primes_thread()\n", name);
}

void Ch21_01_ex2()
{
    // size counts and data vectors
    constexpr size_t num_total_threads {12};           // total
                                                         threads to run
    constexpr size_t num_active_threads_max {3};      // max
                                                         active threads

    std::vector<std::jthread> threads(num_total_threads); // thread pool
    std::vector<std::string> names(num_total_threads);  // thread names
    std::vector<int> counts(num_total_threads);        // prime
                                                         num counts

    // counting semaphore to restrict number of active threads
    std::counting_semaphore<> cs(num_active_threads_max);

    // vars for count ranges
    constexpr int step {25000};
    int begin {};
    int end {step};
    size_t i {};

```

```

while (i < threads.size())
{
    if (!cs.try_acquire_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(5)))
        std::println("cs.try_acquire_for() time out occurred");
    else
    {
        // launch thread to count primes between [begin, end)
        names[i] = std::format("Thread{:02d}", i);

        threads[i] = std::jthread(count_primes_thread, names[i],
            begin, end,
            std::ref(counts[i]), std::ref(cs));

        begin = end;
        end += step;
        ++i;
    }
}

// wait for all threads to finish
for (auto& thread : threads)
    thread.join();

// print results
begin = 0;
end = step;
std::println("");

for (size_t i = 0; i < threads.size(); ++i)
{
    std::println("{:10s}: [{:8d}, {:8d}) = {:5d} ",
        names[i], begin, end, counts[i]);
    begin = end;
    end += step;
}
}

```

Function `Ch21_01_ex2()` opens with the definition of `num_total_threads` and `num_active_threads_max`. The former specifies the total number of threads to launch, while the latter denotes the maximum number of active threads. Following the definition of various thread pool and data vectors, `Ch21_01_ex2()` utilizes `std::counting_semaphore<> cs(num_active_threads_max)` to instantiate a counting semaphore. Constructor argument `num_active_threads_max` represents the maximum number of active acquires supported by `cs`.

Inside `Ch21_01_ex2()`'s `while` loop, execution of `cs.try_acquire_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(5))` attempts to acquire counting semaphore `cs`. If the attempt fails to occur within the specified duration, `num_active_threads_max` are currently executing. If execution of `cs.try_acquire_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(5))` successfully acquires `cs`, `Ch21_01_ex2()` launches another thread using `std::jthread(count_primes_thread, names[i], begin, end, std::ref(counts[i]), std::ref(cs))`.

The penultimate code block in `Ch21_01_ex2()` contains a range for loop that executes a series of `join()`s to ensure completion of all launch threads. The final code block prints the prime number counts in `std::vector<int> counts`. The results for example `Ch21_01` follow this paragraph. Note the number of timeouts that occurred during execution of `cs.try_acquire_for()`, which may be different for other systems.

```
----- Results for example Ch21_01 -----
```

```
----- Ch21_01_ex1() -----
```

```
bin_sem_vec1.Vec (initial values):
```

```
    0    1    2    3    4    5    6    7    8    9   10   11
   12   13   14   15   16   17   18   19   20   21   22   23
```

```
launching thread_proc
```

```
waiting to acquire Sem1
```

```
waiting to acquire Sem2
```

```
releasing Sem2
```

```
bin_sem_vec1.Vec (after processing):
```

```
    0    1    4    9   16   25   36   49   64   81  100  121
   144  169  196  225  256  289  324  361  400  441  484  529
```

```
----- Ch21_01_ex2() -----  
Thread00 - ENTER count_primes_thread()  
Thread00 - counting primes between [0, 25000)  
Thread01 - ENTER count_primes_thread()  
Thread01 - counting primes between [25000, 50000)  
Thread02 - ENTER count_primes_thread()  
Thread02 - counting primes between [50000, 75000)  
cs.try_acquire_for() time out occurred  
cs.try_acquire_for() time out occurred  
cs.try_acquire_for() time out occurred  
Thread02 - EXIT count_primes_thread()  
Thread01 - EXIT count_primes_thread()  
Thread00 - EXIT count_primes_thread()  
Thread03 - ENTER count_primes_thread()  
Thread03 - counting primes between [75000, 100000)  
Thread05 - ENTER count_primes_thread()  
Thread05 - counting primes between [125000, 150000)  
Thread04 - ENTER count_primes_thread()  
Thread04 - counting primes between [100000, 125000)  
cs.try_acquire_for() time out occurred  
cs.try_acquire_for() time out occurred  
cs.try_acquire_for() time out occurred  
Thread04 - EXIT count_primes_thread()  
Thread05 - EXIT count_primes_thread()  
Thread03 - EXIT count_primes_thread()  
Thread06 - ENTER count_primes_thread()  
Thread06 - counting primes between [150000, 175000)  
Thread07 - ENTER count_primes_thread()  
Thread07 - counting primes between [175000, 200000)  
Thread08 - ENTER count_primes_thread()  
Thread08 - counting primes between [200000, 225000)  
cs.try_acquire_for() time out occurred  
cs.try_acquire_for() time out occurred  
cs.try_acquire_for() time out occurred  
Thread07 - EXIT count_primes_thread()
```



```

Thread06 - EXIT count_primes_thread()
Thread10 - ENTER count_primes_thread()
Thread10 - counting primes between [250000, 275000)
Thread09 - ENTER count_primes_thread()
Thread09 - counting primes between [225000, 250000)
cs.try_acquire_for() time out occurred
Thread08 - EXIT count_primes_thread()
Thread11 - ENTER count_primes_thread()
Thread11 - counting primes between [275000, 300000)
Thread10 - EXIT count_primes_thread()
Thread09 - EXIT count_primes_thread()
Thread11 - EXIT count_primes_thread()

```

```

Thread00 : [ 0, 25000) = 2762
Thread01 : [ 25000, 50000) = 2371
Thread02 : [ 50000, 75000) = 2260
Thread03 : [ 75000, 100000) = 2199
Thread04 : [ 100000, 125000) = 2142
Thread05 : [ 125000, 150000) = 2114
Thread06 : [ 150000, 175000) = 2068
Thread07 : [ 175000, 200000) = 2068
Thread08 : [ 200000, 225000) = 2036
Thread09 : [ 225000, 250000) = 2024
Thread10 : [ 250000, 275000) = 1994
Thread11 : [ 275000, 300000) = 1959

```

Latches

Starting with C++20, the concurrency support library includes two new thread coordination classes: `std::latch` and `std::barrier`. A `std::latch` can be used to block a group of threads until an expected number of threads arrive at the latch. Once this happens, all blocked threads are unblocked. A `std::latch` is a single-use thread coordination mechanism in that its internal counter is set during construction and cannot be increased or reset thereafter. A `std::barrier` is similar to a `std::latch`, but its internal counter can be reset. This facilitates object reuse.

Listing 21-2-1 shows the source code for example Ch21_02, which demonstrates the use of a `std::latch`. Near the top of Listing 21-2-1 is the definition of struct `CountPrimesThread`. This structure incorporates all of the computing elements necessary to count prime numbers using multiple background threads and two `std::latches`.

Listing 21-2-1. Example Ch21_02 – Ch21_02_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch21_02_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <array>
#include <chrono>
#include <latch>
#include <string>
#include <thread>
#include "Ch21_02.h"
#include "MTH.h"
#include "THR.h"

struct CountPrimesThread
{
    CountPrimesThread() = delete;

    explicit CountPrimesThread(const char* name, int begin, int end) :
        Name(name), Begin(begin), End(end) {};

    static void thread_proc(CountPrimesThread& cpt, std::latch&
start_latch,
        std::latch& finish_latch)
    {
        std::print("{:s} - ENTER thread_proc()\n", cpt.Name);
        std::print("{:s} - waiting for start_latch\n", cpt.Name);

        // wait for latch
        start_latch.arrive_and_wait();

        //

```

```

cpt.Count = 0;
std::print("{:s} - counting primes between [{:d}, {:d}]\n",
    cpt.Name, cpt.Begin, cpt.End);

for (int i = cpt.Begin; i < cpt.End; ++i)
{
    if (MTH::is_prime(i))
        ++cpt.Count;
}

// update finish latch
finish_latch.count_down();
std::print("{:s} - EXIT thread_proc()\n", cpt.Name);
}

std::string Name {};           // thread name
int Begin {}, End {}, Count {}; // count data
std::jthread Thread {};       // thread object
};

void Ch21_02_ex1()
{
    std::println("Ch21_02_ex1() - this example may take a while to
complete");

    // CountPrimeThread instances
    std::array<CountPrimesThread, 4> cpts
    {
        CountPrimesThread {"CPT0",          0,   50'000'001},
        CountPrimesThread {"CPT1", 50'000'000, 75'000'001},
        CountPrimesThread {"CPT2", 75'000'000, 175'000'001},
        CountPrimesThread {"CPT3", 175'000'000, 250'000'001}
    };

    // thread start and finish latches
    std::latch start_latch(cpts.size() + 1);
    std::latch finish_latch(cpts.size());

    // launch threads

```

```

for (size_t i = 0; i < cpts.size(); ++i)
{
    cpts[i].Thread = std::jthread(CountPrimesThread::thread_proc,
        std::ref(cpts[i]), std::ref(start_latch), std::ref
            (finish_latch));
}

// commence execution of threads
THR::sleep_for_random_ms(50, 75);
start_latch.count_down();

// wait for finish latch to signal all threads complete
std::println("Ch21_02_ex1() - waiting for finish_latch");
finish_latch.wait();
std::println("Ch21_02_ex1() - all threads finished\n");

for (size_t i = 0; i < cpts.size(); ++i)
{
    std::println("Name: {:6s} Begin: {:10d} End: {:10d}
        Count: {:10d}",
        cpts[i].Name, cpts[i].Begin, cpts[i].End, cpts[i].Count);
}
}

```

The principal element of struct `CountPrimeThread` is static member function `thread_proc(CountPrimesThread& cpt, std::latch& start_latch, std::latch& finish_latch)`. In this function, execution of `start_latch.arrive_and_wait()` atomically decrements an internal counter in `start_latch` by one and blocks further execution of `thread_proc()` until `start_latch`'s counter equals zero. Following the for loop that counts prime numbers between `[cpt.Begin, cpt.End)`, `thread_proc()` utilizes `finish_latch.count_down()` to decrement `finish_latch`'s internal counter by one without blocking.

The opening code block of `Ch21_02_ex1()` contains the statement `std::array<CountPrimesThread, 4> cpts` that instantiates four instances of `CountPrimeThread`. Note that each thread utilizes different values for its counting range. The subsequent code block includes definitions for latch objects `std::latch start_latch(cpts.size() + 1)` and `std::latch finish_latch(cpts.size())`. In these

expressions, the constructor argument specifies the initial value for the `std::latch`'s internal counter. The reason for the extra count on `start_latch` will be explained shortly.

The next code block in `Ch21_02_ex1()` utilizes a for loop to launch `cpts.size()` threads. Note that references to both `start_latch` and `finish_latch` are passed to `CountPrimeThread::thread_proc()`. Following a short delay using `THR::sleep_for_random_ms(50, 75)`, `Ch21_02_ex1()` utilizes `start_latch.count_down()` to unblock all launched threads. Recall that `CountPrimeThread::thread_proc()` called `start_latch.arrive_and_wait()` to block execution until `start_latch`'s internal counter reached zero. In the current example, this happens when `Ch21_02_ex3()` exercises `start_latch.count_down()`. The reason for `start_latch`'s extra count should now be apparent.

The final code block in `Ch21_02_ex1()` employs `finish_latch.wait()` to block further execution until `finish_latch`'s internal counter reaches zero. This transpires following the execution of `finish_latch.count_down()` in `CountPrimesThread::thread_proc()` by all `cpts` active threads. Here are the results for example `Ch21_02`:

```

----- Results for example Ch21_02 -----
----- Ch21_02_ex1() -----
Ch21_02_ex1() - this example may take a while to complete
CPT2 - ENTER thread_proc()
CPT2 - waiting for start_latch
CPT3 - ENTER thread_proc()
CPT3 - waiting for start_latch
CPT1 - ENTER thread_proc()
CPT1 - waiting for start_latch
CPT0 - ENTER thread_proc()
CPT0 - waiting for start_latch
Ch21_02_ex1() - waiting for finish_latch
CPT1 - counting primes between [50000000, 75000001)
CPT2 - counting primes between [75000000, 175000001)
CPT3 - counting primes between [175000000, 250000001)
CPT0 - counting primes between [0, 50000001)
CPT1 - EXIT thread_proc()
CPT0 - EXIT thread_proc()

```

```
CPT3 - EXIT thread_proc()
CPT2 - EXIT thread_proc()
Ch21_02_ex1() - all threads finished
```

Name: CPT0	Begin:	0	End:	50000001	Count:	3001134
Name: CPT1	Begin:	50000000	End:	75000001	Count:	1393170
Name: CPT2	Begin:	75000000	End:	175000001	Count:	5372468
Name: CPT3	Begin:	175000000	End:	250000001	Count:	3912546

Condition Variables

A condition variable is a synchronization primitive that blocks execution of a thread until notified by another thread that a predetermined condition has been met or a timeout occurs. An instance of `std::condition_variable` requires a `std::mutex` to carry out its actions. Condition variables are typically exploited to signify the occurrence of an event. One such use case is the producer-consumer model where one thread generates data, while a second thread processes it as elucidated in source code example Ch21_03.

Listing 21-3-1-1 shows declaration for struct `ConditionVarDemo`. The first group of items in this structure – `Mutex`, `ConditionVar`, `DataReady`, and `NoMoreData` – are used in example Ch21_03 to generate and detect an event. The next three items, `Airports`, `Distances`, and `Units`, represent the generated and processed data. Member `RngSeed` is used as a random number generator seed value.

Listing 21-3-1-1. Example Ch21_03 – ConditionVarDemo

```
//-----
// Ch21_03_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <chrono>
#include <condition_variable>
#include <mutex>
#include <string>
#include <vector>
#include <thread>
```

```

#include "Ch21_03.h"
#include "Airport.h"
#include "THR.h"

struct ConditionVarDemo
{
    // event signaling
    std::mutex Mutex {};
    std::condition_variable ConditionVar {};
    bool NoMoreData {};
    bool DataReady {};

    // generated data
    std::vector<Airport> Airports {};
    std::vector<double> Distances {};
    Airport::GeoCoord::Units Units {};

    // miscellaneous data
    unsigned int RngSeed {};
};

```

The data generation function `generate_data()`, shown in Listing 21-3-1-2, utilizes a simple for loop to generate several sets of data. Within this for loop, the first code block exercises `airports = get_random_airports(n, cvd.RngSeed + n)` to obtain a `std::vector<Airports>` of n random Airports. The next statement, `auto distances = calc_distance_matrix(airports, cvd.Units)`, constructs the $n \times n$ distance matrix of all Airports in container `airports`. The source code for both `get_random_airports()` and `calc_distance_matrix()` is not shown in a listing but located in `Ch21_03_misc.cpp`.

Listing 21-3-1-2. Example Ch21_03 – `generate_data()`

```

static void generate_data(ConditionVarDemo& cvd)
{
    std::print("\nENTER generate_data\n");

    for (unsigned int n = 3; n < 8; ++n)
    {
        // generate data

```

```

auto airports = get_random_airports(n, cvd.RngSeed + n);
auto distances = calc_distance_matrix(airports, cvd.Units);

// move data into cvd
{
    std::lock_guard<std::mutex> lock(cvd.Mutex);
    cvd.Airports = std::move(airports);
    cvd.Distances = std::move(distances);
    cvd.DataReady = true;
}

// send data ready notification
// (sleep added to simulate random processing delays)
cvd.ConditionVar.notify_one();
THR::sleep_for_random_ms(250, 500);
}

// signal end of data
{
    std::lock_guard<std::mutex> lock(cvd.Mutex);
    cvd.NoMoreData = true;
}

cvd.ConditionVar.notify_one();
THR::sleep_for_random_ms(25, 50);
std::print("\nEXIT generate_data\n");
}

```

The next code block in `generate_data()`, which is distinctly scoped, utilizes `std::lock_guard<std::mutex> lock(cvd.Mutex)` to lock the event signaling mutex in `ConditionVarDemo cvd`. This allows safe execution of the subsequent two statements, `cvd.Airports = std::move(airports)` and `cvd.Distances = std::move(distances)`. Following the data move, `cvd.DataReady` is set to `true` for reasons that will be explained later. The final code block of `generate_data()`'s for loop exercises `cvd.ConditionVar.notify_one()`, which notifies the thread executing `process_data()` that new data has been generated.

The final code block in `generate_data()` locks `mutex cvd.Mutex` and sets `cvd.NoMoreData` to `true`. Function `process_data()` utilizes this flag to terminate its for loop. Execution of `cvd.ConditionVar.notify_one()` notifies `process_data()` of this change.

Listing 21-3-1-3 shows the source code for `process_data()`. Within this function's while loop is a scoped block whose first statement, `std::unique_lock<std::mutex> lk(cvd.Mutex)`, obtains control of `mutex cvd.Mutex`.

Listing 21-3-1-3. Example Ch21_03 – `process_data()`

```
static void process_data(ConditionVarDemo& cvd)
{
    std::print("\nENTER process_data\n");

    // miscellaneous data items
    bool done {};
    std::vector<Airport> airports {};
    std::vector<double> distances {};
    std::string units {"Uknown"};

    if (cvd.Units == Airport::GeoCoord::Units::mi)
        units = "Miles";
    else if (cvd.Units == Airport::GeoCoord::Units::km)
        units = "Kilometers";

    while (!done)
    {
        {
            // wait for event
            std::unique_lock<std::mutex> lk(cvd.Mutex);

            cvd.ConditionVar.wait(lk,
                [&cvd] { return cvd.NoMoreData || cvd.DataReady; });

            if (cvd.NoMoreData)
                done = true;
            else
            {
                cvd.DataReady = false;
                airports = std::move(cvd.Airports);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

        distances = std::move(cvd.Distances);
    }
}

// above lock released, generate_data() can now lock again
if (!done)
{
    std::string title = std::format(
        "---- Distance Matrix ({:d} airports in {:s}) ----",
        airports.size(),
        units);

    print_distance_matrix(title, airports, distances);
}
}

std::print("\nEXIT  process_data\n");
}

```

During execution of `cvd.ConditionVar.wait(lk, [&cvd] { return cvd.NoMoreData || cvd.DataReady})`, `process_data()` is blocked until either `cvd.NoMoreData` or `cvd.DataReady` is true. If `cvd.NoMoreData` is true, `process_data()`'s while loop terminates. If `cvd.DataReady` is true, execution of `airports = std::move(cvd.Airports)` and `distances = std::move(cvd.Distances)` moves the previously generated data from `cvd` to local containers for later printing by `print_distance_matrix()`. Note that this function is called outside of the scoped block, which means that `cvd.Mutex` is no longer locked. This allows `generate_data()` to resume generating data, while `print_distance_matrix()` (see `Ch21_03_misc.cpp`) prints the airport distance matrix.

The reason for using booleans `NoMoreData` and `DataReady` is that `std::mutex cvd.Mutex` might spuriously wake up (i.e., unlock) during execution of `cvd.ConditionVar.wait()`. The use of predicate `cvd.NoMoreData || cvd.DataReady` ensures that a genuine event has occurred and not a spurious wakeup. The possibility of a spurious wakeup, while unlikely, varies depending on the target system. For the current example, if another thread were to change the state of `cvd.ConditionVar`, a spurious wakeup is theoretically possible following completion of `generate_data()`'s inner for loop scope (i.e., just before `cvd.ConditionVar.notify_one()`) and `process_data()`'s use of `std::unique_lock<std::mutex> lk(cvd.Mutex)`.

Listing 21-3-1-4 shows the source code for example function `Ch21_03_ex1()`. Execution of this function launches `std::jthreads` `thread1` and `thread2`, which execute `generate_data()` and `process_data()`, respectively.

Listing 21-3-1-4. Example Ch21_03 – Ch21_03_ex1()

```
void Ch21_03_ex1()
{
    ConditionVarDemo cvd {};
    cvd.RngSeed = 73;
    cvd.Units = Airport::GeoCoord::Units::mi;

    // launch process_data and generate_data threads
    // (sleep allows time for process_data thread to begin)
    std::jthread thread1(process_data, std::ref(cvd));
    std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(25));
    std::jthread thread2(generate_data, std::ref(cvd));

    // threads joined here
}
```

Here are the results for example Ch21_03:

```
----- Results for example Ch21_03 -----
----- Ch21_03_ex1() -----
ENTER process_data
ENTER generate_data
---- Distance Matrix (3 airports in Miles) ----
          CDG          LHR          WLG
CDG      0.00          216.20        11787.11
LHR      216.20         0.00          11701.23
WLG      11787.11      11701.23         0.00
```

CHAPTER 21 CONCURRENCY – PART 2

---- Distance Matrix (4 airports in Miles) ----

	YYC	MEL	KIX	ZRH
YYC	0.00	8628.59	5191.03	4825.08
MEL	8628.59	0.00	5020.28	10146.40
KIX	5191.03	5020.28	0.00	5889.41
ZRH	4825.08	10146.40	5889.41	0.00

---- Distance Matrix (5 airports in Miles) ----

	YVR	IAH	SYD	YYZ	ZRH
YVR	0.00	1969.50	7768.23	502.72	5164.39
IAH	1969.50	0.00	8597.70	1854.57	5310.57
SYD	7768.23	8597.70	0.00	8260.13	10296.00
YYZ	502.72	1854.57	8260.13	0.00	4694.37
ZRH	5164.39	5310.57	10296.00	4694.37	0.00

---- Distance Matrix (6 airports in Miles) ----

	LAX	IAH	GLA	YYC	ORD	TLS
LAX	0.00	1376.47	5123.76	1207.45	1741.27	5873.40
IAH	1376.47	0.00	4563.66	1748.00	926.30	5129.72
GLA	5123.76	4563.66	0.00	4024.02	3665.78	883.54
YYC	1207.45	1748.00	4024.02	0.00	1382.08	4834.85
ORD	1741.27	926.30	3665.78	1382.08	0.00	4288.94
TLS	5873.40	5129.72	883.54	4834.85	4288.94	0.00

---- Distance Matrix (7 airports in Miles) ----

	PVG	DEL	MCO	CDG	BER	ORD	JFK
PVG	0.00	2666.21	8049.10	5758.48	5236.96	7043.04	7374.60
DEL	2666.21	0.00	8248.58	4080.23	3585.95	7470.10	7311.38
MCO	8049.10	8248.58	0.00	4498.05	4879.07	1006.73	937.85
CDG	5758.48	4080.23	4498.05	0.00	532.01	4141.22	3637.71
BER	5236.96	3585.95	4879.07	532.01	0.00	4415.49	3982.33
ORD	7043.04	7470.10	1006.73	4141.22	4415.49	0.00	722.74
JFK	7374.60	7311.38	937.85	3637.71	3982.33	722.74	0.00

EXIT process_data

EXIT generate_data

Futures

The futures section of the C++ concurrency support library provides components that a thread can use to asynchronously retrieve a value or exception produced by another (or the same) thread. More specifically, an instance of `std::promise<T>` stores an object of type `T` for later retrieval by an instance of `std::future<T>`. Function template `std::async()` asynchronously launches a thread function and returns a `std::future<T>`, which eventually incorporates the thread function's returned result. These three components, plus a few others not discussed in this book, facilitate the execution of threads using a somewhat higher level of abstraction compared to the explicit use of `std::thread` and `std::jthread`.

Example function `Ch21_04_ex1()`, shown in Listing 21-4-1, elucidates the basic use of classes `std::promise<T>` and `std::future<T>`. Near the top of this listing is the definition of alias using `result_t = std::pair<double, double>`. The next code block defines function object `calc_sphere_area_vol()`, which calculates the surface area and volume of a sphere. Note that `calc_sphere_area_vol()` returns an object of type `result_t`.

Listing 21-4-1. Example Ch21_04 - Ch21_04_ex1()

```
//-----
// Ch21_04_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <future>
#include <numbers>
#include <thread>
#include <utility>
#include "Ch21_04.h"
#include "MTH.h"
#include "THR.h"

void Ch21_04_ex1()
{
    // define result type
    using result_t = std::pair<double, double>;
```

```

// lambda to calculate sphere surface area & volume
auto calc_sphere_area_vol = [](double r)
{
    double area = 4 * std::numbers::pi * r * r;
    double volume = area * r / 3;
    return result_t {area, volume};
};

// calculate sphere surface areas and volumes
std::vector<double> radii { 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0 };

for (double radius : radii)
{
    // using std::promise
    std::promise<result_t> promise1 {};
    promise1.set_value(calc_sphere_area_vol(radius));

    // using std::future
    std::future<result_t> future1 { promise1.get_future() };
    result_t result1 = future1.get();

    // print result
    std::println("radius: {:6.2f} surface area: {:6.2f} volume:
{:6.2f}",
        radius, result1.first, result1.second);
}
}

```

The first statement inside `Ch21_04_ex1()`'s for loop, `std::promise<result_t> promise1 {}`, default initializes a `std::promise<T>` object that holds a `result_t`. Execution of `promise1.set_value(calc_sphere_area_vol(radius))` *atomically* sets `promise1`'s `result_t` value using the return value from `calc_sphere_area_vol()`. The next code block opens with `std::future<result_t> future1 { promise1.get_future() }`. Execution of this statement obtains the `std::future<result_t>` object that's associated with `promise1`. This is followed by `result_t result1 = future1.get()`, which obtains the actual `result_t` value from `future1`.

Example function `Ch21_04_ex1()` exercises instances of `std::promise<T>` and `std::future<T>` on the same thread. The more common use case for these classes is the storing and retrieval of a value using different threads. Listing 21-4-2 shows the source code for example function `Ch21_04_ex2()`. This function sets a `std::promise<T>` value on one thread that is retrieved using a `std::future<T>` on a second thread.

Listing 21-4-2. Example `Ch21_04 - Ch21_04_ex2()`

```
void Ch21_04_ex2()
{
    // define result type
    using result_t = std::pair<double, double>;

    // lambda to calculate sphere surface area & volume
    auto calc_sphere_area_vol = [](double r, std::promise<result_t>& prom)
    {
        double area = 4 * std::numbers::pi * r * r;
        double volume = area * r / 3;

        prom.set_value(result_t {area, volume});
    };

    // calculate sphere surface areas and volumes
    std::vector<double> radii { 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0 };

    for (double radius : radii)
    {
        // create std::promise and std::future objects
        std::promise<result_t> promise1 {};
        std::future<result_t> future1 { promise1.get_future() };

        // launch thread to perform calculation
        std::jthread thread1(calc_sphere_area_vol, radius,
            std::ref(promise1));

        // get future result, current thread blocked until result is ready
        result_t result1 = future1.get();
    }
}
```

```

    // print result
    std::println("radius: {:6.2f}  surface area: {:6.2f}
    volume: {:6.2f}",
        radius, result1.first, result1.second);

    // thread1 joined here
}
}

```

In Listing 21-4-2, note that the definition of function object `calc_sphere_area_vol()` includes an argument of type `std::promise<result_t>& prom`. Also, note that the last line of `calc_sphere_area_vol()` utilizes `prom.set_value(result_t {area, volume})` to set `prom`'s value.

Like the previous example, function `Ch21_04_ex2()` creates `std::promise<result_t> promise1 {}` and `std::future<result_t> future1 { promise1.get_future() }` inside its range for loop. The next statement, `std::jthread thread1(calc_sphere_area_vol, radius, std::ref(promise1))`, launches a thread using start function `calc_sphere_area_vol()`. Note that a reference to `promise1` is passed to `calc_sphere_area_vol()`. Execution of `result_t result1 = future1.get()` blocks execution of the current thread until `future1`'s result is ready. This transpires following execution of `prom.set_value(result_t {area, volume})` in `calc_sphere_area_vol()`. What's important to recognize here is that the result from `calc_sphere_area_vol()` is retrieved and printed prior to the joining of `thread1`, which occurs automatically following execution of the `std::println()` statement.

In Listing 21-4-3, example function `Ch21_04_ex3()` demonstrates the retrieval of a `std::future<T>` value from a thread launched using template function `std::async()`. Near the top of `Ch21_04_ex3()` is the definition of `struct result_t { std::string ThreadId {}; ll_t Sum {};`. Function object `sum_primes(llt_n)` sums prime numbers between 2 and `n`; it then returns a `result_t` that contains the calculated sum along with executing thread's id number.

Listing 21-4-3. Example Ch21_04 - Ch21_04_ex3()

```

void Ch21_04_ex3()
{
    // define types
    using ll_t = long long;
    struct result_t { std::string ThreadId {}; ll_t Sum {};

```



```

// sum_primes lambda
auto sum_primes = [](ll_t n, const char* policy)
{
    std::print("ENTER sum_primes() - policy: {:s}\n", policy);

    ll_t sum {0};

    for (ll_t i = 2; i <= n; ++i)
        { if (MTH::is_prime(i)) sum += i; }

    std::print("EXIT sum_primes() - policy: {:s}\n", policy);
    return result_t { THR::get_this_thread_id(), sum };
};

// print current thread_id
constexpr ll_t n {10'000'000};
std::println("Ch21_04_ex2() - n: {:d}, thread_id: {:s}\n", n,
    THR::get_this_thread_id());

// launch async threads using different launch policies
const char* ps0 = "default";
const char* ps1 = "async";
const char* ps2 = "deferred";
const char* ps3 = "async | deferred";

auto async_result0 = std::async(sum_primes, n, ps0);
auto async_result1 = std::async(std::launch::async, sum_primes,
n, ps1);
auto async_result2 = std::async(std::launch::deferred, sum_primes,
n, ps2);
auto async_result3 = std::async(std::launch::async | std::launch::
deferred,
    sum_primes, n, ps3);

// print results
auto print_result = [](std::future<result_t>& result, const char*
policy)
{

```

```

    // print result, get() blocks until result is ready
    result_t r = result.get();

    std::println("result - Sum: {:12d} ThreadId: {:6s} policy: {:s}",
        r.Sum, r.ThreadId, policy);
};

print_result(async_result0, ps0);
print_result(async_result1, ps1);
print_result(async_result2, ps2);
print_result(async_result3, ps3);
}

```

Function `Ch21_04_ex3()` utilizes `std::async()` to asynchronously execute `sum_primes()`, whose execution occurs on the current thread or a newly launched thread. More about this shortly. Function `std::async()` returns a `std::future<result_t>` that eventually holds the result returned by `sum_primes()`.

Template function `std::async()` defines an overload that includes a launch policy parameter. Launch policy `std::launch::async` instructs `std::async()` to begin asynchronous execution of the specified function object as soon as possible. Policy `std::launch::deferred` postpones execution of the specified function object until `get()` is called for the `std::future<T>` object that `std::async()` returns. When using this launch policy, failure to call `get()` (or `std::future<T>::wait()`) means that the function object will never execute. Policy selection is implementation-defined when `std::launch::async | std::launch::deferred` is specified. This policy is also the default for the overload of `std::async()` that lacks an explicit launch policy parameter.

The results for example `Ch21_04` follow this paragraph. Note that for function `Ch21_04_ex3()`, all `std::async()` launches of `sum_primes()` were executed on different threads except for launch policy `std::launch::deferred`. These results may vary depending on the target system.

```

----- Results for example Ch21_04 -----

----- Ch21_04_ex1() -----
radius:  1.00  surface area:  12.57  volume:   4.19
radius:  2.00  surface area:  50.27  volume:  33.51
radius:  3.00  surface area: 113.10  volume: 113.10
radius:  4.00  surface area: 201.06  volume: 268.08
radius:  5.00  surface area: 314.16  volume: 523.60

----- Ch21_04_ex2() -----
radius:  1.00  surface area:  12.57  volume:   4.19
radius:  2.00  surface area:  50.27  volume:  33.51
radius:  3.00  surface area: 113.10  volume: 113.10
radius:  4.00  surface area: 201.06  volume: 268.08
radius:  5.00  surface area: 314.16  volume: 523.60

----- Ch21_04_ex3() -----
Ch21_04_ex2() - n: 10000000, thread_id: 10556

ENTER sum_primes() - policy: default
ENTER sum_primes() - policy: async
ENTER sum_primes() - policy: async | deferred
EXIT sum_primes() - policy: async
EXIT sum_primes() - policy: async | deferred
EXIT sum_primes() - policy: default
result - Sum: 3203324994356  ThreadId: 11176  policy: default
result - Sum: 3203324994356  ThreadId: 8660   policy: async
ENTER sum_primes() - policy: deferred
EXIT sum_primes() - policy: deferred
result - Sum: 3203324994356  ThreadId: 10556  policy: deferred
result - Sum: 3203324994356  ThreadId: 924   policy: async | deferred

```

Class `std::future<T>` can also be used to return a container object by value from a thread function. Source code example Ch21_05 illustrates this design pattern using thread functions that calculate discrete cosine transforms (DCT). DCTs are the foundation of many lossy compression algorithms for audio and video, including the original JPEG and MPEG algorithms. A DCT and its inverse can be calculated using the following textbook equations:

$$X_k = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x_n \cos\left(\frac{\pi k}{N} \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)\right) \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1$$

$$x_k = X_0 + 2 \sum_{n=1}^{N-1} X_n \cos\left(\frac{\pi n}{N} \left(k + \frac{1}{2}\right)\right) \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1$$

Listing 21-5-1-1 shows the source code for template functions `dct()` and `dct_inv()`. Note that both functions require an argument of type `std::vector<T>&` and return a result of `std::vector<T>`. The code used in these functions is a direct implementation of the DCT equations.

Listing 21-5-1-1. Example Ch21_05 - DCT Functions

```
//-----
// Ch21_05_ex.cpp
//-----

#include <algorithm>
#include <chrono>
#include <cmath>
#include <future>
#include <numbers>
#include <stdexcept>
#include <vector>
#include "Ch21_05.h"
#include "RN.h"

template <typename T> requires std::floating_point<T>
std::vector<T> dct(const std::vector<T>& x)
{
    const size_t N = x.size();
    std::vector<T> X(N);

    // calculate DCT
    for (size_t k = 0; k < N; ++k)
    {
        T sum {};

```

```

    for (size_t n = 0; n < N; ++n)
    {
        T t1 = std::numbers::pi_v<T> * k / N;
        sum += x[n] * std::cos(t1 * (n + 0.5));
    }

    X[k] = T(1.0) / N * sum;
}

return X;
}

template <typename T> requires std::floating_point<T>
std::vector<T> dct_inv(const std::vector<T>& X)
{
    const size_t N = X.size();
    std::vector<T> x(N);

    // calculate inverse DCT
    for (size_t k = 0; k < N; ++k)
    {
        T sum {};

        for (size_t n = 1; n < N; ++n)
        {
            T t1 = std::numbers::pi_v<T> * n / N;
            sum += X[n] * std::cos(t1 * (k + 0.5));
        }

        x[k] = X[0] + T(2) * sum;
    }

    return x;
}

```

Template function `compare_vectors()`, shown in Listing [21-5-1-2](#), compares two `std::vector<T>` objects for equivalence. This function is used later to validate DCT results.

Listing 21-5-1-2. Example Ch21_05 – compare_vectors()

```

template <typename T> requires std::floating_point<T>
void compare_vectors(const std::vector<T>& vec1, const
std::vector<T>& vec2,
    T epsilon = 1.0e-7)
{
    auto eq_pred = [epsilon](T a, T b) { return std::fabs(a - b)
    <= epsilon; };
    bool ok = std::ranges::equal(vec1, vec2, eq_pred);

    std::print("\ncompare_vectors(): ");
    std::println("{:s}", ok ? "ok" : "failed!");
}

```

Example function Ch21_05_ex1(), shown in Listing 21-5-1-3, demonstrates the use of `dct()` and `dct_inv()` using a small `std::vector<fp_t>` of random numbers. Note that both DCT functions return by value objects of type `std::vector<fp_t>`. Also, note that `compare_vectors()` is employed to validate the equivalence of `x0` and `x1`.

Listing 21-5-1-3. Example Ch21_05 – Ch21_05_ex1()

```

// #define PRINT_DCT_VALUES

void Ch21_05_ex1()
{
    using fp_t = double;

    // create test vector
    constexpr int rng_min {0};
    constexpr int rng_max {1000};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {879};
    constexpr size_t npts {20};

    std::vector<fp_t> x0 = RN::get_vector<fp_t>(npts, rng_min, rng_max,
    rng_seed);

    // perform DCT and inverse DCT, compare results
    auto X0 = dct<fp_t>(x0);

```

```

    auto x1 = dct_inv<fp_t>(X0);
    compare_vectors(x0, x1);

#ifdef PRINT_DCT_VALUES
    for (size_t i = 0; i < npts; ++i)
        std::println("{:3d}: {:12.6f}, {:12.6f}, {:12.6f}", i, x0[i],
            X0[i], x1[i]);
#endif
}

```

Source code example, shown in Listing 21-5-2, employs `std::async()` and `std::future<T>` to carry out asynchronous DCT calculations. The opening function of this listing, `wait_for_future()`, contains a simple while loop that waits for `std::future<std::vector<T>>& future` to obtain a result. Note the use of `auto status = future.wait_for(wait_time)`. Execution of this function returns a status code that signals the availability of a result or a timeout. The timeout capabilities of `wait_for_future()` can be used to perform other processing while waiting for the future's result. Timeouts are also useful for monitoring purposes to ensure that an executing thread completes its execution within an expected time period.

Listing 21-5-2. Example Ch21_05 - Ch21_05_ex2()

```

template <typename T> requires std::floating_point<T>
std::chrono::milliseconds wait_for_future(std::future<std::vector<T>
>& future,
    std::chrono::milliseconds wait_time)
{
    std::chrono::milliseconds total_wait {};

    while (1)
    {
        auto status = future.wait_for(wait_time);

        if (status == std::future_status::ready)
            return total_wait;

        if (status != std::future_status::timeout)
            throw std::runtime_error("wait_for_future() - unexpected
            status");
    }
}

```

```

        // other processing can be added here
        total_wait += wait_time;
        std::println("waiting for result ({})", total_wait);
    }
}

void Ch21_05_ex2()
{
    using fp_t = double;
    constexpr auto wait_time {std::chrono::milliseconds(500) };

    // create test vector
    constexpr int rng_min {0};
    constexpr int rng_max {1000};
    constexpr unsigned int rng_seed {879};
    constexpr size_t npts {25'000};
    std::vector<fp_t> x0 = RN::get_vector<fp_t>(npts, rng_min, rng_max,
    rng_seed);

    // perform DCT
    auto future_dct = std::async(std::launch::async, dct<fp_t>, x0);

    auto total_wait_time1 = wait_for_future(future_dct, wait_time);
    std::println("dct() complete - total_wait_time1 = {}",
    total_wait_time1);

    // perform inverse DCT
    auto X0 = future_dct.get();
    auto future_dct_inv = std::async(std::launch::async,
    dct_inv<fp_t>, X0);

    auto total_wait_time2 = wait_for_future(future_dct_inv, wait_time);
    std::println("dct_inv() complete - total_wait_ms = {}",
    total_wait_time2);

    // confirm results
    auto x1 = future_dct_inv.get();
    compare_vectors(x0, x1);
}

```


Execution of `Ch21_05_ex2()` opens with the instantiation of `std::vector<fp_t> x0`. The next code block utilizes `auto future_dct = std::async(lp, dct<fp_t>, x0)` to asynchronously calculate a DCT using launch policy `std::launch::async`. Function `Ch21_05_ex2()` then exploits `wait_for_future(future_dct, wait_time)` to wait for a result.

The subsequent code block in `Ch21_05_ex2()` commences with `auto X0 = future_dct.get()`. During execution of this statement, the `std::vector<fp_t>` result held in future is *moved* to `X0`. The inverse DCT for `X0` is then calculated using `future_dct_inv = std::async(std::launch::async, dct_inv<fp_t>, X0)`. Following the call to `wait_for_future(future_dct_inv, wait_time)`, the final code block in `Ch21_05_ex2()` utilizes `auto x1 = future_dct_inv.get()` and `compare_vectors(x0, x1)` to confirm that `x0` is equivalent to `x1`. Here are the results for example `Ch21_05`:

```

----- Results for example Ch21_05 -----
----- Ch21_05_ex1() -----
compare_vectors(): ok
----- Ch21_05_ex2() -----
waiting for result (500ms)
waiting for result (1000ms)
waiting for result (1500ms)
waiting for result (2000ms)
waiting for result (2500ms)
waiting for result (3000ms)
dct() complete - total_wait_time1 = 3000ms
waiting for result (500ms)
waiting for result (1000ms)
waiting for result (1500ms)
waiting for result (2000ms)
waiting for result (2500ms)
waiting for result (3000ms)
waiting for result (3500ms)
waiting for result (4000ms)
dct_inv() complete - total_wait_ms = 4000ms
compare_vectors(): ok

```

Summary

Here are the key learning points for this chapter:

- Semaphores facilitate coordinated concurrent access to a shared resource. Unlike a mutex, a semaphore can be locked and unlocked by different threads.
- The concurrency support library defines two semaphore classes: `std::binary_semaphore` and `std::counting_semaphore`. The former only supports two states; the latter maintains an internal counter that's decremented during an acquire operation and incremented during a release. A thread is blocked if it attempts to acquire a `std::counting_semaphore` when its internal counter equals zero.
- A `std::latch` blocks execution of one or more threads until an expected number of threads arrive at the latch. Following this, all waiting threads are unblocked. A `std::latch` is a single-use thread mechanism; its internal counter is set during construction and cannot be increased later.
- A condition variable is a synchronization primitive that blocks execution of a thread until a predetermined condition has been met or a timeout occurs. A `std::condition_variable` requires a `std::mutex` to carry out its actions. Condition variables are typically exploited to signal application-related events.
- An instance of `std::promise<T>` stores an object of type `T` for later retrieval by a `std::future<T>`. These classes simplify asynchronously retrieval of a value produced on one thread by another thread.
- Function template `std::async()` asynchronously launches a thread function and returns a `std::future<T>`, which eventually incorporates the thread function's returned result.